













# A JUNIOR COURSE OF PRACTICAL ZOOLOGY

BY THE LATE

A. MILNES MARSHALL, M.D., D.Sc., M.A., F.R.S.

PROFESSOR IN THE VICTORIA UNIVERSITY; BEYER PROFESSOR OF ZOOLOGY IN OWENS  
COLLEGE, MANCHESTER; FORMERLY FELLOW OF ST. JOHN'S COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE

AND THE LATE

C. HERBERT HURST, PH.D.

LECTURER IN THE VICTORIA UNIVERSITY; DEMONSTRATOR AND ASSISTANT  
LECTURER IN ZOOLOGY IN OWENS COLLEGE, MANCHESTER

REVISED BY H. G. NEWTH, M.Sc.

LECTURER IN ZOOLOGY IN THE UNIVERSITY OF BIRMINGHAM

LONDON

JOHN MURRAY, ALBEMARLE STREET, W.

FIRST EDITION	. . . .	January	1887	(Smith, Elder & Co.)
SECOND EDITION	. . . .	May	1888	
THIRD EDITION	. . . .	March	1892	
FOURTH EDITION	. . . .	May	1895	
FIFTH EDITION (Revised by Professor F. W. Gamble)		January	1899	
SIXTH EDITION	( . . . )	September	1905	
SEVENTH EDITION	( . . . )	January	1912	
<i>Reprinted</i>	. . . .	April	1916	
EIGHTH EDITION	( . . . )	May	1918	(John Murray)
NINTH EDITION	( . . . )	February	1920	
TENTH EDITION	( . . . )	October	1924	
<i>Reprinted</i>	. . . .	November	1928	
ELEVENTH EDITION	. . . .	December	1930	
<i>Reprinted</i>	. . . .	October	1932	
<i>Reprinted</i>	. . . .	March	1937	
<i>Reprinted</i>	. . . .	March	1944	
<i>Reprinted</i>	. . . .	April	1946	
<i>Reprinted</i>	. . . .	April	1947	
<i>Reprinted</i>	. . . .	May	1948	
<i>Reprinted</i>	. . . .	November	1956	

TO THE  
STUDENTS OF OWENS COLLEGE

THIS BOOK IS DEDICATED  
BY THEIR SINCERE WELL WISHERS

*THE AUTHORS*

## PREFACE TO THE ELEVENTH EDITION.

---

IN presenting to students a new and revised edition of this book, I wish to acknowledge gratefully the help and advice of many friends, themselves teachers of Zoology, whose counsel I sought before the revision was begun. The correction of numerous errors is due to their kindness. I could not, however, accept the suggestion of some among them that the book should be so far modified as to contain instructions for laboratory work in animal physiology; for this would have added greatly to its bulk, and the result could only have been a hybrid of very doubtful viability.

*Practical Zoology* has for many years been, and may usefully be allowed to remain, a reliable laboratory guide to the elementary study of the *morphology* of animals. In its revision I have, in fact, endeavoured to adhere closely to the 'will and meaning' of the original authors. With the exception of a brief mention of *Nyctotherus* and *Balantidium*, no new types of animals for study have been introduced, but the technical directions throughout have received close attention. To this end, all the operations described in the book have been performed again by me personally, or by students under my direction.

I wish to express my best thanks to my colleague, Mr. D. L. Gunn, B.Sc., for his help in revising the chapter on the Cockroach, and to my wife for assistance in the re-making of the Index.

H. G. N.

## PREFACE TO THE FIRST EDITION.

---

THIS BOOK has been written in the hope that it may meet the wants of those who desire to obtain a practical acquaintance with the elements of animal morphology, and who find the existing manuals insufficient for their purpose.

The animals selected for description are those which are generally accepted as suitable types for a junior laboratory course. They are of convenient size, and can all be obtained readily and at small cost; they include characteristic representatives of the more important of the great groups of animals; and they give opportunity for very varied methods of examination. A student who works conscientiously through the book will thus acquire a good insight into the leading facts of animal structure and a technical knowledge of the principal methods of research.

In the mode of treatment adopted the practical character of the book has been made paramount. Directions for dissection have throughout been printed in italics, and a system of indentation has been adopted to render the subdivisions more distinct. In almost all cases the descriptions are so arranged that the whole dissection can be performed on a single specimen: if more than one can be obtained, the order in which the several sections are taken may be varied; but in every case each of the main systems—vascular, nervous, &c.—should be dissected in its entirety, for in this way alone can a proper idea of its relations be obtained.

No attempt has been made to write exhaustive descriptions of the several animals; neither has strict uniformity of treatment been specially aimed at. Portions of the subject which experience has shown to present special difficulties are treated at what may appear undue length; while, on the other hand, the limits of time ordinarily available for laboratory work have led to the almost entire omission of



systems, such as the muscular, which are of subordinate educational value.

Although this is essentially and professedly a laboratory text-book, yet morphological explanations have been freely admitted; and this from a conviction that a student best grasps the meaning of anatomical facts if the explanation is given him while the facts are actually before his eyes.

Illustrations have been introduced somewhat sparingly, for it is of the utmost importance that they should not be allowed to replace the drawings which a student must make from his own dissections. The majority of the figures here given are new, and have been drawn expressly for the book by Mr. Hurst or myself. The drawings on the wood were made by Mr. P. Hundley, and the blocks engraved by Mr. G. Pearson: both these gentlemen have taken great pains to render the figures at once faithful and artistic.

**A. M. M.**

**OWENS COLLEGE,**  
*December, 1886.*

# CONTENTS.

## INTRODUCTION.

	PAGE
Collection and culture of animals—Observation of animals during life—Drawing—Narcotizing animals—Methods of killing animals—Dissection—Injection—Microscopical examination—Drawing with the camera lucida—Measuring of microscopical objects—Use of hardening and staining reagents—Section-cutting—Mounting microscopical objects—Preparation of skeletons . . . . .	xix

## CHAPTER I.

### PROTOZOA.

Amœba—Paramecium—Opalina—Nyctotherus and Balantidium—Vorticella—Monocystis—Trypanosoma . . . . .	1
--	---

## CHAPTER II.

### HYDRA, OBELIA.

Examination of a living specimen—Examination of prepared specimens . . . . .	20
--	----

## CHAPTER III.

### THE LIVER-FLUKE OF THE SHEEP. *Fasciola (Distomum) hepatica.*

The mature liver-fluke—Life-history of the liver-fluke . . . . .	36
--	----

## CHAPTER IV.

The Tapeworm . . . . .	47
------------------------	----

## CHAPTER V.

THE LEECH. *Hirudo medicinalis*.

PAGE

External characters—Dissection—Examination of transverse sections . . . . .	51
---	----

## CHAPTER VI.

THE EARTHWORM. *Lumbricus terrestris*.

External characters—Dissection of the earthworm—Examination of transverse sections . . . . .	68
--	----

## CHAPTER VII.

THE FRESHWATER MUSSEL. *Anodonta cygnea*.

The shell—Dissection of the mussel—Examination of transverse sections . . . . .	91
---	----

## CHAPTER VIII.

THE EDIBLE SNAIL. *Helix pomatia*.

External characters—Dissection of the snail . . . . .	119
---	-----

## CHAPTER IX.

THE CRAYFISH. *Astacus pallipes*.

External characters—Dissection—The arteries as seen in an injected specimen . . . . .	142
---	-----

## CHAPTER X.

THE COCKROACH. *Periplaneta americana*.

Habits—External characters—Dissection . . . . .	171
---	-----

## CHAPTER XI.

AMPHIOXUS. *Branchiostoma lanceolata.*

	PAGE
External characters—Anatomy—Dissection—Examination of transverse sections . . . . .	189

## CHAPTER XII.

THE DOG-FISH. *Scyllium canicula.*

External characters—The skeleton—The abdominal viscera—Dissection of the digestive system—Dissection of the respiratory system—Dissection of the circulatory system—Dissection of the renal and reproductive systems—Dissection of the nervous system—Dissection of the sense organs . . . . .	220
--	-----

## CHAPTER XIII.

## THE SKELETON OF THE RABBIT. THE SKULL OF THE DOG.

The axial skeleton—The appendicular skeleton . . . . .	293
--	-----

## CHAPTER XIV.

DISSECTION OF THE RABBIT. *Lepus cuniculus.*

External characters—The abdominal viscera—Dissection of the digestive system—The thoracic viscera—Dissection of the circulatory system—Dissection of the renal and reproductive systems—Dissection of the neck—Dissection of the sympathetic nervous system—Dissection of the head—Dissection of the brain . . . . .	337
--	-----

## CHAPTER XV.

THE SKELETON OF THE FOWL. *Gallus domesticus.*

The axial skeleton—The appendicular skeleton . . . . .	403
--	-----

## CHAPTER XVI.

DISSECTION OF THE PIGEON. *Columba livia*.

	PAGE
External characters—Dissection of the pectoral muscles—Dissection of the air-sacs—Dissection of the digestive system—Dissection of the circulatory system—Dissection of the respiratory system—Dissection of the renal and reproductive systems—Examination of the brain—The sense organs . . . . .	431

## CHAPTER XVII.

## THE DEVELOPMENT OF THE CHICK.

Practical instructions—General description—Segmentation of the egg—Formation of the germinal layers—The primitive streak—The embryo from the first day to the time of hatching—Observations on the living egg . . . . .	466
---	-----

## APPENDIX.

Reagents for killing, hardening, and preserving—Reagents used in staining—Clearing reagents—Mounting media—Microtomet's media—Cement for fixing down sections cut in paraffin—Injection fluids . . . . .	491
--	-----

INDEX . . . . .	501
-----------------	-----

# LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS.

FIGURE	PAGE
1-8. <i>Amoeba</i> . . . . .	2
9. <i>Paramecium aurelia</i> . . . . .	4
10. <i>Vorticella</i> . . . . .	10
11. <i>Monocystis</i> . . . . .	15
12. <i>Hydra</i> : Diagrammatic longitudinal section . . . . .	21
13. " Section of the body-wall, highly magnified . . . . .	23
14. <i>Obelia</i> . . . . .	33
15. <i>Fasciola hepatica</i> : Diagrammatic figure of the digestive, excretory, and nervous systems . . . . .	38
16. " The reproductive system . . . . .	40
17-21. " A series of stages in the life-history . . . . .	44
Fig. 17. The free-swimming larva . . . . .	
" 18. A sporocyst, containing rediae . . . . .	
" 19. A young redia . . . . .	
" 20. An adult redia . . . . .	
" 21. A free cercaria . . . . .	
21A. <i>Dipylidium</i> . . . . .	49
22. <i>Hirudo medicinalis</i> : The ventral surface . . . . .	55
23. " Diagrammatic figure of the vascular, renal, reproductive, and nervous systems . . . . .	55
24. " Diagrammatic transverse section through the middle of the body . . . . .	66
25. <i>Lumbricus terrestris</i> : Longitudinal vertical section through the anterior part of the animal . . . . .	73
26. " Plan of the reproductive organs . . . . .	80
27. " Diagrammatic transverse section through the middle of the body . . . . .	87
28. <i>Anodonta cygnea</i> : Dissection from the right side, to show the heart and gills . . . . .	100
29. " Dissection from the right side, to show the digestive and renal systems . . . . .	106
30. " Diagrammatic transverse section through the middle of the ventricle . . . . .	116
31. <i>Helix pomatia</i> : Dissection from the right side, to show the mantle-cavity . . . . .	126
32. " Dissection from the right side, to show the digestive and reproductive systems . . . . .	130
33. " Section along the axis of the shell . . . . .	140
34. <i>Astacus pallipes</i> : Transverse section through the abdomen . . . . .	144
35. " The oral appendages . . . . .	150
36. " Diagrammatic transverse section through the thorax . . . . .	154
37. <i>Astacus pallipes</i> : Dissection of a male from the right side . . . . .	158

FIGURE		PAGE
38.	<i>Periplaneta americana</i> : The head, front view . . .	173
39.	" The head, from behind . . .	173
40.	" Dissection of a male from the right side . . .	178
41.	" Dissection of the hinder part of the abdomen of a female . . .	187
42.	<i>Amphioxus</i> : A young specimen, seen from the right side as a transparent object . . .	190
43.	" Transverse section through the anterior part of the pharynx . . .	211
44.	" Transverse section through the hinder part of the pharynx . . .	215
45.	" Transverse section passing through the atrial pore . . .	217
46.	" Transverse section passing through the anus . . .	218
47.	<i>Scyllium canicula</i> : The skull and visceral skeleton from the right side . . .	228
48.	" The skull and visceral skeleton from the ventral surface . . .	234
49.	" The pelvic girdle and fins from the ventral surface . . .	239
50.	" The pectoral girdle and fins from the ventral surface . . .	241
51.	" Longitudinal vertical section through the head and anterior part of the body . . .	248
52.	" The venous system . . .	250
53.	<i>Scyllium catulus</i> : The arterial system . . .	256
54.	<i>Scyllium canicula</i> : Transverse section passing through the posterior dorsal fin . . .	261
55-56.	" Dissections of the renal and reproductive systems of the female . . .	267
57-58.	" Dissection of the renal and reproductive systems of the male . . .	270
59.	<i>Scyllium catulus</i> : Dissection of the brain and cranial nerves . . .	274
60.	<i>Lepus cuniculus</i> : Selected vertebrae . . .	297
61.	" The skull from the right side . . .	305
61A.	<i>Canis familiaris</i> : Skull in longitudinal section . . .	307
61B.	" Ventral surface of the skull . . .	310
62.	<i>Lepus cuniculus</i> : Skeleton of the left hand . . .	330
63.	" Skeleton of the left foot . . .	330
64.	" Dissection of a male from the left side . . .	342
65.	" Dissection of the neck . . .	376
66.	" Diagrammatic transverse section through the head, showing the tympanic cavity and auditory ossicles . . .	384
67.	" Dissection of the brain from the right side . . .	388
68.	" Ventral surface of the brain . . .	391
69.	" Dissection of the brain from above . . .	395
70.	" Transverse section of the brain, passing through the third ventricle . . .	398
71.	" Median section of the brain . . .	400
72.	" Transverse section of the brain, passing through the cerebellum . . .	402

# LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS.

xvii

FIGURE		PAGE
73.	<i>Gallus domesticus</i> : The left half of the skeleton, from right side . . . . .	404
74.	The skull from the right side . . . . .	412
75.	<i>Columba livia</i> : Dissection from the right side . . . . .	442
76.	<i>Development of the chick</i> : The egg . . . . .	468
77-78.	" Segmentation of germinal disc . . . . .	470
79-81.	" Sections of segmenting blastoderm . . . . .	471-72
82.	" Blastoderm at 20th hour . . . . .	473
83.	" Section of blastoderm at 20th hour . . . . .	474
84.	" Section of one-day chick embryo . . . . .	475
85.	" Blastoderm at 24th hour . . . . .	477
86-87.	" Surface view and section of chick embryo of 36 hours . . . . .	478
88.	" Section of embryo (43 hours) . . . . .	479
89.	" Section of embryo (24 hours) . . . . .	480
90.	" Section of embryo (48 hours) . . . . .	481
91.	" Section across head of two-day chick . . . . .	485
92.	" Section across head of 60 hours . . . . .	486
93.	" Blastoderm at 36 hours . . . . .	488
94.	" Three-day chick . . . . .	489





# INTRODUCTION.

THE following pages contain a brief summary of the methods ordinarily employed in the dissection and microscopical examination of animals. They are not intended to form an exhaustive account of anatomical technology; and in many cases they are repetitions of the practical directions given in other parts of the book.

## I. ON THE COLLECTION AND CULTURE OF ANIMALS.

First-hand knowledge of living animals in their natural surroundings, though it is not the main theme of this book, is as essential a part of practical zoology as the examination of their dead bodies in the laboratory, and should be pursued as far as is possible. The next best thing is the study of living animals under favourable artificial conditions, so arranged that not only the behaviour of the adult stages may be observed, but that breeding and development may be studied. This culture of animals involves in its methods and in its results important problems of technique and interpretation. It answers at once some of the questions inevitably raised in the dissecting-room, but at the same time poses innumerable fresh ones.

Most of the animals dealt with in this book are easily obtained and reared in spring. Winter lessens the supply even when they are kept under artificial conditions in the laboratory.

### A. Protozoa.

1. *Amæbæ*.—There are many different kinds of *Amæba*. Some are marine, others freshwater, a third kind lives in soil, and a fourth is parasitic.\* The freshwater group contains

a large form distinguished from its allies by the specific name *proteus*. It occurs in the backwaters of rivers, among the sediment deposited on the bottom.

Obtain a few *Amœba proteus* and pipette them into a clean glass tube. Clean a "Petri-dish" or a shallow flat-bottomed glass vessel about  $3\frac{1}{2}$  inches in diameter. Transfer the amœbæ to the surface of a clean glass slide, and place this carefully (amœbæ downwards) on the bottom of the dish. Add enough rain or well-water to half-fill the vessel, and place in the water a few grains of wheat. Cover the dish with a glass-cover and leave it in the shade of a cool room ( $50^{\circ}$  to  $55^{\circ}$  F.). The microscopic organisms adhering to the corn will multiply rapidly, and upon them the amœbæ will feed. After a time rapid multiplication of the amœbæ will result in irregular grey growths, radiating from the under surface of the immersed glass-slide, and composed of thousands of individuals. A few of these can be sub-cultured into another dish with fresh water and corn, and so on to any desired extent. The cultures should be periodically inspected for the purpose of detecting the overgrowth of bacteria, which tends to kill off the amœbæ.

Soil-amœbæ may be obtained in the following way.

Put ten grammes of chopped hay into a large flask, or beaker, with one litre of distilled water, and steam for three-quarters of an hour. Then filter, make the filtered liquid just alkaline to litmus by adding a few drops of sodium hydrate, and sterilise the alkaline liquid in an autoclave. When cold, pour a small quantity into three or four Petri-dishes and inoculate each dish with a trace (not more than half a gramme) of soil, almost any kind of garden or field soil will answer. Put the dishes into a cool incubator, or on the laboratory table, for a day or two, and then examine with a microscope for amœbæ. The amœbæ vary in size from very small forms to others measuring 0.03-0.04 millimetres in length when extended. They may be found in the encysted condition and in all stages of activity. Subcultures with fresh hay-infusion may be made.

For detailed examination, clean cover-glasses may be dropped on to the surface of the culture-medium, and then

removed to slides; or a platinum loopful of the surface layer may be put on to a slide and covered.

2. *Ciliates*.—*Paramecium* can be obtained by placing pieces of freshwater débris (especially submerged willow-bark) in a small dish of water and examining the edges of the glass vessel under a lens or dissecting microscope. They can be cultivated in hay-infusion. To prepare this, simply steep a small handful of chopped hay in half a litre of water (preferably rain or well-water) and decant the fluid into one or more Petri-dishes, adding a few stalks of hay to each. Other methods of providing a culture-medium are to add 1 gramme of chopped straw or hay to a litre of water, which is then boiled and allowed to cool; or to add 1½ grammes dried *Fucus* (seaweed) to 200 c.c. water, boil for ten minutes and dilute with fresh water to 5 to 10 times its bulk.

*Vorticella* is to be found attached to weeds or wood, whilst allied genera live attached to the surface of freshwater Crustacea. In hard weather, *Vorticella* cannot be obtained, except with great difficulty. It may be cultivated by the hay-infusion method.

3. *Flagellata*.—The most accessible flagellate is *Euglena*, a green form that occurs as a scum in farmyard pools and wherever organic nitrogenous solutions collect. Other flagellates swarm in the receptacles in which bones are allowed to macerate (p. xli.); but the form most suitable for study is *Copromonas subtilis*, to obtain a culture of which proceed as follows. Remove the rectal contents from a freshly killed frog; prepare the following nutrient solution: 30 c.c. egg-albumen in 200 c.c. distilled water to which 1 gramme of common salt is added. Add a small quantity of fresh rectal contents to each of a number of small Petri-dishes containing a few c.c. of this medium, cover from dust, and keep the cultures for 5 days in a cool room.

The parasitic flagellates, e.g. *Trypanosoma*, cannot be cultivated in the laboratory. As is the case with other parasites, parasitic flagellates are most easily obtained in the summer and autumn. They are then common in the cæcum of the mouse and rat and in the rectum of the frog.

## B. Hydra and Obelia.

Hydra is a cosmopolitan of still or slowly-moving lakes, ponds, and streams. It is abundant from spring to autumn and then dies, leaving in the mud eggs, from which the vernal crop emerges. It may be obtained by sweeping the stems and leaves of submerged aquatic plants with a fine meshed net stretched on a stout frame and mounted on a stick. The sweepings should be examined in a white-bottomed dish, half filled with water. With a pipette remove the Hydra to a jar filled with water taken from the natural habitat and containing a living aquatic plant. The most suitable food consists of the minute animal life of the pool or stream, and by adding this from time to time to the aquarium the culture of Hydra can be maintained almost indefinitely. Care must be taken, however, to eliminate the small predatory flatworms which abound in freshwater, and which feed on Hydra.

Obelia, on the other hand, is a marine animal. It occurs in two forms. First, as fixed, branching, plant-like 'hydroid' colonies, attached to the weeds of the sea-shore and to many other holdfasts between tide-marks—such colonies are few and small in early spring, numerous and relatively large in summer, and very much reduced in winter. Second, as a spring and summer crop of freely-floating, transparent, and colourless 'jelly fish,' which are budded off from the fixed colonies. These *medusæ* die after liberating their eggs or spermatozoa. The eggs develop into minute, oval, free-swimming larvæ which settle down on the rocks and weeds from May to September, and these develop into the hydroid-stage. The study of living Obelia can therefore be satisfactorily pursued only during the spring and summer. Moreover, Obelia is extremely sensitive to change, and requires the tidal rhythm for healthy growth and multiplication. The hydroid stage is easily found by searching fronds of seaweed in a dish of sea-water, and may be kept alive in an aquarium for a short time. The *medusæ* may be obtained (a) by keeping the fertile spring hydroids in a muslined jar, immersed in a larger one, or in a sheltered pool of the sea; or (b) by the use

of a conical net of millers' bolting silk, its wide end stretched on a circular cane or iron frame, its small end left open and tied round the neck of a bottle or metal cylinder. This 'townt' is tied to the end of a line and is used from a boat. It should be sunk a fathom or so below the surface and slowly towed through the water for a few minutes. It is then hauled on board, and the contents of the container are emptied into a jar of sea-water.

### C. The Liver-fluke and its allies.

Trematode worms, allied to the Liver-fluke, occur commonly in the frog, where they inhabit the gut, the bladder, and the lungs. They can be easily obtained by slitting open these organs in a freshly killed frog and examining the contents. The intermediate hosts in which their larval life is passed are the freshwater snails *Limnæa stagnalis* and *Limnæa peregra*. Clouds of minute, free-swimming cercariæ may occasionally be obtained in spring and summer by keeping such water-snails in an aquarium, and other stages in the life-history of these parasites can be found by dissecting snails that have been anæsthetised with urethane, and gently teasing the internal organs in salt solution.

The amphibious snail, *Limnæa truncatula*, which is the intermediate host of the liver-fluke of the sheep is very local, and even when found will not prove infected with the larvæ of the fluke, unless on a sheep-run that is in constant use and that is associated with the presence of liver-rot.

### D. Tapeworms.

Mature segments of these animals are easily obtained from the fæces of dogs, especially in the country, where the rabbit is more common as an intermediate host of *Tænia serrata* than is the flea of *Dipylidium*. In order to obtain the scolex and budding zone, as well as the proglottides, of the tapeworm, it is necessary to dissect the intestine of the infected dog or cat. Slit the intestine from end to end; remove the worms carefully with a seeker or camel-hair brush; wash them in salt

solution. In order to preserve a worm in a state of extension, hang it in a single loop from a seeker and dip it repeatedly into a tall jar of Bouin's fluid, finally laying it down in a large dish of the same fixative. The larval stages (bladder worms) of *Tænia serrata* occur in almost every rabbit, tame or wild (see p. 347), and large 'hydatids' (bladder worms that bud off secondary scolices into the fluid-holding cyst-cavity) of *Tænia serialis* are often found amongst the muscles of the body-wall in wild rabbits.

#### E. The Earthworm.

Large specimens suitable for dissection are not always obtainable unless special means are taken to cultivate them. This is best done by making a bed of rich leaf mould in a shaded position. Large specimens are found in spring and autumn, and should be placed in the bed. Protection from drought and frost can be given by covering the bed with additional litter. If flat tiles are laid on the top and sides of the bed, the worms will deposit their cocoons on the underside of the tiles.

### II. ON THE OBSERVATION OF ANIMALS DURING LIFE.

All animals should be carefully observed alive before they are dissected, for by this means alone is it possible to obtain a clear idea of the uses and mode of action of many organs, such as the tentacles of *Hydra*, the odontophore of a snail, the scaphognathite of a crayfish, &c.

### III. ON DRAWING.

Careful pencil drawings must always be made, both of the living animal and of all dissections and preparations. These drawings should be made to scale, in a quarto note-book of unruled paper, and on one side of the page only—the other side should be used for notes on the observations made, and for diagrams.

Correctness of proportion is of more importance than minute detail. The drawings should be a record of

observations, and not diagrams. They should be large enough to shew all necessary detail at a glance: for example, a full page is required for a drawing of the viscera of the rabbit, pigeon, or dog-fish. The use of coloured pencils should be avoided, except in cases where confusion is likely to occur between blood-vessels and nerves. All drawings should be fully annotated *at the time they are made*.

#### IV. ON NARCOTIZING ANIMALS.

Many kinds of small aquatic animals can be more easily studied under the microscope if their movements are slowed down by means of a narcotic; and the use of such a substance is often necessary in order to kill and fix animals in an expanded state. The following general method will be found applicable to most cases.

Place the animals in a watch-glass, or other small receptacle, containing a small amount of water, and add, drop by drop with a fine pipette, one of the following solutions (made up with sea-water if the animals are marine): absolute alcohol diluted with about ten parts of water; a 1 per cent. solution of cocaine hydrochloride; chloroform water.

The operation must be carried out under a lens, and must not be hurried. It is generally complete when the animals cease to contract when touched with a needle.

Other methods of general utility are (a) to immerse the animals in a 1 per cent. or 2 per cent. solution of urethane, or (b) to pass a current of carbon dioxide through the water containing them.

#### V ON THE METHODS OF KILLING ANIMALS.

The method of killing is of considerable importance, and careful attention should be paid to the directions given at the beginning of each chapter.

Two methods of killing animals are in general use, and the one to be chosen depends upon whether the specimen is to be (1) dissected and examined in the fresh state, or (2) converted into permanent microscopical preparations.



For the first purpose chloroform is useful. Three or four minutes' immersion in the vapour, or in water in which a little chloroform has previously been shaken up ('chloroform water') is sufficient for small animals, after which the animal should be washed in water. This answers well for the leech and earthworm. For frogs and rabbits at least fifteen minutes are needed. For killing crayfish boiling water may be employed, and snails die well expanded if drowned in warm water.

For the second purpose—where only very small animals, or small pieces of larger animals are concerned—a reagent is employed which not only kills, but penetrates and 'fixes' the tissues, so that they are but slightly affected by subsequent treatment. Fixation, in fact, consists in the conversion of the more or less soluble and diffusible substances constituting protoplasm into insoluble and non-diffusible substances, in such a manner as to preserve the structures present in the living tissues. Heat is the simplest fixing agent; but though it coagulates protoplasm, it is not to be recommended, since it causes distortion and is not easily controlled. Various substances which form insoluble compounds with the constituents of protoplasm, and are used as fixatives, are described later. In general, it may be said that a large volume—in comparison with that of the object—should always be used, and that the excess of the reagent should be thoroughly washed out when fixation is complete.

## VI. ON DISSECTION.

The object of dissection is to separate the several organs from each other, so far as is necessary to define their boundaries and display their relations to each other. It consists mainly in the removal of the connective tissue which binds the parts together and obscures their outlines.

The necessary instruments are the following :—

1. Two or three scalpels, of different sizes.
2. Two pairs of forceps—one large and one small—both pairs straight, and with roughened tips to secure a firmer hold.

3. Two pairs of scissors—one pair large and strong for general dissection, the other pair small for finer work. The large pair may conveniently have one blade pointed and the other rounded. In selecting scissors see that they cut quite to the points of the blades.

4. A pair of bone-forceps or very stout scissors, for cutting bone and other hard substances.

5. A pair of stout needles, firmly mounted in handles. By far the best form of handle is a small broach-holder (pin-vice), such as watchmakers use, into the end of which the needle is clamped.

6. A pair of the finest sewing-needles, mounted in handles. Only about half an inch of the needle should project. They are used for teasing histological preparations.

7. A seeker, *i.e.* a blunt needle mounted in a handle, and bent at an obtuse angle half an inch from the end.

8. A dissecting lens. The best form of lens is a watchmakers' glass, magnifying not more than four diameters. If the student is unable to wear this like a monocle while dissecting, it may be kept in place by means of a piece of elastic passed round the head, or it may be fitted into a cheap spectacle frame.

9. A razor, and some means for keeping it sharp.

10. A blowpipe of metal or glass, with the end bent at an angle.

11. A pipette, *i.e.* a glass tube drawn out to a point at one end, and fitted with an india-rubber teat at the other: for use in washing dissections, and in injection. The sharp edges of the tube must be rounded off by a moment's contact with a flame.

For the dissection of the larger animals, as the dog-fish or rabbit, a deal board, about two feet long by a foot and a half wide, may be used; to this the animal should be fastened by pins, or by steel awls with wooden handles.

Smaller animals, and special parts of larger ones, should be dissected under water or salt solution, which supports the parts and greatly facilitates the dissection. For this purpose an ordinary white pie-dish with sloping sides is well adapted,

the bottom being fitted with a soft deal board weighted with lead, a sheet of cork cemented in with marine glue, or a layer of wax mixed, while molten, with lamp-black, and containing pieces of lead to prevent its floating. A similar but smaller dish may be used for dissecting under spirit.

Animals, such as the cockroach, which are difficult to fix with pins, may be cemented down with melted wax, or they may be half imbedded in a plate of paraffin, and the plate then fixed down with pins in the dissecting-dish.

For fine work a dissecting microscope affords great assistance.

The following rules for dissection should be carefully observed :—

1. Before beginning a dissection, fix the animal down firmly to the dissecting-board or dish.

2. In fixing an animal with pins, stick them in obliquely, so that their heads do not get in the way or obscure the dissection.

3. Do not wait to be shewn how to dissect, but try yourself. Never be satisfied to be shewn how to dissect.

4. Dissect under water, unless the animal is too large. See that the subject of dissection is completely immersed, and change the water as soon as it gets dirty.

5. Never cut away anything until you are quite certain what it is you are removing.

6. Put the part you are dissecting slightly on the stretch. This applies more particularly to blood-vessels, nerves, ducts, and muscles.

7. In cleaning blood-vessels, nerves, &c., dissect along them, and not across them; and avoid laying hold of them with the forceps. Dissect with strokes of the knife directed upwards and away from you.

8. For fine dissections learn to use your scissors thus: pass your thumb and index finger through the loops of the handle in the reverse direction to that which is usual, support the hinge with the remaining three fingers, and turn the points towards you, resting the outer (post-axial) side of your hand on the table.

9. The dissection is in many cases greatly facilitated by placing the specimen in spirit for a day or so before dissecting it. In some cases the dissection may with advantage be performed under spirit.

10. Always keep your instruments clean and sharp. Be careful not to blunt your fine scissors or scalpels by using them for cutting hard parts.

11. If you get in a muddle, stop, and wash the dissection thoroughly under the tap before proceeding further.

12. Keep your microscope near at hand, and examine, in the fresh state, pieces of the tissues you dissect. In this way doubts as to the identity of an organ will often be easily resolved.

Successive slices cut from an animal, or part of an animal, with a razor (or a fine dental saw, if the object is very hard) are often exceedingly instructive. This is especially the case with the mussel and snail, and with the brains of the rabbit and pigeon. The specimens must be previously hardened with spirit or other reagent, and the slices, which can be permanently preserved in formol or spirit, should be examined in water.

## VII. ON INJECTION.

The injection of coloured fluids into the blood-vessels or ducts of an animal makes it much easier to see them, and to follow them to their distribution. The colouring matters used must not be soluble in, or affected by, any of the fluids in which the specimen is afterwards to be dissected, hardened, or preserved. The most convenient are Prussian blue, lead chromate, and mercuric sulphide.

In the case of the larger animals, either starch or freshly prepared plaster of Paris forms, if coloured, a convenient substance for injection: they solidify in the vessels, and so do not escape if a vessel is cut during the dissection. The disadvantage of plaster is its brittleness when set.

For smaller animals, thick gum-water or white of egg may be injected cold, or a thin jelly made of gelatin and

water injected warm. The animal should afterwards be put into alcohol to harden the injection. If the animal is not to be dissected after injection, water coloured with any of the above pigments may be used with advantage, and this is particularly useful for the alimentary and excretory systems of the liver-fluke.

For injecting small animals a hypodermic syringe can be used if the injection fluid be not too viscous to pass readily through the needle; or a glass pipette, with a point sufficiently fine to enter the vessel to be injected, may be used. Several such cannulæ of various sizes should be kept ready.

In the case of larger animals, such as the rabbit, a complete injection of both arteries and veins is difficult, and should not be attempted as a single operation. The arterial system can generally be injected successfully without previously removing the blood, which is forced by the injection into the veins. Inject the rabbit from the femoral artery; the pigeon, from the pectoral artery; the dog-fish, from the caudal artery, after cutting off a few inches of the tail. The following apparatus is necessary, and must all be placed on the table ready for use before the animal is killed—for the blood coagulates after death so rapidly as to allow no time to look for instruments.

1. Cannulæ: glass ones are the most convenient; they should be of various sizes, to fit the several vessels which it is proposed to inject, and each should have a slight constriction near the tip, so that it may be firmly secured in the vessel by a ligature. The largest cannula that will enter the vessel should be used.

2. A glass syringe, capable of holding about an ounce of fluid. A larger syringe is liable to get blocked up.

3. Several pieces of strong india-rubber tubing, about an inch long, to connect the nozzle of the syringe with the cannula, both of which they must fit rather tightly.

4. Two or three glass plugs to fit the india-rubber tubing.

5. A dish of water or salt-solution, in which all the cannulæ and india-rubber connections are laid, to displace the air from them.

6. A wide-mouthed, stoppered jar containing the injection fluid, which should be strained through muslin and well shaken up before use.

7. Dissecting-board, pins, scalpels, scissors, two pairs of forceps, seeker, thin string or thread, and two or three pairs of 'bull-dogs.' These last are very short spring-forceps, the spring being so arranged as to close the forceps. They are convenient to stop the escape of blood or injection from any vessels that may have been cut.

The injection should be performed close to a large sink, over which is a water-tap with a foot or two of wide india-rubber tubing attached.

When everything is ready, kill the animal, and as soon as it is dead, expose the vessel from which it is intended to make the injection, cutting as few blood-vessels as possible; choose a cannula of the right size; fit it with an india-rubber connection; fill it with salt solution, and stop the end of the connection with a glass plug. Pass a ligature round the vessel; make a V-shaped slit in the vessel with fine scissors, or by cutting down with a scalpel on to the handle of another scalpel placed below the vessel; insert the cannula; tighten the ligature upon it, and tie it with a bow. If the ligature be too tight it will cut the vessel. Fill the syringe with the injection fluid; remove the plug from the cannula; press the body of the animal slightly, to remove some of the blood from its vessels, and to get rid of any clot that may have formed close to the cannula. Inject the coloured fluid immediately with the syringe. When the vessels appear to be well injected, remove the syringe and insert the glass plug or place bull-dog forceps on the injected vessel; wash the animal to get rid of blood and any injection that may have escaped, and place it in formol or alcohol.

#### VIII. ON MICROSCOPICAL EXAMINATION.

The microscope consists of a body and a stand. The stand consists of a heavy *foot*, from which springs a vertical pillar; and this is continued upwards as the *limb*, to which all the optical parts of the microscope are attached. The limb is

generally jointed to the pillar in such a way that the body can be inclined at any angle to the vertical, and clamped in position—but the beginner should learn to use it in the vertical position first.

The limb supports the body in such a way that the latter may be moved up and down without any lateral movement. The body of the microscope consists of an outer tube, into the top of which an inner tube—the *draw-tube*—slides, and into the lower end of which is screwed a combination of lenses called the *objective*. Another combination of lenses—the eye-piece, or *ocular*—slides into the upper end of the draw-tube. The total length of the body ('tube-length') should be adjusted, by means of the draw-tube, to accord with the directions given by the maker of the microscope used. The limb also supports a *stage* to hold the object to be examined. The stage, which is at right angles to the axis of the body, has a round hole in its centre, through which light may be transmitted to the object. Below the stage is a mirror which can be rotated on two axes at right angles, so that light from any direction can be reflected up the tube of the microscope. One side of the mirror is a plane surface; the other is concave, and focusses parallel rays of light on the object; but there is in most microscopes, between the mirror and the stage, a system of lenses—the *condenser*—which serves this latter purpose more efficiently. The condenser carries an iris diaphragm which controls the amount of light passing through it.

One or two eye-pieces, and two (*dry*) objectives of different magnifying powers,  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch or low power, and  $\frac{1}{8}$  or  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch or high power, are essential, and to obtain the highest magnification an *oil-immersion* objective is required.

An object can be seen clearly through a microscope only when it is at a definite distance from the objective; and this distance varies with different objectives and eye-pieces, and to a slight extent with different observers. An objective of high power requires to be nearer to the object than does one of lower power. The regulation of this distance is called *focussing*, and is effected in two ways.

The *coarse adjustment* of focus is made by means of a rack

and pinion worked by two large milled heads placed one on either side of the limb near its top.

The *fine adjustment* is actuated either by a single large milled head turning horizontally and placed at the top of the limb, or by two small milled heads one on either side of the limb below those that govern the coarse adjustment. By turning the horizontal milled head, in the direction of the hands of a watch, the body of the microscope is lowered; by turning in the reverse direction, it is raised.

In using the microscope the following rules are to be carefully observed:—

1. Examine every object with the low power first. Having adjusted the eye-piece and the objective, turn the mirror so as to reflect the light up the body of the microscope, using the *plane* side of the mirror if a condenser is employed; place the object on the stage under the objective; lower the body till the objective is about a quarter of an inch from the cover-glass; then look through the eye-piece, and gradually raise the body till the object becomes distinctly visible. Focus accurately with the fine adjustment. With the high power, begin with the objective close to the cover-glass, and then proceed as before. In most microscopes the two or three objectives are carried in a rotating *nose-piece*, and are so made that if the low power is focussed and the high power is then swung into position it also will be approximately in focus.

2. Never examine an object with the high power unless it is protected by a cover-glass. Take extreme care never to let the objective touch the cover-glass, and never to touch the face of the objective or allow any dirt to get on it.

3. Keep both eyes open when looking through the microscope. Also get into the habit of using either eye.

4. When examining an object, keep one hand on the fine adjustment, and keep screwing it up and down slightly. In this way only can parts of the object at different depths be brought into focus, and a clear idea of the object be obtained.

5. Use as much light as you can without causing fatigue to your eye. The hard black outlines obtained by closing the iris diaphragm are entirely deceptive.



6. When not in use, keep the microscope in its case or covered with a bell-jar, leaving an ocular in the draw-tube. Examine all objectives after use, and clean the stage if necessary.

7. The object may appear indistinct from dirt on the eye-piece, the objective, or the cover-glass. If it be on the cover-glass, the dimness varies when the slide is moved; if on the eye-piece, it varies when this is rotated; if not on either of these, it must be on or in the objective.

The eye-piece and the lower surface of the objective may be cleaned with chamois-leather or silk. If the objective is smeared with glycerin, wash it carefully, then dry with a soft handkerchief. Canada balsam may be removed with a drop of xylol on a handkerchief, care being taken to remove at once every trace of the xylol.

#### IX. ON DRAWING WITH THE CAMERA LUCIDA.

A camera lucida consists essentially of a minute mirror perforated in the middle and placed above the eye-piece of the microscope at an angle of  $45^{\circ}$ . Through the small perforation the object under the microscope is seen, and at the same time the mirror reflects into the eye the light from another, larger mirror, which is so adjusted that a sheet of paper laid on the table at the side of the microscope is visible at the same time as the object. The magnified image appears to lie upon the paper, and by tracing its outlines with a pencil an accurate drawing is obtained. Observe the following precautions: use the microscope in the vertical position; set the large mirror of the camera at  $45^{\circ}$  to the vertical; arrange the height of the drawing paper so that its distance from the eye *via* the mirror is between 10 and 11 inches; draw only outlines—the details should be filled in after removal of the camera from the microscope.

#### X. ON MEASURING MICROSCOPIC OBJECTS.

The *eye-piece micrometer* is a plate of glass, the upper surface of which is either engraved with a scale, or divided

into a number of equal squares by cross-lines ruled upon it. This is placed between the lenses of the eye-piece in such a position that the scale can be seen distinctly on looking through the microscope.

The *stage micrometer* is a slide on which is engraved a scale of tenths and hundredths of a millimetre.

To measure a minute object, focus it under the microscope with the eye-piece micrometer in position; read off the apparent size on the scale of the micrometer; replace the slide by the stage micrometer and read off upon that the actual value of the noted number of divisions of the eye-piece micrometer.

The value of each division on the eye-piece micrometer is obviously constant for any given objective, the tube length remaining the same, but will vary when the objective is changed or the length of the microscope tube is altered. If many measurements are to be made, the eye-piece micrometer should be calibrated for all the objectives to be used, the tube-length being noted. The unit of measurement for microscopical objects is the micron—0.001 mm.—expressed by the Greek letter  $\mu$ .

By means of a camera lucida a scale may be drawn upon a sheet of paper laid at the side of the microscope, coinciding with the apparent image of the stage micrometer seen through the microscope, and this scale may then be used to measure directly the size of an object seen at the same time through the microscope.

In order to measure the *thickness* (i.e. the vertical dimension) of an object on the stage of the microscope, many instruments are fitted with a small graduated drum attached to the milled head of the fine adjustment. On this the vertical movement of the microscope body is read off directly in microns, by noting the number of divisions which pass a pointer while changing the focus from the top to the bottom of the object measured. To obtain the true thickness, multiply the observed number of microns by the *refractive index* of the mounting medium (e.g. Canada balsam, 1.5).

XI. ON THE USE OF DISSOCIATING, HARDENING,  
AND STAINING REAGENTS.

A list of the common reagents used for fixing, dissociating, hardening, and staining specimens, together with directions for their preparation, will be found in the Appendix.

1. Fixing has already been explained. Remember that to obtain good results it is necessary to employ either small animals or very small portions of large ones, and to use a relatively large bulk of the fixing fluid; no general rule can be given for the timing of the process, which varies with the fluid used and the size and permeability of the object.

2. Dissociating or macerating consists in dissolving the intercellular substance that binds a tissue together. By the aid of this method, followed by teasing, the separate cells of a tissue may be isolated. Almost any fixative used in a diluted form (about one-tenth) acts as a dissociator. Weak alcohol (30 per cent.), osmic and acetic acids, and Müller's fluid are the most useful. For Hydra, osmic-acetic acid is specially useful.

3. Hardening is necessary in the case of soft animals or of tissues to be cut into slices. The higher grades of alcohol, from 70 per cent. upwards, and 10 per cent. formaldehyde are good hardening reagents. For the freshwater mussel a weak solution of chromic acid ( $\frac{1}{2}$  per cent.) in water serves well. For the brain of the rabbit and pigeon the same fluid or ordinary methylated spirit may be used.

4. Staining is necessary in order to make visible, or render more distinct, the minute structure of objects to be examined by transmitted light under the microscope.

(a) Certain stains can be applied to living animals or tissues. Neutral red is valuable for staining living Protozoa (see Paramecium). Methylene blue, in very dilute solution, may be used to demonstrate nervous tissues in small transparent animals *intra vitam*, or in dissections of larger ones. In the latter case it should be applied locally to a part of the dissection where the tissues are not cut or bruised.

(b) For objects that are to be made into permanent microscopical preparations, staining is essential, since fixation

and dehydration destroy the natural colours, while clearing and mounting make the whole object transparent and its internal structure almost invisible.

Stains are, roughly, of two kinds: those which colour most strongly the nuclear material, and those which have an affinity for the cytoplasm. The most useful stains for the beginner, carmine and hæmatoxylin, are 'nuclear' stains, but give also a general coloration of the cytoplasm. Use borax-carminc undiluted, and preferably for at least twenty-four hours; after which *differentiate* in slightly acid 70 per cent. alcohol, which removes the colour first from the cytoplasm; then wash with un-acidified alcohol. Use Delafield's hæmatoxylin largely diluted with distilled water: the process of staining a small object can be watched under the microscope and stopped when complete, the object then being washed in tap-water before dehydration; or it may be over-stained and differentiated as with carmine.

Large objects should be supported on a little cotton-wool while being stained and differentiated, or the reagents will not reach the under surface.

Microscopical sections should generally be *counter-stained* with a cytoplasmic stain differing widely in colour from the nuclear stain used: e.g. hæmatoxylin (blue) may be followed by osin (red); carmine, by light green, &c.

## XII. ON CUTTING SECTIONS.

Dissection shews the relation between the parts of an animal by displacing them in an orderly fashion, while keeping them—as far as possible—intact. Dissociation and teasing separate the minute elements of a tissue in the same way. In both cases the natural *topography* is destroyed. To understand completely the relation of the parts of an animal or of a tissue these procedures must be supplemented by that of cutting them into sections without otherwise disturbing their form. Whether the object cut be large or small, and whether it be cut into few or many sections, it is essential that these sections should be (a) cut in a known direction; (b) examined

in a known aspect; and (c) arranged and examined in a known and definite order. For example, a section like that shewn in fig. 44 shews the liver on the right of the body; if it were looked at from the other side, the liver would appear on the left.

In order to keep the internal parts of an object in position it must either be hardened so as to withstand the passage of the knife, or it must be impregnated completely with some supporting medium. The first method is applicable to large animals, which are to be cut by hand into comparatively thick slices, and has already been dealt with. For the detailed study of small animals and of tissues microscopical sections of the impregnated object are necessary.

The process of making such sections is, in principle, to impregnate the fixed and dehydrated specimen with molten paraffin wax; to solidify the wax, and to cut the resulting block, with the embedded object, into sections of definite thickness, which are fixed to slides in definite order, stained, and mounted in balsam. The operations involved are described at greater length in the last chapter of this book.

The instrument used for cutting the sections is known as a *microtome*. It consists essentially of a carrier, to which the prepared block of paraffin is fixed, and of a knife mounted in such a way that it can be moved in a definite plane, while the carrier is urged into its plane of movement. After each section has been cut the carrier is advanced a known distance, and if the wax block has previously been trimmed to a rectangular shape the successive sections that are cut will cohere to form a straight ribbon.

### XIII. ON MOUNTING MICROSCOPICAL OBJECTS.

The most convenient slide for microscopical objects is a slip of glass three inches long and one inch wide, or for large series of sections the slide may be  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inch wide. The glass should be free from air-spaces and other flaws, and the edges should be ground.

Cover-glasses must be very thin (No. 1) and free from flaws.

For single objects square covers ( $\frac{1}{8}$  to  $\frac{7}{8}$  inch) are best, and for series of sections oblong covers, which should not come within  $\frac{1}{16}$  inch of the edge of the slide. Space should also be left at one end for a label.

'Cells' are required to protect thick objects from the pressure of the cover-glass. Thin flat rings of tin are good, and should be cemented to the slide with gold size or 'brown cement'; or a ring of the cement painted on with a brush and allowed to dry may be used as a cell for thinner objects. No cell is required for sections. Copper, brass, and vulcanite cells are to be avoided.

An object may be mounted dry by fixing it to the slide in the centre of a cell with a very small quantity of collodion or gum-water, or of solution of shellac in creosote or alcohol. When the cement is dry, a cover of the same diameter as the cell is to be laid over it, and secured by varnishing at the edge with any of the cements sold for the purpose.

More usually it is advisable to mount an object in a liquid or solid medium. Such are glycerin, which is liquid; Farrant's medium, and Canada balsam, which are liquids becoming solid; and glycerin-jelly, which is solid when cold.

An object, stained or otherwise, to be mounted in glycerin or Farrant's medium may be transferred to it direct from water, great care being taken to avoid introducing air. The drop of glycerin, &c., used should be just large enough to spread out to the edge of the cover. When glycerin is used, the cover must be fixed by means of gold size or other cement applied round the edge with a small paint-brush.

To mount in glycerin-jelly the object is first soaked in glycerin and then in melted glycerin-jelly (*see* Appendix); it is then transferred to a drop of the melted glycerin-jelly upon the slide, and the warm cover, previously wetted with the melted jelly to aid in excluding air, is immediately placed upon it and held in position till the jelly solidifies. Avoid heating more than is necessary. The edges of the cover may be cemented as above, but this is not absolutely necessary.

To mount an object in Canada balsam, it must, after staining, be dehydrated by soaking in absolute alcohol; then

soaked in oil of cedar-wood or xylol, till the alcohol is removed ; transferred to the drop of balsam upon the slide and covered ; and, finally, placed in a warm place (at about 40° C.) to harden.

**Mounting sections cut in paraffin.** Take a clean, dry slide and spread evenly over it with the finger a very small drop of glycerin and albumen (*see* Appendix), so that the slide appears to be only slightly moist. Avoid an excess of glycerin and albumen, otherwise the sections will be cloudy. Add two or three drops of distilled water, allowing them to spread out over the slide. Arrange the sections in order on the slide, taking care that none are reversed (the duller side should be uppermost). Now hold the slide above a very small flame till the sections flatten out—they must on no account be melted—and drain off the water by placing a piece of blotting-paper across one end of the slide and then tilting the other end. Allow to dry completely. Remove the paraffin from the dry sections by immersing the slide in xylol or toluol, and if the object was stained before the sections were cut, mount at once in balsam as described below. If the sections are to be stained proceed as follows.

When the paraffin is all dissolved out, place the slide in absolute alcohol for a few minutes to remove the xylol. Then pass the slide gradually through 90 per cent., 70 per cent., 50 per cent. alcohol. If an alcoholic stain (*e.g.* borax-carmines, alcoholic safranin, &c.) is to be used, the slide is now placed in stain. If an aqueous stain (*e.g.* hæmalum, &c.) is to be used, the slide must be placed in 30 per cent. alcohol, then in water, and then in the stain. After being in stain the requisite length of time, the excess of stain is removed by washing in some suitable reagent, and the slide is then passed gradually through 50 per cent., 70 per cent., 90 per cent. to absolute alcohol, where it is allowed to remain a few minutes. After dehydration transfer again to xylol.

Now prepare a clean, dry cover-slip by placing on it one or two drops of Canada balsam diluted with xylol to the consistency of a thin syrup. Take the slide from the xylol bath and lay it down on a piece of blotting-paper—with the sections uppermost. Carefully lower the reversed cover-slip into

position over the sections, using a mounted needle to control the operation, and taking care that no bubbles of air are included.

During the whole of the process of mounting just described the sections must never be allowed to become dry.

#### XIV ON PREPARING SKELETONS.

Skeletons of rabbits, fowls, &c., may be prepared by maceration or by boiling. Before macerating the bones should have most of the flesh cut off; they are then to be put into cold water and left for several weeks for the remaining flesh to rot away. They will afterwards require copious washing, and may then be bleached by exposure to direct sunlight for two or three weeks, during which time they should be repeatedly dipped into water and then left to dry. This same process also removes much of the offensive smell of freshly macerated bones. Both these effects may, however, be more quickly produced by steeping the bones in a clear solution of bleaching powder, and afterwards washing them in running water.

Boiling the bones and then picking off the flesh yields skeletons serving all the purposes of the student, though not so white as those obtained by maceration.

The preparation of cartilaginous skeletons is described at p. 225.



## CLASSIFICATION OF THE ANIMALS EMPLOYED IN THIS WORK.

### *Sub-Kingdom Protozoa*

Phylum Rhizopoda.

Class Amœbida.

Genus : Amœba.

Phylum Infusoria.

Class Ciliata.

Genera : Paramecium, Opalina, Vorticella Nyctotherus, Balantidium.

Phylum Sporozoa.

Class Gregarinida.

Genus : Monocystis.

Phylum Flagellata.

Class Euflagellata.

Genus : Trypanosoma.

### *Sub-Kingdom Metazoa*

Phylum Coelenterata.

Class Hydrozoa.

Genera : Hydra, Obelia.

Phylum Platyhelminthes.

Class Trematoda.

Genus : Fasciola.

Class Cestoda.

Genera : Dipylidium, Taenia.

Phylum Annelida.

Class Hirudinea.

Genus : Hirudo.

Class Oligochaeta.

Genus : Lumbricus.

**Phylum Mollusca.**

Class Lamellibranchiata.

Genus : Anodonta.

Class Gasteropoda.

Genus : Helix.

**Phylum Arthropoda.**

Class Crustacea.

Genus : Astacus.

Class Insecta.

Genus : Periplaneta (Blatta).

**Phylum Chordata.**

Sub-phylum Acrania.

Class Cephalochordata.

Genus : Branchiostoma (Amphioxus).

• **Sub-phylum Craniota.**

Class Pisces.

Genus : Scyllium.

Class Mammalia.

Genus : Lepus.

Class Aves.

Genus : Gallus, Columba.



# PRACTICAL ZOOLOGY.

## CHAPTER I.

### THE PROTOZOA.

A PROTOZOON is an animal which consists of a single nucleated protoplasmic mass which carries out the functions of life without sub-division of its mass into cells.

Protozoa are always of small size, and are usually microscopic.

#### . AMOEBA PROTEUS.

This protozoon is found in rivers and in freshwater pools, among microscopic plants known as diatoms and desmids, and in damp situations. Its indefinite and ever-changing shape is characteristic, and has gained for it the name 'proteus animalcule.' The largest of these animals are just visible to the naked eye, while others are exceedingly minute. It must be remembered, however, that *Amœba proteus* is one of many species of amoeba which occur together. The following description is sufficiently general to apply to more than one species.

*In order to obtain a culture of Amœba the directions given in the Introduction (Section I.) must be followed some weeks before the specimens are required for examination.*

*Place a drop of water containing Amœbæ on a slide ; search for the animals with a low power of the microscope, without using a cover-slip ; then cover, and examine them with a high power.*

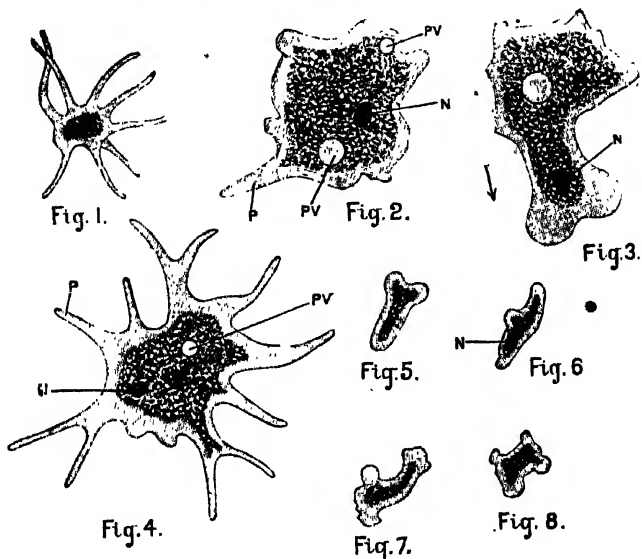
#### A. General Appearance.

The animal is an irregular mass of protoplasm, running out into blunt processes or pseudopodia, the protrusion and retraction of which cause great changes in the form of the body. The pseudopodia may branch slightly.

**B. Structure.**

The whole body is a naked mass of protoplasm, of which two portions are distinguishable.

1. The **ectoplasm** is the clearer outer portion of the body.



FIGS. 1 to 8.—*Amoeba*:  $\times 400$ . (C. H. H.)

Figs. 2 and 3 were drawn from the same specimen, which was moving in the direction shown by the arrow. Fig. 4 is a form with branching pseudopodia. Figs. 5 to 8 were drawn from one specimen at intervals of about twenty seconds.

N, nucleus. P, pseudopodium. PV, pulsating vacuole.

2. The **endoplasm** is the granular central portion. Its flowing movements, which accompany the protrusion and retraction of the pseudopodia, are rendered obvious by the granules contained in it.

The ectoplasm and endoplasm, excluding the nucleus (see below), are collectively known as the **cytoplasm**.

*Within the endoplasm make out the following structures.*

- a. **Vacuoles** are spaces filled with fluid, which is less dense than the surrounding protoplasm. They

contain in many cases microscopic plants taken in as food.

b. The **pulsating vacuole** is a space filled with a watery fluid. It pulsates rhythmically, ejecting its fluid contents, at each contraction, from the animal's body. More than one may be present. *Time its pulsations.*

c. The **nucleus** is a roughly spherical, granular body, denser or more highly refractive than the rest of the endoplasm. During life it is easily seen in specimens free from food. It also takes up certain stains more readily than the cytoplasm.

*Place some large amœbæ in a watch-glass in a small amount of water, allow them to become active, and then add an excess of 10 per cent. formaldehyde. After a few minutes remove them with a fine pipette to another watch-glass containing diluted hæmatoxylin, stain, clear, and mount (v. Introduction XI. and XIII.).*

### C. Movements.

The change of form already referred to is known as 'amœboid movement.' Pseudopodia are protruded from any point of the surface, and can be completely withdrawn, and a slow crawling movement of the whole animal is effected by their means. Pseudopodia may also surround food particles and then be withdrawn, bringing the food into the body.

*Draw a specimen of Amœba several times at intervals of half a minute, indicating the direction of flow of the particles by means of arrows. Compare the drawings, and note the differences of form—even in sluggish specimens in which movement was not obvious.*

*Feed with Indian ink or carmine, and note that food is taken in at almost all parts of the surface.*

### D. Reproduction.

Amœba multiplies by **fission**—i.e. the nucleus first divides equally into two, the whole body becomes more and more constricted between these daughter-nuclei until, with the final rupture of the isthmus, two complete amœbæ are formed.

**E. Encystation.**

Amœba periodically, and also under adverse conditions, assumes a spherical shape and secretes a cyst round itself. These cysts may be either resting-cysts or reproductive cysts. From the former the Amœba emerges unchanged. From the latter it issues as amœbulæ. The life-history is however still imperfectly known.

**II. PARAMECIUM AURELIA.**

This is a free-swimming freshwater protozoon found in abundance among decaying vegetable matter. It differs

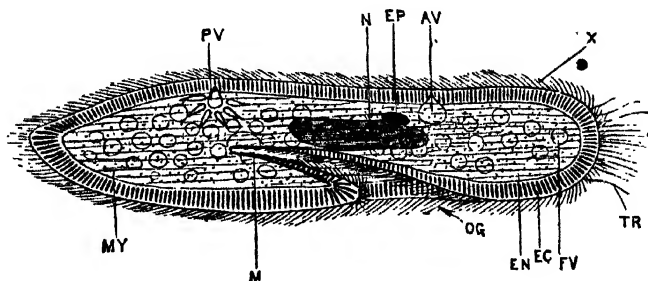


FIG. 9.—*Paramecium aurelia*, seen from above and slightly from the right side :  $\times 300$ . (C. H. H.)

AV, anterior pulsating vacuole. EC, ectoplasm: the lines running across it indicate the trichocysts. EN, endoplasm. EP, micronucleus. FV, food-vacuole. M, mouth. MY, myonemes. N, meganucleus. OG, oral groove. PV, posterior pulsating vacuole, in systole. TR, discharged trichocyst threads. X, cilia.

from Amœba in possessing a definite shape; in the more marked differentiation of ectoplasm and endoplasm; in the presence of cilia and the absence of pseudopodia; in its active locomotion by means of cilia; in the possession of a permanent mouth, enabling us to define dorsal and ventral surfaces; and in having anterior and posterior ends defined by its usual direction of locomotion.

*Paramecium* can be cultivated by following the instructions in the Introduction (Section I.). •

*Put a drop of water containing Paramecia on a slide and mix with a weak solution of gelatin to limit the movements of the animals ; cover, and examine with low and high powers. Make other preparations using (a) diluted Indian ink instead of, or in addition to, the gelatin ; (b) very dilute neutral red ; (c) iodine solution.*

#### A. General Appearance.

The animal has an elongated, somewhat flattened body about 0.25 mm. in length, rounded at its narrow anterior end, and bluntly pointed at the broader posterior end.

It swims actively by means of cilia distributed over its entire surface. Near the middle of the ventral or oral surface is an oblique groove, the vestibule, leading to the mouth.

#### B. Structure.

The two layers, ectoplasm and endoplasm, are much more sharply defined than in *Amœba*.

1. The **ectoplasm** is the comparatively firm outer layer, the elasticity of which preserves the general form of the body. Its deeper part is marked by longitudinal or oblique striations known as **myonemes**, which vary in distinctness with the movements of the animal, and form a contractile system. They are due to differentiation of fibres of the ectoplasm.

a. The **pellicle** is the delicate superficial and stiffer layer, serving as a protective covering for the underlying protoplasm, of which it is the differentiated external layer.

b. The **cilia** are very numerous delicate vibratile filaments arising from the layer of ectoplasm immediately beneath the cuticle, through which latter they project. In stained sections a **basal granule** can be seen at the point of origin of each cilium. An **undulating membrane** composed of a partially coalesced line of cilia lies in the vestibule and mouth. This serves for the ingestion of food.



- c. The **trichocysts** are minute oval sacs arranged side by side in the deeper part of the ectoplasm, perpendicular to the surface, and in such numbers as to form an obvious layer. When the animal is irritated a stiffish viscous thread can be shot out from each of these trichocysts, to project on the surface beyond the cilia. They normally serve as organs of temporary attachment of the animal to solid objects.
  - d. Two **pulsating vacuoles** are situated in the endoplasm of the dorsal or aboral region, one at about a third of the animal's length from each end. In diastole (*i.e.* when expanded) they are nearly spherical, and fine, slit-like canals can be seen radiating from them; but at the moment of systole, or contraction, these feeding-canals suddenly swell, and, immediately after, discharge their contents into the vacuole, which then itself expands. In an animal placed in Indian ink the clear contents of the vacuole can be seen at systole to be expelled from the body.
  - e. The **oral groove** runs obliquely backwards along the ventral surface from near the anterior end to the gullet.
  - f. The **gullet**, or **œsophagus**, is placed a little behind the middle of the length of the animal. Its cilia are fused to form an undulating membrane, and drive water and food particles into the mouth.
  - g. The **mouth** is an oval aperture in the ectoplasm at the hinder end of the gullet, through which the food passes into the endoplasm.
  - h. The **anus** is an aperture between the mouth and the hinder end of the body. It is visible only at the moment of extrusion of faecal matter.
2. The **endoplasm** is the more fluid granular protoplasm forming the inner portion of the body. In an

iodine preparation it is stained brown owing to the presence of glycogen.

- a. The **food-vacuoles** are spherical spaces in the endoplasm filled with water containing food-particles. In a neutral red solution these vacuoles are cherry-coloured owing to their acid contents.
- b. The **circulation of the endoplasm** is rendered obvious by the food-vacuoles and the granules, which are carried round in a definite direction.

These points can best be made out in ink-fed specimens.

- c. The **meganucleus** is an elongated ovoid body near the centre of the body.
- d. The **micronucleus** is a much smaller body applied to one side of the meganucleus, and of an entirely different character. (In some species there are two micronuclei.)

C. **Reproduction** occurs by means of **fission**, which is effected in the following manner. Both mega- and micro-nuclei first divide, then a transverse constriction appears on the surface of the animal, and deepens till the body is divided into two, each having a portion of the original meganucleus and micronucleus, and each becoming a perfect Paramecium.

D. **Conjugation** is not a mode of reproduction, but is generally closely followed by it. Two Paramecia, called *conjugants*, become united by their ventral surfaces, and, after swimming about together for some time, separate and become independent again.

Before the union a multiplication of micronuclei occurs. During the union there is an exchange of half the micronuclei of each animal, the migrating nuclei fusing with the stationary nuclei that await them. The meganuclei of both animals degenerate, and after conjugation new meganuclei are formed from the micronuclei.

*Kill and stain the Paramecia by running a drop of methyl-green in acetic acid under the cover-glass.*

The meganuclei and the discharged trichocysts are well seen in specimens so treated.

*To make permanent preparations of Paramecium, concentrate a rich culture by centrifuging it gently in a specimen-tube, pipetting off the clear fluid, and adding a fixative. Staining and clearing are then carried out in the tube. The micronuclei cannot be studied well except in sections.*

#### E. Encystation.

Paramecium under adverse conditions secretes a kidney-shaped cyst around itself. This is however a resting cyst only.

### III. OPALINA.

Opalina is one of many diverse kinds of protozoa usually found living in large numbers in the large intestine of the frog. From its large size and the ease and certainty with which it can be obtained, it is a very convenient form for examination.

*Slit up the large intestine of a freshly pithed frog; remove the contents and dilute them with salt-solution (0.75 per cent.). Examine a drop of the mixture microscopically.*

#### A. General Appearance.

Opalina is a flattened, asymmetrically oval body, about 0.5 mm. long, covered with cilia, by means of which it swims actively. It has neither mouth nor anus.

#### B. Structure.

1. The ectoplasm is thinner than in Paramecium. There are no pulsating vacuoles, and no trichocysts.
  - a. The pellicle, if present at all, is exceedingly thin.
  - b. The cilia are of equal size over the whole surface.
  - c. Myoneme striations are very obvious: they are mainly longitudinal. Note the active contortions of the animals.
2. The endoplasm contains no food-vacuoles, owing to the fluid nature of the food; this also accounts for the

absence of a mouth, the nutriment being absorbed by the whole surface of the body.

The nuclei are numerous.

### C. Reproduction.

This is effected during spring and summer by oblique or transverse fission.

*Make a thin smear of the rectal contents of the frog on a coverslip, drop it on to the surface of some sublimate-acetic fixative (see p. 492) in a watch-glass. Stain in hæmatoxylin or borax-carminé, clear, and mount.*

### D. Life-history.

In late summer very small opalinæ have been observed to become encysted, and in this state they leave the frog and are subsequently swallowed by tadpoles. From the cysts minute forms emerge, multiply, and form gametes. These fuse in pairs, and the zygotes so produced become encysted and subsequently develop into multinucleate forms.

## IV. NYCTOTHERUS AND BALANTIDIUM.

In preparations of the rectal contents of the frog two other fairly large Ciliates are commonly found—in addition to *Opalina*—which do not show the degeneration (specialisation for a parasitic life) found in that animal.

*Balantidium* is roughly pear-shaped. Its gullet is continued outwards into an oral groove placed asymmetrically at the narrower end of the body. There is a single meganucleus with a micronucleus beside it. In *Nyctotherus* the body is shaped like a flattened bean, its contour being convex along one edge, and straight or slightly concave along the other. The oral groove opens towards the concave side and leads inwards to a long, curved gullet. The meganucleus is somewhat elongated, and there is a single micronucleus.

## V. VORTICELLA.

Vorticella, which is just recognisable with the naked eye, differs from the preceding infusorians in being attached by

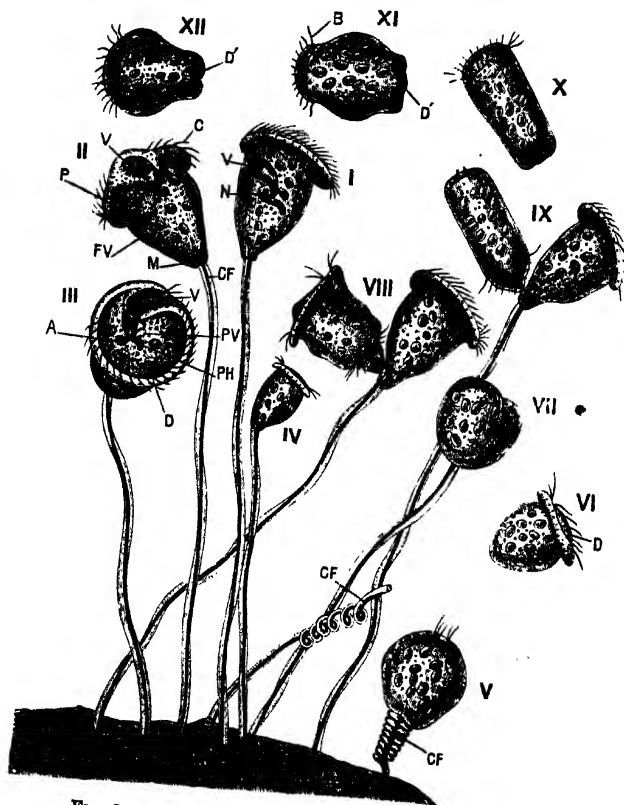


Fig. 10.—A group of Vorticellae :  $\times 200$ . (C. H. H.)

Figs. I, II, and III show the animal in various positions. IV is a much smaller specimen drawn to the same scale. V shows a specimen made to contract by action of alcohol. VI is detached from its stalk, and swimming away freely disc forward. VII, VIII, IX show three stages of fission. X, XI, and XII show the separated individuals swimming by means of the aboral circle of cilia: XI is slightly contracted, XII strongly contracted after the cover-glass has been tapped.

A, Food-vacuole discharging contents at anus. C, cilia of the disc. CF, contractile fibre of stalk. D, disc. D', disc retracted. FV, food-vacuole. PH, pharynx. PV, pulsating vacuole. P, peristome. M, myoneme striation. N, nucleus. V, vestibule.

a contractile stalk to plants or other objects, often to other aquatic animals ; it may, however, under certain conditions, become detached from its stalk and swim freely.

Both freshwater and marine Vorticellids (*i.e.* forms belonging to, or similar to, the genus *Vorticella*) are known. The following description applies more particularly to some of the larger freshwater species, but most of the marine forms closely resemble these.

*Vorticella* may be distinguished from allied genera which are often found with it by its unbranched stalk, and by the spiral form which this assumes on contraction.

*Mount a specimen in a drop of water together with a bit of the weed or other substance to which it is attached. Examine it microscopically.*

#### A. General Appearance.

Vorticella consists of a **body**, somewhat conical in shape in the expanded condition, and with its apex or proximal end prolonged into the slender **stalk** by which the animal is attached.

The distal end of the body, or **disc**, forming the base of the cone, is bordered by a prominent rim, the **peristome**.

The various species of Vorticella differ somewhat in form and proportions from one another.

Vorticella is highly irritable, and when disturbed, as by lightly touching the cover-glass with a needle, it instantly contracts. The peristome is suddenly turned in, concealing the disc and cilia, and at the same moment the stalk is suddenly coiled up into a corkscrew spiral. If the irritation be discontinued, the stalk gradually straightens out, the disc and peristome become everted, and the ciliary movement is resumed.

#### B. Structure.

Vorticella is a protozoon, and the whole of the animal, stalk and all, is comparable to a single Amœba or Paramecium. The entire animal consists of protoplasm, in which, as in Paramecium, a distinction may be made between the outer and firmer layer, or **ectoplasm**, and the central and more fluid mass, or **endoplasm**. The stalk is a prolongation of the ectoplasm only.

## 1. The body.

- a. The pellicle, or outermost layer of the ectoplasm, forms a protective investment to the whole body.
- b. The disc is the distal or free end of the animal: it is slightly convex.
- c. The peristome is the projecting lip or rim surrounding the disc, and separated from it by a circular groove.
- d. The vestibule is a conical pit-like depression between the disc and the peristome: it marks the 'ventral' surface of the animal.
- e. The pharynx is a narrow continuation of the inner end of the vestibule, extending deep into the endoplasm.
- f. The anus is a small opening into the vestibule, visible only at the moment of extrusion of faecal matter.
- g. The cilia are arranged in an incomplete ring round the margin of the disc, in the groove between the disc and peristome: they also line the vestibule and pharynx. They produce a current which runs round the disc in the direction opposite to that of the hands of a watch, then down the vestibule near its ventral surface, and, after a turn in the upper part of the pharynx, up along the dorsal wall of the vestibule to the exterior. There is a long undulating membrane projecting through the external opening. The cilia serve to sweep food particles into the interior of the animal. A circular line near the attached end of the body marks the zone from which the aboral cilia will develop during fission.
- h. Food-vacuoles, enclosing food particles, may often be seen circulating in the endoplasm.
- i. The pulsating vacuole is a spherical cavity, situated between the disc and the vestibule, and opening into the latter. It pulsates rhythmically.

- k. The meganucleus is an elongated, curved rod lying in the endoplasm, about the middle of the body.
  - l. The micronucleus is a minute corpuscle applied to one side of the meganucleus. It can only be demonstrated on well-stained preparations.
  - m. Myonemes are developed in the deeper layer of the ectoplasm, especially at the proximal end of the body, close to the stalk.
2. The stalk.
- a. The pellicle forms a thick covering to the stalk: to its elasticity the straightening of the stalk after contraction is probably due.
  - b. The contractile band running down inside the cuticular sheath of the stalk is continuous above with the deeper, 'myoneme,' layer of the ectoplasm of the body. The spiral shortening of the stalk is due to its contraction. In a specimen in which this band had been broken, it was seen to be drawn up suddenly towards the body at each inversion of the disc, the stalk, however, remaining straight.

### C. Reproduction.

1. Fission. The body becomes broader from side to side, and a constriction appears across its distal surface. This constriction extends downwards till it reaches the base of the cone close to the stalk, dividing the body into halves. Of these, one is like the parent, and remains attached to the stalk. The other, while still attached to the base of the first, develops an aboral circle of cilia near its base, becomes detached, and swims away by means of the aboral cilia. After a time it attaches itself by its base to some submerged object, and forming a stalk by modification of the aboral cilia and elongation of the ectoplasm it becomes a Vorticella similar to the parent. The process of fission may be completed in from one to two hours.



2. **Conjugation** occurs, but it is unlike the conjugation of *Paramecium* in three important points. First, the conjugation is between two dissimilar forms: an ordinary large-stalked form, and a much smaller free-swimming form which has originated by repeated division of a large form. Secondly, the union of the two is a complete and permanent fusion, the smaller being absorbed into the larger. Thirdly, while in *Paramecium* there is a reciprocal exchange of micronuclei, in *Vorticella* each conjugant contributes a single micronucleus, these two nuclei fuse and the subsequent division of the single nucleus so formed gives rise to a micronucleus and a meganucleus as in *Paramecium*.
3. **Encystation** may occur after conjugation, and apparently as the result of it. The disc becomes retracted; the body usually separates from its stalk, becomes spherical, and secretes a cyst around itself.

#### D. Action of Reagents.

*Make preparations in Indian ink, neutral red, and iodine, as in the case of Paramecium (p. 5).*

*Kill some Vorticellæ with methyl-green containing a trace of acetic acid; wash after three minutes with water, and mount in glycerin or balsam.*

The **meganucleus** will be stained and its shape and relations can be well studied.

#### VI. MONOCYSTIS.

Monocystis belongs to a class of Protozoa, the Sporozoa, the distinctive characters of which are an exclusively parasitic mode of life, the absence of a digestive tract, multiplication by resistant spores provided with a thick coat, and the absence of specialised organs of locomotion. Monocystis is a common parasite of the earthworm. It occurs in the vesiculæ seminales and also in the hinder region of the coelom, where its spores form masses visible to the naked eye. The attacks of such

large numbers of parasites weaken the reproductive system of the worm, its host, and in consequence reduce both the

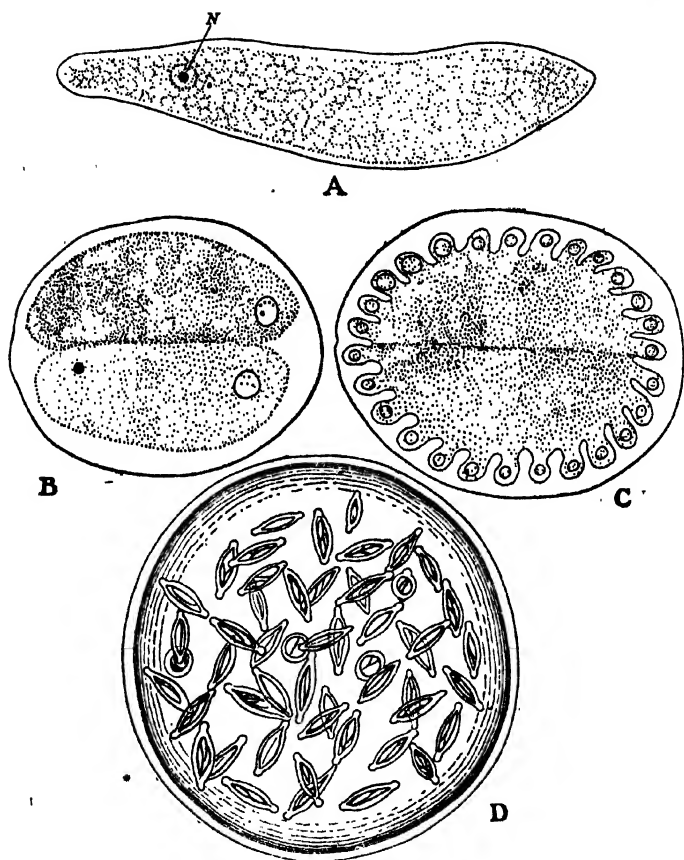


FIG. 11.—*Monocystis*.

A, a free trophozoite of *Monocystis*. N, nucleus. B, two gametocytes in a common cyst. C, breaking up into gametes. D, after conjugation: formation of spores. (A, after Bourne. B & D, after Minchin.) X 35.

size and fertility of the seminal vesicles. Several species of *Monocystis* are found in the earthworm.

*Make a cover-glass preparation of the contents of a vesicula seminalis taken from an infected worm, according to the method described on p. 84. Search the preparation for the free and encysted Monocystis.*

#### A. Structure of the Trophozoite.

The stage in the life-history of Monocystis, during which it lives and grows at the expense of its host, is an almost purely nutritive period, and the parasite at this time is therefore called a trophozoite.

The trophozoite is an elongate, fusiform organism, varying much in length according to age. At the earliest stage it inhabits the central protoplasmic mass or blastophore about which the developing spermatocytes of the worm are aggregated, and in consequence the parasite may often be found covered with hair-like structures, which in some species are the adhering spermatids, but are hair-like outgrowths of the pellicle in others. The trophozoite consists of granular protoplasm enclosed in a pellicle, and is capable of slight movement, the nature of which is not understood. There is a single nucleus. A mouth is absent, nutrition being effected by osmosis of the fluid contained in the vesicula seminalis through any part of the cuticle.

#### B. Reproduction.

When the trophozoite is full grown it becomes a gametocyte and passes through a series of changes that convert its protoplasm into spores. The changes may be defined as (1) enclosure of two gametocytes within a cyst; (2) formation and fusion of gametes or reproductive cells produced by the division of each gametocyte; (3) the formation of spore-coats round the fused gametes.

Two gametocytes come together and form a common enclosing membrane. The nucleus of each cell divides and subdivides into a great number of small nuclei, which then travel to the surface of

each gametocyte, where they become surrounded by a portion of the originally continuous protoplasm and form the gametes or germ-cells. So far the events in each gametocyte have gone on independently of those in the other.

Now, however, conjugation of the gametes of one gametocyte with those of the other takes place. How the movement of the gametes is performed we do not know. The nuclei and protoplasm of gametes having fused in pairs, of different origin and of slightly different character, a coat is formed about the fused mass or *zygote*, and within this spore-coat the zygote divides three times, producing eight sporozoites. The elongated spore-coat with its contained sporozoites is called a *pseudonavicella*. As all these events take place in the cyst formed about the two gametocytes, a very large number of spores are enclosed in such a sphere. Hence the term 'Monocystis.'

*The spore-coat is so resistant to the passage of reagents that the sporozoites can only be satisfactorily stained after this envelope has been ruptured in the process of making sections.*

*Examine prepared sections of a seminal vesicle containing many Monocystis.*

The fate of these spores, each containing eight sporozoites, is uncertain. They are probably eaten together with the worm, by thrushes and other birds, scattered over the ground with the faeces and washed into the soil, whence they are again taken up by earthworms. In the worm the spore-coat is probably digested, releasing the sporozoites, which then migrate into the vesiculæ and become trophozoites.

## VII. TRYPANOSOMA.

Trypanosomes ('Boring-bodies') are Protozoa living in the blood or other fluids of animals and of man. Though these

parasites have great economic importance on account of the diseases they produce in man and in domestic animals, disease of the host does not necessarily, or even generally, accompany the presence of Trypanosomes.

There are many kinds of Trypanosomes; one form is common in the blood of the rat, one of the largest is found in the blood of the dog-fish, and another closely similar form occurs in the skate. The following description applies to any of these. The anatomy of Trypanosomes can be studied satisfactorily only by employing the highest powers of the microscope upon very good preparations. Their detailed study is not recommended to beginners.

*Examine, under an oil-immersion objective, stained smears of the blood of a dog-fish, skate, or rat infected with Trypanosomes. (For the method of making such smears, see Appendix, p. 495.)*

#### A. General Appearance and Structure.

- a. The body is much elongated, with pointed ends. In stained preparations it is generally bent into a curve or spiral. Neither mouth nor contractile vacuole is present, and there is no sharp distinction between endoplasm and ectoplasm.
- b. A long flagellum arises near one end of the animal, bends sharply back, following a wavy course roughly parallel with the body, to which it is attached by the thin, transparent undulating membrane.
- c. The nucleus ('trophonucleus') is a fairly large, lens-shaped mass placed near the middle of the body. In addition to this (and also staining with nuclear stains), a minute basal granule, or blepharoplast, lies at the base of the flagellum, and, near by, another somewhat larger body, the parabasal ('kinetonucleus').

#### B. Reproduction.

Longitudinal fission is the only means of reproduction that is known to occur. It begins at the basal end of the flagellum.

•

**C. Life-history.**

Trypanosomes are usually carried from one host to another by an invertebrate that sucks the blood of the infected host and then, after cultivating the parasite for a time in its own body, infects the new host by its bite or in other ways. In the case of fish-Trypanosomes the carrier is a leech; in the case of the rat-Trypanosome it is the rat-flea.

## CHAPTER II.

## HYDRA.

HYDRA is a small freshwater animal, abundant in ponds and ditches and in slowly moving streams.

It consists of a tubular body, about a quarter of an inch in length, one end of which is closed, while the opposite end is open and forms the mouth, a short distance below which is a circle of tentacles, usually six to eight in number.

Both the tentacles and the body are extremely contractile. The former, when the animal is disturbed, can be almost completely withdrawn, and the latter may shrink up so as to become a mere knob.

Hydra is usually attached by its closed basal end or foot to water-weeds or other bodies. By contractions of the foot it can crawl along slowly, and it can also progress more rapidly by fixing itself alternately by the mouth and foot, arching the body with a looping movement like a caterpillar. It is carnivorous, and by means of the nematocysts with which its tentacles are studded can paralyse and kill active animals as big as itself.

Hydra receives its name from its remarkable power of recovery from injury. A specimen may be cut into two or more pieces, either transversely or longitudinally, and each fragment will not only survive, but within a short time will become a complete Hydra. The entire animal may even be regenerated from a single tentacle.

At least three species of Hydra are described as occurring commonly in this country. Of these *H. viridis* is distinguished by its green colour and its smaller size, *H. fusca* is brown in colour, and *H. vulgaris* almost colourless.

It is uncertain, however, how far these species are really distinct from one another, and the following description will apply to any of them.

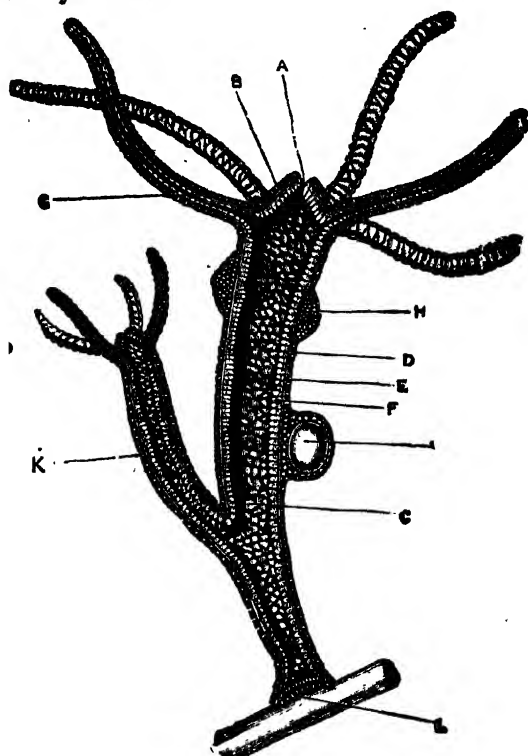


FIG. 12.—Hydra. A diagrammatic longitudinal section of a specimen with ripe reproductive organs, and with a fully formed bud:  $\times 12$ . (A. M. M.)

A, mouth. B, hypostome. C, enteron or digestive cavity. D, ectoderm. E, supporting lamella. F, endoderm. G, cavity of one of the tentacles. H, testis. I, ripe ovum in the ovary. K, fully formed bud, with mouth and tentacles. L, foot, by which the Hydra is attached to a piece of weed.

## I. EXAMINATION OF A LIVING SPECIMEN

*Cut off a small piece of weed with a Hydra attached to it, and examine first in a watch-glass with a hand-lens or under the*



1-inch objective of a microscope; then place the animal on a slide in a drop of water, and put a cover-glass over it. If the Hydra is detached or fixed to the side of the tank, take it up with a dipping tube, and place it on a slide in a drop of water, with a small piece of weed for the animal to attach itself to, and to protect it from pressure. Cover as before.

### A. General Appearance.

Leave the slide until the Hydra has fully expanded, and then examine it with a low power.

1. The **body** is tubular: its cavity, the **cœlenteron**, opens to the exterior at the mouth, and serves as the digestive cavity of the animal.

The shape of the body varies very greatly according to the degree of elongation or contraction. It is usually more slender in its proximal or basal half than in the distal portion, but when fully extended is of nearly uniform diameter throughout. It is often distended locally by food.

- a. The **foot** is the closed proximal end of the body which forms a disc for attachment to water-weeds, etc.
  - b. The **mouth** is a small aperture at the free or distal end of the body. It can be greatly dilated, so as to allow the entrance of food masses of considerable size.
  - c. The **hypostome** is the conical part of the body above the tentacles, with the mouth at its summit.
2. The **tentacles** are hollow processes of the body-wall, usually six to eight in number, and arranged in a single whorl round the base of the hypostome, which is the widest part of the body. Their cavities open into the general digestive cavity of the animal.

The tentacles, which have a warty appearance, are extremely contractile. When fully extended they are two or three times the length of the body; when fully contracted they are scarcely visible.

They are capable of free and active movement, and are used for capturing and paralysing the prey, which they then, by their contraction, transfer to the mouth.

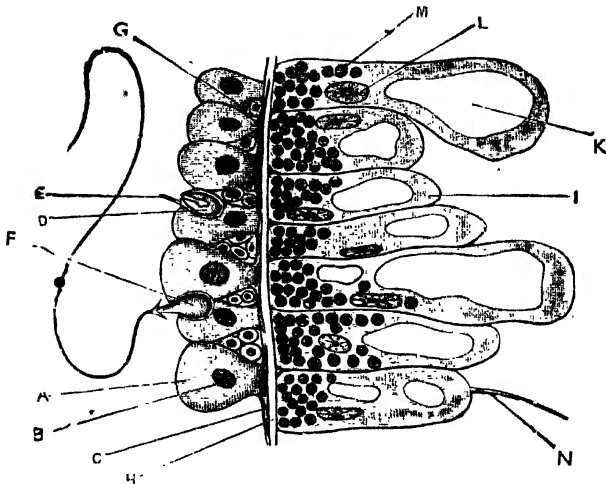


FIG. 13.—*Hydra viridis*. A small portion of a longitudinal section through the body-wall:  $\times 800$ . (A. M. M.)

A, one of the large ectoderm cells. B, nucleus of a large ectoderm cell. C, muscular tail of a large ectoderm cell. D, an undischarged nematocyst lying within its parent cell, or cnidoblast. E, cnidocil. F, a nematocyst with discharged thread. G, interstitial cell. H, supporting lamella. I, endoderm cell. K, vacuole of endoderm cell. L, nucleus of endoderm cell. M, green cells. N, flagellum of endoderm cell.

## B. Structure.

### 1. Structure of the body-wall.

*Examine the body-wall more closely with the low power, and note its division into layers.*

- a. The ectoderm is the outermost layer of the body. It is colourless, and forms about a third of the entire thickness of the wall.
- b. The endoderm is the inner layer, lining the digestive cavity, and forming about two-thirds of the

thickness of the body-wall. It is coloured green or brown according to the species of Hydra examined.

- a. The supporting lamella, or mesogloea, is a very thin gelatinous layer between the ectoderm and the endoderm, hardly visible with the low power.

## 2. Structure of the tentacles.

*Examine one of the tentacles with a high power, and note its division into layers corresponding to those of the body-wall. Examine (1) the middle of the breadth of the tentacle, altering the focus so as to bring the several layers into view in turn; and (2) the edge of the tentacle, where by proper adjustment of the focus a profile view of the cells can be obtained.*

- a. The ectoderm is a cellular layer made up as follows :

- i. The large ectoderm cells form a single layer, covering the whole surface of both the tentacles and the body. They are somewhat conical in shape. Their outer ends are closely fitted together, forming a mosaic pattern very clearly visible in surface views of the tentacle. Their inner ends, which rest directly on the supporting lamella, are narrower, and separated from one another by intervals of varying extent: these inner ends are produced into slender muscular processes or 'tails,' which lie parallel to the long axis of the tentacle, and closely applied to, or imbedded in, the lamella.

The shape of these large ectoderm cells varies very greatly with elongation and contraction of the tentacle. When contracted they are widened transversely, and their outlines are very distinct; when elongated their length considerably exceeds their width.

- ii. The interstitial cells are small rounded cells placed

in little clusters between the inner or basal ends of the large ectoderm cells.

- iii. The **nematocysts** or 'thread cells' are sharply defined oval capsules, filled with fluid and enclosing a long hollow spirally wound filament, formed by doubling in of the wall of the capsule at one pole. They develop within certain of the interstitial cells called **cnidoblasts**, and lie, when mature, in and between the large ectoderm cells, causing marked projections on the surface.

The **cnidoblast**, or cell within which the **nematocyst** is developed, persists as an enveloping capsule, and is produced at its outer or free surface into a small process, the **cnidocil**.

The **nematocysts** can be discharged or exploded, the contained hollow filament being shot out with great force and velocity. In this process of discharge, which is brought about by contraction of the cell in which the **nematocyst** lies, the basal part of the thread is discharged first, and, being provided with barbs, of which there are three principal and several smaller ones, fixes itself at once upon the body against which the thread is shot, and into which the remainder of the filament is then propelled.

The discharge of these filaments appears to be under the control of the *Hydra*: they exert a marked numbing or paralysing influence on animals into which they are shot, and are the means by which the *Hydra* captures its prey. A **nematocyst** once discharged cannot be used again, and is cast off.

There are three kinds of **nematocysts**: the large barbed kind; a smaller kind without barbs, especially abundant on the tentacles and used for entangling the prey; and a third kind, used for temporary attachment.

**Nematocysts** of both the larger and the

smaller kinds occur in the body-wall, though less abundantly than in the tentacles.

- iv. The **nerve-cells**. Certain small stellate cells found in the ectoderm are described as nerve-cells. A connection between them and the cells enclosing the nematocysts has been traced, and it is possible that they are concerned in the discharge of the latter.

- b. The **endoderm** consists of a single layer of large granular and vacuolated cells lining the cavity of the tentacle. Many of these bear **flagella**.

*Focus the middle of the thickness of the tentacle ; note the flagella of the endoderm cells, and the stream of nutrient particles up and down the cavity of the tentacle.*

- c. The **supporting lamella** is the thin gelatinous layer between the ectoderm and the endoderm.

*Focus the side of the tentacle at the middle of its thickness, and the supporting lamella will be seen as a thin transparent layer between the ectoderm and the endoderm.*

*Sharply tap the microscope so as to cause the Hydra to retract its tentacles.*

In the contracted condition of the tentacle the ectoderm and endoderm are both strongly wrinkled transversely, but the supporting lamella is not. This shows that contractility is specially associated with the supporting lamella ; the real contracting elements are the muscular ' tails ' of the ectoderm cells applied to or imbedded in its substance.

- d. **Discharge of the nematocysts.**

*Focus one of the tentacles with the high power ; then place a drop of acetic acid on the slide, and allow it to run under the cover-glass.*

As the reagent reaches the tentacles these will be retracted, and their nematocysts discharged in consequence of the irritation. Some

of the nematocysts will remain in the ectoderm with their threads projecting freely ; others will separate completely.

*Examine, and draw the nematocysts, showing their shape, the threads with their enlarged basal portions, and the barbs.*

*Search for specimens with partially discharged threads ; and note that the threads are turned inside out in the process of discharge.*

### C. Reproduction.

Hydra reproduces asexually and sexually.

#### 1. Asexual reproduction.

- a. **Gemmation** or budding consists in the formation of a hollow outgrowth from the side of the body, which acquires a mouth and tentacles at its distal end, and ultimately constricts at its base, separates from the parent, and becomes an independent animal.

The rate of budding depends largely on the supply of food and on temperature. If a rapidly budding Hydra be transferred to water in which there is little or no food to be obtained, the formation of the buds will be stopped, and buds already formed may even be absorbed.

A single Hydra may give rise to more than one bud at once, and these may develop secondary buds before separating from the parent animal. In this way temporary colonies may be formed, which, however, sooner or later break down into their component units.

- b. **Fission.** A Hydra may be cut in two, and each part will live and become a perfect animal. The process of fission is, however, very rare.

#### 2. Sexual reproduction.

Hydra may be of separate sex but is often hermaphrodite, the same animal having both testes and ovaries. Contrary to the rule among herma-

phrodite animals, the reproductive organs are extremely simple in structure, and the animals are said to be capable of fertilising their own ova.

- a. The testes are conical or spherical swellings of the body-wall, varying in number from one or two to twenty. They are usually situated near the oral or distal end of the body, not far below the tentacles; but when numerous they may extend along the greater part of the length of the body. Each testis is formed by local proliferation of the interstitial cells of the ectoderm, giving rise to small conical heaps, which project externally and are covered on their outer surfaces by capsules formed from the large ectoderm cells.

The interstitial cells, after repeated divisions, become converted into spermatozoa by modification of their nuclei to form the heads, and elongation of their protoplasm to form the long swimming tails. When fully formed they are discharged by rupture of the capsule at its most prominent point.

Select a *Hydra* in which the testes are large; put it into a drop of water on a slide; cover it; and, by gentle pressure on the cover-glass, rupture one of the testes, and so discharge the spermatozoa. Examine with a high power.

The spermatozoa are filiform bodies about 0.005 mm. in length. Each consists of a small ovoid highly refractive head, containing the nucleus, and a long active thread-like tail.

- b. The ovaries usually develop a little later than the testes. In *Hydra viridis* there is seldom more than a single ovary present at a time, but in the brown species there may be as many as eight. They form, when ripe, spherical projections of the body-wall considerably larger than the testes, and situated as a rule nearer the basal end of the animal. In each ovary only a single ovum

is produced. The ovary is formed, like the testis, by multiplication of the interstitial cells to form a small swelling; one of these cells, near the centre of the heap, soon becomes larger than the rest and becomes the **ovum**. This grows rapidly at the expense of the interstitial cells of the ovary, which form a capsule around it and supply it with nutriment. The ovum is at first amœboid, so as to come into contact with a large number of the nutrient cells. When it has reached its full size it becomes spherical or ovoid; the capsule then thins away and ruptures at its summit, and, shrinking back, leaves the outer half of the ovum exposed to the water, and ready to receive the spermatozoa.

After fertilisation the ovum segments, forms a hard capsule around itself, becomes detached from the parent, and, falling to the bottom of the tank or pond in which the animal is living, develops after a time into a young Hydra.

## II. EXAMINATION OF PREPARED SPECIMENS.

### A. Disintegrated Specimens.

*Kill a Hydra with 1 per cent. acetic acid and a trace of osmic acid. Leave it for five minutes, and then examine in water under a cover-slip, which should be moved about gently to disintegrate the animal.*

The cells are loosened from one another, and may now be examined separately.

#### 1. The ectoderm cells.

- a. The large ectoderm cells will be found isolated in various parts of the preparation. They are somewhat conical in shape, their outer ends being broad and containing the large nuclei. Their inner ends are much narrower, and are produced into slender muscular processes or tails. These tails lie on the outer surface of the supporting



lamella, and partially imbedded in its substance. Their direction is mainly longitudinal, i.e. parallel to the long axis of the animal, and it is probably on them that the contractility of the animal (p. 20) depends.

- b. The **interstitial cells** are much smaller, and usually remain in small clusters. Within some of them the early stages of development of the nematocysts may be seen.
  - c. The **nematocysts**. In specimens killed with acetic acid, nematocysts are frequently met with in which the thread is only partially protruded, and in which the relations of the capsule to the thread can be easily determined.
  - d. The **nerve-cells**. The small stellate cells supposed to be nerve-cells may sometimes be seen. They are better seen in specimens treated with methylene blue.
2. The **supporting lamella** may be seen in teased preparations in the form of transparent shreds or sheets of greater or less extent, on the outer surface of which a distinct longitudinal striation is present, caused by the muscular tails of the large ectoderm cells.
- On the inner surface of this lamella transverse fibres occur, which appear to be connected with the endoderm cells, and are probably muscular in function.
3. The **endoderm cells** are very variable in shape, and during life some of them are amoeboid. Each commonly contains one or more non-contractile vacuoles, which may be so large as to reduce the protoplasm of the cell to a very thin peripheral lamella. The outer end of each cell contains in *Hydra viridis* a number of small cells coated with chlorophyll, to which the green colour of the animal is due. In the brown species of *Hydra* similar bodies are present, but devoid of chlorophyll.

The endoderm cells may also contain, in addition to particles of food, little clusters of brown or black granules, probably formed by breaking down of the chlorophyll grains. The flagella are seldom preserved in teased specimens.

## B. Transverse Sections.

*Examine a series of transverse sections through the body of Hydra. To prepare these, kill the animal in the expanded condition by suddenly flooding it with warm fixative in a watch-glass; wash, dehydrate, imbed in paraffin, and cut it into thin sections with a microtome.*

### 1. The ectoderm.

- a. The large ectoderm cells are well seen in such sections; their muscular tails, which are mainly longitudinal in direction, are cut transversely, and appear as a row of highly refractive dots on the outer surface of the supporting lamella.

At the basal end or foot of the Hydra the ectoderm cells are more columnar in shape, contain longitudinal rows of granules, and are probably glandular.

On the outer surface of the ectoderm cells there is a thin cuticular layer, more obvious in the brown than in the green Hydra.

- b. The interstitial cells are well seen in sections through the body or tentacles, but are absent in the foot.
- c. The nematocysts are very abundant in the tentacles, less numerous in the body, and absent in the foot. In specimens killed with osmic acid, few if any of them will be discharged.
- d. The testis or ovary may be cut across, and should be looked for. The testis stains heavily with nuclear stains.

2. The **supporting lamella** is seen in transverse sections as a very thin transparent layer between the ectoderm and the endoderm.
3. The **endoderm cells** differ greatly in shape in different parts of the body and at different times. During life some are amœboid, and their processes may extend so far as to almost obliterate the cavity of the animal. Others contain glandular secretions which are used for the digestion of food in the coelenteron. The nucleus is usually nearer the outer or basal end, and is flattened in shape. The flagella can very seldom be seen in sections.

In the foot the endoderm cells are much smaller than in the body, and form a layer of short columnar or almost cubical cells containing many granules.

## OBELIA.

**Obelia** is a delicate semi-transparent organism consisting of a branching stem rising an inch or so from a root-like stolon. The stem is bent in a zigzag fashion, each angle supporting a polyp or **hydranth** comparable to a *Hydra*. If the buds of *Hydra* remained in contact we should have an organism not unlike *Obelia*.

*Obelia* is, however, marine. It lives fixed to the fronds of seaweed, the shells of lobsters, and the surface of wood-work immersed in the sea. Its food consists of the minute animals and plants that abound in sea-water.

### A. Structure of the Hydroid.

The structure of an *Obelia*-hydroid is very similar to that of *Hydra*. Each polyp consists of a digestive cavity and a capacious mouth surrounded by a circle of tentacles that rise at the base of the lips. Adjacent polyps are united by the central stem. The outer ectoderm of the mouth, digestive cavity, and tentacles is lined by an inner endoderm

layer, but the latter forms a solid strand of cells down each tentacle. The nematocysts are extremely

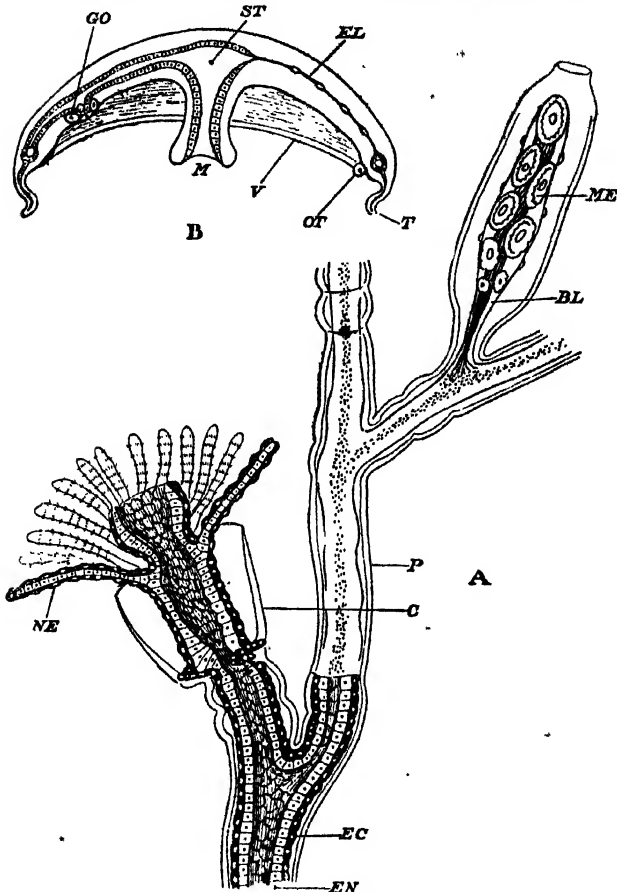


FIG. 14.—Obelia.

A, a small portion of the hydroid colony. B, a free medusa in vertical section.

BL, blastostyle. C, calyx. EC, ectoderm. EL, endoderm-lamella. EN, endoderm. GO, gonads. ME, medusa. M, mouth of manubrium. NE, nematocysts on the tentacles. OT, otocyst. P, perisarc. ST, stomach. T, tentacles. V, velum. (Partly after Shipley and McBride.) A,  $\times 50$ . B,  $\times 12$ .

small, and not associated in distinct batteries, and are all of one kind. Moreover, the cuticle, so extremely delicate in *Hydra*, is thickened in *Obelia* to form a protective coat, the *perisarc*, which expands as a chalice about each polyp.

*Obelia* is easily found on the fronds of seaweed (see Introduction, Section I). To fix colonies use corrosive sublimate and acetic acid after narcotizing with alcohol; stain with carmine and mount in balsam.

In the axil or angle between the polyp and the stem, shoots of a kind differing in many respects from the ordinary polyps will be found. These are the *blastostyles*, or genital sacs, and differ from the hydroid polyps in having neither mouth nor tentacles, and in giving rise to buds that acquire mouth, tentacles, swimming-bell, and reproductive organs. These buds are jelly-fish or *medusæ*.

### B. Structure of a Medusa.

An *Obelia*-medusa consists of a very shallow bell, with the clapper hanging down from its centre. The clapper is a greatly elongated throat or *manubrium*, opening at its lower end by the mouth, and leading at its upper end into four radial canals that run to the margin of the umbrella, and are there connected by a circular canal.

The bell consists of a gelatinous disc provided with marginal circular muscles by which the pulsating movements of the medusa are performed. Along the edge of the bell, tentacles are distributed and eight *otocysts* are found, two in each quadrant, at equal distances from one another. These organs of balance probably subserve the functions of rendering *Obelia* sensitive to water movement.

Along the radial canals four patches of germ-cells, either male or female, are found.

*Obelia-medusæ* can be obtained by keeping ripe *Obelia-hydroids* in a dim light for a few days. Frequently also they are taken in the tow-net (see Introduction, I, B).

They may be fixed with weak (4 per cent.) formaldehyde, or with Flemming's mixture. To dehydrate, transfer to absolute alcohol very gradually, using many intermediate strengths of spirit.

### C. Development.

The fertilised egg of *Obelia* gives rise to an egg-shaped ciliated body, or **planula**, composed of an outer and an inner layer of cells. This settles down, acquires a mouth and tentacles, and by budding establishes the hydroid. Some of the buds feed; others have no mouth, and bud off medusæ. The entire product of the development of the egg comprises the hydroid 'colony' and its medusæ, and to this the term individual is conveniently given. The new individuals so produced from the eggs of the medusæ of a colony obviously form a new generation. There is, therefore, no 'alternation' of hydroid and medusoid 'generations' as is often maintained. The medusa is a specialised bud or organ of reproduction, and might be compared with the flower of a plant—if we could imagine a flower to detach itself and to disseminate its seeds by active or passive movements.

## CHAPTER III.

### THE LIVER-FLUKE OF THE SHEEP.

#### *Fasciola (Distomum) hepatica.*

THE adult liver-fluke is a flat unsegmented worm and belongs to the class **Trematoda**. It is about an inch and a half long, and lives in the bile-ducts of certain domestic animals—notably in those of the sheep, in which it gives rise to the destructive disease known as liver-rot. It very rarely occurs in man.

The animal is hermaphrodite, and its eggs, which have thick chitinous shells, are deposited in enormous numbers in the bile-ducts of the sheep or other host, from which they pass into the alimentary canal, ultimately escaping with the fæces. From these fertilised eggs, if deposited in damp places or in water, larvæ are produced which lead a free existence for a short time, but very soon become parasitic within the body of *Limnæa truncatula*, an amphibious snail. Two or more generations produced by development of unfertilised ova now succeed: and the last of these encyst on grass. These encysted forms are swallowed with the grass by sheep, and passing into their bile-ducts become the adult sexually mature flukes.

*For methods of obtaining allied flukes from the Frog, see the Introduction (Section I).*

#### I. THE MATURE LIVER-FLUKE.

*Slit open the bile-ducts in the liver of an infected sheep, and transfer the living flukes to a dish of warm salt-solution (0.9 per cent.) to clean them.*

1. *Inject the excretory system of one fluke, and the alimentary canal of another, with a thin injection, such as freshly precipitated Prussian blue, suspended in water. Inject the coloured fluid, by means of a very fine pipette, into the hinder end of the*

*animal—in the middle line for the excretory system, and about 1 mm. to one side of it for the alimentary canal. Place the animals between glass slips, and tie the slips together with cotton. Put the slips with the animals between them into alcohol (90 per cent.) for twelve hours or more, when the specimens may be dehydrated, cleared, and mounted in balsam. (Animals which have been dehydrated and cleared in xylol, and which are then allowed to become dry on the surface, will sometimes become naturally injected with air, which demonstrates well the excretory system.)*

2. *Squeeze a specimen somewhat more tightly between two glass slides, and leave it in sublimate acetic mixture (see Appendix) for five or six hours. Wash well with 50 per cent., 70 per cent., 80 per cent. alcohol for about two days. Pass gradually down to water, and stain with weak hæmalum for twelve hours. Wash for the same length of time in 1 per cent. alum solution. Then pass gradually through water, 50 per cent., 70 per cent., 90 per cent., to absolute alcohol (two hours). Clear in cedar-wood oil, and mount in balsam.*

#### A. External Characters.

1. In **form** the animal is flat and oval with a blunt triangular projection forming its anterior end. Its length is about an inch and a half, its breadth about half an inch.
2. The **mouth** is an oval aperture at the anterior end, in the middle of the cup-shaped **anterior sucker**.
3. The **ventral sucker** is a muscular cup in the mid-ventral line, near the junction of the triangular anterior portion with the broader part of the body.
4. The **genital aperture**, through which the penis may be protruded, is on the ventral surface between the two suckers, and slightly nearer the posterior one.
5. The **cuticle** is a thin layer covering the whole animal. Its surface is covered with minute backwardly directed, pointed **scales**, which are best seen in a specimen kept in spirit and dried at the moment of examination.



## THE LIVER-FLUKE.

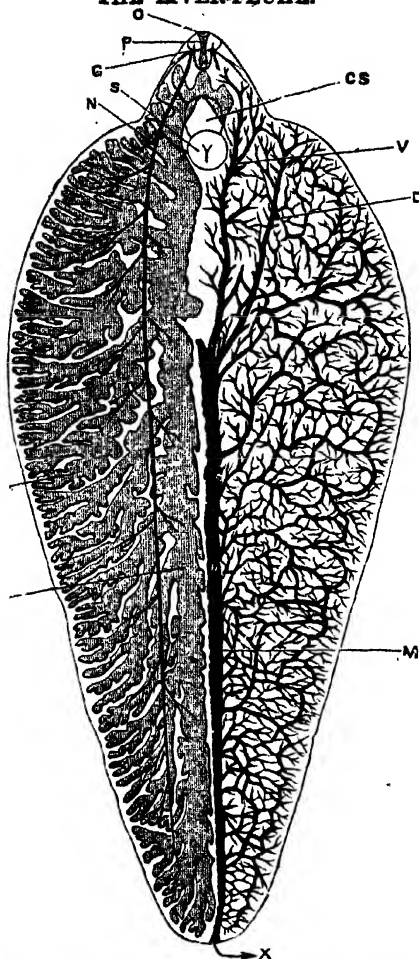


FIG. 15.—*Fasciola hepatica* from the ventral surface:  $\times 4$ .

(After Sommer.)

The alimentary and nervous systems only are shown on the left side of the figure, the excretory system alone on the right side of the figure.

A, right main division of the alimentary canal. C, one of its diverticula. CS, cirrus-sac. D, left anterior dorsal trunk of excretory system. G, lateral ganglion. M, main trunk of excretory system. N, lateral nerve. O, mouth. P, pharynx. S, ventral sucker. V, left anterior ventral trunk of excretory system. X, excretory pore.

**B. The Alimentary Canal.**

1. The **pharynx** is an ovoid muscular mass immediately behind the mouth.
2. The **oesophagus** is a very short straight thin-walled tube behind the pharynx.
3. The **intestine**, into which the oesophagus opens just in front of the genital aperture, divides immediately into a right and a left limb, each of which runs to the hinder end of the body, giving off numerous small cæca on its inner side, and many large branched ones on its outer side; the whole intestine forming a series of cæcal tubes ramifying all over the body without anastomoses.

**C. The Excretory System.**

This is difficult to see except in injected specimens. It consists of a network of minute and much-branched ducts, with slightly dilated inner ends into which project long flame-shaped cilia. The small ducts freely anastomose with one another, and open into larger transverse ducts, which in turn open into the main duct.

The **main duct** is a medium tube of considerable size, formed by the union of four **anterior ducts**, a dorsal and a ventral on each side, at about a quarter of the animal's length from the anterior end: from this point the main duct runs directly backwards to open to the exterior by a terminal median pore.

**D. The Reproductive System.**

This is complicated, as in most hermaphrodite animals.

**1. The male organs.**

- a. The **testes** are much-branched tubes, lying in the middle part of the body, and extending over about half its length and half its width. The two testes are about equal in extent, one lying behind the other.

- b. The vasa deferentiâ are two in number, one arising near the middle of each testis. They run forwards as far as the ventral sucker, where they open into the vesicula seminalis.

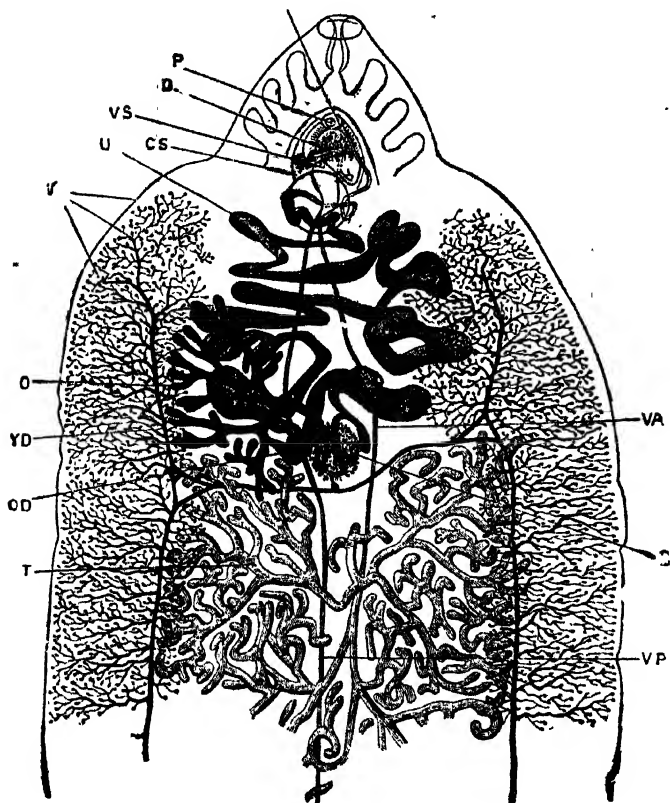


FIG. 16.—*Fasciola hepatica*. Reproductive organs, from the ventral surface:  $\times 6$ . (After Sommer.)

CS, cirrus-sac. D, ductus ejaculatorius. F, aperture of the oviduct. O, ovary. OD, ovarian duct. P, penis. S, shell-gland. T, anterior testis. U, uterus. VA, vas deferens from anterior testis. VP, vas deferens from posterior testis. VS, vesicula seminalis. Y, yolk-gland. YD, duct of yolk-gland.

- c. The **vesicula seminalis** is an elongated sac lying above, and somewhat in front of, the ventral sucker.
  - d. The **ductus ejaculatorius** is a fine tube running from the **vesicula seminalis** to the end of the penis. When the penis is withdrawn this duct is thrown into convolutions.
  - e. The **penis** or 'cirrus' is a large muscular organ which lies, when withdrawn, within the **cirrus-sac**, a space in front of the ventral sucker. It can be protruded by evagination, and the ejaculatory duct then lies within it.
  - f. The **cirrus-sac** is a cavity between the ventral sucker and the genital aperture. The penis lies in it when withdrawn, as do also the **vesicula seminalis** and a small accessory gland which surrounds the ejaculatory duct.
2. The female organs.
- a. The **ovary** is branched and tubular: it lies on the right, or rarely on the left side in front of the anterior testis, and its branches unite to form the narrow **ovarian duct**.
  - b. The **yolk-glands** are very numerous small rounded masses, scattered along two areas extending along the sides of the body from end to end, and each nearly one quarter of the whole width of the animal.
  - c. The **vitellarian ducts**, or ducts of the yolk-glands, unite to form an anterior and a posterior duct on each side. These unite about the junction of the anterior and middle thirds of the animal, forming a transverse duct, which runs inwards to open into the median **yolk-reservoir**: from this a single **median vitellarian duct** runs a short distance forwards and unites with the ovarian duct to form the **oviduct**.
- Close to the junction is the opening of a short

duct, the vagina or 'canal of Laurer,' which opens externally in the middle line on the dorsal surface.

- d. The shell-gland is a median glandular mass, really an aggregate of unicellular glands, surrounding the junction of the ovarian and median vitellarian ducts.
- e. The oviduct, or 'uterus,' is a wide, much-convoluted tube, commencing at the point of union of the ovarian and vitellarian ducts in the midst of the shell-gland, and lying between the shell-gland and the genital aperture. Its convolutions extend halfway across the animal, and numerous eggs can be seen within it.
- f. The aperture of the oviduct is at the base of the penis, and on its left side. When the penis is fully withdrawn a slight cavity, the 'genital sinus,' is formed, into the left side of which the oviduct then opens.

#### E. The Nervous System.

This is difficult to demonstrate, except in sections. It consists of a ring of nervous tissue round the pharynx, thickened on either side to form a ganglion—i.e. a collection of nerve-cells. From each ganglion nerves pass out, the chief of which are a pair of branching lateral nerves (see fig. 15).

### II. LIFE-HISTORY OF THE LIVER-FLUKE.

*The free-swimming larvæ may be obtained by removing eggs from the bile-ducts of an infected sheep and hatching them in a shallow vessel of water in a warm room. Sporocysts and rediæ may be obtained from specimens of Limnæa truncatula, kept in the same vessel. Stages in the life-history of other Trematodes may easily be found by dissecting other species of Limnæa.*

The main features in the life-history are as follows.

- A. The First Generation is produced sexually by the development of fertilised ova. \*

1. The **eggs**, laid in large numbers in the bile-ducts of the sheep or other infected mammal, pass with the bile into the intestine, and so escape from the body. They are ovoid bodies 0.012 mm. long and 0.074 mm. broad, enclosed in smooth brownish chitinous shells. Within each shell are a single ovum or germ-cell and a large number of yolk-cells. After the escape of the egg from the body of the host, segmentation occurs, an embryo develops, and a circular operculum at one end of the shell opens to allow it to escape.
2. The **free larva** or **miracidium** is conical, with a short papilla at its broad anterior end; the whole surface is covered with long cilia, enabling the larva to swim rapidly. Two eye-spots are present, and two 'flame-cells,' or excretory organs. The latter are hollow cells, open to the exterior, and into their cavity lash long flagella, causing an outward current of fluid. The ectoderm is a single layer of flattened cells, usually arranged in five transverse bands: within is a mass of granular cells. When this larva meets with *Limnæa truncatula*, a small amphibious snail, the head-papilla becomes elongated, and by means of it the larva bores its way into the snail. Unless the larva happens to come across a *Limnæa* within about eight hours after its escape from the egg, it dies.
3. Development of the **sporocyst**. Within the snail, usually in its pulmonary chamber, the ectoderm cells of the larva swell, lose their cilia, degenerate, and are thrown off; the remainder grows rapidly, and in two or three weeks becomes an elongated sac, 0.06 mm. long. This sac, the **sporocyst**, has an outer structureless cuticle, a thin muscular layer, and an epithelial layer lining the cavity.

The eye-spots, though losing their form, persist; and ciliated excretory funnels are present. Such sporocysts sometimes, though rarely, multiply by transverse fission in the early stages of their development.

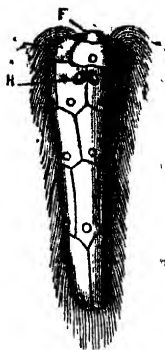


FIG. 17  
x 250

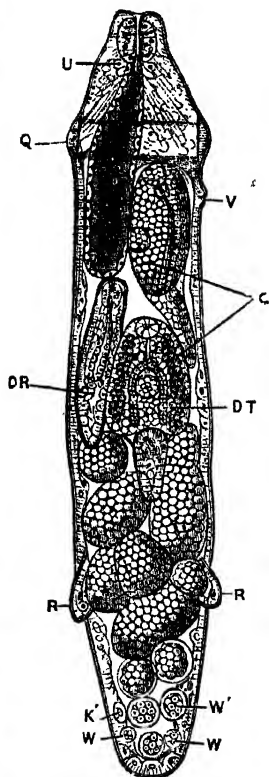


FIG. 20  
x 70

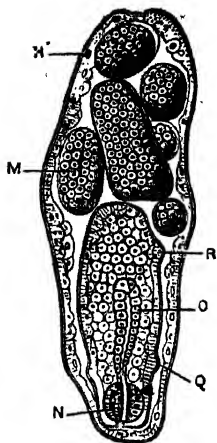


FIG. 18  
x 115

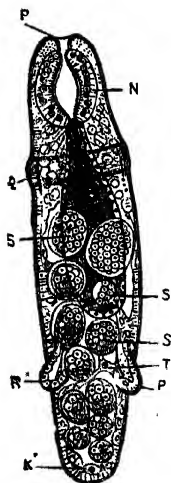


FIG. 19  
x 115

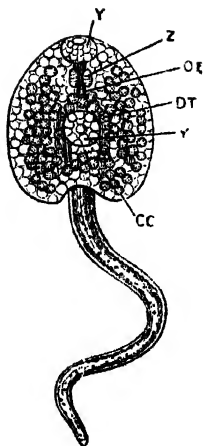


FIG. 21  
x 80

**B. The Second Generation** consists of **Rediæ**, which develop within the sporocyst, from cells that may be looked upon as unfertilised ova, and are themselves parthenogenetic.

1. From the epithelium of the sporocyst, cells are budded off which segment to form solid masses or **morulæ** lying in the cavity of the sporocyst. Each of these morulæ becomes flattened on one side, and then acquires a rudimentary gut (**gastrula** stage), and body-cavity. Each larva increases in size, elongates, and develops into a **redia**. The rediæ so formed force their way out of the sporocyst and become free: the wound in the sporocyst heals, and other rediæ are formed in the same way within it.
2. The free rediæ wander about in the snail, increasing in size and being especially abundant in the liver. The adult redia (fig. 20) is a cylindrical body about 0.6 inch long, with a collar-like ridge running round it near the anterior end, and with a pair of blunt processes projecting from the hinder part of the ventral surface, which aid in locomotion. The body-wall resembles that of the sporocyst in structure, but is more muscular, and has definite excretory canals, the inner ends of which are flame cells.

**Figs. 17 to 20.**—*Fasciola hepatica*. Five stages in the life-history. (After Thomas.)

**Fig. 17.**—The free-swimming larva or miracidium.

**Fig. 18.**—A sporocyst, containing developing rediæ.

**Fig. 19.**—A young redia. The shaded area represents the digestive sac.

**Fig. 20.**—An adult redia, containing one daughter-redia, two cercariæ approaching maturity, and germs in various stages. The shaded area represents the digestive sac.

**Fig. 21.**—A free cercaria.

The following letters have the same signification in the five figures:—C, nearly ripe cercariæ. CC, cystogenous cells of cercaria. DR, daughter-redia. DT, limbs of the digestive tract. F, head-papilla. H, eye-spots. H', the same degenerating. K', germinal cell. L, epaulet-like cells of first row of ectoderm cells. M, embryo in optical section; gastrula stage. N, pharynx of redia. O, digestive sac. OE, oesophagus of cercaria. P, lips of redia. Q, collar of redia. R, processes of redia serving as feet. S, embryos between the morula and stages. T, trabeculæ crossing body-cavity of redia. U, cells in redia supposed to be glandular. V, birth-opening, by which cercariæ and daughter-rediæ escape from the redia. W, morula, still retained in the body-wall. W', larger morula. Y, oral sucker of cercaria. Y', ventral sucker. Z, pharynx of cercaria.



The alimentary tract is a comparatively short blind sac, with walls one cell thick: the mouth is at the anterior end, and behind it the wall of the sac is thickened to form a strong muscular pharynx.

From the inner surface of the body-wall of the redia, cells arise which develop into gastrulæ as in the sporocyst: these may become rediæ like the parent, or may develop into cercariæ. Both rediæ and cercariæ may be formed in the same redia.

C. The **Third Form** is a **Cercaria** (fig. 21). These are not necessarily the third generation, for several generations of rediæ may intervene between them and the sporocyst.

1. Within the parent redia the embryo develops a long tail near its hinder end, an anterior sucker round the mouth, and a posterior sucker on the ventral surface. Its alimentary tract, which is at first solid, becomes bifurcated to form the two limbs of the intestine, the portion in front of the bifurcation forming a pharynx and a short œsophagus. The rudiments of the genital organs can be recognised. A single redia may contain about twenty such cercariæ at one time.
2. The ripe cercariæ, which measure nearly 1 mm. in length, including the tail, escape from the redia by an aperture just behind the collar. At first they are very active, and work their way out of the snail. As this snail, *Limnæa truncatula*, is amphibious, they may be set free either in water or on damp grass. In either case they shortly lose their tails, and encyst on grass or some other plant.
3. In the encysted condition the cercariæ are swallowed by sheep with the grass. They then again become active, escaping from their cysts, and working their way along the bile-ducts, where they grow rapidly, and develop in about six weeks into sexually mature flukes.

## CHAPTER IV.

## THE TAPEWORM.

THE tapeworm is a mouthless **Cestode**, living when adult in the alimentary canal of vertebrates. It consists of a chain of segments. One end of the chain adheres to the lining of the intestine by means of suckers and hooks, whilst the other end lies fræly in the cavity of the gut. The attached end is called the scolex, and this scolex buds off the segments, which increase in size and complexity as they are pushed farther and farther away from their point of origin by the interpolation of new segments. Finally, the larger segments are detached singly and are discharged with the fæces of the host.

Two common species inhabit the intestine of the dog. The discharged segments of the one species, *Dipylidium caninum*, adhere to the hairs around the dog's anus. A dog-flea larva feeding on one of these segments introduces into itself one or more eggs, which develop into tailed larvæ or **cysticercoids**. Should a dog when snapping at the fleas swallow one containing a cysticercoid, the latter attaches itself to the dog's intestine, becomes the scolex, and proceeds to bud off segments, so producing the mature tapeworm or **Strobila** (pine-cone). The eggs from the mature segments of the second species, *Taenia serrata*, are discharged on to the grass, and if eaten by a rabbit develop into 'bladder-worms' (see p. 347) attached to the mesenteries or inhabiting the liver. On being eaten by a dog, each bladder-worm excysts, attaches itself to the dog's intestine and buds off segments as in the first species. Thus the life-history of a tapeworm consists of an egg, a larva, a cystic stage, and a segmented adult stage, passed under different conditions and in different hosts.

Nearly all dogs contain tapeworms, and isolated segments are easily obtained alive after defæcation. They should be examined after clearing in glycerin, and also fixed with sublimate-acetic mixture, washed in 70 per cent. spirit, and either stained, cleared, and mounted or cut into transverse sections. To obtain a complete chain of segments, and especially the scolex, a post-mortem must be made of a freshly killed dog or cat.

### 1. General Structure of the Commonest Dog-tapeworm.

The **scolex** or attached end is a mobile, muscular, conical structure supporting four suckers and five circlets of minute hooks, but with no mouth or sense-organs. It is followed by the 'neck,' the region of greatest growth continually producing 'segments' or **proglottides**. There is no trace of an alimentary canal.

Each proglottid contains two sets of hermaphroditic reproductive organs, but as the male organs mature before the female ones, the appearance of the proglottid undergoes a gradual change as they are pushed farther and farther away from their origin in the neck-region.

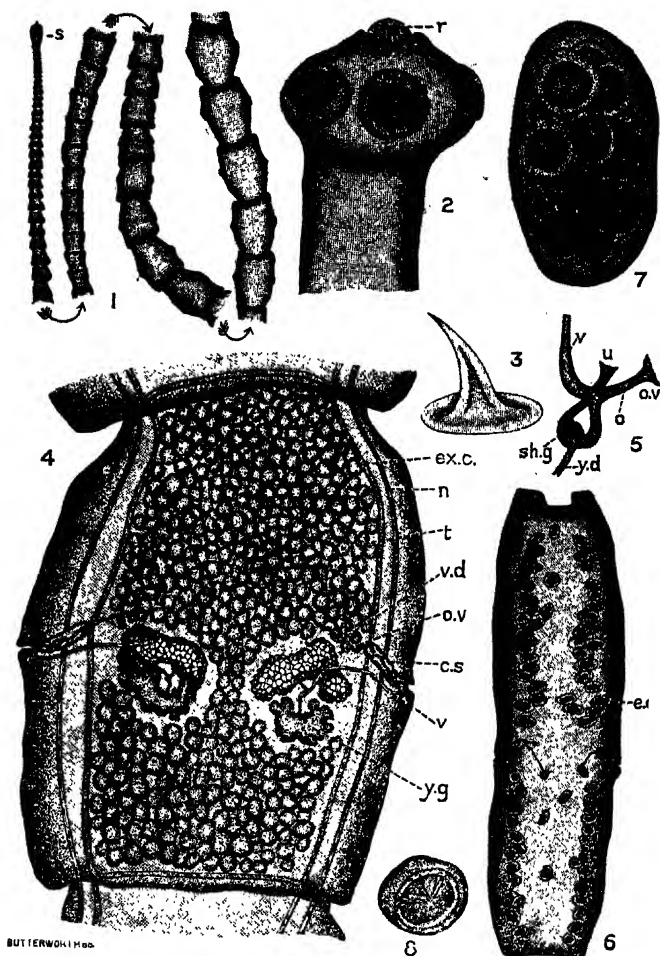
At first each proglottid develops the male organs; at a later stage of growth its female organs appear; still later the female organs ripen; and, lastly, the organs consist of fertilised eggs, the male and accessory female organs having degenerated.

### 2. Reproductive System.

*Examine proglottides which have been cleared or stained and mounted.*

The **testes** consist of minute follicles scattered over one surface (so-called dorsal). They are united by excessively minute canals into two coiled ducts—the **vasa deferentia**, which open on the margin of the opposite side of the proglottid, each by an eversible **penis**.

The female glands on each side consist of a deeply lobed . **ovary** lying internal to the penis and a **yolk-gland** behind it.



BUTTERWICK: Meas.

FIG. 21A.—*Dipylidium caninum*. The commonest dog-tapeworm.—[F.J.M.]

- 1.—A tapeworm ( $\times 4$ ).
- 2.—Scolex of same ( $\times 78$ ). (r) rostellum.
- 3.—Hook from rostellum ( $\times 170$ ).
- 4.—A mature proglottid ( $\times 31$ ). (cs) cirrus-sac; (ex c) lateral excretory canal; (n) lateral nerve; (ov) ovary; (t) testes; (v) vagina; (rd) vas deferens; (yg) yolk-gland.
- 5.—The shell-gland and surrounding ducts. (o) oviduct; (ov) ovary; (shg) shell-gland; (u) uterus; (v) vagina; (yd) yolk duct.
- 6.—A detached ripe proglottid ( $\times 17$ ). (ec) egg capsules.
- 7.—Egg capsule containing eggs ( $\times 300$ ).
- 8.—Egg ( $\times 400$ ).

From the ovary arises the **oviduct**, connected with the exterior by the **vagina**, a duct opening behind the penis. The oviduct is joined by a duct from the yolk-gland, the junction being marked by the presence of numerous gland-cells, the **shell-gland**. From this junction arises the **uterus**, a reticulated tube which the eggs enter after being fertilised by spermatozoa introduced by the vagina. In larger proglottides the uterus extends greatly, but finally breaks down into numerous capsules, each containing a mass of eggs. The 'egg' consists of two shells surrounding a small embryo furnished with three pairs of hooks.

### 3. Excretory System.

This consists of the same type of organ as that found in the Liver-fluke, namely, 'flame-cells,' canaliculi, and longitudinal canals. The canals run continuously throughout the whole chain of proglottides.

### 4. Muscular System.

The longitudinal muscles run throughout the length of the entire organism and break when one or more proglottides are discharged. Circular and oblique fibres are also present and can be easily seen in transverse sections.

### 5. Nervous System.

This consists of ganglia innervating the muscular scolex, and of longitudinal lateral nerves that supply the muscles of the segments. It is best seen in sections.

## CHAPTER V.

THE LEECH. *Hirudo medicinalis*.

THE medicinal leech is an elongated flattened worm, from three to five inches in length, and provided with a muscular sucker at each end. The body is marked externally by a series of transverse constrictions dividing it into rings, or annuli, and is capable of considerable elongation and contraction.

Medicinal leeches occur rarely in freshwater pools and marshes in this country, but far more abundantly on the Continent. They either swim freely by vertical undulations of the body, or progress in a looping manner, attaching themselves alternately by the anterior and posterior suckers. The leech lives on the blood of vertebrate animals: it lays its eggs in a cocoon, which it buries in a hole in the bank of the pond it inhabits.

Leeches are 'segmented animals,' *i.e.* several of the organs are repeated, usually in pairs, at regular intervals along part or the whole of the length of the body. The segments or somites, as indicated by the internal organs, are much less numerous than the annuli, five of these latter corresponding to each somite, except near the ends of the body.

This segmental arrangement affects markedly the nervous, excretory, and reproductive systems, and to a less degree the digestive organs.

*Leeches intended for dissection should be killed with chloroform.*

## I. EXTERNAL CHARACTERS.

1. The shape varies greatly with the degree of elongation or contraction. The body is broadest a little way

behind the middle of its length, and is oval in transverse section, the dorsal surface being more convex than the ventral.

2. The annuli, or rings, into which the body is divided by a series of transverse grooves, are about ninety-five in number, and occur throughout the whole length of the body except its extreme ends. They bear small papillæ, which are more obvious when the body is in the contracted condition.
3. The colour differs greatly in different individuals. The dorsal surface is darker than the ventral, and is usually marked by three pale longitudinal stripes on each side, the middle and outer of which are interrupted by dark dots. These dots are markedly larger, especially in the middle stripe, at every fifth annulus, the annulus so marked being the hindmost of a somite. The most anterior of the five annuli making up a somite bears a transverse ring of small white dots. Towards the two ends of the body the somites are shorter and contain fewer annuli.
4. The suckers.
  - a. The anterior sucker is oval, with the longer axis longitudinal. It is placed on the ventral surface of the anterior end, and is cupped in the centre to form the buccal cavity. It may be regarded as formed by the fusion of the prostomium, a part in front of the mouth, with the first two annuli of the first somite.

The prostomial portion can be folded down over the mouth as a kind of lip.
  - b. The posterior sucker is circular, and larger than the anterior one. It is composed of six segments fused together, and is imperforate.
5. External openings.
  - a. The mouth is a funnel-like depression in the anterior sucker, at the bottom of which are the three jaws.

- b. The anus is a very small aperture on the dorsal surface in, or just in front of, the constriction separating the posterior sucker from the body.
- c. The genital apertures. The leech is hermaphrodite: the male and female apertures are separate, and are both on the ventral surface in the median line.
  - i. The male aperture is a small hole, with tumid lips, at the hinder border of the twenty-fourth annulus, i.e. in the second annulus of the sixth somite. From it the muscular penis is often seen protruding.
  - ii. The female aperture is less conspicuous than the male, and is placed one somite farther back, i.e. at the hinder border of the twenty-ninth annulus, the second annulus of the seventh somite.
- d. The apertures of the nephridia, or excretory organs, are minute paired openings on the ventral surface of the body in the hindmost annulus of each somite from the second to the eighteenth inclusive.

*Hold the leech in your hand with the ventral surface upward. Dry it with a cloth, and then gently squeeze it: minute drops of fluid will exude from the nephridial apertures, which are thus rendered clearly visible.*

## II. DISSECTION OF THE LEECH.

*Stretch the leech slightly with the fingers and fix it under water with the dorsal surface upward, putting the pins through the sides of the suckers so as to avoid injury to the nerve-ganglia.*

*Make a longitudinal incision through the skin, a little to one side of the middle line, taking care not to damage the alimentary canal, which lies close beneath the skin.<sup>1</sup> Carefully*

<sup>1</sup> The dissection of the alimentary canal is difficult, and if two animals are available the beginner is advised to make a preliminary dissection by cutting through the body-wall into the gut, neglecting the latter, and proceeding as described on p. 58.



*dissect off the integument from the alimentary canal along the whole length of the animal, and pin out the flaps right and left. Wash thoroughly under the tap. Note at once the dorsal blood-sinus, which runs along the dorsal wall of the alimentary canal.*

### A. The Digestive System.

The alimentary canal of the leech runs straight from mouth to anus. Along the greater part of its length it is a wide tube, whose capacity is much increased by paired lateral diverticula, and is further capable of great distension.

A leech can draw as much as three times its own weight of blood, a great part of which is often spontaneously discharged. The digestion of a full meal may take as long as nine months in an adult animal.

*Clean the dorsal wall of the alimentary canal along its whole length, taking care not to damage the supra-oesophageal ganglia. If the canal is empty, its walls are white and readily distinguished; if full, it appears red from the contained blood, and is less easy to dissect. Wash frequently under the tap during the dissection.*

1. The mouth is a conical depression in the anterior sucker, at the bottom of which are the jaws. These are three laterally compressed muscular cushions arranged radially, one being dorsal and anterior, and the other

FIG. 22.—*Hirudo medicinalis*, seen from the ventral surface. (After A. G. Bourne.)

The numbers 1 to 23 indicate the somites; the numbers I to V the five annuli of the twelfth somite.

A, anterior sucker, with the mouth. B, posterior sucker. G, male aperture. H, female aperture. N, nephridial apertures.

FIG. 23.—*Hirudo medicinalis*. A diagrammatic figure of the renal, nervous, and reproductive systems. The animal has been opened along the mid-dorsal line, pinned out, and the alimentary canal removed. (After A. G. Bourne.)

The somites are numbered 1 to 23, and their boundaries are indicated by the dotted lines.

CG, supra-oesophageal ganglion. EP, left epididymis. G 1, the first of the twenty-three post-oral ganglia. GL, glandular enlargement of the oviduct. L, lateral vessel. LA, latero-ventral branch of lateral vessel. LD, latero-dorsal branch. LL, latero-lateral branch. N 1, the first of the seventeen nephridia of the left side. O, nerve-collar. OV, ovicel containing the left ovary. PE, penis. T 4, the third testis of the left side. VD, vas deferens.

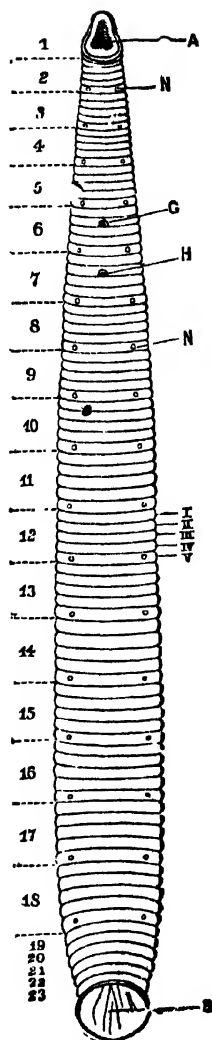


Fig. 22

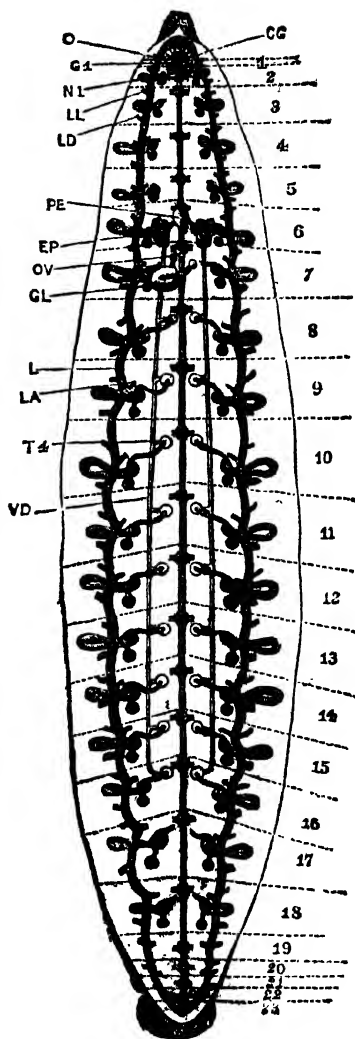


Fig. 23

two ventro-lateral: each cushion is covered by a thin chitinous cuticle, which is thickened along the free edge of the jaw, and notched into the sharp teeth by which the bite of the leech is produced. The mouth leads, by a very small aperture, into the pharynx.

*Snip away the margin of the anterior sucker so as to expose the jaws. Examine them from the ventral surface with a pocket lens: remove one of them and examine it with a low power of the microscope to see the teeth.*

2. The **pharynx** is an oval sac with very muscular walls. It is connected with the body-wall by strong radial muscles, which give it a villous appearance, and by their contraction dilate its cavity and produce a sucking action.
3. The **salivary glands** are very large granular pyriform cells surrounding the pharynx. Each cell is a gland in itself, and is produced into a long stalk or ductule opening on one of the jaws. The secretion has the power of preventing coagulation of the blood, and so very greatly facilitates the act of sucking.

*Remove part of the wall of the pharynx, and tease it on a slide in salt-solution. The large pyriform gland-cells, with their long ductules, will easily be seen with a low power.*

4. The **oesophagus** is a short narrow tube leading from the pharynx to the crop.
5. The **crop** consists of eleven chambers, separated by partitions, each perforated by a circular or transversely oval opening, surrounded by a sphincter muscle. The partitions may be demonstrated by cutting transversely across the dorsal face of one of the larger posterior chambers, and pulling the lips of the cut away, so that the partitions lie nearly horizontal, and their perforations are clearly seen. From each chamber a pair of lateral sacs,

the cæca, are given off. They slope more and more backwards as we pass down, and the two last are parallel and contiguous to each other, and to the intestine which lies in a dorsal groove above them.

*Slit up the crop along the mid-dorsal line, wash out its contents thoroughly, and pass a seeker into the several diverticula of one side, slitting them open along their whole length.*

6. The **stomach** is a small, spherical, slightly bilobed dilatation immediately behind the crop, lying between the basal portions of the backwardly directed last pair of diverticula, and opening behind into the intestine.

7. The **intestine** is a narrow straight tube running from the stomach to the anus. Its inner wall projects as a spiral fold into the cavity.

*Slit open the intestine with scissors along the mid-dorsal line; wash it thoroughly, and note the spiral folding of its wall.*

## B. The Coelom.

In the leech there is no obvious body-cavity, the space between the integument and the alimentary canal being filled up by muscle, connective tissue, and other structures.

A complicated system of tubular channels runs through all parts of the body, and is filled with a red fluid, the blood, which contains numerous colourless corpuscles. The principal channels are of two kinds, some having muscular, others non-muscular walls. Both sets of tubes are parts of the original body-cavity, or coelom, which is in some kinds of leeches more extensive, but is in *Hirudo* reduced to a system of canals, the two lateral ones of which have acquired muscular walls. There are no true blood-vessels.

The arrangement and relation of these sinuses are best determined by the microscopical examination of sections, and will be described later on; the broad features, most of

which can be made out without difficulty by dissection, are as follows :

1. The Sinuses, or non-contractile parts of the coelom.

- a. The dorsal sinus is a longitudinal tube running along the dorsal surface of the whole length of the alimentary canal. It communicates posteriorly with the ventral sinus by fine vessels which pass between the intestine and the terminal diverticula of the crop. It has already been seen (p. 54).

*Dissect away the alimentary tract completely, from the œsophagus backwards, taking great care not to damage the underlying organs.<sup>1</sup> The further dissection is greatly facilitated by putting the leech into strong spirit for ten minutes or so.*

- b. The ventral sinus is a median tube running along the body beneath the alimentary canal. Within it the ventral nerve-chain lies. It communicates with a series of peri-nephrostomial sinuses, lying on the dorsal surfaces of the testes; and also with the capillary system on the walls of the crop.

2. The contractile parts of the coelom.

- a. The lateral vessels are a pair of longitudinal tubes running in a sinuous course along the sides of the body. They are connected together by transverse vessels which pass across beneath the ventral sinus. They send branches to the intestine, the nephridia, and the reproductive organs.

- b. The cutaneous plexuses are very abundant, and connect the sinuses and lateral tubes in various places, putting them in free communication with one another. The microscopical characters will be described later on.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 53.

### C. The Excretory System.

The excretory organs of the leech consist of a series of seventeen pairs of **nephridia** or **segmental organs**, lying in the somites from the second to the eighteenth inclusive. They lie at the sides of and below the alimentary canal, and open to the exterior by paired apertures on the ventral surface.

#### 1. Structure of a nephridium (figs. 23 and 24).

Each nephridium is a cellular rod, thicker in the middle than at the ends, and bent on itself so as to form a loop, the two limbs of which are anterior and posterior respectively. The looped portion lies at the side of the alimentary canal, extending up into the dorsal part of the body; the ends lie in the ventral region, that of the anterior limb being in most cases prolonged inwards almost to the median plane, and that of the posterior limb being rolled up on itself. From the anterior limb a duct runs back to a vesicle with muscular walls, which opens to the exterior on the ventral surface of the body.

The cellular rod is traversed by a complicated system of ducts, which perforate the individual cells, and receive minute ductules ramifying in the substance of the cells.

The whole nephridium is invested by a pigmented connective-tissue capsule, and receives a very abundant supply of blood from branches of the lateral tubes, the efferent stream passing inwards through the peri-nephrostomial sinus to the ventral sinus.

*Dissect under a lens one of the nephridia from the middle of the body, noting its several parts, and their relations to one another and to other organs.*

*Remove another nephridium from the body, and dissect it on a slide in a drop of water; examine it with low and high powers of the microscope.*

*Snip off with fine scissors the dorsal half of one of the testes, with the testis-lobe of the nephridium; mount it on a*

*slide in a drop of salt solution, and examine with low and high powers.*

The entire nephridium consists of the following parts :

- a. The testis-lobe forms the ventral half of the anterior limb of the loop. It is a cylindrical rod, the inner end of which lies in the peri-nephrostomial sinus on the dorsal surface of the testis. This end is slightly enlarged, and has a cauliflower-like appearance, the cells covering it being spongy and ciliated, and often depressed at their ends.

This inner end of the testis-lobe probably corresponds to the funnel-like opening of the nephridium into the body-cavity in the earth-worm (p. 77). In segments without a testis, it ends blindly near the extremity of the apical lobe.

- b. The main lobe is the thickest part of the rod : it is continuous with the outer end of the testis-lobe, and forms the anterior limb, the bend, and half of the posterior limb of the loop.
- c. The apical lobe is separated by a slight constriction from the posterior limb of the main lobe. It runs downwards and inwards, diminishing slightly in thickness, and ends in a coiled-up extremity, the apex of which is closely attached to the junction of the testis-lobe and the main lobe.
- d. The vesicle-duct is a short narrow tube arising from the anterior limb of the main lobe at its junction with the testis-lobe, and running backwards beneath the apical lobe to the vesicle.
- e. The vesicle is a somewhat flattened sac with muscular walls : it lies behind the rest of the nephridium, and opens to the exterior by a short duct, the opening being on the ventral surface of the body and in the hindmost annulus of the somite in which the nephridium lies.

#### D. The Reproductive System.

Leeches are hermaphrodite, but do not impregnate their

**1. The male organs.**

- a. The testes are nine pairs of spherical sacs lying in the somites from the eighth to the sixteenth inclusive. They are situated in the ventral region of the body at the sides of the ventral sinus. Each pair lies mainly in the second, but partly in the first annulus of the somite in which it occurs.

The segmental repetition of the testes is noteworthy. Sometimes a tenth and even an eleventh pair of testes may be present, and occasionally the numbers are unequal on the two sides of the body.

*Remove one of the testes, and tease it on a slide in salt solution. Cover, and examine with low and high powers. Stained preparations can be made by following the directions given on page 84.*

Spermatozoa in various stages of development will be seen.

- b. The vasa efferentia are a series of short sinuous ducts which run outwards from the testes, and open into the vasa deferentia.
- c. The vasa deferentia are a pair of longitudinal tubes which run forwards in a sinuous course along the ventral body-wall, about midway between the testes and the vesicles of the nephridia.

In front of the first pair of testes they continue their course through the seventh somite, and in the sixth enter the epididymes.

- d. The epididymes are a pair of convoluted tubular bodies with thick white walls lying in the sixth somite. They secrete a substance by which the spermatozoa are aggregated into spermatophores. From the inner side of each a short duct leads to the base of the penis, the duct of the right side passing under the nerve-chain.
- e. The penis is a pyriform body lying in the sixth



somite. It is wide at its base, narrow and tubular in its distal part, and can be protruded some distance through the male genital aperture in the second annulus of this somite.

The female organs lie entirely in the seventh somite.

- a. The ovaries are a pair of minute filamentous bodies, enclosed in small spherical sacs, lying close to the mid-ventral line.
- b. The oviducts are a pair of slender tubes leading from the sacs of the ovaries, which unite to form a much-convoluted duct surrounded by unicellular-gland cells, and opening into the vagina. The right oviduct passes under the nerve-chain.
- c. The vagina is a thick-walled tube, opening to the exterior at the female genital pore in the second annulus of the seventh somite.

#### E. The Nervous System.

The nervous system consists of a pair of supra-oesophageal ganglia, a nerve-collar, and a double gangliated cord extending the whole length of the ventral body-wall. From the ganglia nerves run outwards to the various parts of the body.

1. The supra-oesophageal ganglia are a pair of closely apposed bodies in the dorsal wall of the anterior end of the pharynx, immediately behind the jaws. They supply the jaws, the eyes, and other parts of the anterior end of the body.
2. The nerve-collar is very small, and closely surrounds the anterior end of the pharynx.
3. The ventral nerve-chain lies in the ventral sinus, which must be slit open to expose it. It consists of two halves very closely apposed in the median plane. There are twenty-three pairs of ganglia, lying in the first annuli of their respective somites. The successive pairs of ganglia are much closer together at the two ends of the body than they are along the middle portion of its length.

The first, or sub-oesophageal ganglia, are really multiple, and give off five pairs of nerves.

The last, or twenty-third, are also multiple, and give several branches to the posterior sucker.

From each of the other pairs of ganglia two pairs of nerves are given off, supplying the corresponding somite.

#### F. Sense-organs.

1. **Eyes.** The leech has ten eyes, seen as minute black dots, arranged round the dorsal edge of the anterior sucker. Each consists of a pigmented cup, filled with rod-like bodies, and receiving a nerve at its base. The eyes differ very little from smaller cup-like segmental sense-organs found on the first annulus of each segment throughout the body. Their structure can only be made out by examination of microscopical sections.

### III. EXAMINATION OF TRANSVERSE SECTIONS.

Many points in the anatomy of the leech can only be determined by examination of microscopical preparations, and for this purpose transverse sections of the body are the most instructive. Of these half a dozen or more should be examined, as the appearances will necessarily differ according to the particular organs and parts through which the section happens to pass.

The following description is a general one, and will apply to any section through the middle region of the body.

#### A. Shape.

A transverse section of the body of a leech is oval in outline, the transverse diameter being the greater, and the ventral surface being flatter than the dorsal.

#### B. The Integument.

1. **The cuticle.** The most superficial layer is a thin structureless elastic cuticle, which is secreted by the

underlying epidermis, and is shed and renewed at frequent intervals during life.

2. The **epidermis** consists of a single layer of columnar cells, wider at their outer than at their inner ends.

The **epidermal glands**. Certain of the epidermal cells are modified to form unicellular glands. These may remain in the epidermal layer as **mucous glands**, or they may sink down into the muscular layers, as in the case of the **salivary glands**, and of the **clitellar glands** of the fifth to the seventh somites, which latter secrete the cocoon in which the eggs are laid.

In all cases each cell is a complete gland in itself, and preserves its communication with the surface by means of a long slender ductule.

3. The **dermis** is a layer of some thickness lying between the epidermis and the muscular coats. It consists of a jelly-like matrix containing numerous branched cells. It is traversed by pigmented fibres, which branch and anastomose very freely, and penetrate between the epidermal cells: to these the colour of the skin is due. There are also in the dermis irregularly arranged muscle-fibres, chiefly transverse in direction, and a very abundant capillary plexus, the branches of which penetrate between the inner ends of the epidermal cells. It is by means of this cutaneous capillary system that respiration is effected.

### C. The Muscles.

The muscles of the leech consist of long fusiform cells arranged either singly or in bundles. Each muscle-cell consists of an outer cortical layer which is striated longitudinally, and a central medullary portion composed of granular protoplasm and containing the nucleus. The cortical layer is sharply marked off from the medullary portion, so that in a transverse section of a muscle-cell it appears as a ring, radially striated, and surrounding a central finely granular mass.

1. The outer or circular layer of muscles consists of fibres, which encircle the body transversely. The layer itself is not much thicker than the epidermis, but the transverse muscles of the dermis should, perhaps, be grouped with it.
2. The middle or oblique layer of muscles is more deeply placed, and is separated from the circular layer by a stratum of connective tissue. The fibres run obliquely round the body.
3. The inner or longitudinal layer of muscles lies immediately within the oblique layer, and is by far the thickest of the three layers.
4. The dorso-ventral muscles are bundles of muscle-fibres crossing the body more or less obliquely from the dorsal to the ventral surface. They pass between the bundles of longitudinal muscles and through the oblique and circular layers, their ends spreading out just beneath the epidermis.

#### D. The Alimentary Canal.

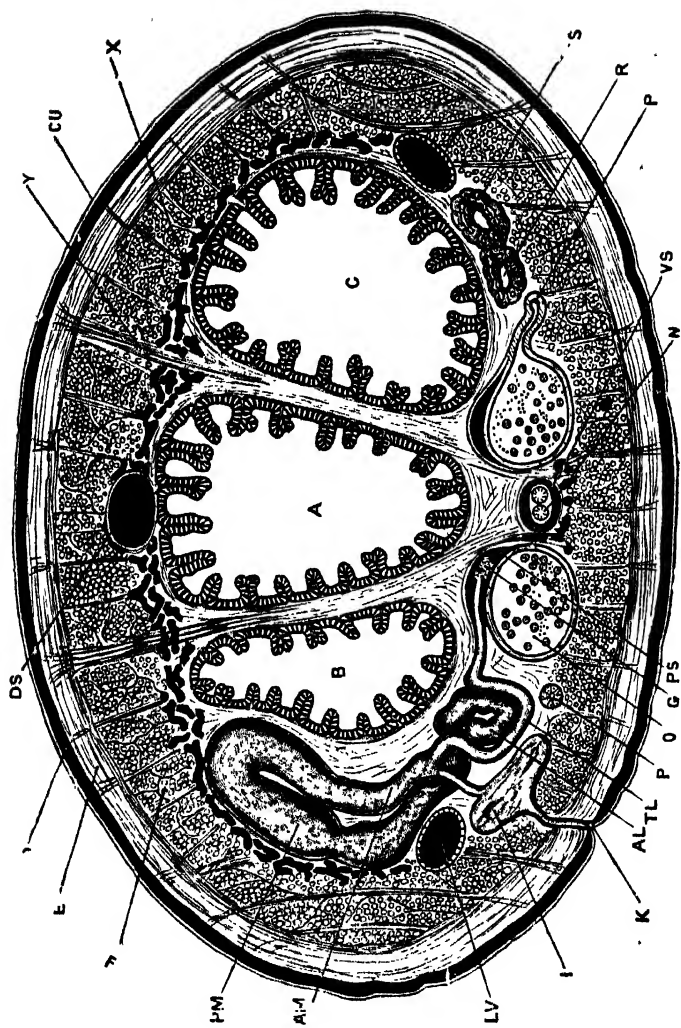
A section across the middle portion of the body will cut the crop, of which the median portion and the lateral diverticula will in most sections appear separate from each other.

The walls consist of an outer connective-tissue layer with a few muscular fibres, and an inner lining formed of a single layer of short columnar epithelial cells. The folds into which the inner surface is thrown involve the connective-tissue layer as well as the epithelium.

#### E. The Lateral Tubes and Sinuses.

The blood-spaces and lateral tubes correspond to the body-cavity of higher animals. They are readily recognised in sections, owing to the deeply staining clotted blood with which they are filled.

1. The dorsal and ventral sinuses lie in the median plane, above and below the crop, respectively. They have thin non-muscular walls, and the ventral one encloses the nerve-chain.



2. The lateral tubes are large and have distinct muscular walls.
3. The capillaries are very thin-walled tubes, the distribution of which can easily be followed owing to the contained blood. The intercellular plexuses of the epidermis and of the nephridia should be specially noticed.
4. The botryoidal tissue consists of a network of vessels, the channels of which are irregular in width and the walls formed of large granular pigmented cells which project as irregular rounded swellings.

These curiously swollen vessels occur in great abundance around the crop, immediately within the longitudinal muscle-layer. They are in free communication with the ordinary blood-capillaries.

#### F. The Reproductive Organs.

1. The testes are seen, if the section happens to pass through them, as spherical sacs lying at the sides of the ventral sinus, and containing groups of spermatozoa in various stages of development.
2. The vasa deferentia lie to the outer sides of the testes: each is a thick-walled tube, with a small central lumen.

FIG. 24.—*Hirudo medicinalis*. A diagrammatic transverse section through the middle of the body. On the left side of the figure the whole of a nephridium is drawn in order to show its relations: the anterior surface of the section is towards the spectator, and the two limbs of the main lobe of the nephridium are slightly displaced, being represented as inner and outer, instead of anterior and posterior respectively. (A. M. M.)

A, crop. AL, apical lobe of nephridium. AM, anterior limb of main lobe of nephridium. B, right diverticulum of crop. C, left diverticulum of crop. CU, cuticle. D, epidermis. DS, dorsal sinus. E, layer of circular and oblique muscles. F, longitudinal muscle-layer. G, cauliflower head of nephridium. I, vesicle of nephridium. K, external aperture of nephridium. LV, lateral tube. N, nerve cord. O, testis with developing spermatozoa. P, vas deferens. PM, posterior limb of main lobe of nephridium. PS, peri-nephrostomial sinus. R, section of nephridium. S, intracellular ductules of nephridium. TL, testis-lobe of nephridium. VS, ventral sinus. X, botryoidal tissue. Y, dorso-ventral muscles.

## CHAPTER VI.

THE EARTHWORM. *Lumbricus terrestris*.

THE earthworm lives in burrows in moist earth, through which it makes its way by alternate elongation and contraction of its body, aided by small stiff setæ projecting from its surface. That part of the body most exposed to light is dark; the rest is almost colourless.

It is a pinkish worm about six inches long, cylindrical in front, flattened posteriorly. Its food consists of organic matter derived chiefly from the soil, which it swallows in enormous quantities. The worm is hermaphrodite, and lays its eggs in a chitinous cocoon, which also contains packets of spermatozoa and an albuminous fluid.

The body is marked by transverse grooves dividing it into annuli, of which there are about one hundred and fifty. This external annulation corresponds with an internal segmentation, the body-cavity being divided into chambers by transverse septa, which are placed opposite the external grooves. Nearly all the organs exhibit a corresponding segmental arrangement, there being one pair of nephridia and one nerve-ganglion in each segment or somite throughout the greater part of the animal's length, the blood-vessels, muscles and setæ being also disposed segmentally.

Two closely allied genera of large earthworms, *Lumbricus* and *Allolobophora*, occur commonly in this country, each represented by several species.

The several species differ from each other in the position and arrangement of certain of the reproductive organs, and in other minor points. The following description, taken from

*Lumbricus terrestris*, the largest of the commoner species, will, however, apply with but slight alterations to any of the others.

The worm is most conveniently killed with chloroform-water, and preserved in 4 per cent. formaldehyde.

## I. EXTERNAL CHARACTERS.

1. **Form.** The body is cylindrical along the greater part of its length, flattened in its hinder part. It is pointed in front, blunt behind, and is thickest about one-third of its length from the anterior end.
2. **Colour.** The earthworm is of a pale pinkish or yellowish colour, replaced in front by a dark purplish brown, which extends a considerable distance backwards as a mid-dorsal stripe. The hinder end is also tinged with brown. The dorsal blood-vessel can be seen through the integument, appearing as a dark-coloured wavy line along the dorsal surface.
3. The **annuli**, into which the body is divided externally by transverse grooves, are larger and more obvious in front than behind. Each annulus corresponds to a segment, and is subdivided by smaller grooves, the number of which varies in different regions of the body, and also on the dorsal and ventral surfaces.
4. The **prostomium**, or cephalic lobe, is the rounded lobe forming the extreme anterior end of the worm. In *Lumbricus* it extends backwards on the dorsal surface so as completely to intersect the first annulus and meet the second. In *Allolobophora* it extends about halfway through the first annulus.
5. The **clitellum** is the thickened integument of the dorsal and lateral surfaces of the thirty-second and five following segments, but varies slightly both in position and extent in different specimens and at different times of the year. In other species of earthworm it occupies other segments.



6. The **cuticle** is a delicate chitinous membrane investing the whole body of the worm. It may usually be detected by its iridescence, and can be readily stripped off a worm which has been killed by chloroform, or one which has been macerated a few hours in water.

Examined microscopically it shows a series of oblique lines, intersecting each other at right angles, and minute highly refractive thickenings at many of the points where the lines intersect.

7. The **setæ** are short chitinous spines implanted in the body-wall, and arranged in two double rows along each side of the body, each segment, except the first and last, bearing four pairs. They may be felt on drawing the worm through the fingers from head to tail. The setæ are to be regarded as special localised thickenings of the cuticle.

*The setæ are easily isolated by boiling a bit of a worm in a solution of caustic potash; they should then be washed and mounted in glycerin, or dried and mounted in balsam.*

Each seta is sigmoidally curved: it is thickest at its middle, and tapers towards each end.

#### 8. External apertures.

- a. The **mouth** is a small crescentic aperture on the ventral surface of the first segment. It is overhung by the **prostomium**.
- b. The **anus** is an oval aperture at the hinder end of the body.
- c. The **genital apertures** are arranged in four pairs.
  - i. The **apertures of the vasa deferentia** are situated on the ventral surface of the fifteenth segment, one on each side, slightly to the outer side of the inner double row of setæ. They are transverse slits, with tumid lips.

- ii. The **apertures of the oviducts** are similarly situated in the fourteenth segment. They are small pores not seen so easily as the male apertures, their lips not being tumid.
- iii. The **apertures of the spermathecæ or receptacula seminis**, of which there are two pairs, are situated in the grooves between the segments and in the line of the outer row of setæ, the first pair between segments ix. and x., the posterior pair between segments x. and xi.
- d. The **excretory apertures** are best seen in a specimen which has been hardened in spirit, and dried with a cloth immediately before examination. Each segment, except the first three and the last, has one on each side, either on the ventral surface a little in front of the outer seta of the inner double row, or, in some segments, high up on the side of the animal.

*To see these apertures, strip off the cuticle from the anterior part of the worm, and examine the worm with a pocket lens, squeezing it slightly so as to cause fluid to exude from the apertures.*

- e. The **dorsal pores**, though small, are often visible to the naked eye. They open mid-dorsally in the grooves between the segments, and place the cœlom in communication with the exterior.

The first one is between segments x. and xi. and opens into segment xi. Behind this point they occur regularly in every intersegmental groove.

*Make a drawing to show the external characters. This is best done by dividing two facing pages of a large note-book transversely into three spaces by two lines half the width of a page apart. Continue the lines right across from one page to the other, thus giving the centre lines for the drawings. Now rule about 35 lines, a quarter of an inch apart, across the centre*

*lines to represent the septa ; and draw the anterior part of the worm (seen from below) about one line, leaving the sketch of the dissection to be drawn about the other.*

## II. DISSECTION OF THE EARTHWORM.

*Extend the animal under water with the dorsal surface upwards, fixing it down by two pins through the sides of the fourth segment and two near the hinder end of the worm. Cut through the body-wall from end to end, close to the mid-dorsal line. Gently raise the flaps with the forceps, and note the transverse septa dividing the body-cavity into segments. Carefully detach the septa from the lateral body-wall, using a fine mounted needle, and pin out the flaps right and left with fine pins, stretching them a little as you do so.*

*It will save much time in determining the positions of some of the important organs if the pins are placed in definite segments—say the tenth, fifteenth, and twentieth.*

### A. The Cœlom.

The cœlom, or body-cavity, is a large space, within which the alimentary canal and other viscera lie. It is divided into segments by transverse septa, which connect the alimentary canal with the body-wall. The septa correspond to the external annuli throughout the whole length of the body, except in two regions : (1) in front of the fourth segment, where they are absent ; (2) in the region of the gizzard, where they are slightly irregular in arrangement. The cœlom contains a fluid with numerous flattened, amœboid corpuscles which are phagocytic.

### B. The Digestive System.

The alimentary canal is a straight tube running from the mouth to the anus, and is divisible into the following regions :

1. The buccal cavity is small, and is situated in the first three segments. The opening of the mouth in the ventral part of the first segment has soft lips and no teeth.

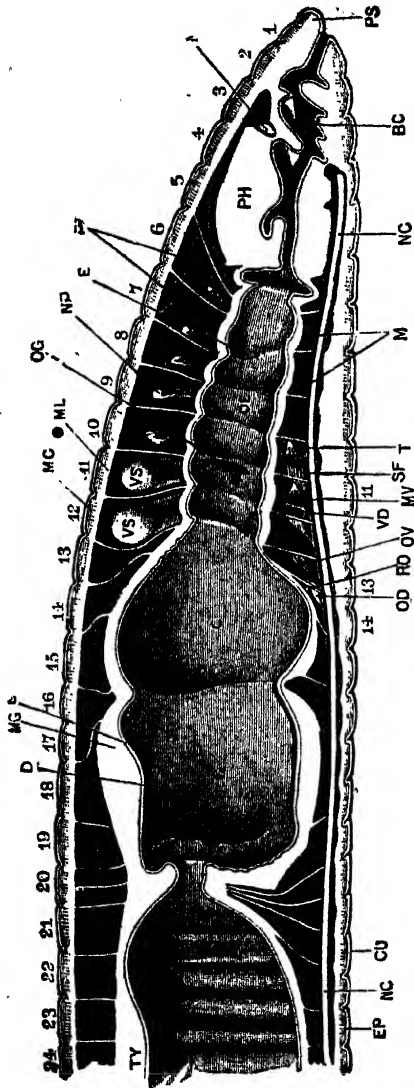


FIG. 25.—*Lumbricus terrestris*. Longitudinal vertical section through the anterior portion of the animal. (C. H. H.)

BC, buccal cavity. C, crop. CU, cuticle. D, thickened outfold of gizzard. E, epithelium of alimentary canal. EP, epidermis. G, gizzard. IN, intestine. M, retractor muscles of the anterior part of the crop. MC, circular muscles of body-wall. MG, muscular wall of gizzard. ML, longitudinal muscles of body-wall. MV, posterior median vesicula seminalis. N, dorsal portion of nerve-collar cut across. NC, ventral nerve-chain. NP, nephridium. OD, oviduct. OE, oesophagus. OG, aperture of oesophageal pouch: the passage runs forwards as indicated by the arrow. OV, ovary. PH, pharynx. PM, retractor muscles of pharynx. PS, prostonium. RO, receptaculum ovarum. SF, seminal funnel, the expanded mouth of the vas deferens. T, anterior testis. TV, typhlosote. VD, vas deferens. VS, posterior lateral vesiculae seminales. 1-24, the first twenty-four segments.

2. The **pharynx**, which follows the buccal cavity, has thick muscular walls connected with the body-wall by strands of muscle which run obliquely backwards perforating the anterior septa. The pharynx extends backwards about as far as the sixth or seventh annulus when the animal is in an average condition of extension; but it lies entirely in front of the *septum* dividing the fifth segment from the sixth (fig. 25).

3. The **œsophagus** is a concertina-like tube extending from the pharynx to the thirteenth or fourteenth segment.

a. The **œsophageal pouches** are a pair of short lateral diverticula of the œsophagus lying in segment x., and opening into the œsophagus at the anterior end of segment xi. At certain seasons they contain concretions of more or less crystalline calcareous matter, chiefly calcium carbonate.

*To see these œsophageal pouches, press aside the large white vesiculæ seminales which hide them.*

b. The **œsophageal glands** are two pairs of lateral protuberances on the sides of the œsophagus in segments xi. and xii. They are hollow, and their cavities, which are subdivided by a large number of horizontal lamellæ, contain a milky calcareous fluid. They are local thickenings of the glandular walls of the œsophagus, and their numerous cavities open into the œsophageal pouches.

c. Both the glands and the pouches are highly vascular and play an important part in relation to the lime of the soil and possibly also in regard to respiration.

4. The **crop** is a large dilated portion of the alimentary canal in segments xiii. to xvi., but when filled it encroaches upon the segments in front, pushing the *septæ* before it (fig. 25).

5. The gizzard extends from the sixteenth segment backwards to about the twentieth. Its walls are very thick and muscular, and it has a thick chitinous lining.
6. The intestine is a thin-walled sacculated tube running straight backwards from the gizzard to the anus.
  - a. The yellow cells are a layer of pigmented peritoneal cells surrounding the intestine and in close relation with the blood-vessels. They contain waste-products derived from the intestine, and are shed singly into the coelom, where they degenerate—to be got rid of finally by the nephridia.

*Cut the intestine open along one side, and wash out its contents.*

- b. The typhlosole is a prominent median longitudinal ridge projecting into the cavity of the intestine from its dorsal wall, of which it is a fold. Its surface is marked by transverse folds.

### C. The Circulatory System.

The blood is a fluid coloured bright red by hæmoglobin and containing colourless corpuscles. Several of the larger vessels contract rhythmically, especially the five pairs of commissural vessels. The circulation is seen best in a young worm soon after hatching out.

*For the dissection of the circulatory system a fresh worm should be taken and killed with chloroform. Owing to the yellow cells overlying the alimentary canal, the dorsal vessel is not easily traced.*

1. The dorsal vessel is a large median vessel running along the dorsal surface of the alimentary canal throughout its whole length, and dividing in front into branches which ramify over the pharynx. It can be seen through the skin in the living animal, and the flow of blood in it is from behind forwards.

A large lateral oesophageal vessel runs along

each side of the oesophagus, and communicates with the dorsal vessel in the tenth segment. Branches of it ramify over the pharynx and over the oesophageal glands and pouches.

From the alimentary canal the blood is returned to the dorsal vessel by intestinal vessels, of which there are in the region of the intestine two pairs to each segment, and which are surrounded by the yellow cells.

2. The ventral vessel is a median vessel running backwards below the alimentary canal the whole length of the animal: in it the blood flows backwards.
3. The contractile commissural vessels or 'hearts' are five pairs lying in segments VII. to XI., and connect the dorsal with the ventral vessel. During life they are rhythmically contractile, the contractions passing along them from above downwards, commencing with the hindmost pair, and driving the blood from the dorsal to the ventral vessel. In the fresh state each has frequently a moniliform appearance.
4. Neural vessels. These are smaller longitudinal vessels in close relation with the nerve-cord which runs along the floor of the body-cavity in the mid-ventral line (see p. 86).
  - a. The subneural vessel is median, and lies immediately beneath the nerve-cord along its whole length.
  - b. The lateral neural vessels are a pair of smaller longitudinal vessels lying along the sides of the nerve-cord.
5. The nephridial vessels supply the nephridia or excretory organs (see p. 77).
  - a. The afferent nephridial vessels arise from the ventral vessel, one pair in each segment, and run outwards to the nephridia, supplying all there loops.

- b. The efferent nephridial vessels return the blood from the nephridia to the parietal vessels.
6. The parietal vessels. In each segment the subneural and dorsal vessels are connected by a pair of parietal vessels, which run on the inner surface of the body-wall, and receive smaller vessels from it.

#### D. The Excretory System.

This consists of a series of tubular nephridia or 'segmental organs,' arranged in pairs corresponding to the segments along the whole length of the animal, excepting the first three and the last segments, from which they are absent. They are largest in the region of the œsophagus.

Each nephridium is a long tube thrown into loops, which are closely applied together and suspended in the body-cavity close to its wall. The tube begins with a minute ciliated mouth—the nephrostome—opening into the body-cavity; then follows a long and very slender portion, to which succeeds a shorter and wider part; the terminal portion is still wider and has muscular walls, and opens distally to the exterior at the aperture already seen on the surface.

##### 1. Examination of a nephridium *in situ* (fig. 27).

*The worm should be opened immediately after being killed with chloroform and dissected in salt solution. Stretch the segments thoroughly and examine with a hand-lens.*

The nephridia are seen as semi-transparent loops lying along the inner surface of the body-wall and extending from near the mid-ventral line almost to the mid-dorsal line. Each is in relation with two segments, the funnel and a very short length of the tube lying in the anterior of the two segments, and the rest of the tube with the external opening in the posterior segment.

*Examine one of the nephridia more closely, noting its parts.*

- a. The nephrostome is a minute funnel lying in the body-cavity close to the mid-ventral line, and



connected by a short stalk—the first part of the nephridial tube—with the septum behind it.

- b. The looped portion of the tube lies in the segment behind that containing the funnel. Three loops can easily be made out, of which the middle one is the longest and reaches almost to the mid-dorsal line; while the outer one is the widest and leads to the external aperture.

The three loops may be conveniently distinguished (see fig. 27) as the **long loop**, the **short loop**, and the **terminal loop** respectively.

The terminal portion always enters the body-wall at about the level of the outer seta of the inner double row. The external pore is connected with it, in those segments in which it opens dorsally, by a channel in the body-wall.

## 2. Microscopical structure of a nephridium.

*Carefully remove by fine-pointed forceps an entire nephridium with a very small part of the septum which it traverses. If the worm has been killed with chloroform, the ciliated portions of the nephridium may be still working. Mount in salt solution, using enough fluid to support the cover-slip and prevent undue pressure on the object.*

*Examine with low and high powers.*

- a. The funnel is ciliated, its border consisting of a row of large cells with very distinct nuclei. The **nephrostome** or open mouth of the funnel can be easily seen: it is often partially blocked up by a small mass of coelomic corpuscles.
- b. The first part of the tube, or **narrow tube**, is very slender, and its relations are difficult to determine. Starting from the funnel it runs straight back through the septum into the posterior of the two segments with which the nephridium is connected. In this segment it runs in a somewhat irregular course along both limbs of the short loop, and along the proximal limb of the long

loop; it then bends back sharply on itself, and returns, following the same path, to the base of the short loop, where it passes into the second part of the tube. The duct of the narrow tube is an intracellular one, traversing the individual cells, which are placed end to end like drain-pipes. The narrow tube is ciliated along part of its length.

c. The second part of the tube, or middle tube, forms the proximal limb of the long loop. The duct is here also an intracellular one: it is much wider than that of the narrow tube, and is ciliated along its whole length.

d. The third part of the tube, or wide tube, begins with a dilated part, called the ampulla, at the apex or bend of the long loop: beyond this it forms the distal limb of the long loop, both limbs of the short loop, and a portion of the proximal limb of the terminal loop. The duct in this portion of the tube is wide, intracellular, and non-ciliated; and its walls consist of very granular protoplasm.

e. The fourth part of the tube, or bladder, forms part of the proximal, and the whole of the distal limb of the terminal loop. It is much wider than the rest of the tube; it is lined by epithelium; and its walls, which are non-glandular, contain interlacing muscular fibres. The bladder opens to the exterior by the aperture already seen. Its cavity generally contains parasitic round-worms.

## E. The Reproductive System.

The earthworm is hermaphrodite. The reproductive organs are lodged in segments ix. to xv., i.e. in the region of the œsophagus.

•

1. The female organs consist of a pair of ovaries ; a pair of oviducts, with a receptaculum ovarum opening into each ; and two pairs of spermathecae.
- a. The ovaries, which lie in segment XIII., are a pair of small semi-transparent pyriform bodies attached

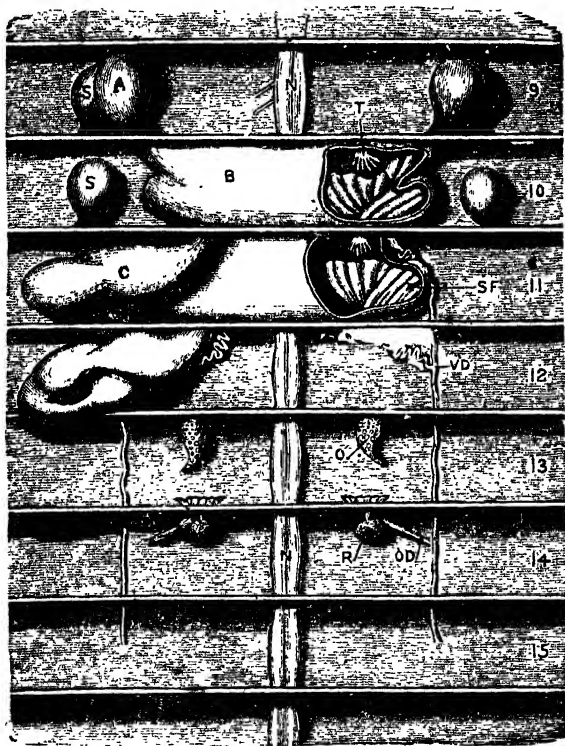


FIG. 26.—*Lumbricus herculeus*. Plan of the reproductive organs as seen from above after removal of the alimentary canal. The body-wall is pinned down flat. (C. H. H.)

A, anterior lateral vesicula seminalis. B, first median vesicula seminalis. O, posterior lateral vesicula seminalis. N, nerve-cord. O, ovary. OD, oviduct. R, receptaculum ovarum. S, spermatheca. SF, seminal funnel lying in the median vesicula seminalis. T, testis. VD, vas deferens: the reference line indicates the point where the posterior vas efferens opens into it. 9 to 15, ninth to fifteenth segment.

by their broad ends to the septum forming the anterior wall of the segment, and hanging freely from it into the coelom below the œsophagus.

*To see the ovaries and oviducts stretch the body-wall transversely and longitudinally, press the œsophagus to one side, and look for them with a lens.*

- b. The oviducts are a pair of short tubes, the wide mouths of which are placed in the hinder part of segment XIII., one opposite each ovary.

From the points where they perforate the septum, the oviducts run outwards and slightly backwards to their external openings on the ventral surface of segment XIV.

- c. The receptacula ovarum are a pair of reniform sacs, attached to the anterior wall of segment XIV. just above the oviducts, into the upper part of the funnel-like mouths of which they open.

- d. The spermathecae or receptacula seminis are two pairs of globular sacs lying in the hinder parts of segments IX. and X. respectively. Their ducts, which are short, run backwards and open to the exterior in the grooves between the ninth and tenth, and the tenth and eleventh segments, respectively, just within the line of the outer double row of setae.

In these the seminal fluid received from another worm is stored. The spermatozoa are aggregated into 'spermatophores' by the glandular apertures of the spermathecae and in this state are fixed to the body of another worm.

In *Allolobophora*, and exceptionally in *Lumbricus*, the spermathecae are situated in segments X. and XI., their ducts passing forwards to open in the same position as above.

2. The male organs consist of two pairs of testes; two pairs of seminal funnels, leading into a pair of vasa

deferentia ; and median and lateral vesiculæ seminales or testis-sacs.

The testes and the testis-sacs together correspond to the testes of a higher animal.

- a. The vesiculæ seminales vary greatly in form and size with the season of the year. When fully developed they form conspicuous milk-white or pinkish bodies at the sides of the œsophagus, and overlapping this.
  - i. A pair of anterior lateral vesiculæ seminales lie in segment IX. They are opaque white bodies attached to the posterior wall of the segment, one at each side of the œsophagus.
  - ii. Two pairs of posterior lateral vesiculæ seminales lie in segments XI. and XII. respectively. They are very much larger than the anterior vesiculæ, especially at certain seasons, and are attached to the anterior septa of their respective segments somewhat nearer the median plane than the anterior vesiculæ.
  - iii. A thin-roofed median vesicula seminalis, of considerable size, is situated in each of the segments X. and XI. below the œsophagus, which must be removed to expose them. Within each are a pair of testes and a pair of seminal funnels. With the anterior of these median vesiculæ the anterior lateral vesiculæ and the first pair of posterior lateral vesiculæ communicate. The second pair of posterior lateral vesiculæ open in similar fashion into the second median vesicula.

The median vesiculæ are absent in *Allobophora*.
- b. The testes are two pairs of small flattened digitate bodies attached to the septa in front of segments X. and XI. respectively, and projecting freely into

the cavities of the median vesiculæ seminales, not far from the nerve-cord.

*To see the testes, open the two median vesiculæ seminales without injuring the structures within them. Wash carefully.*

c. The seminal funnels are large opaque white much-folded membranous funnels, of which one pair is situated in each median vesicula seminalis, the open mouth being turned towards the testes, and almost enclosing them. Their narrow ends perforate the hinder septa of their respective segments (x. and xi.), and are continuous with the vasa efferentia.

d. The vasa deferentia. From the posterior end of each seminal funnel a fine convoluted tube, the vas efferens, runs outwards and backwards on the ventral body-wall. The two vasa efferentia of each side unite in segment xii., and the vasa deferentia so formed run back to open to the exterior by the apertures already seen on the ventral surface of segment xv. The vasa deferentia are slightly imbedded in the body-wall, and their exposure requires care.

### 3. Examination of the egg-capsule.

*Capsules may be obtained under stones and in earth or dung-heaps tenanted by Lumbricus. They are oval brown bodies, about the size of a wheat grain. Draw them, noticing the presence of well-developed young in advanced capsules. Examine their contents.*

### 4. Microscopical examination of the reproductive organs and of their contents.

a. The ovaries. *Remove an ovary entire by tearing away with fine forceps a small piece of the septum to which it is attached; examine in salt-solution; then fix, stain with carmine or hæmatoxylin, dehydrate, clear, and mount in balsam.*

The proximal and thicker end of the ovary is a solid mass of cells from which the ova are formed: the distal portion contains ripe ova. Each ovum is a large cell with very distinct nucleus and nucleolus. The nucleolus is stained by carmine more deeply than the rest of the cell.

- b. The receptacula ovarum. *Remove one and examine it as above.*

Ova may be seen in it at certain seasons.

- c. The contents of the spermathecae. *Remove a spermatheca and transfer it to a slide. Tease it in salt-solution and examine with low and high powers.*

The seminal fluid in the spermathecae contains innumerable mature spermatozoa, each of which is an exceedingly fine filament with a slightly thickened rod-like head at one end.

- d. The testes. *Remove a testis; stain, dehydrate, and clear it, and tease it in balsam: mount another in salt-solution. Examine with a high power.*

The spermatogonia are cells, each of which by division gives rise to spermatocytes. Only the earliest stages of the division occur in the testes, masses of spermatocytes leaving them, with numerous nuclei and tuberculated surfaces.

- e. The contents of the vesiculæ seminales. *Cover-glass preparation.*

1. *Remove a portion of one of the vesiculæ seminales to a slide, tease gently with needles and dilute to two or three times its bulk with normal salt-solution.*
2. *By means of a piece of the vesicula, held in fine forceps, spread a small drop of this liquid evenly over the surface of a clean cover-glass. Drop the 'smear' so made, face downwards, on to the surface of some 90 per cent. alcohol or other fixative in a*

*watch-glass, and leave it for about a minute. Transfer successively to 70 per cent., 50 per cent., 30 per cent. alcohol, and then to distilled water, never allowing the smear to dry. The changes of fluid can be made with a fine pipette, leaving the smear in the same watch-glass.*

3. *Stain in dilute Delafield's hæmatoxylin for about 15 minutes (see Appendix).*
4. *By means of a pipette wash with water and mount in a small drop of glycerin on a slide, or dehydrate, clear, and mount in balsam.*
5. *Examine under the microscope and draw the several stages shown.*

- The vesiculæ contain spermatozoa in all stages of development:—(1) the massed spermatocytes as they leave the testis; (2) a stage in which the tubercles, or **spermatids**, are more distinct and are produced outwards into filaments; (3) later stages in which the filaments are elongated to form the tails of the spermatozoa, while the bodies of the spermatids form their rod-like heads.

Stages in the life-history of the Protozoon parasite, **Monocystis** (p. 16), usually occur in the vesiculæ.

## F. The Nervous System.

This consists of a ventral cord, swollen slightly in each segment; and a pair of dorsal ganglia in front, connected with the ventral cord by a pair of connectives running round the sides of the alimentary canal.

1. The **nerve-collar** is a small ring of nervous substance surrounding the buccal sac just in front of the pharynx, in the third segment. It consists of a pair of pyriform **supra-oesophageal ganglia**, united by their broader ends in the median plane, and sending large nerves to the **prostomium**; a pair of lateral



connectives running round the sides of the buccal sac; and a pair of closely apposed ventral ganglia, the first pair of the ventral series.

## 2. The ventral nerve-cord.

*Remove the alimentary canal, from the pharynx backwards, without injuring the nerve-collar and ventral cord.*

The cord runs along the ventral body-wall in the middle line, giving off three pairs of nerves in each segment along nearly the whole length of the body. The cord is slightly swollen opposite the middle of the segments, the swellings or ganglia being more conspicuous in the hinder part of the body.

## III. EXAMINATION OF TRANSVERSE SECTIONS.

The structure of the body-wall and alimentary canal, and many other points in the anatomy of the earthworm, are best understood from a microscopical examination of transverse sections of the whole animal.

*To prepare these sections, kill a worm which has been fed on damp filter-paper for a few days and has thoroughly evacuated its food contents, and fix with the sublimate-acetic mixture; cut out about half an inch from the œsophageal region and also from the middle, and leave these in 70 per cent. spirit with trace of iodine added. Imbed, and cut into transverse sections with a microtome. Stain and mount the sections in order.*

## INTESTINAL REGION

### A. Shape.

The section is nearly circular in outline. The dorsal surface is indicated by the typhlosole, the ventral by the nerve-cord.

### B. The Integument.

1. The cuticle is a thin structureless superficial layer, often separated by the action of the reagents from the underlying epidermis.

2. The **epidermis** lies immediately below the cuticle. It consists of a single layer of columnar cells, set side by side at right angles to the surface, with nuclei near their bases. Many of these cells have the character of *goblet cells*, being distended by a granular secretion formed within them; other cells lying between these are extremely slender. In the

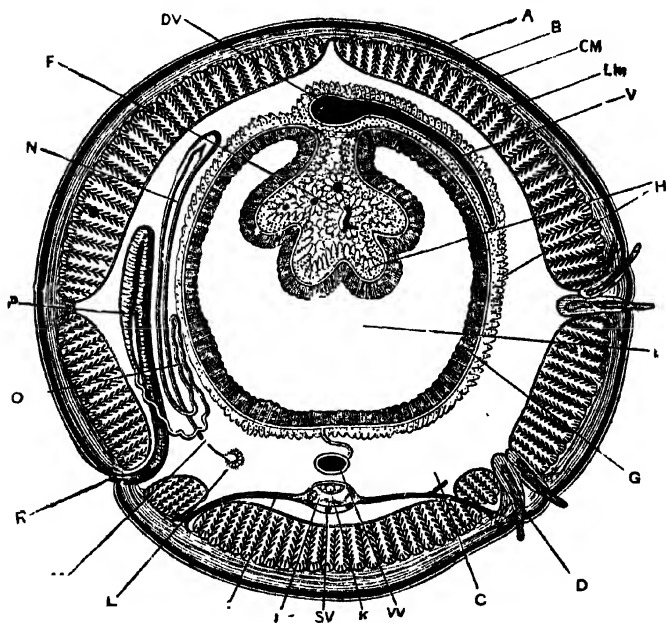


FIG. 27.—*Lumbricus*. A diagrammatic transverse section through the middle of the body. On the left side of the figure a nephridium is shown, and on the right side the setæ. The septa are not shown, and parts only of the circulatory system are represented. (A. M. M.)

A, cuticle. B, epidermis. C, cœlom. CM, layer of circular muscles. D, seta. DV, dorsal vessel. E, cavity of intestine. F, typhlosole, filled with yellow cells. G, epithelium of intestine. H, yellow cells. I, ventral nerve-cord. J, nerve. K, giant fibres. L, nephrostome. LM, layer of longitudinal muscles. M, the point where the nephridium perforates the septum between two segments: between the two cut ends the convoluted 'narrow tube' is intercalated, which is not shown in the figure. N, the first or long loop of the nephridium. O, the second or short loop of the nephridium. P, the third or terminal loop of the nephridium. R, external aperture of the nephridium. SV, subneural vessel. V, intestinal vessel. VV, ventral vessel.

clitellum the epidermis is greatly thickened. Blood-vessels penetrate between the epidermal cells.

3. The **dermis** is an exceedingly thin layer immediately beneath the epidermis.
4. The **setæ** are lodged in sacs, which are invaginations of the skin extending deep into the body, through both the muscular layers. They are cuticular structures, and are moved by special muscles. Setæ in various stages of development may be seen within the sacs.

#### C. The Muscular Layers of the Body-wall.

1. The **external layer**, which is rather thicker than the epidermis, consists of transverse fibres running round the body: it is completely interrupted at the grooves between the segments. The connective tissue between the muscle fibres is pigmented slightly; in the dorsal wall of the œsophageal region this pigmentation is very marked.
2. The **internal layer** is very much thicker than the external. It consists of longitudinal fibres, arranged on the sides of a series of radial longitudinal sheets, and having a feather-like appearance in transverse section.

#### D. The Coelom, or Body-cavity.

This is the space around the intestine, between it and the body-wall. On its outer surface it is lined by a thin peritoneal epithelium, and it contains a colourless fluid, with numerous amœboid corpuscles.

The peritoneal **yellow cells** lie outside the intestine and surround the vessels which return the blood from the intestine to the dorsal vessel. They are elongated granular cells of large size, and generally arranged radially to the surface of the intestine. They are very abundant in the cavity of the typhlosole, which they almost completely fill.

### E. Intestine.

This occupies the middle of the section. Its diameter is about half that of the body of the worm.

1. The **typhlosole** is a fold of the dorsal wall extending into the intestine from above, narrowing its cavity, and making it crescentic in transverse section.
2. The **epithelium** lining the intestine consists of a single layer of columnar ciliated cells.
3. The **muscular layer** of the intestinal wall is thin. The fibres, which are nearly all transverse in direction, are imbedded in a connective-tissue layer.

### F. The Nephridia.

These lie at the sides of the alimentary canal. Their appearance in transverse sections varies greatly according to the part of the nephridium through which the section happens to pass. By reference to the description of a nephridium, on page 77, it will be fairly easy to identify the parts present in any particular section that may be examined.

### G. The Septa.

Owing to their obliquity, parts of the septa are present in nearly all transverse sections, and lie in the body-cavity between the body-wall and the alimentary canal. Each septum is a thin sheet of connective tissue, in which are circular and radial muscles. The ventral edge of the septum is not attached to the body-wall near the middle line, a gap being left around the nerve-cord through which the coelomic fluid can pass from one segment to another.

### H. The Nerve-cord.

This lies near the ventral surface, just within the longitudinal muscle-layer, and is enclosed in a double connective-tissue sheath, between the two layers of which is a stratum of longitudinal muscle-fibres. •

In the sheath lie three longitudinal blood-vessels, a sub-neural below the cord, and a pair of lateral neural vessels at the sides. Along the dorsal surface of the cord are three 'giant-fibres' of nervous nature. The fibrous connective tissue of the sheath extends into the cord, dividing its fibres into two main bundles, and subdividing each of these into smaller ones. Nerve-cells of large size, each with distinct nucleus and nucleolus, form a layer along the whole length of the ventral and lateral surfaces of the cord: they are more abundant in the ganglionic enlargements.

### **I. The Blood-vessels.**

These are readily recognised by the deeply stained blood clots with which they are filled. The larger vessels have muscular walls. Besides the neural vessels just mentioned the following may be recognised:—

1. The **dorsal vessel** lies in the body-cavity above the intestine. It is of large size, and has masses of yellow cells at its sides.
2. The **intestinal vessels** lie in the walls of the intestine: they are surrounded by yellow cells, and may in some sections be seen to open into the dorsal vessel.
3. The **ventral vessel** lies between the nerve-cord and the intestine, and is connected with the latter by a median sheet of vascular connective tissue.
4. The **nephridial vessels**.
5. The **capillaries of the skin**.

### **ŒSOPHAGEAL REGION**

There is no typhlosole. Sections of the reproductive organs appear and block up the body-cavity. The vesiculæ and seminal funnels are especially obvious.

## CHAPTER VII.

### THE FRESHWATER MUSSEL. *Anodonta cygnea*.

THE body of the mussel is enclosed in a shell, the two halves or valves of which cover the right and left sides of the body respectively. These valves, which are hinged together along the median dorsal line, are normally kept slightly open by means of an elastic ligament along the hinge-line, but can be closed by powerful adductor muscles. When the valves are closed they completely conceal all parts of the body.

Mussels vary a good deal in size according to their age : a fair-sized specimen is about four and a half inches long, one and a half thick, and two and a half from the dorsal to the ventral edge.

The mussel lives in freshwater ponds and streams, with its anterior end buried somewhat obliquely in the mud of the bottom, and the posterior end projecting up into the water. By means of a muscular foot it can plough its way slowly along the bottom of the pond. Its food consists of minute organisms, both animal and vegetable, which are swept in at the hinder end of the shell by ciliary currents and carried forwards to the mouth, the stream of water so kept up serving for respiration as well as nutrition.

The sexes are distinct. The young embryos are retained within the gills of the mother during the early stages of their development ; they then hatch and attach themselves to fish. While attached they increase considerably in size and undergo a distinct metamorphosis. Finally they detach themselves, and adopt the mode of life of the adult.

## I. THE SHELL.

The shell is a cuticular product formed by the underlying epidermis. It is, therefore, entirely outside the body, and incapable of growth except by addition of new rings or new layers to the part already formed. It consists of an organic basis impregnated with calcareous salts.

## A. The Outer Surface of the Shell.

1. **Shape.** The anterior end of the shell is rounded, the posterior end more pointed, and the dorsal hinge-line straight.
2. The **umbo** is the oldest part of each valve. It is close to the hinge-line, and about a quarter of the length of the shell from its anterior end.
3. The **lines of growth** are the concentric curves on the surface of the shell, marking successive stages in its growth. Each of these lines was at one time the margin of the shell.

The shell does not grow uniformly in all directions. Growth is much more rapid towards the ventral than towards the dorsal surface, and more rapid posteriorly than anteriorly; hence the umbo or oldest part is close to the dorsal edge, and nearer the anterior than the posterior end.

4. The **ligament** connects the two valves together along the mid-dorsal line: it is a median, imperfectly calcified, and elastic part of the shell itself. It is very narrow at the anterior part of the hinge-line, and much broader behind. As the valves are only kept closed by contraction of the adductor muscles, they will open as soon as these muscles relax. Hence in dead specimens the valves always gape owing to the unopposed action of the elastic ligament.

## B. The Inner Surface of the Shell.

*Wedge open the valves of the shell with the handle of a*

scalpel or other instrument, so that the ventral edges of the valves are about half an inch apart, and the adductor muscles can be clearly seen. Note the mantle-lobes or flaps lining the shell-valves, and with a scalpel separate the right mantle-lobe from the shell.

Identify the positions of the adductor muscles by comparison with fig. 28, and detach with a scalpel first the anterior then the posterior adductor muscle from the right valve, keeping the edge of the knife close to the shell. As soon as this is done the valves will gape open about half or three-quarters of an inch, owing to the action of the ligament. Bend back the right valve of the shell, and remove it completely, cutting through the ligament along the hinge-line. Clean the detached valve, and examine it.

1. The **inner surface** has a white pearly appearance, except round the edge. The lines of growth are visible, but not nearly so plainly as on the outside.
2. The **hinge** is a smooth longitudinal ridge extending backwards from the umbo along the dorsal edge of the shell. When the valves are closed, the two hinges are in contact opposite the umbo, but gradually diverge from each other behind it.
3. The **ligament**, which is very strong and elastic, begins in front of the umbo, and extends back along the straight dorsal edge of the shell, being very narrow in front, but wider behind.
4. The **muscular impressions** are slight depressions in the surface of the shell at the places of attachment of the adductor and other muscles.
  - a. The **anterior adductor impression** is a large oval slightly depressed area, with its long axis vertical, close to the anterior end of the shell, and nearer the dorsal than the ventral edge.
  - b. The **anterior retractor impression** is small, and continuous with the posterior border of the anterior adductor impression.



- c. The **protractor impression** is a separate small impression, about  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch behind the lower part of the anterior adductor impression.
  - d. The **posterior adductor impression** is near the dorsal edge and posterior end of the shell, below and behind the hinder end of the ligament. It is rather larger than the anterior adductor impression, and is oval in shape, with the longer axis horizontal.
  - e. The **posterior retractor impression** is small, and continuous with the upper and anterior edge of the posterior adductor impression.
  - f. The **pallial line**, or line of attachment of the mantle to the shell, runs nearly parallel to the ventral edge of the shell, and about half an inch from it. It connects the hinder border of the posterior adductor impression with the ventral edge of that of the anterior adductor.
5. The **paths of shifting of the muscles** are slight triangular depressions, converging from the margins of the several muscular impressions towards the umbo. They mark the boundaries of the paths along which the muscles have shifted during the growth of the shell. In the young state, when the umbo and the part immediately around it form the whole valve, adductor and other muscles are present in the same relative positions as in the adult : during the growth of the shell by addition of new matter round its margin the muscles gradually shift outwards, increasing in size as they do so.

### C. The Structure of the Shell.

If the shell be broken across, and the edge examined with a pocket lens, it is seen to consist of three layers :

- 1. The **periostracum** or outer layer is thin, horny, and uncalcified. To it the brownish-green colour of

the shell is due. It is commonly, but erroneously, spoken of as the 'epidermis' of the shell.

In the growth of the shell this layer is the first to be formed, and the free edge of the shell, especially round the ventral border and the posterior end, consists of it alone. It is formed by the thickened edge of the mantle-fold.

The periostracum is reflected over the edge of the shell, and lines a narrow strip of its inner surface round the ventral border and at the two ends.

2. The middle or prismatic layer forms about half the thickness of the shell: it is very densely calcified, and consists of numerous polygonal prisms placed side by side, and obliquely to the surface of the shell.

Like the periostracum, it is formed by the edge of the mantle. It is visible on the outer surface of the shell at places where, as at the umbo, the periostracum has been rubbed off. It can also be seen round the margin of the shell on its inner surface.

3. The inner, nacreous or pearly layer lines the whole of the inner surface of the shell except a narrow marginal strip. Its thickness differs in different parts and increases with the age of the mussel. It consists of a number of superposed laminæ laden with calcareous particles. It is formed by the surface of the body and mantle in contact with the shell.

Pearls are formed in animals closely allied to the mussel by concentric deposits of this nacreous layer around parasites.

## II. DISSECTION OF THE MUSSEL.

*In dissecting the mussel, a small brush may with great advantage be used to remove the mucus and to clean the several parts.*

*Leave the animal in the left valve of the shell, and fix it down firmly to the dissecting-board under water. Pins can be passed through the ligament.*

#### A. External Characters.

The **muscles**. The **anterior** and **posterior adductors** are easily recognised, and form useful landmarks. Their fibres run transversely from one valve to the other, and by their contraction close the shell.

Close to the adductors are the smaller **protractor** and **retractor** muscles of the foot, the origins of which have already been seen on the inner surface of the shell.

The **protractor** is behind the lower border of the anterior adductor, and the **anterior retractor** is behind the upper part of the same muscle. The **posterior retractor** is continuous with the upper and anterior border of the posterior adductor.

2. The **right mantle-lobe** is the flap of integument which covers the side of the body: it is in contact during life with the inner surface of the shell, to which it is attached along the pallial line. Its inner surface is ciliated.

Dorsally it is continuous with the body-wall, of which it is an outgrowth. Its ventral border is free and grooved, this free border secreting the outer and middle layers of the shell.

The mantle-lobe begins in front above the middle of the anterior adductor muscle, and runs round its anterior border as a narrow fringe. Opposite the part of the body between the two adductor muscles the mantle-lobe is very wide, extending from near the dorsal border to the ventral edge of the shell.

At the hinder end of the animal, below the posterior adductor, the margin of the mantle which here bounds the inhalant aperture is very greatly

thickened and pigmented, and bears a fringe of tentacular processes.

Immediately behind the posterior adductor the mantle-lobe fuses with its fellow of the opposite side, and the fused borders run forwards along the dorsal surface of the posterior adductor for about half an inch. They then separate and continue forwards, as a pair of narrow fringes bounding a shallow groove, for about half an inch farther, where they cease.

3. The left mantle-lobe, which can as yet be only imperfectly seen, agrees exactly with the right, the animal being bilaterally symmetrical.
4. The pallial or mantle cavity is the space between the right and left mantle-lobes. In it lie the foot and the greater part of the visceral mass, the gills, and other organs.

It is divided by a horizontal partition, formed by the bases of the gills, into two chambers of very unequal size:—(1) the large ventral branchial chamber; (2) the smaller dorsal supra-branchial passages, which unite behind to form the cloacal chamber.

5. The pallial openings. If a mussel be placed in a vessel of water with a layer of mud or sand at the bottom and left to itself, it will assume the position described above, the anterior end being buried somewhat obliquely in the mud, and the posterior end projecting into the water. The valves will be slightly opened, and streams of water, which can be rendered clearly visible by adding a little colouring matter, will pass in and out of the posterior end, the in-going or inhaled stream being ventral, the exhaled dorsal.

This current is maintained by the cilia of the mantle, gills, and palps: it serves to supply water for nutrition and respiration, and to carry away the

faecal matter and excretory and reproductive products.

- a. The **inhalant aperture**, through which the inhaled stream enters the branchial chamber, is a vertical slit at the hinder end of the body : it is bordered laterally by the thickened posterior edges of the mantle-lobes, which bear the tentacular fringes. Below, it is incompletely closed by the approximation of the edges of the mantle-folds ; and above it is separated from the exhalant aperture by a horizontal partition formed by the fusion of the gills of the two sides with each other.
- b. The **exhalant or cloacal aperture** is much smaller than the inhalant opening, and lies immediately dorsal to this, and behind the posterior adductor muscle. It is bounded laterally by the thickened mantle borders, which have here no tentacles.

*Pass a seeker into the cloacal opening, and forwards along the supra-branchial cavity above the gills. Note the partition between the exhalant and inhalant apertures.*

#### 6. Organs lying in the branchial chamber.

*Turn back the right mantle-lobe as fully as possible.*

- a. The **foot and visceral mass** form a large laterally compressed oblong mass, about half the length of the shell, and lying between the two adductors. The upper two-thirds, which are paler in colour, form the visceral mass : the lower or ventral third forms a powerful muscular foot, orange-red in colour, which can be protruded between the valves in front, and is used by the animal for working its way along the bed of the pond in which it lives.
- b. The **gills** are two pairs of large lamellar organs lying at the sides of the visceral mass, between it and the mantle, and extending back beneath

the posterior adductor to the hinder end of the mantle-cavity. The outer gill is, in the female, often greatly distended with embryos.

- c. The labial palps are two pairs of triangular folds lying at the sides of the anterior part of the visceral mass, between the anterior adductor and the gills. Each pair consists of a couple of lamellæ, of about equal size, attached along their dorsal borders to the body-wall, and marked on their apposed surfaces by close-set transverse ridges.

#### 7. The external apertures.

- a. The mouth is in front, between the anterior adductor and the anterior border of the foot.

*Pass a seeker into the mouth, and note that it passes vertically upwards behind the anterior adductor into the stomach.*

The mouth is bordered by anterior and posterior lips, formed by the labial palps. The outer palp is continuous with its fellow of the opposite side, forming a low ridge-like anterior lip, immediately behind the anterior adductor. In a similar manner the two inner palps are continuous with each other, and form a posterior lip in front of the foot.

The deep groove between the outer and inner palps of each side thus leads directly into the mouth. The palps are richly ciliated, and their cilia waft towards the mouth the food particles, entangled in mucus, brought to them by the ciliary mechanism of the gills.

- b. The anus opens into the cloacal cavity, close to its external opening.

*Insert a seeker into the groove between the margins of the mantle-lobes above the posterior adductor, and pass it back over the adductor into the cloacal cavity. Slit up this canal so as to expose thoroughly the hinder part of the rectum, and the anus.*

•

*Insert a seeker into the anus and pass it upwards and forwards along the rectum as it lies on the dorsal surface of the posterior adductor.*

## B. The Gills.

*Cut away the right mantle-lobe completely with scissors, cutting along the base of the palps, round the anterior end of the gills, and back along the attached base of the outer gill. Take care not to damage the parts to which the mantle is attached.*

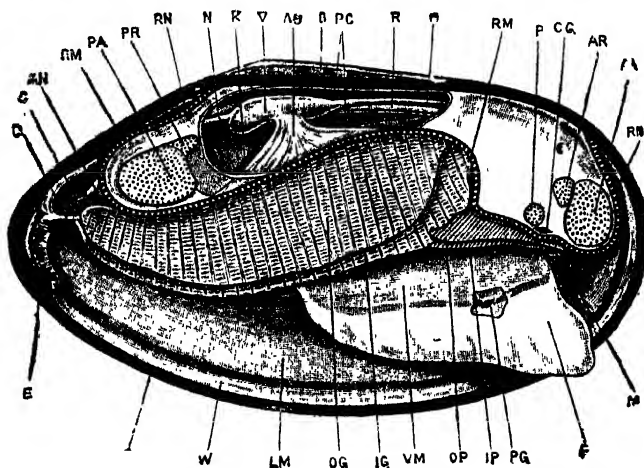


FIG. 28.—*Anodonta cygnea*. Diagrammatic view from the right side. The right valve of the shell and the right mantle-lobe have been removed, and the pericardial cavity opened from the right side. The line of attachment of the right mantle-lobe is indicated by the strong dotted line. (A. M. M.)

A, margin of the left valve of the shell in which the animal is lying. AA, anterior adductor muscle. AN, anus. AR, right anterior retractor muscle. AU, right auricle. B, ligament of the shell. C, cloacal cavity. CG, right cerebral ganglion. D, partition between the inhalant and exhalant apertures. E, tentacles bordering inhalant aperture. F, foot. H, anterior aorta. IG, inner gill of right side. IP, inner labial palp of right side. K, kidney. LM, left mantle-lobe. M, mouth. N, posterior aorta. OG, outer gill of right side. OP, outer labial palp of right side. P, right protractor muscle. PA, posterior adductor muscle. PC, pericardial cavity. PG, right pedal ganglion. PR, right posterior retractor muscle. R, rectum. RM, line of attachment of right lobe of mantle. RN, space between right and left lobes of mantle above the posterior adductor muscle. V, ventricle. VM, visceral mass. W, edge of left mantle-lobe.

Each gill consists of two lamellæ, continuous along their ventral borders. Each lamella is formed of very numerous vertical gill-filaments and horizontal bars, united to form a kind of trellis-work with very small meshes, the greater number of which are blocked up by fusion of the deeper surfaces of the filaments with each other.

The two lamellæ of each gill are further connected at intervals by thick vertical ridges, parallel to the vertical filaments. In the case of the inner gill these ridges are at intervals of about twenty filaments; in the outer gill they are more numerous, occurring at about every seventh filament.

### 1. The outer gill.

- a. The outer lamella of the outer gill is attached along
  - the whole length of its dorsal border to the inner surface of the mantle, close to its line of origin from the body-wall. This line of attachment of the gill runs obliquely across the body, its anterior end being near the dorsal surface a little below and behind the umbo, while its posterior end is below and behind the posterior adductor.
- b. The inner lamella of the outer gill is attached along its whole length to the outer lamella of the inner gill, and in front to the body-wall.

*Turn the outer gill back, so as to see its attachment to the inner gill.*

### 2. The inner gill.

- a. The outer lamella of the inner gill is attached along its whole length, as just noticed, to the inner lamella of the outer gill.
- b. The inner lamella of the inner gill differs in its attachment at different parts of its length.

*Turn the inner gill back, so as to expose the dorsal border of its inner lamella.*

•



- i. The **anterior part** of the dorsal border, about a quarter of its total length, is attached to the side of the visceral mass.
  - ii. The **middle portion** has a free edge, and extends back as far as the hinder border of the foot.
  - iii. The **posterior part**, behind the foot, is fused with the corresponding lamella of the gill of the opposite side, forming the partition between the inhalant and exhalant chambers of the mantle-cavity.
3. The **supra-branchial** or **exhalant passages** are wide longitudinal channels running just above the bases of the gills, and continuous with the interlamellar spaces of the gills.

Alongside the foot there are two such passages on each side, one above the outer gill, and one above the inner gill. The latter communicates with the large branchial chamber through the longitudinal slit between the inner lamella of the gill and the hinder part of the visceral mass.

Behind the foot there are only three passages, the two inner ones becoming continuous with each other; and beneath the posterior adductor the three unite to form a wide shallow passage, opening behind into the cloacal chamber.

*Pass a seeker into the cloacal cavity, and then forwards along the supra-branchial passages above the bases of the gills. Lay open first the outer passage of the right side, and then the inner one; taking care not to damage the kidney, which lies immediately above them. Note that the inner passages of the two sides are continuous with each other behind the foot, and that they communicate with the branchial cavity through the slits between the inner gills and the body.*

The respiratory stream of water, kept up by the cilia on the mantle and gills, enters at the inhalant aperture, passes forwards along the branchial cavity, and then through the meshes of the gills into the

supra-branchial passages. It then passes backwards along the supra-branchial passages to the cloacal cavity, and so out.

Respiration is probably effected mainly by the inner surfaces of the mantle-lobes, and not by the gills, the main function of which is to separate food-particles from the water and pass them on, entangled in mucus, to the mouth.

#### 4. The structure of the gills.

*Cut the gills across, and examine the cut edges with a pocket lens. Separate the two lamellæ from each other; and mount small pieces of them and examine with the microscope.*

*For a more minute study of the structure of the gills microscopical sections should be made through various parts.*

The individual filaments are slender vertical laterally compressed rods, the inner edges of which (*i.e.* those turned towards the space between the two lamellæ of the gill) are in most cases expanded laterally, and fused with their neighbours.

The filaments are clothed with a single layer of ciliated epithelial cells, which are cubical over the greater part of the surface, but columnar along the outer edge, a row of cells along each side of this outer edge having peculiarly long cilia. Each filament is strengthened by a double chitinous rod, which lies close to its outer border.

The inner or deeper parts of the bars consist chiefly of **lacunar tissue**, *i.e.* a loose network of branched cells, the meshes of which contain blood. Distinct blood-vessels are comparatively few; they are large, and lie principally in the inter-lamellar rods which bolt together the two lamellæ of each gill.

### C. The Circulatory System.

1. The **pericardial cavity** is an elongated space of considerable size lying along the dorsal surface of the animal, ventral to the ligament, and above the bases

of the gills. It contains the heart and is traversed by the rectum. Its walls are thin and semi-transparent behind; thicker and spongy in front. Through them the pulsations of the heart can be seen.

*Open the pericardial cavity by a longitudinal incision along the right side, and cut away as much of its walls as is necessary to expose the heart fully.*

2. The heart consists of three chambers, a median ventricle, and right and left auricles; the latter returning to the ventricle the blood from the mantle-lobes and gills of the right and left sides respectively.

- a. The right auricle is a triangular sac with very thin transparent walls. The base of the triangle lies along the dorsal border of the gills of the right side, from which it receives blood; the apex is attached to the side of the ventricle about the middle of its length, and opens into it by a valved aperture.

*To see the auricle, press the gills down gently.*

- b. The left auricle is similar to the right, and returns the blood from the left gills and mantle-lobe.
- c. The ventricle is an elongated, thick-walled, muscular sac of a reddish colour, lying in the middle of the pericardial cavity, and receiving the auricles laterally. Its posterior end is enlarged and bilobed.

The ventricle surrounds the rectum, which runs straight through the pericardial cavity from end to end, apparently traversing the ventricle, though not doing so in reality. In the early embryo the ventricle lies completely below the rectum, but during development its anterior end extends up at each side, and the two processes meet each other and unite above the rectum, completely surrounding it.

### 3. The arteries.

There are two main arteries, one arising from each end of the ventricle, which convey the aërated blood from the heart to all parts of the body. Their main branches may be followed by injecting them from the ventricle.

- a. The **anterior aorta** is a continuation of the anterior end of the ventricle: it runs forwards along the dorsal surface of the rectum, enters the visceral mass, and divides into **visceral** and **pedal arteries**, which supply the anterior two-thirds of the animal.
- b. The **posterior aorta** arises from the posterior end  
• of the ventricle, and runs backwards beneath the rectum: it divides into right and left branches, which supply the hinder part of the body.
4. The **veins**, except the largest ones, cannot be dissected without injecting them, and even then they are difficult to follow. They may, however, be identified in sections of hardened specimens (pp. 113, 114).
  - a. The **vena cava** is a median longitudinal vessel lying beneath the floor of the pericardium: it receives, in front, large veins returning blood from the foot and visceral mass; and behind, much smaller vessels from the posterior part of the body.
  - b. The **afferent branchial veins** are a pair of large vessels, running along the lines of attachment of the outer and inner gills to each other. Vessels arise from them which carry blood to the gills.
  - c. The **efferent branchial veins** run along the bases of the outer lamellæ of the outer gills: they return to the auricles the blood from the gills, and also receive at their anterior and posterior ends large vessels returning aërated blood from the mantle-lobes.  
•

## 5. The course of the circulation.

The ventricle receives arterial blood from the auricles, and drives it through the arteries all over the body. The blood from the foot and viscera is

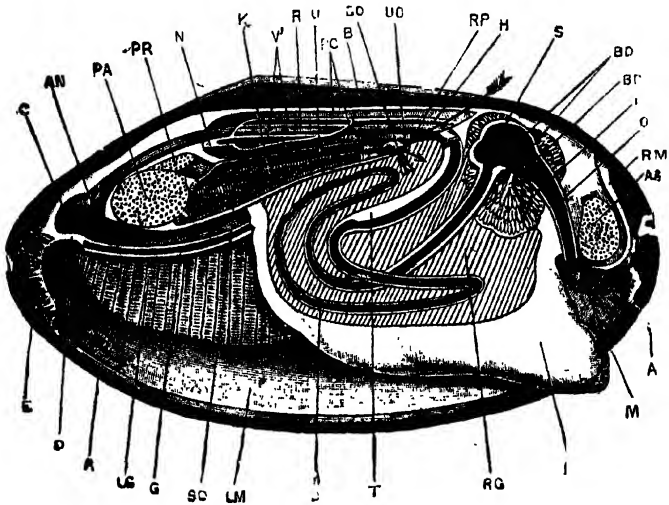


FIG. 29.—*Anodonta cygnea*. Diagrammatic view from the right side. The right valve of the shell, the right mantle-lobe, the right gills, and the right auricle have been removed. The alimentary canal has been laid open from the right side as far as the point where it enters the pericardial cavity. The pericardial cavity, the ventricle, and the right kidney and ureter have been laid open from the right side. The longer arrow passes from the pericardial cavity through the right reno-pericardial aperture into the right kidney. The shorter arrow passes through the external aperture of the right ureter. (A. M. M.)

A, margin of the left valve of the shell in which the animal is lying. AA, anterior adductor muscle. AN, anus. B, ligament of the shell. BD, bile-duct. BD', openings of bile-duct into stomach. C, cloacal cavity. D, septum between the cloacal and branchial cavities. E, tentacles bordering inhalant aperture. F, foot. G, line of fusion of inner lamellae of right and left inner gills. GO, genital aperture. H, anterior aorta. I, intestine. K, kidney. L, liver. LG, inner gill of left side. LM, left mantle-lobe. M, mouth. N, posterior aorta. O, oesophagus. PA, posterior adductor muscle. PC, pericardial cavity. PR, right posterior retractor muscle. R, rectum. RG, genital gland—ovary or testis. RM, line of attachment of right lobe of mantle. RP, right reno-pericardial aperture. S, stomach. SC, median supra-branchial canal, lying above the inner gills. T, typhlosole. U, right ureter. UO, external opening of right ureter. V, cavity of ventricle.

returned to the vena cava, from which it passes through the kidneys to the gills. From the gills it is returned by the efferent branchial veins to the auricles. The blood from the mantle-lobes is returned direct to the auricles, and does not pass through either the kidneys or the gills.

The circulation is in great part carried on through irregular channels or lacunæ.

#### D. The Kidneys.

The kidneys, or 'organs of Bojanus,' are paired, and lie side by side just beneath the pericardium.

Each kidney is a wide thin-walled tube, doubled on itself so that its two ends are closely approximated. These ends are anterior, and placed opposite the anterior end of the pericardium, while the loop is posterior and lies against the posterior adductor muscle.

The two limbs of the loop are very different: the ventral limb, or **kidney proper**, has spongy walls, and is lined throughout by a darkly pigmented glandular epithelium, so that the whole limb appears black. The dorsal limb, or **ureter**, is a wide thin-walled tube which conveys the excretory products forwards to the external opening.

*Dissect the right kidney as described below, examining first the ureter, and then the glandular portion.*

1. The **external opening of the ureter** is on the side of the body, between the two lamellæ of the inner gill, and a short distance in front of the point at which its inner lamella becomes free from the body.

*Turn back the gills of the right side, and pass one blade of a fine pair of scissors between the lamellæ of the inner gill, through the anterior end of the slit between the inner lamella and the body. Cut forwards horizontally through the junction of inner and outer gills parallel to their base, and about an eighth of an inch above this. Separate the cut edges, and gently brush the parts clean.*

The opening of the ureter is a small hole, with rather prominent white lips. Almost immediately below it is another and less conspicuous opening, the aperture of the genital duct, which should be recognised at once.

2. The ureter.

*Remove the gills of the right side completely, cutting along their lines of attachment to the body and mantle. Inflate the ureter through its external opening, and slit it up along its whole length.*

The ureter is a wide thin-walled passage lying above and to the outer side of the kidney. Its roof is continuous with, and inseparable from, the floor of the pericardium; and its floor is continuous with the roof of the kidney. On its inner side it is separated from the ureter of the other side by the vena cava. The two ureters communicate with each other through a large slit-like opening near their anterior ends.

3. The kidney appears as an elongated black body lying beneath the ureter. Posteriorly it enlarges considerably, and is in close contact with the posterior adductor muscle, which it partially embraces.

*Lay open the kidney longitudinally with scissors.*

Its walls are thrown into thick spongy folds, clothed with a black glandular epithelium. The enlarged posterior end opens into the hinder end of the ureter.

4. The reno-pericardial openings are a pair of crescentic slits at the anterior end of the pericardial cavity, in the angle between the rectum and the floor of the pericardium: they lead from the pericardial cavity into the anterior ends of the right and left kidneys respectively.

*Find the reno-pericardial opening on the right side, and pass a seeker through it, and backwards along the kidney. Slit open the passage, using the seeker as a guide.*

The pericardial cavity is developmentally a part of the body-cavity or coelom. Hence in the mussel, as in the earthworm and in many other animals, the kidneys are tubular organs with glandular walls, leading from the body-cavity to the exterior.

From the external apertures the excretory products are carried back by the outward respiratory stream along the supra-branchial passages to the cloacal cavity, and so out.

### E. The Nervous System.

The nervous system of the mussel consists of three main pairs of ganglia widely distant from each other, but united by nerve-connectives, and giving off nerves which supply the various organs.

The ganglia are about the size of large pin-heads. In the living or freshly-killed animal they are of a bright orange colour, which renders them easy to see.

1. The cerebral ganglia are placed one on each side of the hinder border of the mouth, just above the line of attachment of the mantle-lobe, and below and in front of the protractor muscle.

*The ganglion lies very close to the surface, just beneath the skin, and is readily exposed if its exact position be determined first.*

The two cerebral ganglia are connected together by a commissure which runs round the front of the mouth. Each ganglion also gives nerves to the palps, the anterior adductor muscle, and other adjacent parts, and is joined to the other ganglia of its side by nerve-connectives.

The cerebral ganglia of the mussel probably correspond to the cerebral (supra-oesophageal) and pleural ganglia of other molluscs, such as the snail.

2. The pedal ganglia are a pair of closely apposed ganglia about as large as the cerebral. They are situated in the foot, just above the junction of the



visceral portion with the foot proper, and about a third of the length of the foot from its anterior end.

*To find the pedal ganglia, split the anterior part of the foot with a scalpel in the median plane, and dissect the two halves apart until the ganglia are met with. The junction of the muscular and visceral portions is very clearly defined, and the ganglia lie close to it, in the visceral portion.*

Each pedal ganglion gives nerves to the foot.

The 'auditory' organ, **statocyst** or **otocyst**, which lies a little behind and below the ganglion, is innervated from the cerebral ganglion.

3. The **cerebro-pedal connectives** are a pair of nerve-cords connecting the cerebral ganglia with the pedal ganglia. They run in an almost straight course between the two ganglia, and are easily exposed.

4. The **visceral ganglia** are a pair of closely apposed ganglia, on the ventral surface of the posterior adductor muscle about the middle of its length.

*Pass a secker into the cloacal cavity, and along the median supra-branchial passage, and lay open this latter, if it has not already been done. The visceral ganglia are then readily found in the position noted above.*

From the ganglia nerves are distributed to the posterior adductor, the mantle, and other parts.

5. The **cerebro-visceral connectives** are a pair of long nerve-cords which connect the cerebral with the visceral ganglia.

From each cerebral ganglion the connective curves upwards and backwards through the visceral mass, lying close to the surface. It then runs backwards along the inner surface of the kidney to the visceral ganglion. The part in relation with the kidney is very easy to dissect: in front of the kidney the dissection is more troublesome, but presents no serious difficulty.

**F. The Digestive System.**

1. The alimentary canal is a convoluted tube the greater part of which lies in the visceral mass, imbedded in the liver and generative organ, while the terminal portion runs back through the pericardial cavity to the anus.

*Insert a seeker into the mouth, and, using this as a guide, slit up the œsophagus and stomach with scissors. Slit open in a similar fashion the whole length of the intestine, beginning at the rectum and working backwards to the stomach (cf. fig. 29, p. 106). A vertical longitudinal section of the whole visceral mass is a useful guide to this dissection.*

- a. The mouth lies immediately behind the anterior adductor, and between the lips formed by the palps: there are no jaws. The food, which consists of minute organisms of various kinds, both animal and vegetable, is swept in at the hinder end of the shell by the inhaled stream of water, and carried forwards to the mouth by the action of the cilia covering the palps.
- b. The œsophagus is a short straight tube passing almost vertically upwards behind the anterior adductor.
- c. The stomach is a dilated chamber partially subdivided by folding of its walls. A mass of reserve food material called the **crystalline style** is found within it in autumn.
- d. The intestine arises by a small orifice from the ventral surface of the stomach, and runs backwards and downwards into the visceral mass, where it is closely surrounded by the generative gland. It follows the course shown in fig. 29, and finally passes into the rectum.
- e. The rectum, which is rather wider than the intestine, runs upwards through the visceral mass to the anterior end of the pericardial cavity, through which it runs horizontally backwards, sur-

rounded by the ventricle. Behind the pericardial cavity it turns slightly downwards, runs over the posterior adductor, and opens into the cloacal cavity by a slit-like anus.

The ventral wall of the rectum is folded so as to form a prominent longitudinal ridge, the **typhlosole**, projecting into its cavity. This typhlosole is largest at the junction of the rectum with the intestine.

2. The 'liver' is a large many-lobed digestive gland surrounding the stomach and adjacent parts of the œsophagus and intestine, and opening into the stomach by several 'bile-ducts.'

#### G. The Reproductive System.

The sexes are separate. The reproductive organs are simple, and very similar in the two sexes.

The **ovary**, or **testis**, is very large, and, when the sexual products are ripe, forms the greater part of the visceral mass between the foot and the kidneys. The ducts of each side converge to the genital aperture (p. 108) which lies on the side of the body immediately below the opening of the ureter.

*Tease a small portion of the ovary, or testis, in salt-solution or glycerin; cover, and examine it with low and high powers.*

' In the female the eggs, after they escape from the genital aperture, pass in large numbers into the space between the two lamellæ of the outer gill, which they distend very greatly. Here they develop into embryos known as **glochidia**, which are in many respects very unlike the parent. They have bivalved shells, each valve of which is triangular and incurved at its apex so as to form a sharp tooth, the teeth of the two valves constituting an efficient pair of pincers. There is only a single adductor muscle: the gills are absent or rudimentary, as also is the foot. A long coiled filament serves to anchor the glochidium to the gill of the parent.

*Take a female in which the outer gills are distended with*

*embryos; cut the gill across; remove some of the embryos, mount them on a slide in water, and examine them with a microscope.*

### III. EXAMINATION OF TRANSVERSE SECTIONS.

Many points in the anatomy of the mussel, and notably the relations of the gills, kidneys, and heart, are best studied by means of a series of transverse sections.

*For this purpose take a good-sized specimen, and put it into  $\frac{1}{4}$  per cent. chromic acid, wedging the valves slightly open so that the acid may have free access to the branchial cavity. After a couple of days transfer it to spirit, and keep it till wanted.*

*To make the sections, remove both valves of the shell carefully; place the animal on a board, and cut it transversely with a razor into a series of slices about a quarter of an inch thick; arrange the sections in order in a dissecting dish under water; examine and draw them.*

The most instructive sections are those passing (1) through the renal and reproductive apertures; (2) through the middle of the ventricle; (3) through the posterior adductor. The chief features of these sections are as follows:

#### A. Transverse Section through the Renal and Reproductive Apertures.

The section passes through the widest part of the body, a little way behind the umbo.

1. The mantle-folds arise very close to the dorsal surface, one on each side of the pericardial cavity. The folded margin which secretes the two outer layers of the shell should be noticed.
2. The visceral mass is large and laterally compressed, and lies in the middle of the section between the two mantle-lobes. The chief part of its substance is made up of the lobes of the ovary, or testis. The

ventral edge of the visceral mass is produced into the wedge-shaped muscular foot.

3. The **alimentary canal**. The coils of the intestine are seen in the visceral mass, imbedded in the generative gland, and cut across about a half a dozen times. Lying in the pericardial cavity in the median line immediately beneath the dorsal surface is the rectum, in which the **typhlosole** or fold of its ventral surface is well seen.
4. The **gills** lie in the dorsal half of the mantle-cavity, between the visceral mass and the mantle. The attachments of their lamellæ to the body-wall are well seen. The inner lamella of each inner gill is attached to the base of the visceral mass. •

At the base of each gill is the **supra-branchial passage**, along which the respiratory stream of water flows backwards to the cloacal cavity.

5. The **circulatory system**.

- a. The **pericardial cavity** is nearly circular in outline; its roof and sides are thick and spongy, forming what is spoken of as **Keber's organ**.
- b. The **anterior aorta** lies on the dorsal surface of the rectum, and its cavity is slit-like in section.
- c. The **vena cava** lies in the median plane between the excretory organs and the visceral mass.
- d. The **afferent branchial vessels** lie one on each side, just above the attachment of the outer lamella of the inner gill and inner lamella of the outer gill.

6. The **excretory organs** are paired, and lie between the pericardium and the visceral mass.

- a. The glandular portions, or **kidneys proper**, are cut across close to their anterior ends. They are seen as a pair of small tubes, with glandular, longitudinally folded walls, lying side by side just

above the visceral mass and opposite the bases of the inner gills.

If the section has passed a little in front of the excretory apertures, the reno-pericardial passages from the pericardial cavity to the anterior ends of the kidneys are well seen.

- b. The ureters are cut through at the part where they communicate with each other across the median plane: they appear as a wide cavity immediately below the pericardium and above the kidneys. The external openings are to the outer sides of the kidneys, between the two lamellæ of each inner gill.

- 7. The reproductive apertures are immediately ventral to the excretory apertures; they may be followed with a seeker into ducts leading from the genital gland.

#### B. Transverse Section through the Middle of the Ventricle.

- 1. The mantle-lobes have the same appearance as in the previous section.
- 2. The visceral mass is cut across close to its posterior end, and hence is much smaller than in the previous section: it is occupied almost entirely by the ovary, or testis.
- 3. The alimentary canal. The intestine is cut across twice in the visceral mass; and the rectum with the typhlosole is cut across as it lies in the pericardial cavity.
- 4. The gills. The attachments of the gills are the same as in the previous section, except that the inner lamella of the inner gill ends in a free edge above.

At the base of each gill, between its lamellæ, is a wide supra-branchial passage. The inner canal of each side communicates with the branchial cavity through the slit between the unattached inner lamella of the gill and the base of the visceral mass.

## 5. The circulatory system.

- a. The pericardial cavity is very much larger and has thinner walls than in the previous section: it is triangular in shape.

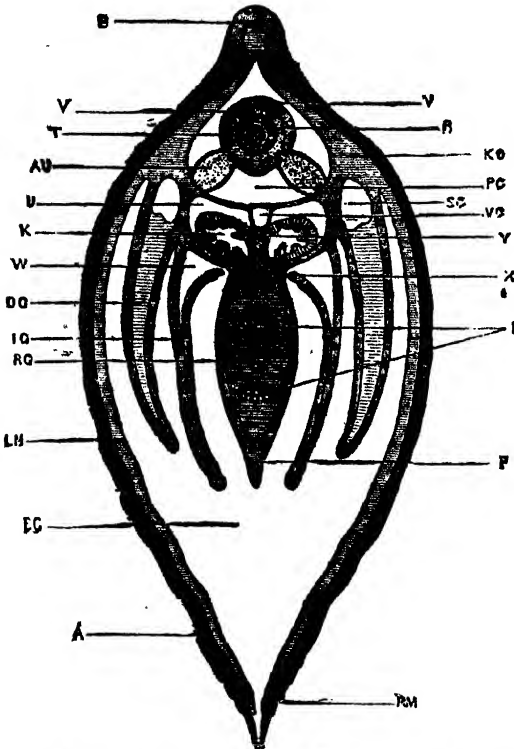


FIG. 30.—*Anodonta cygnea*. Transverse section of the animal passing through the middle of the length of the ventricle. The cavity of the heart is dotted. (A. M. M.)

A, shell. AU, left auricle. B, ligament. BC, branchial cavity. F, foot. I, intestine. IG, left inner gill. K, left kidney. KO, Keber's organ of the right side. LM, left mantle-lobe. OG, left outer gill. PC, pericardial cavity. R, cavity of rectum. RG, genital gland, ovary, or testis. RM, edge of right mantle-lobe. SC, supra-branchial canal of right outer gill. T, typhlosole. U, left ureter. V, wall of ventricle. V', cavity of ventricle. VC, vena cava. W, supra-branchial canal of left inner gill. X, free upper edge of the inner lamella of the right inner gill; between this edge and the body is the slit through which the branchial cavity communicates with the supra-branchial canal of the inner gill. Y, the right cerebro-visceral connective.

- b. The **ventricle** surrounds the rectum : its outer wall is thick and muscular, its inner wall thin.
- c. The **auricles** are a pair of very thin-walled sacs lying at the sides of the pericardial cavity. Each is attached along its outer side to the wall of the cavity, and by its inner border to the ventricle, into which it opens by a slit-like valved aperture.
- d. The **vena cava** is a median thin-walled tube lying in the floor of the pericardium.
- e. The **afferent branchial vessels**, right and left, lie just above the attachment of the outer lamella of the inner gill and inner lamella of the outer gill.

#### 6 The excretory organs.

- a. The **kidneys** are two wide tubes with thick spongy walls, whose epithelium is glandular, pigmented, and folded. They lie below the pericardium, above the visceral mass, and opposite the bases of the inner gills. Their inner walls are in contact with each other below ; and are separated dorsally by the vena cava, from which large sinuses enter them.
- b. The **ureters** are a pair of thin-walled tubes lying along the dorsal surface and outer sides of the kidneys, immediately below the pericardium. They are separated from each other in the median plane by the vena cava.

#### 7. The nervous system.

The connectives between the cerebral and visceral ganglia lie side by side, between the two kidneys and immediately below the vena cava.

#### C. Transverse Section through the Middle of the Posterior Adductor Muscle.

- 1. The **posterior adductor** is a large mass of transverse muscular bands running across the dorsal part of the section.



2. The gills are cut across close to their hinder end, and are small. The inner lamellæ of the two inner gills are united with each other in the median plane, forming a horizontal septum which separates the large branchial chamber below from the wide but shallow supra-branchial or exhalant chamber.
3. The rectum lies immediately dorsal to the adductor muscle. The typhlosole is still present.
4. The visceral ganglia lie side by side on the ventral surface of the adductor.

## CHAPTER VIII.

THE EDIBLE SNAIL. *Helix pomatia*.

THE snail is a terrestrial animal, feeding on leaves and other vegetable matter, which it rasps off with its toothed tongue, or odontophore. The dorsal surface of the body carries a spirally coiled univalve shell, which lodges most of the viscera, and within which the entire animal can be withdrawn for protection. It breathes air by means of a pulmonary chamber, formed by a fold of skin—the mantle—on the dorsal surface. It is hermaphrodite, but incapable of self-fertilisation. Breeding occurs at the beginning of summer, and the eggs are deposited in masses in holes in the ground.

The edible snail occurs in many parts of England, and can be readily obtained from dealers. On account of its large size it is preferable to the commoner English species, *H. aspersa*, to which, however, the following description will apply with but slight modification.

Snails are best killed by putting them into a jar of water that has been boiled and cooled; filling the jar to the brim, and closing it so as completely to exclude air, when they die in an expanded condition in about two days. In winter the mouth of the shell is closed by a plate of hardened mucus, the epiphragm, which must be removed before placing the snail in water. When dead the snail should be put into spirit for a short time before it is dissected, in order to facilitate the removal of the mucus.

## I. EXTERNAL CHARACTERS.

## A. Before Removal of the Shell.

1. The shell is a right-handed conical spiral, each turn of which overlaps and conceals the greater part of the

preceding turn. In the fully-formed shell there are about four and a half turns in the spiral. Occasionally the shell has a left-handed twist.

The shell is placed obliquely on the back of the animal with its apex to the right: its mouth is in front, and faces downwards and to the right. Like the shell of the mussel, it is a cuticular structure, i.e. it is outside the epidermis and is non-cellular. It has therefore no power of interstitial growth, but can only increase in size by the addition of new shell-matter round its free edge or mouth.

The shell will be more fully described after its removal from the body.

2. The part of the animal outside the shell. This consists chiefly of the head and the foot, and will vary greatly according to the degree of protrusion of the animal from the shell. It has a mammillated surface, capable of holding in the wrinkles a considerable amount of water. By increasing or diminishing this amount the activity of the snail is heightened or diminished.
  - a. The head is the rounded anterior extremity of the animal. It bears the two pairs of tentacles and the mouth.
    - i. The posterior or dorsal tentacles are a pair of long fleshy cylindrical processes of the dorsal surface of the head. They are very freely movable and can be completely withdrawn by invagination when the animal is disturbed. Each bears an eye at its extremity, which is only visible when the tentacle is fully protruded.
    - ii. The anterior or ventral tentacles are a pair of much smaller processes arising from the sides of the head, below and in front of the larger tentacles. Like these latter, they can be completely withdrawn by invagination.

- b. The foot is a large flattened muscular expansion of the ventral wall of the body. It is of an elongated oval shape, commencing in front with a rounded anterior border immediately below and behind the head, and narrowing behind to a long pointed extremity. A median longitudinal groove runs along its ventral surface.

*Watch the under surface of the foot as a snail creeps along a sheet of glass, and note the waves that pass from behind forwards along the muscles.*

- c. The collar is a thickened fleshy rim surrounding the mouth of the shell, and separated by a deep groove from the body which it encircles. It is
- thicker at the sides than in front or behind, and is especially thick on the right side in the angle of the mouth of the shell.

d. The external apertures.

- i. The mouth is a small aperture on the ventral surface of the anterior end of the head. It is bordered at the sides by two prominent lateral lips, and is separated from the foot by a less conspicuous inferior lip.

*Pass a seeker into the mouth, and then upwards and backwards into the cavity of the buccal mass.*

- ii. The genital aperture is on the right side of the head, behind and below the larger tentacle, and immediately behind the posterior edge of the right lip. From it a groove runs backwards along the dorsal surface of the body: a similar groove runs along the left side.

*Pass a seeker into the genital aperture, and backwards along the genital passage.*

- iii. The respiratory or pulmonary aperture. On the right side of the collar at its widest part is a deep notch, at the dorsal end of which

is a large round hole, the **respiratory aperture**, leading into the pulmonary chamber.

*Wash away the mucus from the collar on the right side; clean the notch in the collar, and pass a seeker through the respiratory aperture into the pulmonary chamber.*

- iv. The **anus** is a smaller slit-like hole, immediately below and to the right of the respiratory aperture. From it a spout-like groove runs forwards to the edge of the collar.

*Clean the anal opening and groove, and pass a seeker into the anus and back along the rectum.*

- v. The **aperture of the pedal mucous gland** is immediately below the inferior lip, between the head and the foot.

*Pass a seeker into the aperture, and backwards along the gland, and lay the gland open along its whole length.*

## B. After Removal of the Shell.

*Twist the animal out of the shell, taking care not to damage the upper part of the body in so doing. The shell generally comes off readily if the snail has been put into spirit for a short time after drowning. If there is any difficulty, the shell must be removed piecemeal with bone-forceps, following the suture.*

### 1. The Shell.

- a. The **colour** differs a good deal in different specimens. The ground colour is a yellowish brown, marked by darker longitudinal bands running round the spiral, and by obliquely transverse lines corresponding to the lines of growth.
- b. The **nucleus** is the oldest part of the shell, at the top of the spiral, corresponding to the umbo of the mussel-shell.
- c. The **mouth** is oval, and notched posteriorly by the penultimate turn of the shell. Its lip is smooth and slightly everted.

- d. The **lines of growth** are transverse ridges parallel to the mouth, and indicating successive positions of the mouth during the growth of the shell.
- e. The **umbilicus** is an opening on the under surface of the shell leading into the hollow axis or **columella**. It is sometimes closed.
- f. The **suture** is the line of junction of successive turns of the spiral.

*Clip away one-half of the shell with bone-forceps, and grind the cut edges flat on a file or stone.*

- g. The **columella** is the axial portion of the shell round which it is coiled : it is formed by the inner wall of the several turns, each of which overlaps rather more than half of the preceding one.
- h. The **structure of the shell**. The shell, like that of the mussel, consists of three layers, of which the outer and middle ones are formed by the collar, and consequently can only increase by additions round the mouth of the shell. The inner layer is formed by the integument covering the visceral mass.
  - i. The **periostracum** or **outer layer** is horny and uncalcified. To it the colour of the shell is due. It is usually rubbed off the uppermost turns of the shell, leaving the middle layer exposed.
  - ii. The **middle layer** is much the thickest of the three. It is densely calcified, and has an opaque porcellaneous appearance.
  - iii. The **inner** or **nacreous layer** has a glistening, pearly appearance, and a very smooth surface. It is formed by the superposition of a number of delicate densely calcified laminae.
- 2. The **visceral hump** is the part of the snail which is permanently lodged within the shell. It is the elongated and spirally coiled dorsal part of the animal, and contains the greater part of the viscera. It is covered by a very thin layer of integument which secretes the nacreous layer of the shell, and which

is sufficiently transparent to allow the several organs to be seen through it.

For convenience of description the basal or largest turn of the spiral, beginning with the collar, will be spoken of as the first turn, the next as the second, and so on.

*Place the snail in a dissecting dish under water, and determine the positions of the organs mentioned below. Note that the outer side of the spiral corresponds to the animal's left side, and the inner side to the animal's right.*

- a. The **kidney** is a large, somewhat triangular body, of a yellowish-white colour and granular appearance, lying about halfway round the first turn of the spiral, opposite to the collar.
- b. The **pericardium**, enclosing the heart, is an oval sac, lying immediately to the left of the anterior half of the kidney, which is notched to receive it.
- c. The **mantle**, forming the thin roof of the respiratory cavity, extends forwards along the dorsal surface and left side of the body, from the pericardium and kidney to the collar.
- d. The **liver** is a dark reddish-brown mass, which begins immediately beyond the pericardium and kidney, and extends to the top of the spiral.
- e. The **intestine** is a thin-walled tube, much paler in colour than the liver, and appearing on the surface at one or two places in the first and second turns of the spiral.
- f. The **rectum** runs along the right border of the first half-turn of the spiral, just below the ridge-like thickening which borders the right or inner side of the spiral.
- g. The **albumen gland** is a large white or yellowish mass at the junction of the first and second turns of the spiral. It separates the right and left lobes of the liver from each other.

- h. The hermaphrodite gland is a small yellowish body on the inner side of the upper half on the second turn of the spiral.
- i. The columellar muscle, by which the animal can be retracted within the shell, runs along the right or inner side of the spiral, and is attached to the columella in the upper half of the first turn.

## II. DISSECTION OF THE MANTLE-CAVITY AND ORGANS IN RELATION WITH IT.

The respiratory cavity, or mantle-cavity, of the snail lies along the dorsal surface, beginning at the collar, and extending backwards rather more than three-fourths of the way round the first turn of the spiral. The mantle is developed as a transverse fold of body-wall which, arising from the dorsal surface of the visceral mass, grows forwards along the back, forming in front a thickened rim, the collar. Between the mantle-fold and the back of the animal is the large mantle-cavity, which at first opens anteriorly by a wide orifice. Fusion of the collar with the body-wall reduces this orifice to a small round aperture on the right side, the **respiratory or pulmonary aperture**, through which air alternately enters and leaves the cavity during respiration.

In close relation with the mantle-cavity are the rectum, the heart, and the kidney and ureter.

*Place the snail in a dissecting dish under water, and pin it firmly down through the foot, with the dorsal surface upward. Open the mantle-cavity by a transverse incision through its thin roof, immediately behind the collar. Cut backwards from each end of the incision along the sides of the cavity to its posterior end, cutting along the left side close to the junction of the mantle and body-wall, and along the right side about a quarter of an inch to the left of the prominent ridge that borders this side, midway between this and the right border of the kidney.*

*Turn back the roof of the mantle-cavity, and pin it down so as fully to expose the pericardium and kidney.*



### A. The Walls of the Mantle-cavity.

1. The roof and sides of the cavity are formed by the mantle itself, a thin fold of skin which bears on its under surface a very rich network of large blood-vessels, especially abundant in front and along the right side.

These vessels, in which the blood is aerated, unite to form a large trunk, the **pulmonary vein**, which

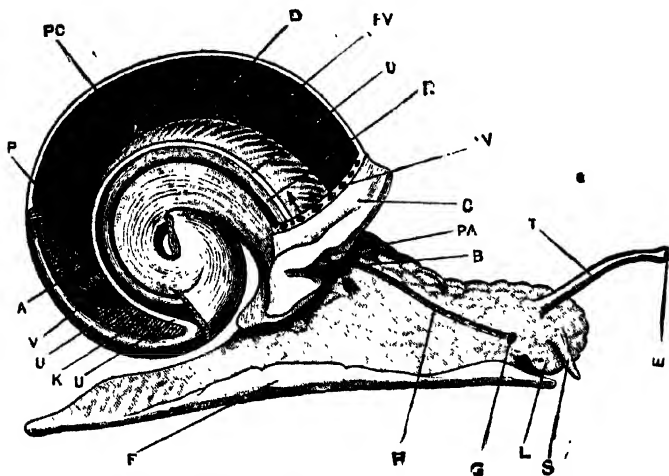


FIG. 31.—*Helix pomatia*. Dissection from the right side to show the mantle-cavity and organs in relation with it. The arrow passes through the pulmonary aperture into the mantle-cavity. The shell and the upper part of the spiral visceral mass have been removed. (A. M. M.)

A, auricle. B, anus. C, collar. D, dorsal body-wall forming the floor of the mantle-cavity. E, eye. F, foot. G, genital aperture. H, groove leading to genital aperture. K, kidney. L, lip. P, pulmonary vein. PA, pulmonary aperture. PC, pulmonary or mantle-cavity. PV, pulmonary vessels in roof of mantle-cavity. PV', cut ends of pulmonary vessels. R, rectum. S, anterior tentacle. T, posterior tentacle. U, ureter. V, ventricle.

takes back the oxygenated blood to the heart, running along the left side of the kidney (see p. 141).

The mantle is greatly thickened in front to form the collar: posteriorly it is thickened by the kidney and pericardium, both of which lie in its substance.

2. The floor of the cavity, which is formed by the dorsal wall of the body, is muscular, and strongly arched from side to side. Contraction of its muscles causes flattening of the floor and protrusion of the body further out of the shell, and thus enlarges the cavity, causing an inrush of air through the pulmonary aperture. On retraction of the body, the floor resumes its previous convex shape, diminishing the size of the cavity and effecting expiration.

By alternate protrusion and retraction of the body the air in the mantle-cavity is continually renewed, and the cavity thus functions as a lung.

#### B. The Organs in relation with the Mantle-cavity.

##### 1. The pericardial cavity and heart.

- a. The pericardial cavity, which has already been seen from the exterior, is oval, thin-walled, and half an inch or more in length. It lies in the roof of the mantle-cavity at its posterior end and left side, and is in close contact with the left side of the kidney about the middle of its length.

*Open the pericardial cavity to expose the heart.*

- b. The heart has two chambers, of about equal size.
  - i. The auricle is proximal, i.e. nearer the collar, and has thin walls. It receives in front the pulmonary vein, which returns to it oxygenated blood from the lung.
  - ii. The ventricle is the pear-shaped distal division of the heart, with thick muscular walls. It receives oxygenated blood from the auricle, and drives it through the aorta to all parts of the body.

The blood-vessels will be described later on.

##### 2. The kidney and ureter.

- a. The kidney is a large pale yellow triangular body in the posterior part of the roof of the mantle-

cavity. Its left side is notched to receive the pericardium, which lies close against it.

- i. The reno-pericardial canal is a narrow ciliated passage leading from the pericardial cavity to the kidney. Its pericardial opening is about the middle of the length of the cavity, opposite the ventricle, and close to the inner or ventral border of the septum between the pericardial cavity and the kidney.

*The reno-pericardial passage is difficult to make out. To see it, take a fresh snail, make a small hole into the pericardial cavity, and inject into it carmine or other colouring matter suspended in water. This will pass into the kidney along the passage, which can then be followed.*

- ii. The structure of the kidney. The kidney is a sac lined by a glandular epithelium, and with its walls thrown into a large number of lamellar folds projecting into its cavity.

*Slit open the kidney longitudinally; wash it out with a gentle stream of water, and note its structure.*

- b. The ureter is a thin-walled duct which commences at the proximal end of the kidney and runs back along its right side to the distal end. It then turns sharply forwards, and runs along the right side of the mantle-cavity to its anterior end, lying dorsal to the rectum, and just within the prominent ridge-like fold that marks the junction of the roof and right side of the mantle-cavity.

In front it opens into the mantle-cavity immediately above and to the right of the pulmonary aperture. The opening is slit-like, and is continued as two divergent grooves with prominent lips, which run down the right and left sides of the pulmonary aperture, the right groove being continuous below with the spout-like aperture of the rectum.

*Insert one blade of a pair of scissors into the pulmonary aperture from the outside, and cut through the collar, keeping close to the left side of the aperture. Turn the right lip of the aperture over to the right side. Pass a seeker into the rectum from the anus so as to identify it. Note the ureter running along the right side of the rectum, but dorsal to it in the natural position of the parts. Trace the ureter forwards to its opening, and inflate it with a blowpipe. Insert a seeker into the opening, and, using this as a guide, slit up the ureter along its whole length, following it back to the hinder end of the mantle-cavity, and then forwards close alongside the kidney to its anterior end, into which it opens.*

3. The rectum is a wide tube running along the right side of the mantle-cavity, ventral to the ureter. It opens in front at the anus, which has already been seen.

*Insert a bristle or seeker into the rectum from the anus, and note carefully the relations of the anus and the respiratory and renal apertures.*

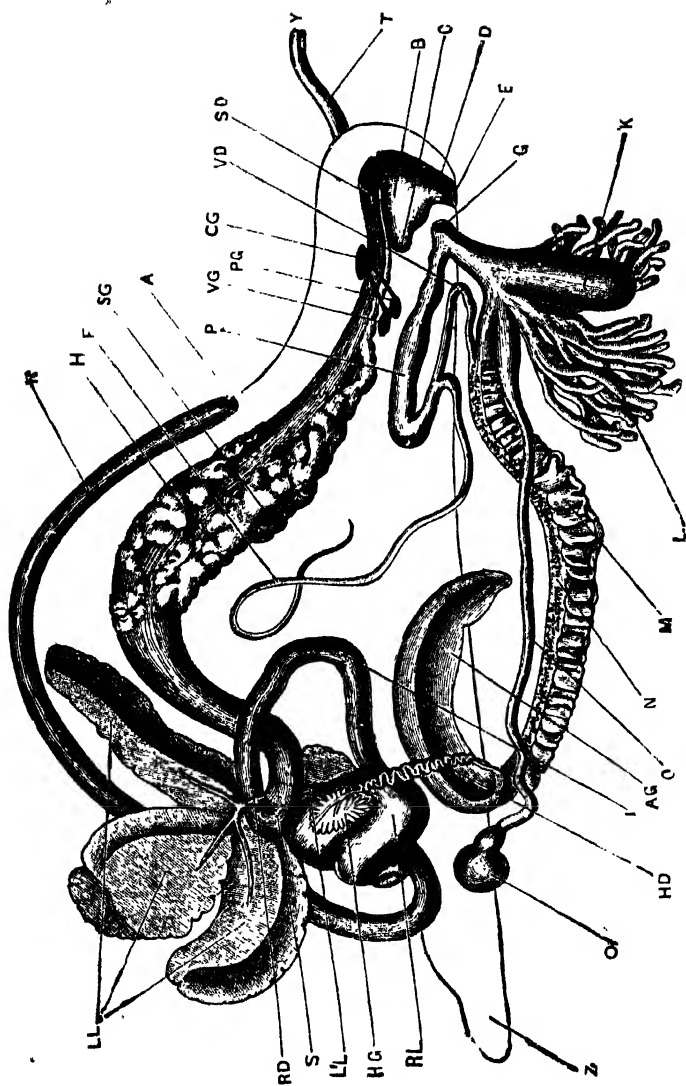
### III. DISSECTION OF THE DIGESTIVE SYSTEM.

*Cut away the part of the collar to the left of the pulmonary aperture. Detach the right side of the collar, with the anal aperture, from the body-wall. Separate the rectum from the body by cutting along the right side of the mantle, just below the rectum, as far back as the hinder end of the mantle-cavity. Turn the rectum back, and pin it down.*

*Make a median longitudinal incision through the floor of the mantle-cavity, and continue it forwards along the head to its anterior end. Dissect the flaps away from the underlying parts, and pin them out right and left.*

*Carefully remove the thin skin covering the spiral visceral mass, and unravel the reproductive organs, which are white in colour and very bulky, and the alimentary canal, the coils of which are very intimately connected with the liver.*

*Arrange the reproductive organs on the right, the digestive organs on the left side of the dissection.*



*The removal of the integument from the visceral mass requires care, but presents no great difficulty. Special care is needed at the posterior end of the mantle-cavity, where the parts are rather firmly bound together.*

*The dissection is greatly facilitated by frequent washing under the tap.*

### A. Alimentary Canal.

The alimentary canal is a convoluted tube, of nearly uniform size along the greater part of its length, but presenting special features in its anterior portion.

1. The **buccal mass** or pharynx is the enlarged anterior end of the canal into which the mouth opens. It forms a prominent rounded mass in the head, with stout muscular walls, and will be more fully examined at a later stage of the dissection (p. 138). It contains the **odontophore**.

*Insert a seeker into the mouth, and note that it passes upwards into the buccal mass.*

2. The **œsophagus** is a narrow thin-walled tube, which arises from the dorsal surface of the buccal mass and runs backwards, passing into the crop.
3. The **crop** is a large fusiform thin-walled dilatation of the alimentary canal, lying partly in front of the visceral hump, partly in the first turn of the spire. It is widest about the middle of its length, and gradually narrows behind.

FIG. 32.—*Helix pomatia*. Dissection from the right side to show the digestive and reproductive systems. (A. M. M.)

A, anus. AG, albumen gland. B, buccal mass. C, sac of radula. CG, cerebral ganglion. D, jaw. E, mouth. F, flagellum. G, genital aperture. H, crop. HD, hermaphrodite duct. HG, hermaphrodite gland. I, intestine. K, dart sac. L, mucous glands. LD, left bile-duct. LL, left lobes of liver. M, female portion of the common duct. N, male portion of the common duct. O, receptaculum seminis. O', dilated end of receptaculum seminis. P, penis, retracted. PG, pedal ganglion. R, rectum. RD, right bile-duct. RL, right lobe of liver. S, 'stomach.' SD, salivary duct. SG, salivary gland. T, tentacle. VD, vas deferens. V, visceropleural ganglion. Y, eye. Z, posterior end of foot.

4. The 'stomach' is a slightly dilated loop of the alimentary canal, between the crop and the intestine. It lies close to the surface of the visceral hump, near the first part of the second turn of the spire, and between the right and left lobes of the liver. Its mucous membrane is thrown into longitudinal folds.
5. The intestine describes a somewhat S-shaped course, and is imbedded in the liver, from which it is not very easy to separate it. From the stomach it runs back round the first turn of the spiral, lying in a groove on the outer side of the left lobe of the liver, to the hinder end of the mantle-cavity, where it passes into the rectum. It is superficial along a great part of its course.
6. The rectum has already been traced along the right side of the mantle-cavity to the anus.

#### B. The Digestive Glands.

1. The salivary glands are a pair of large white lobulated glands lying on the upper surface and the sides of the crop, to the walls of which they are attached by numerous strands of connective tissue. Their ducts, which are long and slender, run forwards and open into the buccal mass, one on each side of the oesophagus.
2. The liver is a very large bilobed gland, of a reddish-brown colour, which forms a large part of the visceral hump.
  - a. The left lobe of the liver is the larger of the two, and is partially subdivided into three lobes. It lies in the upper half of the first turn of the spire, immediately behind the mantle-cavity, and is grooved on its outer surface by the intestine. It has three main ducts, which unite to open by a single large aperture into the left side of the stomach.

- b. The right lobe of the liver occupies the greater part of the second and upper turns of the spire. It is separated from the left lobe by the posterior end of the crop, the stomach and the proximal part of the intestine, and the albumen gland. It has one large duct, which opens into the right side of the stomach, almost opposite to the left duct, but slightly beyond it.

*Slit up the stomach, and wash out its contents. Note the openings of the bile-ducts, and follow these with a seeker into the lobes of the liver.*

#### IV. DISSECTION OF THE REPRODUCTIVE SYSTEM.

The snail is hermaphrodite, but does not fertilise its own ova. As is usual in such cases, the reproductive organs are extremely complex.

1. The hermaphrodite gland is a small yellowish body lying on the inner side of the second turn of the spire, and closely imbedded in the right lobe of the liver. Within it both ova and spermatozoa are produced.

*Place a small piece of the hermaphrodite gland on a slide in a drop of water ; tease it slightly ; cover ; and examine with low and high powers.*

The gland consists of a number of finger-like follicles, in each of which ova are developed in the outer wall, and spermatozoa in the more central part. The ova are large round granular cells, with very large reticulate nuclei : the spermatozoa, which are generally aggregated in wisp-like bundles, have small rod-like heads and very long tails.

2. The hermaphrodite duct is a very sinuous duct, of a whitish colour, lying along the inner side of the spire close to the columella, and opening into the inner side of the albumen gland.



3. The albumen gland is an elongated compact yellowish-white body, varying greatly in size at different times. It lies in the upper half of the first turn of the spire along its inner side, between the stomach and the left lobe of the liver.
4. The common duct arises from the end of the albumen gland, close to the point of entrance of the hermaphrodite duct, and runs forwards through the body almost to the head, lying along the right side of the crop and oesophagus, and slightly ventral to these.

It is very wide, and along the greater part of its length is incompletely divided by a longitudinal septum into two parallel ducts. Of these one, the walls of which are thrown into very numerous and prominent transverse folds, serves for the passage of the ova; while the other, which transmits the spermatozoa, has a comparatively smooth surface, but has its walls thickened by a whitish glandular prostatic mass. At their anterior ends the two ducts separate completely from each other as oviduct and vas deferens respectively.

*Slit open the common duct longitudinally; and note the septum, which partially divides it into male and female ducts.*

5. The male duct and its accessory organs.

- a. The vas deferens is a slender, slightly convoluted tube of uniform diameter, which runs forwards along the inner side of the female organs, between these and the buccal mass, passes under the retractor muscle of the right upper tentacle, and then runs back to open into the base of the penis.
- b. The flagellum is a long tubular diverticulum, which arises from the vas deferens just before it reaches the penis. It lies along the dorsal surface of the crop and other viscera. In it the spermatozoa are agglutinated together to form a long rod-like body, the spermatophore.

- c. The **penis** is a muscular tube continuous with the vas deferens, and lying somewhat obliquely across the oesophagus just behind the buccal mass: it opens to the exterior at the genital pore, through which it can be protruded.

To the penis is attached the **retractor penis** muscle, a narrow muscular band, which arises from the floor of the mantle-cavity, and runs downwards and forwards to its insertion.

6. The female duct and its accessory organs.

- a. The **oviduct** is a short thick-walled tube, running forwards from the point at which it leaves the vas deferens.
- b. The **vagina** is a thick-walled tube into which the oviduct opens in front, and which runs forwards to open with the penis at the common genital pore.
- c. The **mucous glands** are two tufts of tubular glands, opening by a pair of apertures into the vagina; each tuft consists of thirty to forty finger-like processes.
- d. The **dart sac** is a large pyriform sac opening into the vagina just beyond the mucous glands. It has very thick walls, and contains a quadrangular calcareous spicule, the dart.
- e. The **spermatheca**, or **receptaculum seminis**, is a long caecal diverticulum from the hinder end of the vagina. It lies alongside the common duct, and its hinder end is expanded into a globular dilatation just behind the pericardium and kidney. It is of about the same length as the flagellum, and serves to lodge the spermatophore received from another snail.

A small diverticulum is very commonly given off about a third of its length from the vagina.

3. The **albumen gland** is an elongated compact yellowish-white body, varying greatly in size at different times. It lies in the upper half of the first turn of the spire along its inner side, between the stomach and the left lobe of the liver.
4. The **common duct** arises from the end of the albumen gland, close to the point of entrance of the hermaphrodite duct, and runs forwards through the body almost to the head, lying along the right side of the crop and œsophagus, and slightly ventral to these.

It is very wide, and along the greater part of its length is incompletely divided by a longitudinal septum into two parallel ducts. Of these one, the walls of which are thrown into very numerous and prominent transverse folds, serves for the passage of the ova; while the other, which transmits the spermatozoa, has a comparatively smooth surface, but has its walls thickened by a whitish glandular prostatic mass. At their anterior ends the two ducts separate completely from each other as **oviduct** and **vas deferens** respectively.

*Slit open the common duct longitudinally; and note the septum, which partially divides it into male and female ducts.*

5. The male duct and its accessory organs.

- a. The **vas deferens** is a slender, slightly convoluted tube of uniform diameter, which runs forwards along the inner side of the female organs, between these and the buccal mass, passes under the retractor muscle of the right upper tentacle, and then runs back to open into the base of the penis.
- b. The **flagellum** is a long tubular diverticulum, which arises from the vas deferens just before it reaches the penis. It lies along the dorsal surface of the crop and other viscera. In it the spermatozoa are agglutinated together to form a long rod-like body, the **spermatophore**.

- c. The **penis** is a muscular tube continuous with the vas deferens, and lying somewhat obliquely across the oesophagus just behind the buccal mass: it opens to the exterior at the genital pore, through which it can be protruded.

To the penis is attached the **retractor penis** muscle, a narrow muscular band, which arises from the floor of the mantle-cavity, and runs downwards and forwards to its insertion.

6. The female duct and its accessory organs.

- a. The **oviduct** is a short thick-walled tube, running forwards from the point at which it leaves the vas deferens.
- b. The **vagina** is a thick-walled tube into which the oviduct opens in front, and which runs forwards to open with the penis at the common genital pore.
- c. The **mucous glands** are two tufts of tubular glands, opening by a pair of apertures into the vagina; each tuft consists of thirty to forty finger-like processes.
- d. The **dart sac** is a large pyriform sac opening into the vagina just beyond the mucous glands. It has very thick walls, and contains a quadrangular calcareous spicule, the dart.
- e. The **spermatheca**, or **receptaculum seminis**, is a long caecal diverticulum from the hinder end of the vagina. It lies alongside the common duct, and its hinder end is expanded into a globular dilatation just behind the pericardium and kidney. It is of about the same length as the flagellum, and serves to lodge the spermatophore received from another snail.

A small diverticulum is very commonly given off about a third of its length from the vagina.

In *H. aspersa* this is largely developed and forms the longer portion of the spermatheca.

Care must be taken not to mistake the spermatheca for the vas deferens, nor to cut away its globular dilatation during the dissection of other parts.

## V. DISSECTION OF THE NERVOUS SYSTEM.

The nervous system consists of paired ganglia, of commissures and connectives uniting them, and of nerves running from these central organs to all parts of the body. The chief ganglia with their commissures and connectives form a nerve-collar encircling the anterior end of the alimentary canal. When the head is protruded this collar surrounds the œsophagus immediately behind the buccal mass; but when the head is retracted the buccal mass is pulled back through the collar, which then lies in front of it.

The ganglia are enveloped in a rather dense layer of connective tissue, which must be removed before their shape can be determined.

1. The supra-œsophageal or cerebral ganglia are a pair of closely apposed pyriform masses, forming a broad transverse band across the dorsal surface of the alimentary canal.

From the outer ends of the ganglia large nerves run to both pairs of tentacles and to the lips.

From their under or ventral surface a pair of **buccal nerves** run forwards alongside the œsophagus, and end in a pair of small **buccal ganglia**, which lie at the outer sides of the salivary ducts close to their openings into the buccal mass. The buccal ganglia are connected by a transverse commissure, and from them nerves arise supplying the buccal mass.

From the posterior and outer border of each supra-œsophageal ganglion two stout connectives pass downwards and slightly backwards to the sub-

oesophageal ganglia. Between these two on each side is the slender 'auditory' nerve.

2. The **sub-oesophageal ganglia** are a number of closely approximated ganglionic masses, the boundaries of which are difficult to determine. The anterior aorta runs through the centre of the mass, marking the division between the antero-inferior portion, or **pedal ganglia**, and the postero-superior portion, or **viscero-pleural ganglia**.

- a. The **pedal ganglia** are a pair of closely apposed masses, from which a number of large nerves pass to the foot.

- b. The **viscero-pleural ganglia** consist of at least two
    - pairs of ganglionic masses, closely apposed to each other and to the pedal ganglia. From them large nerves pass outwards to the viscera and to the body-wall.

3. The **structure of the ganglia**.

*Remove one of the ganglia; place it in 1 per cent. acetic acid for a short time to soften the connective tissue, and then tease it on a slide in glycerin. Cover; and examine it with low and high powers.*

The **nerve-cells** are large granular cells with very large and distinctly reticulate nuclei, and with long branching processes by which they are connected with each other and with the nerve-fibres.

## VI. THE SENSE ORGANS.

1. The **eyes** are placed one at the end of each of the larger tentacles, and are only exposed when these are fully protruded. Each receives a branch from the large nerve supplying the tentacle.

Each eye is a small spherical vesicle, the wall of which is strongly pigmented in its posterior portion, and lined by a layer of **retinal cells**. The cavity of

the vesicle is partially filled by a large cuticular lens, which projects into it from its anterior wall.

2. The 'auditory' organs are a pair of small spherical otocysts imbedded in the substance of the pedal ganglia, and containing numerous minute calcareous otoliths. They are placed at the ends of the auditory nerves, which connect them with the supra-oesophageal ganglia.

## VII. DISSECTION OF THE BUCCAL MASS.

*Remove the nerve-collar. Cut across the œsophagus and salivary glands about a quarter of an inch behind the buccal mass, and fix down the buccal mass firmly by pins through its retractor muscles. Note the horny jaw, seen as a dark transverse hoop across the front of the buccal mass: and the sac of the radula, which forms a rounded projection from its hinder end.*

*Slit up the œsophagus with scissors along the mid-dorsal line, and continue the cut forwards along the buccal mass as far as the jaw. Separate the two sides so as to expose the cavity of the buccal mass.*

1. The radula is a brownish-yellow chitinous ribbon lying on the floor of the buccal cavity, and having its free surface produced into an immense number of minute backwardly directed teeth, arranged in very regular transverse rows.

The hinder end of the radula is folded longitudinally on itself, and lodged in a tubular sac, which projects freely behind the buccal mass, and within which the radula is formed as a cuticular secretion of its epithelial lining. The anterior end is opened out and rests on a cartilaginous cushion. By means of protractor and retractor muscles the organ can be protruded from the mouth, and worked backwards and forwards with a licking or rasping action. As it wears away in front, it is replaced by growth forwards from its hinder end.

The radula with the cushions and the muscles together make up the **odontophore**.

*Dissect out the radula ; boil in 5 per cent. caustic potash ; and mount it on the slide in a drop of water of glycerin, with its toothed surface upward. Examine it with low and high powers.*

2. The **jaw** is a semicircular chitinous bar, **strongly** ridged on its posterior surface, against which the odontophore works.

*Dissect out the jaw and examine it with a lens or the microscope.*

## VIII. THE CIRCULATORY SYSTEM.

*The dissection of the circulatory system must be performed on a second snail.*

*It is greatly facilitated by injecting the vessels with a coloured fluid. The arteries should be injected from the ventricle, and the pulmonary vein and its branches from the auricle. The venous system must be injected from several places ; the right pulmonary sinus is easily injected both forwards and backwards, and the pedal sinuses may also be injected.*

### 1. The arterial system.

From the ventricle arises a single large vessel, the **aorta**. This gives off almost at once a large **visceral artery**, which runs along the upper surface of the liver to the top of the spiral, supplying both lobes of the liver, the intestine, and the reproductive organs.

The aorta itself runs forwards along the right side of the crop, between it and the common duct, giving off large branches to the salivary glands and body-wall. It then continues its course forwards along the under surface of the œsophagus ; pierces the sub-œsophageal ganglionic mass, passing between the pedal and viscero-pleural ganglia ; gives off a



large pedal artery which runs back along the foot; and finally divides into large branches supplying the tentacles and buccal mass.

## 2. The venous system.

The venous system consists partly of tubular vessels with definite walls, and partly of irregular lacunar spaces, the exact relations of which to the arteries and to the body-cavity are not determined.

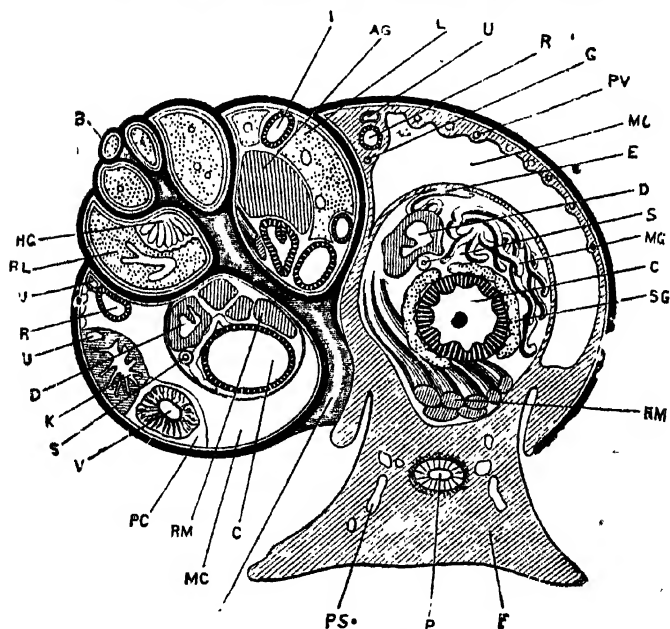


FIG. 33.—*Helix pomatia*. Section taken along the axis of the shell, and transversely to the foot. The shell is represented by the thick black line. (A. M. M.)

A, umbilicus. AG, albumen gland. B, nucleus of shell. C, crop. D, common duct. E, flagellum. F, foot. G, pulmonary sinus. HG, hermaphrodite gland. I, intestine. K, kidney. LL, left lobe of liver. MC, mantle-cavity or lung. MG, mucous glands. P, pedal gland. PC, pericardial cavity. PS, pedal sinus. PV, pulmonary vessels. R, rectum. RL, right lobe of liver. RM, retractor muscles. S, spermatheca. SG, salivary gland. U, ureter. V, ventricle.

Two large irregular **pedal sinuses** lie in the foot, one on each side of the pedal gland.

A **visceral sinus** commences at the top of the spiral and runs down it, receiving branches from the various organs, to the posterior end of the mantle-cavity, where it opens into the **pulmonary sinus**, a large vein running all round the mantle-cavity at the junction of its sides and floor. Along the right side the pulmonary sinus lies immediately ventral to the rectum, to which it is closely attached, and from which it receives numerous small veins. From the pulmonary sinus the blood is carried to the roof of the mantle-cavity by the afferent, pulmonary vessels; these run parallel to each other in the roof of the mantle-cavity, interdigitating with the efferent vessels, with which they are connected by a network of thin-walled vessels in which the blood is aerated. The efferent vessels unite to form the **pulmonary vein**, a large trunk running straight back in the roof of the mantle-cavity to the heart. Just before reaching the auricle, the pulmonary vein receives a large **renal vein** from the kidney.

## CHAPTER IX.

THE CRAYFISH. *Astacus pallipes*.

THE freshwater crayfish is fairly common in many of the streams of England and Ireland, hiding in holes under the banks by day, and coming out at night to feed. It is of a greenish-grey tint and is capable of some degree of colour-change. In form as well as in internal structure it closely resembles the lobster, to which it is nearly related. \*It moves about slowly, half-walking on its long thoracic legs, half-swimming; but when alarmed darts suddenly backwards by violent flexion of its tail or abdomen.

The hard external cuticle of the crayfish is transversely jointed, to allow movements of the body and limbs; and this segmentation affects also those internal organs which are directly concerned with locomotion, *i.e.* the muscles, and the nerves and blood-vessels supplying them. No segmentation, however, is to be seen in the alimentary canal or its glands, and none in the excretory and reproductive systems: in this respect the crayfish differs widely from such animals as the leech, in which these systems are arranged segmentally.

Each segment of the crayfish, except the last, bears a pair of jointed appendages. These differ greatly in the various regions of the body, but all are modifications of one common type, and serially homologous with each other. The anterior ones form tactile organs; those in the region of the mouth act as jaws, and the remainder as organs of locomotion. The foremost pair of these latter are of great size, and end in powerful pincers, used for prehension of food and for offensive and defensive purposes.

'The crayfish is carnivorous, seizing its food, and tearing it to pieces by means of the large pincers, aided by the smaller

pincers of the next two pairs of legs, and then cutting it up into little bits with the jaws, which are placed at the sides of the mouth. The real chewing is effected afterwards in the stomach itself.

The sexes are distinct. The male and female are very similar, but the abdomen is broader in the female.

Breeding takes place at the beginning of winter. The eggs are comparatively large, and are carried about by the female, attached to the abdominal appendages, until the young are hatched in the spring. The newly hatched crayfish differs considerably in form from the adult, but has the full number of appendages already present. It remains for a time attached by its pincers to the appendages of the mother, but soon takes to independent life. To allow for the growth of the animal, the cuticle, which is rigid and incapable of interstitial growth, is cast off periodically, and a new one secreted. This *ecdysis*, or shedding of the cuticle, occurs three or more times during the first year of the animal's life, and afterwards about once a year, or less often. It involves not merely the external investment of the body and limbs, but the covering of the gills and sense organs, and to a certain extent the lining of the alimentary canal.

Crayfish may be killed in chloroform-water, or by immersion in boiling water *for a very short time*.

## I. EXTERNAL CHARACTERS.

The body of the crayfish is very obviously divisible into an anterior unjointed portion, the **cephalothorax**, and a jointed and flexible hinder portion, the **abdomen**.

### A. Examination of a Typical Segment of the Body.

*Examine in detail the third or fourth segment of the abdomen, noticing the following points :*

1. The cuticular investment or **exoskeleton** of the segment is hardened by calcification, except the portions at the joints, which remain soft to allow of movement. Each hardened portion is called a **sclerite**.

- a. The tergum is the convex dorsal plate of the exoskeleton.
- b. The sternum is the ventral transverse bar between the bases of the limbs.
- c. The pleura are a pair of plates projecting down at the sides.
- d. The epimera are the portions of hardened cuticle between the pleura and the bases of the limbs. They are very small in this segment.

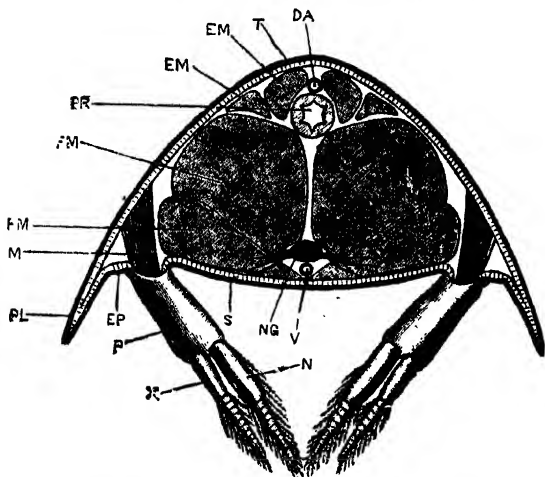


FIG. 34.—*Astacus pallipes*, var. *nobilis*. Transverse section through the abdomen. (C. H. H.)

DA, dorsal abdominal artery. EM, extensor muscles of the abdomen. EP, epimeron. FM, flexor muscles of the abdomen. M, muscles of the appendage. N, endopodite. NG, nerve-ganglion. P, protopodite: the proximal segment, which is very short, has been almost entirely cut away: its length is indicated by the notch on the outer side of the protopodite. PL, pleuron. PR, proctodaeum. S, sternum. T, tergum. V, ventral abdominal artery. X, exopodite.

- e. Soft uncalcified portions connect the segment with those in front of and behind it, and allow movement of one segment upon another.
- f. The joints between the successive segments are provided with a rounded peg or pivot at each side

on the anterior margin of the tergum, near its junction with the pleuron. This peg fits into a corresponding depression in the hinder margin of the segment next in front, and serves as a fulcrum in the flexion and extension of the abdomen; it also prevents movement of the abdomen from side to side.

2. The **appendages** are attached to the sides of the ventral surface of the segment, between the epimera and the ends of the sternum, by soft patches of cuticle, the **arthrodial membranes**. Each appendage consists of a two-jointed proximal portion, the **protopodite**, and of two many-jointed filaments borne on its distal end. These are the **endopodite** and the **exopodite**, the former of which is nearer the median plane.

## B. The Body.

This is obviously composed of two parts, the **cephalothorax** and the **abdomen**.

1. The **cephalothorax** is composed of thirteen segments fused together, the fusion being so complete that the segmentation is not recognisable on the dorsal and lateral surfaces, though it can still be seen below.

The **cephalothorax** is encased laterally and dorsally by a large shield, the **carapace**. This is divided into cephalic and thoracic portions, covering respectively the head and the thorax of the animal, by the shallow **cervical groove**, which runs transversely across its dorsal surface, and obliquely forwards at the sides. The thoracic portion of the **carapace** arises as an outgrowth from the hinder border of the head, which grows back over the thoracic segments, and is continuous with them dorsally.

- a. The **head**, or part in front of the cervical groove,

is composed of five segments. In it are to be noticed the following structures :

- i. The **rostrum** is a median pointed prolongation of the carapace, extending forwards from its anterior end.
  - ii. The **eyes** are paired and mounted on movable stalks, one at each side of the rostrum.
  - iii. The **mouth** is far back on the ventral surface of the head, and almost hidden by the jaws. It is bounded in front by a fleshy protuberance, the **labrum**.
- b. The **thorax**, or part behind the cervical groove, is composed of eight segments. The following points are to be noticed in it :
- i. The **thoracic portion of the carapace** is divided by two longitudinal grooves about half an inch apart; the **branchio-cardiac grooves**, into a **median dorsal portion** covering the heart, and two large plates, the **branchio-stegites**, which extend down at the sides of the thorax and cover the gills.
  - ii. The **sterna** of the thoracic segments are all fused together, except the hindmost, which is movable.
2. The **abdomen** is composed of seven movable segments, united by peg-and-socket joints, which allow of movements in a vertical plane only, the limit of extension possible being nearly a straight line.
- a. The **first abdominal segment** is smaller than the succeeding ones, and is devoid of pleura.
  - b. The segments from the **second** to the **sixth** are essentially like the typical segment already examined.
  - c. The last abdominal region, or **telson**, consists of four pieces :—(1) the segment proper traversed

by the end of the rectum, (2) the post-anal plate, (3 and 4) the two furcal styles which project backwards at the junction of (1) and (2).

### C. The Appendages.

These are all reducible to a common type composed of the three parts, **protopodite**, **exopodite**, and **endopodite**, already seen in the appendage of the typical segment, together with an **epipodite**, which may be a simple plate or may bear gill plumes. From such a typical form all the appendages of the crayfish can be derived by variations in form and relative size of the various parts, or by total suppression of one or more parts.

In the following description the appendages are numbered from before backwards, and are distinguished by the large Roman numerals **I.** to **XIX.**

*Remove the appendages of the right side one by one, beginning with the hindmost, and taking special care to remove each appendage entire by cutting round the inner side of its attachment to the body. The characters of the smaller ones can be best made out by examination in a drop of water, between two slips of glass. Place them in corresponding positions and draw them.*

1. The abdominal appendages, excepting the hindmost, are of small size, and serve in the female to carry the eggs. The last or twentieth segment has no appendages.

**XIX.** The sixth abdominal appendages are broad and lamellar, and form with the telson the powerful tail-fin.

- i. The **protopodite** is short, broad and undivided.
- ii. The **endopodite** is a flat oval plate, fringed at its free edge with setae.



- iii. The **exopodite** is similar, but larger, and divided by a transverse hinge into two parts.

**XVIII.** The fifth abdominal appendage is a small swimmeret.

- i. The **protopodite** is two-jointed, the small proximal segment being named **coxopodite**, the longer distal segment the **basipodite**.
- ii. The **endopodite** is a many-jointed filament covered with setæ. Its first segment is the largest.
- iii. The **exopodite** is similar, but smaller.

**XVII.** and **XVI.** These two pairs of appendages closely resemble **XVIII.**

**XV.** In the female this resembles **XVIII.**, but is liable to reduction, and may be absent.

In the male it is normally turned forwards and is specially modified for transferring the spermatozoa to the female. The **protopodite** and **exopodite** resemble those of **XVIII.**, but the large proximal segment of the **endopodite** is produced distally on its inner side into a short plate, rolled longitudinally upon itself to form an imperfect tube: the remainder of the **endopodite** is a small-jointed rod as in **XVIII.**

**XIV.** In the female this is reduced or absent.

In the male it is modified for the same purpose as **XV.** It is an unjointed rod, the distal portion of which is flattened and rolled upon itself to form an imperfect tube. It is probably formed of the **protopodite** and **endopodite** fused together.

The thoracic appendages, of which there are eight pairs, fall readily into two groups: a **posterior group** of five pairs of large appendages, **XIII.** to **IX.**, used for walking (ambulatory legs) and prehension, and devoid

of exopodites ; and an anterior group of three pairs of maxillipedes or foot-jaws, VIII. to VI., which possess both exopodites and endopodites, and aid in passing food to the mouth.

*Cut away with scissors the branchiostegite of the right side, and note the position of each thoracic appendage before removing it.*

**XII.** The last but one of the thoracic legs may be taken as a type of the series.

i. The protopodite consists of two segments, of which the first, or coxopodite, is short and broad, and bears a large gill and a tuft of long fine hairs, the 'coxopoditic setæ.' The second segment, or basipodite, is much smaller, and bears the endopodite.

ii. The endopodite consists of five segments. Of these the last is claw-like.

**XIII.** This, the last thoracic leg, differs from **XII.** in having no gill. In the male the coxopodite is perforated at its inner angle by the genital pore.

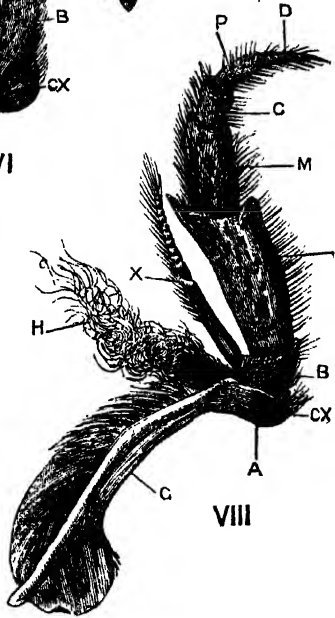
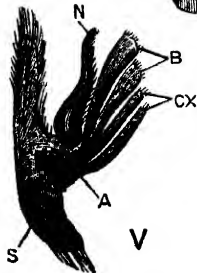
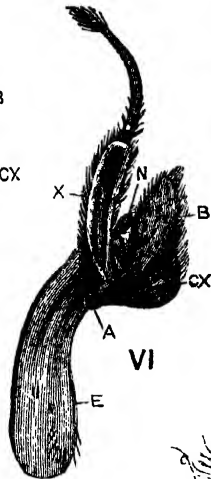
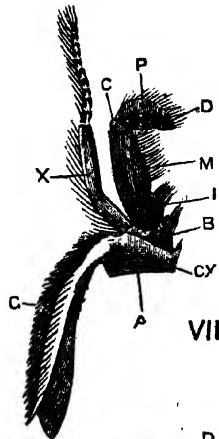
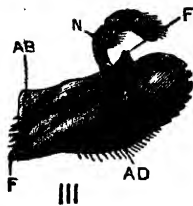
**XI.** This resembles **XII.**, but the penultimate segment is prolonged distally so as to form with the last segment a chele or pair of pincers. The inner angle of the coxopodite is perforated by the genital pore in the female.

**X.** This is like **XI.**, but has no genital pore.

**IX.** This is similar to **X.**, but much larger and stouter, the terminal chele being especially large and powerful.

**VIII.** The third maxillipede is directed forwards under the five appendages in front of it.

i. The protopodite consists of coxopodite, bearing



a gill and coxopoditic setæ; and basipodite, bearing endopodite and exopodite.

ii. The endopodite consists of five segments. The first segment is the largest and is fused with the basipodite.

iii. The exopodite is slender, and consists of a long proximal segment and a distal many-jointed filament.

VII. The second maxillipede is smaller and less firmly calcified than VIII., which it resembles in form; but the exopodite is larger than in VIII., and the endopodite smaller, and all its joints are movable.

VI. The first maxillipede is smaller and softer than VII.

i. The two segments of the protopodite are expanded on the inner side, forming a large two-lobed lamella. A broad plate, the epipodite, takes the place of a gill.

ii. The endopodite is very small and two-jointed.

iii. The exopodite resembles that of VII.

In the Continental species (*Astacus fluviatilis*) a small gill is present attached to this limb.

3. The head appendages consist of three pairs of oral appendages or jaws, V. to III., placed at the sides of the mouth, and two pairs of pre-oral appendages, II. and I., at the front of the head.

FIG. 35.—*Astacus pallipes*, var. *nobilis*. The oral appendages of the right side seen from below:  $\times 2\frac{1}{2}$ . (C. H. H.)  
III, the mandible. IV and V, the first and second maxillæ. VI, VII, and VIII, the three maxillipedes.

A, region of attachment to body-wall. AB and AD, points of insertion of abductor and adductor muscles of mandible. B, basipodite. C, D, I, M, P, joints of endopodite. CX, coxopodite. E, epipodite. F, pivots of mandible. G, gill. H, coxopoditic setæ. N, endopodite. S, scaphognathite. X, first segment of exopodite.

V. The **second maxilla** consists of a **protopodite**, an **endopodite**, and on the outer side an **exopodite**, the **scaphognathite**.

i. The **protopodite** consists of two segments, **coxopodite** and **basipodite**, each of which is expanded on its inner side into a **bilobed lamella**.

ii. The **endopodite** is small, pointed, and unjointed.

iii. The **scaphognathite** or **exopodite** is an elongated plate attached by the middle of its inner edge to the outer side of the **basipodite**. It serves to keep a current of water flowing through the gill-chamber (p. 157).

IV. The **first maxilla** is small. The two segments of the **protopodite** extend inwards as thin curved **lamellæ**, and the **endopodite** is a small plate to their outer side. There is no **exopodite**.

III. The **mandible** consists of a very stout undivided **protopodite**, forming the powerful jaw at the side of the mouth; and an **endopodite**, which forms a small three-jointed palp, lying in a groove on the front of the **protopodite**.

*Before removing the mandible, note the position of the two pivots about which it turns, and the points of insertion of the tendons of its abductor and adductor.*

Immediately in front of the first maxilla and behind the mandible is a small unjointed plate, leaf-like in form. It is not regarded as a true appendage, but as an outgrowth of the **metastoma**, which forms the posterior and lateral borders of the mouth.

II. The **antenna** consists of **protopodite**, **exopodite**, and **endopodite**, the last of which forms the long 'feeler.'

i. The **protopodite** consists of two segments; the first,

or coxopodite, being very broad, and projecting only very slightly from the surface of the head : on its ventral surface is a tubercle perforated posteriorly by the renal aperture. The second segment, or basipodite, is also short and stout, and bears the endopodite and exopodite.

- ii. The **endopodite** has three stout basal segments and a long slender many-jointed feeler. The first segment is divided longitudinally into an inner and an outer part, movable on each other, and thus allowing rotation of the next segment.
- iii. The **exopodite** is a stout sharp-pointed blade, the scaphocerite.

**I. The antennule is smaller than the antenna.**

- i. The **protopodite** is three-jointed, the basal segment being much the largest, and containing the **statocyst**, which opens on its dorsal surface. The aperture is three-cornered and is guarded by a series of plumose setæ, which extend across it from its outer lip.
- ii. The **endopodite** and **exopodite** are two many-jointed filaments, the exopodite being slightly the larger.

**D. The Gills and Gill-chambers.**

The gills are highly vascular external outgrowths from the sides of the thorax and from its appendages. In them respiration occurs by diffusion, through the thin cuticle, of the gases dissolved in the water and in the blood. The gills are enclosed and protected by downward growths of the carapace at the sides of the thorax, the **branchiostegites**.

1. The **branchial chambers** are situated one at each side of the thorax, between the body and the branchiostegite.

*Expose the left branchial chamber by cutting away the*

*branchiostegite of that side; and fix the animal on its right side under water.*

The chamber is bounded on its inner side by the thoracic wall, and on its outer side by the branchiostegite. It is open below and behind, and the former opening is partially stopped by the basal segments of the legs. The greater portion of the

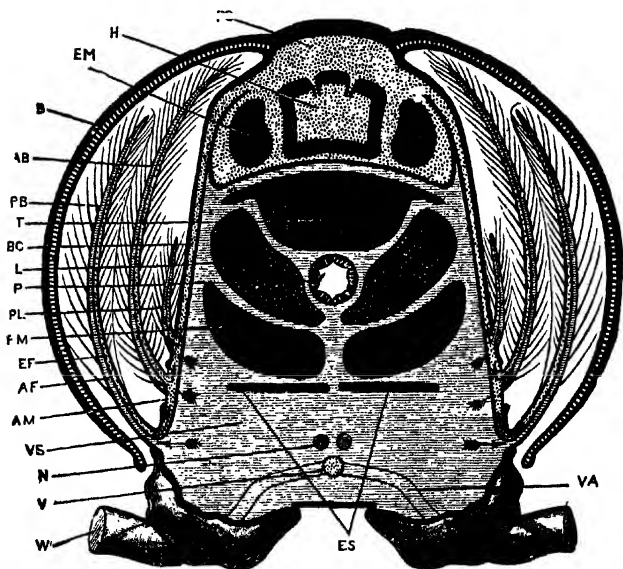


FIG. 36.—*Astacus pallipes*. Diagrammatic transverse section through the thorax. The dotted spaces contain arterial blood. The spaces shaded with horizontal lines contain venous blood. The arrows indicate the direction of the blood circulation. (C. H. H.)

AB, arthrobranchia: only one is figured on each side. AF, afferent vessel of gill. AM, arthrobranchial membrane. B, branchiostegite. BC, branchio-cardiac canal. EF, efferent vessel of gill. EM, extensor muscle of the abdomen. ES, endophragmal skeleton. FM, flexor muscle of the abdomen. H, heart, showing the dorsal ostia, with their valves. L, liver. N, nerve-connective. P, proctodæum. PB, podobranchia. PL, pleuro-branchia. PS, pericardial sinus. T, testis, with roots of vasa deferentia. V, ventral thoracic artery. VA, artery supplying leg. VS, ventral blood-sinus: it contains numerous large muscles moving the limbs, which are not represented in the figure. W, one of the legs, cut off short.

chamber is occupied by the gills; but in front of them, and just behind the line of the cervical groove, is a channel, the **cervical canal**. In this canal the scaphognathite works to and fro with a sculling movement, driving the water forwards out of the gill-chamber, and discharging it in front just below the renal aperture. (See Section E, p. 157.)

2. The gills may be described in three groups according to their position of attachment.

a. **Podobranchiæ** are gills attached to the coxopodites of appendages **VII.** to **XII.** The coxopodite of **VI.** bears a large epipodite in place of a gill.

b. **Arthrobranchiæ** are gills arising from the arthrodial membranes at the bases of the thoracic appendages. At the base of each of the limbs **VIII.** to **XII.** are two arthrobranchiæ, an anterior and a posterior one; and attached to the arthrodial membrane of **VII.** is a single one.

c. **Pleurobranchiæ** are gills arising from the side-wall of the thorax, above the ridges which form the dorsal boundaries of the arthrodial membranes. The crayfish has only one well-developed pleurobranchia on each side, on the thirteenth segment, but abortive ones are found on the next two or three segments in front.

It is supposed that, primitively, all the gills arose as outgrowths of the basal joint of the appendages, three to each. Movements of these appendages aerated the gills. With the increased size and strength of the animal, improved respiratory mechanism arose. The branchiostegites covered over the gills, and the latter shifted their points of attachment proximally, so that now only the podobranchiæ retain their original position.



The following table shows the number and arrangement of the gills in the crayfish :

Vest. = Abortive vestige. Ep. = Epipodite.

Segment	VI.	VII.	VIII.	IX.	X.	XI.	XII.	XIII.	Totals
Podobranchiæ <sup>1</sup> .	Ep.	1	1	1	1	1	1	0	6 ÷ Ep.
Arthro. anterior	0	1	1	1	1	1	1	0	6
Arthro. posterior	0	0	1	1	1	1	1	0	5
leurobranchiæ	0	0	0	0	Vest.	Vest.	Vest.	1	1 + 3 Vest.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 155.

*Verify the above table by carefully counting the gills, and turning them down as they are checked off in the table.*

3. The structure of the gills is different in the different groups.

*Remove and examine in turn a pleurobranchia, an arthrobranchia, and a podobranchia.*

a. The pleurobranchiæ and arthrobranchiæ resemble bottle-brushes, each consisting of a series of delicate branchial filaments arranged upon a central stem, which is traversed by afferent and efferent blood-vessels. It is in the branchial filaments that respiration is effected, diffusion taking place through the thin cuticle covering them.

b. A podobranchia is more complicated, and consists of (i.) a basal plate arising from the outer surface of the coxopodite, and covered with finely plumose setæ; (ii.) a stem arising from the dorsal border of the basal plate close to its apex; (iii.) a lamina, which is a corrugated plate borne on the distal end of the stem, doubled longitudinally upon itself, and beset with small hooked setæ; and (iv.) a plume, which arises from the apex of the stem and resembles an arthrobranchia. The plume and the outer face of the stem are covered with branchial filaments.

### E. Demonstration of the Respiratory Current of Water through the Gill-chamber.

*Place a living crayfish in a shallow dish of water; and, when the animal is at rest, run into the dish close to the bases of the hinder legs, by means of a pipette, a few drops of water coloured with suspended carmine or Indian ink. Watch the currents entering under the edges of the branchiostegites behind, and issuing in front from the mouths of the cervical canals.*

## II. DISSECTION OF THE CRAYFISH.

The several systems are described below in the order in which it will be most convenient to dissect them: this order may be varied if found desirable.

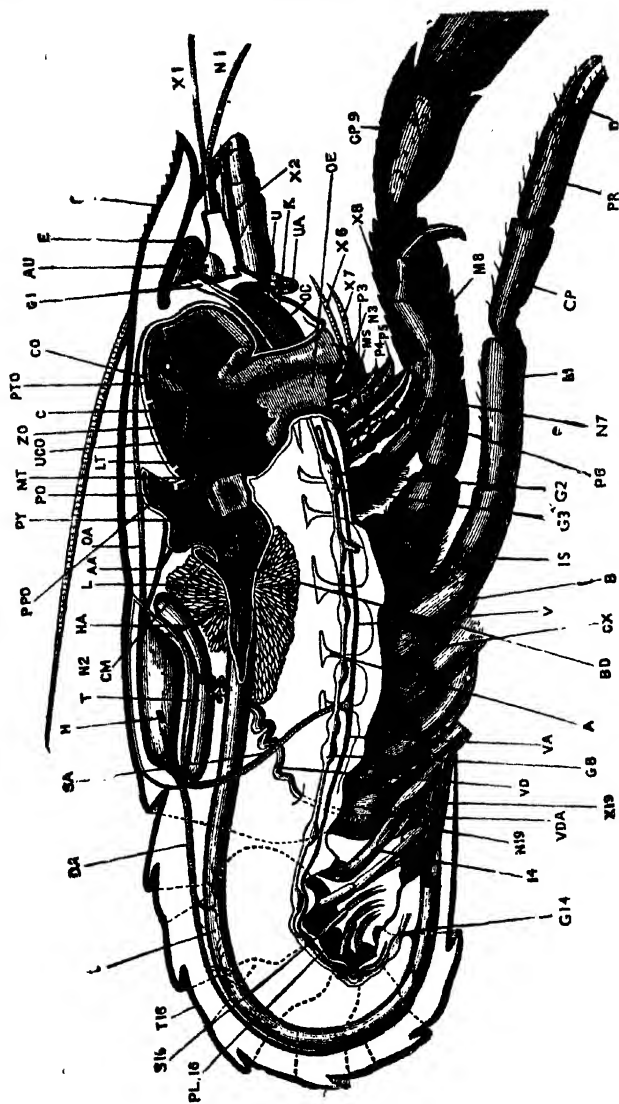
### A. The Circulatory System.

The blood of the crayfish, which has a bluish tinge, is carried from the heart to the various parts of the body by arteries which open into large lacunar spaces forming the body-cavity or hæmocœl. From this it passes to the gills, in which it is aërated, and from which it is conveyed through the branchiocardiac canals to the pericardial sinus. From the sinus it enters the heart.

#### 1. The pericardial sinus and heart.

*Insert one blade of a stout pair of scissors into the slit behind the carapace. Cut forwards, holding the blade horizontally, right up to the rostrum, and then across and downwards to the outer side of the eyes. Remove the carapace completely. Next cut backwards along the outer edge of the abdominal terga on each side, avoiding injury to the muscles, and carefully remove the tergal sclerites. Clean away the pigmented epidermis with forceps.*

- a. The pericardial sinus is a cavity of considerable size lying in the dorsal portion of the thorax and receiving the arterial blood from the gills.



- b. The heart is a polygonal thick-walled muscular sac lying in the pericardial sinus. If living it will be seen to contract rhythmically. It receives blood from the pericardial sinus by three pairs of valvular apertures, the ostia, of which the dorsal pair will be easily seen. The lateral and ventral pairs will be better seen at a later stage of the dissection.
- c. The roots of the arteries are rather small and transparent, and hence difficult to see. They arise from the two ends of the heart, and should be noticed at the present stage of the dissection, though the arterics themselves are best seen in an injected specimen, and will be described later (p. 169). (*A preliminary injection of the heart may, however, be made at this stage by means of a hypodermic syringe and some Indian ink diluted with water.*)
- i. From the anterior end of the heart arise a median ophthalmic artery and a pair of antennary

FIG. 37.—*Astacus pallipes*, var. *nobilis*. Dissection of a male from the right side. The right side of the body-wall with its appendages and the right side of the oesophagus, stomach, and mesenteron have been removed. The thick black line represents the cut edge of the cuticle. (C. H. H.)

A, endophragmal skeleton. AA, antennary artery. AU, 'auditory' sac. B, basipodite of the tenth appendage. BD, aperture of left bile-duct into the mesenteron. C, cardiac chamber of the stomach. CM, cæcum. CO, cardiac ossicle. CP, middle joint of tenth appendage. CP9, middle joint of ninth appendage. CX, coxopodite of tenth appendage. D, terminal joint of same. DA, dorsal abdominal artery. E, eye. G 1, supra-oesophageal ganglion. G 2, sub-oesophageal ganglion. G 3, second post-oesophageal ganglion. G 8, last thoracic ganglion. G 14, last abdominal ganglion giving off posterior viscera and other nerves. H, right lateral ostium of the heart. HA, hepatic artery. I, proctodæum. IS, first joint of tenth appendage. K, kidney. L, liver. LT, lateral tooth. M, second joint of tenth appendage. MS, metastoma. MT, median tooth. M 8, second joint of eighth appendage. N 1, N 8, etc., endopodites of first, third, etc., appendages. OA, ophthalmic artery. OC, left para-oesophageal connective: the greater part of the right one has been removed. OE, oesophagus. PL 16, pleuron of the sixteenth segment. PO, pyloric ossicle. PPO, prepyloric ossicle. PR, propodite of the tenth appendage. PTO, pterocardiac ossicle. PY, pyloric chamber of the stomach. P 3, P 4, etc., propodites of the third, fourth, etc., appendages. R, rostrum. SA, sternal artery. S 16, sternum of the sixteenth segment. T, testis: the right anterior lobe has been removed. T 16, tergum of the sixteenth segment. U, ureter. UA, aperture of the ureter. UCO, urocardiac ossicle. V, ventral thoracic artery. VA, ventral abdominal artery. VD, left vas deferens: the right one has been cut off short. VDA, aperture of the left vas deferens. X 1, X 2, etc., exopodites of first, second, etc., appendages. ZO, syngocardiac ossicle. 14, the fourteenth appendage.

arteries; and behind and below these a pair of hepatic arteries.

- ii. From the hinder end of the heart arises the large median dorsal abdominal artery, and immediately below this, the large median sternal artery, which latter can be better seen at a later stage.

- d. The *alae cordis* are three pairs of fibrous bands which hold the heart in position by connecting it with the walls of the pericardial sinus.

*Remove the branchiostegite and turn down the gills of the left side, unless this has already been done.*

2. The branchiocardiac canals are a series of channels in the body-wall conveying blood from the gills to the pericardial sinus. They can be seen through the transparent body-wall running from the bases of the gills, and converging to open into the sides of the pericardial sinus.

*Cut a gill off close to its base, and blow into the cut end of the efferent blood-vessel with a blowpipe, or inject some coloured fluid into it, and observe the air or coloured fluid entering the pericardial sinus.*

## B. The Reproductive System.

*Carefully remove the side-wall of the thorax, and expose the reproductive organs.*

### a. In the male.

- i. The testis is a soft white body lying immediately below the pericardial sinus, and extending backwards a little, behind it. It consists of a pair of anterior lobes and a median posterior lobe.
- ii. The vas deferens of each side is a long convoluted tube, running from the junction of the anterior and posterior lobes of the testis to the external aperture on the coxopodite of

the last thoracic leg. Before the breeding season it will be found filled with an opaque white seminal mass.

*Treat a small piece according to directions on p. 84 ; cover, and examine it with low and high powers.*

- iii. The **spermatozoa** are flattened spheroidal cells from which project tangentially a number of stiff immobile curved processes.

**b. In the female.**

- i. The **ovary** is a saccular organ situated below and at the sides of the pericardial sinus, and extending some distance behind it. Like the testis, it consists of two anterior lobes and a posterior one.
- ii. The **oviduct** of each side is a short, wide, almost straight tube, running from about the middle of the length of the ovary, with which it is continuous, to the external opening on the coxopodite of appendage **XI.**, the last thoracic leg but two.

**C. The Digestive System.**

The alimentary canal of the crayfish is a tube running in a nearly straight line from the mouth to the anus. Of this tube the middle portion or **mesenteron**, which is very short, is alone formed from the primitive alimentary tract of the embryo, and the 'liver' is an outgrowth of it. The **stomodæum**, or anterior portion of the canal, and the **proctodæum**, or hinder portion, which together form almost the whole length of the canal, are both formed by invagination of the external surface of the body ; and both have a chitinous lining which is continuous, at the mouth and anus respectively, with the chitinous external covering of the body.

**1. The digestive gland.**

The 'liver' is a large bilobed body, of a brown or greenish colour, lying in the thorax at the

sides of the alimentary canal. Each lobe is much branched and hollow, and its secretion enters the mesenteron by a wide bile-duct, which will be seen later on in the dissection.

## 2. The alimentary canal.

*Remove the abdominal terga, the genital duct, and the greater part of the liver of the left side, and as much of the muscles and cephalic carapace as is necessary to expose the alimentary canal.*

- a. The **stomodæum**, or first portion of the alimentary canal, has a chitinous lining.
  - i. The **mouth** is an oval aperture on the ventral surface between the jaws.
  - ii. The **œsophagus** is a short, wide tube running vertically upwards from the mouth.
  - iii. The '**stomach**,' or rather **gizzard**, is a spacious dilatation occupying the greater part of the head, and extending a short distance into the thorax. It consists of a larger **cardiac chamber** in front and a smaller **pyloric chamber** behind, separated from each other by a constriction. Its chitinous lining is thick, and some parts of it are especially hardened, forming the **gastric mill**, a complex mechanism of '**ossicles**' supporting three large and strongly calcified **teeth**. These structures will be seen at a later stage of the dissection.
- b. The **mesenteron** or **mid-gut**, which follows the stomach, is very short and devoid of chitinous lining. On each side it receives a wide bile-duct from the liver, and its dorsal wall is produced into a small **cæcum**.
- c. The **proctodæum** or **intestine** is a long, narrow, straight tube running from the hinder end of the mesenteron to the **anus**. It has a chitinous

lining throughout, and its inner surface presents longitudinal and slightly spiral ridges beset with small papillæ.

The anus is a longitudinal slit on the ventral surface of the telson: it can be closed by approximation of its sides.

*Remove a piece of the intestine, and examine its inner surface under water with a low power of the microscope, to see the ridges and papillæ.*

- d. The gastric mill is a complex structure made up of numerous sclerites, or hardened portions of the cuticle lining the stomach, by means of which the chewing of the food is effected: the principal sclerites will alone be described here, viz. five median dorsal pieces and two pairs of lateral pieces, the others being small and of less importance.

*Remove the entire stomach from the body, avoiding injury to the structures around the œsophagus; place it in a dish under water, and carefully clean away the muscles.*

- i. The cardiac ossicle is a broad antero-transverse sclerite in the roof of the cardiac chamber of the stomach.
- ii. The urocardiac ossicle is a median dorsal sclerite in the hinder wall of the cardiac chamber. Its upper end is broad, and hinged to the hinder edge of the cardiac ossicle; its lower end is narrow, and directed downwards and backwards.
- iii. The pyloric ossicle is a narrow postero-transverse sclerite in the dorsal wall of the pyloric chamber.
- iv. The prepyloric ossicle lies in the anterior wall of the pyloric chamber, and is hinged above to the anterior border of the pyloric ossicle.
- v. The median teeth and processes are strong calcified sclerites, at the junction of the cardiac and pyloric chambers. These are fused with the urocardiac ossicle in front and the prepyloric behind.
- vi. The pterocardiac ossicles are attached one to each end of the cardiac ossicle by oblique hinges. Their lower ends are curved backwards.
- vii. The zygocardiac ossicles are a pair of stout sclerites, running from the outer ends of the pyloric ossicle forwards, downwards, and outwards, to the ventral extremities of the pterocardiacs. Their ventral margins are curved inwards to form a pair of stout plates, calcified at their



inner borders to form the lateral teeth. The inner edge of each lateral tooth bears a row of denticles, which decrease in size from before backwards.

- viii. **The filter.** The aperture between the cardiac and pyloric chambers is much narrowed by lateral folds; and the cavity of the pyloric chamber itself is reduced by two lateral and a median ventral fold to a narrow three-rayed fissure.

All these folds bear short close-set hair-like setæ, which cross each other from opposite sides so as to form a very efficient filter or strainer, permitting the passage only of fluid or of very finely divided solid particles.

The gastric mill is put into action by muscles arising from the carapace and attached to the cardiac and pyloric ossicles, which, by their contractions, they pull away from each other. The cardiac ossicle moving forwards pulls the urocardiac and the median tooth with it, and the prepyloric ossicle rotates forwards with them, giving a downward movement to the hinder part of the tooth, and causing its apex to rotate forwards. The same movement of the cardiac ossicle forwards, and of the pyloric backwards, causes the zygo-cardiacs to pull back the pterocardiacs, which rotate about the oblique hinges, pressing the zygocardiacs inwards, and bringing the lateral teeth together in the median plane.

*Pull the cardiac and pyloric ossicles forwards and backwards respectively with forceps, when the three teeth will be seen to come together.*

#### D. The Excretory System.

1. The **kidneys**, or 'green glands,' are a pair of rounded and somewhat flattened bodies, of a light-green colour, lying in the ventral part of the head, in front of the mouth.
2. The **ureters** are a pair of wide thin-walled sacs, lying one on the dorsal surface of each kidney. Each ureter communicates directly with the cavity of its kidney, and opens to the exterior by an aperture already seen on the hinder surface of a tubercle on the basal segment of the antenna.

*Inflate the ureter by blowing air in at its external aperture.*

**E. The Endophragmal Skeleton (fig. 37, p. 158).**

In the thorax a series of calcified plates project inwards from the cuticle of the ventral surface, forming an internal skeleton, which gives origin to the muscles of the legs and to the powerful flexor muscles of the abdomen.

**F. The Nervous System.**

1. The central nervous system consists of a series of ganglia arranged in pairs, and united by paired bundles of nerve-fibres, or connectives, to form a chain, which runs along the whole length of the body close to the mid-ventral line. The two ganglia of each pair are usually fused indistinguishably.

a. The pre-oesophageal ganglionic mass, or 'brain,' is a white mass of considerable size, situated just behind and slightly above the bases of the antennules. It gives off nerves supplying the eyes, the antennules, and the antennæ.

b. The para-oesophageal connectives are a pair of long nerve-cords, on each side of the oesophagus, connecting the 'brain' with the hinder part of the nervous system. They are connected with each other by a transverse commissure, immediately behind the oesophagus.

c. The post-oesophageal ganglionic mass is an ovoid mass, lying a short way behind the mouth. From it arise the nerves supplying the mandibles, both pairs of maxillæ, and the first and second maxillipedes.

d. The thoracic nerve-chain consists of six ganglionic masses, united by paired connectives, and supplying the appendages from the third maxillipedes to the last thoracic legs. The first one is situated immediately behind the post-oesophageal ganglionic mass, with which it is closely connected. The connectives between

the fourth and fifth ganglionic masses diverge slightly, and the sternal artery (p. 169) passes between them.

*The thoracic nerve-chain lies beneath the endophragmal skeleton, which must be removed to expose it.*

- e. The abdominal nerve-chain consists of six ganglionic masses, joined by connectives, and supplying the abdominal segments and their appendages. The hindmost ganglionic mass is larger than the others, and supplies both the nineteenth segment and the telson.

## 2. The visceral nervous system.

*This can only be dissected in a specimen in which the alimentary canal has been left undisturbed.*

- a. The anterior visceral nerve is a median nerve formed, just in front of the œsophagus, by the union of a median nerve from the 'brain' with two pairs of nerves arising from ganglionic swellings on the para-œsophageal connectives. From the union of these, the nerve runs up in front of the stomach to branch out on its dorsal wall.
- b. The posterior visceral nerve arises from the hindmost ganglionic mass of the abdominal nerve-chain, and runs forwards along the ventral surface of the intestine.

## G. The Organs of Special Sense.

Besides tactile organs, i.e. the antennules, antennæ, and the palps of the oral appendages, the crayfish has eyes, and 'auditory' and olfactory organs.

1. The eyes, on movable stalks, have already been seen at the sides of the rostrum.

### a. External characters of the eye.

*Remove one of the eye-stalks, and examine it carefully with a lens.*

The **cornea** is the transparent, apparently black, cap of uncalcified cuticle covering the end of the eye-stalk, and bounded by an oval outline. Its surface is divided into quadrangular facets by lines crossing each other nearly at right angles, each facet corresponding to one of the elements of which the compound eye consists.

**b. Structure of the eye as seen in a longitudinal section.**

*Carefully divide the eye-stalk and eye longitudinally into two halves. The calcified portion of the cuticle is best cut with scissors, the remainder with a sharp knife. Examine one of the cut surfaces with a strong lens. Better sections are obtained by fixing the eye of a crayfish just after changing its skin: imbedding in paraffin, cutting and staining. An allied crustacean, **Squilla**, is still more suitable.*

The eye consists of a number of conical bodies (**ommatidia**) arranged in a radiate fashion, their bases being turned outwards and formed by the corneal facets, and their apices being directed inwards and connected with the optic ganglion. Each of these component elements is isolated optically from its neighbours by pigment.

- i.** The **cornea** is thin, and the strips of cuticle separating its facets scarcely differ from the facets themselves.
- ii.** The **crystalline pyramids** are transparent, conical bodies arranged radially and abutting upon the cornea, each pyramid corresponding to one corneal facet. They are separated from each other by movable layers of 'iris' pigment.
- iii.** The inner ends of the pyramids are imbedded in a movable layer of **retinal pigment**, in which lies a series of radially arranged **retinulae**, each of the latter being surrounded by a

layer of brilliant tapetal pigment, either white or pink.

iv. The optic ganglion (really ganglia) occupies the eye-stalk. Its surface is deeply pigmented.

v. The optic nerve lies in the axis of the eye-stalk, and connects the optic ganglion with the 'brain.'

2. The 'auditory' organs or statocysts are lodged in the basal segments of the antennules, and open to the exterior on their dorsal surfaces by three-cornered apertures, guarded by fringes of plumose setæ.

*Remove an antennule entire. Holding it firmly between the fingers, carefully remove with scissors the inner and outer walls of the basal segment, taking care not to injure the statocyst itself. Clear away the muscles surrounding the sac, and the setæ from the aperture.*

*With a fine-pointed syringe wash out the contents of the statocyst—a collection of sand and other foreign matter from the water in which the animal lives, to which the name otolith has been given.*

*Examine the sac in water or glycerin on a slide under a low power of the microscope.*

- a. The statocyst is a transparent ovoid chitinous sac, continuous at its opening with the cuticle of the antennule.
- b. The sensory setæ are nearly straight simple-pointed setæ varying greatly in size, the outer ones being the largest. The larger ones are arranged in parallel curved lines along the floor and inner wall of the sac; of these there are two rows behind, the number increasing to five or more in front. Parallel to these runs a row of very minute setæ on the inner side.
- c. The sensory nerve supplying these rows of setæ may have been removed with the muscles, but should be looked for.

3. **Olfactory setæ.** On the ventral surface of each joint of the exopodite of the antennule are two tufts of fine sensory setæ. Under a low power of the microscope each is seen to consist of two segments, of which the distal one is much the longer, and is flattened. They are possibly olfactory in function.

### III. THE ARTERIES AS SEEN IN AN INJECTED SPECIMEN.

*Bore a small hole in the carapace of an anæsthetised animal, immediately above the heart; inject the pericardium with Prussian blue rubbed up with salt solution, using a syringe just large enough to fill the hole. Dissect from the left side, removing the left half or more of the carapace, and such parts of the liver, genital gland and duct, and of the side-wall and muscles of the abdomen as may be necessary to expose the following arteries:*

1. The **ophthalmic artery** is a median artery arising from the anterior end of the heart and running forwards over the stomach, then curving downwards to supply the front of the stomach and the œsophagus.
2. The **antennary arteries** arise from the anterior end of the heart, one on each side of the ophthalmic artery. Each runs forwards, outwards, and downwards over the side of the stomach, to which it sends a **gastric artery**: and then forwards to the anterior end of the head, supplying the kidney, antenna, antennule, and eye, and sending a branch to the rostrum. On its way it gives off numerous small arterics to the muscles of the regions which it traverses.
3. The **hepatic arteries** arise from the ventral surface of the heart near its anterior end, and supply the liver, in which they are buried.
4. The **sternal artery** is single, and arises from the hinder end of the heart, whence it runs directly downwards, passing to the right or left of the intestine, and between the connectives uniting the fourth and fifth

ganglion-pairs of the thoracic nerve-chain (p. 165). It then divides into two arteries, running forwards and backwards respectively.

- a. The ventral thoracic artery runs forwards beneath the nerve-chain, supplying the sternal region of the thorax, and the appendages from the hindmost ambulatory legs to the mandibles.
  - b. The ventral abdominal artery is a large median vessel given off by the sternal artery on reaching the ventral region of the body. It runs backwards beneath the nerve-chain, and supplies the ventral region of the abdomen and the abdominal appendages.
5. The dorsal abdominal artery is a large median artery arising from the ventral part of the hinder end of the heart, and running backwards just above the intestine to the hinder end of the body, supplying the intestine, muscles, and other parts of the dorsal region of the abdomen. It communicates at its hinder end with the ventral abdominal artery.

## CHAPTER X

THE COCKROACH. *Periplaneta americana*.

THE common cockroach or 'black beetle' of our kitchens and bakehouses—*Periplaneta* (*Blatta*) *orientalis*—is not a true beetle, but an insect belonging to the order *Orthoptera*, of which grasshoppers, locusts, and crickets are also members. This species differs only slightly from *P. americana*, which latter has been chosen for description only because it is larger and more easily dissected than the common form. *P. americana* may be found in large numbers on board ships and at most docks.

Cockroaches are active insects, of nocturnal habits, hiding away in the daytime and coming out to feed at night. They will devour almost any animal or vegetable substance.

The whole animal is covered by a chitinous cuticle which is thick and hard, and of a dark-brown colour, except at the joints, where it is soft and paler. By these joints the body is divided transversely into segments, which are movable on each other except in the head. As in the crayfish, the segmentation affects certain of the internal organs, as the muscular and nervous systems, but is not shown by the digestive, excretory, or reproductive organs.

The female lays its eggs in a hard oblong capsule, in which they lie side by side. The young develop without metamorphosis, i.e. when newly hatched they resemble the adult in form and habits, though they are devoid of wings. During growth the cuticle is shed several times (see p. 143). The wings appear at the last ecdysis, when the animal attains sexual maturity: the female of *P. orientalis* is, however, wingless.



## I. HABITS.

*Watch the living animal in a glass vessel, noting especially the positions of its legs and head; also the mode of using the long antennæ, and the maxillary and labial palps.*

*Watch the respiratory movements of the abdomen. Feed with sopped bread, and watch the lateral movement of the jaws.*

## II. EXTERNAL CHARACTERS.

*Kill the animal in chloroform vapour.*

## A. The Body.

The body is divided into head, thorax, and abdomen, each of which is composed of several segments. A small neck connects the head with the thorax.

1. The head is broad from side to side, and short from before backwards, and is produced downwards into a broad process bearing the jaws. Owing to its shortness and vertical elongation, it has a deceptive appearance of being bent downwards and backwards beneath the thorax.

a. The epicranium covers the dorsal and posterior surfaces of the head. It is divided into right and left halves by a median suture which divides in front into two, running obliquely outwards to the fenestræ (p. 173).

b. The clypeus is a broad plate covering the front of the head, below the epicranium.

c. The labrum is a smaller plate hinged to the lower edge of the clypeus, and forming the anterior or 'upper' lip.

d. The genæ, or 'cheeks,' are a pair of vertical plates covering the sides of the head, behind and below the eyes.

- e. The eyes are large black reniform elevations, one on each side of the head. They are compound, each having very numerous hexagonal facets.
  - f. The fenestræ are a pair of small white oval patches to the inner sides of the bases of the antennæ.
2. The neck is short and slender: its cuticular covering is soft and white, with the exception of seven thickened patches or sclerites, which are hard and brown. Of these sclerites two are slender trans-

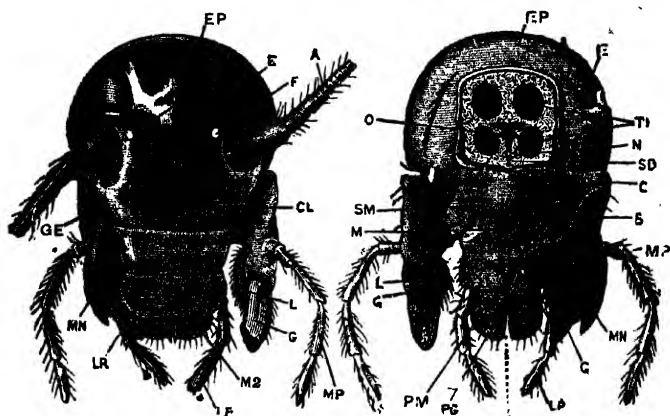


FIG. 38.—*Periplaneta americana*. The head, front view. (C. H. H.)

A, antenna. CL, clypeus. E, eye. EP, epicranium. F, fenestra. G, galea. GE, gena. L, lacinia. LP, labial palp. LR, labrum. MN, mandible (the left mandible has been removed). MP, maxillary palp. M 2, second maxilla.

FIG. 39.—*Periplaneta americana*. The head from behind. (C. H. H.)

E, EP, G, L, LP, MN, and MP, as in the preceding figure.  
C, cardo. GL, glossa. M, mentum. N, nerve-connective. O, oesophagus.  
PG, paraglossa. PM, prementum. S, stipes. SD, salivary ducts. SM, submentum. TR, cervical tracheæ.

verse bars on the ventral surface; a third is median and dorsal, and almost divided into two longitudinally; the remaining four are much larger, and form two pairs at the sides of the neck.

3. The thorax consists of three segments.

- a. The prothorax is the first and longest segment of the thorax. Its tergum, the pronotum, is

prolonged forwards over the neck, and forms the conspicuous plate between the wings and the head.

- b. The **mesothorax** is smaller, and its tergum bears at its anterior corners a pair of modified wings, the **tegmina**. Each tegmen is a fold of skin and cuticle which extends backwards beyond the hinder end of the abdomen, and is movably articulated to the mesothoracic tergum or **mesonotum**.

[The tegmina are abortive in the female of *P. orientalis*.]

- c. The **metathorax**, or hindmost segment of the thorax, bears a pair of wings, which are membranous outgrowths of the body-wall, like the tegmina, but broader, thinner, and more movable. By means of these the animal is able to fly. When not in use they are folded longitudinally like a fan and covered by the tegmina.

[The female of *P. orientalis* has no wings.]

- 4. The **abdomen**, which forms rather more than half the length of the body, is broad from side to side, especially in the female, and is flattened dorso-ventrally. Its cuticular investment is softer than that of the head and thorax. It is composed of ten distinct segments, but the hinder ones are telescoped within each other, so that the full number are not seen at once. The **podical plates** may represent the tergum of an eleventh segment.

- a. The **terga** are cuticular plates covering the dorsal surface of the abdomen and overlapping each other from before backwards. They are broad from side to side, but short from before backwards. Of the ten only eight are obvious, the eighth and ninth being hidden by the seventh through the telescoping of this part of the body. The tenth is prolonged backwards into a thin horizontal plate, deeply notched in its posterior border.

[In *P. orientalis* the eighth and ninth terga are hidden by the seventh in the female only.]

- b. The **podical plates** are a pair of small cuticular plates at the sides of the anus (fig. 40, p. 178).

*To see the podical plates, lift up the tenth tergum with the forceps.*

- c. The **cerci** are a pair of many-jointed appendages, attached under the lateral edges of the tenth tergum and projecting backwards.

- d. The **sterna** on the ventral surface resemble the terga on the dorsal surface. The first is rudimentary.

In the male the ninth sternum bears a pair of unjointed styles.

In the female the seventh sternum is produced backwards into a large boat-shaped process, which forms the lower wall of the large genital pouch. The hinder sterna are modified in relation with the sexual apparatus, and are completely hidden by the seventh.

#### B. The External Apertures.

1. The **mouth** opens on the ventral surface of the head, behind the labrum and between the jaws.
2. The **anus** is at the hinder end of the body, beneath the tenth abdominal tergum and between the inner margins of the podical plates.
3. The **genital aperture** is single, and is placed at the hinder end of the body, below the anus. It is larger in the female than in the male, and will be better seen at a later stage of the dissection.
4. The **stigmata**, or spiracles, are the respiratory apertures, twenty in number. There are two large thoracic ones on each side, one between the prothorax and the mesothorax, and the other between the mesothorax and the metathorax. A pair of abdominal stigmata are situated between the lateral margins of the tergum and the sternum at the anterior end of each of the first eight abdominal segments.

*To see the stigmata, examine from the ventral surfaces, stretching the abdomen slightly. The stigmata are at the apices, of small backwardly projecting spout-like processes, which lie just beneath the anterior angles of the several terga.*

## **C. The Appendages.**

### **1. The head appendages are four pairs.**

- a. The antennæ are very long, slender, many-jointed, and freely movable filaments, inserted into a pair of oval arthrodial membranes just in front of and below the eyes.

*To see the next three pairs of appendages, collectively called 'mouth-parts,' fix the animal down on its back by means of a pair of small pins passed through the sides of its prothorax. Bend the ventral part of the head forwards, and fix it in that position by means of crossed pins.*

*Examine the appendages in situ, noting their positions.*

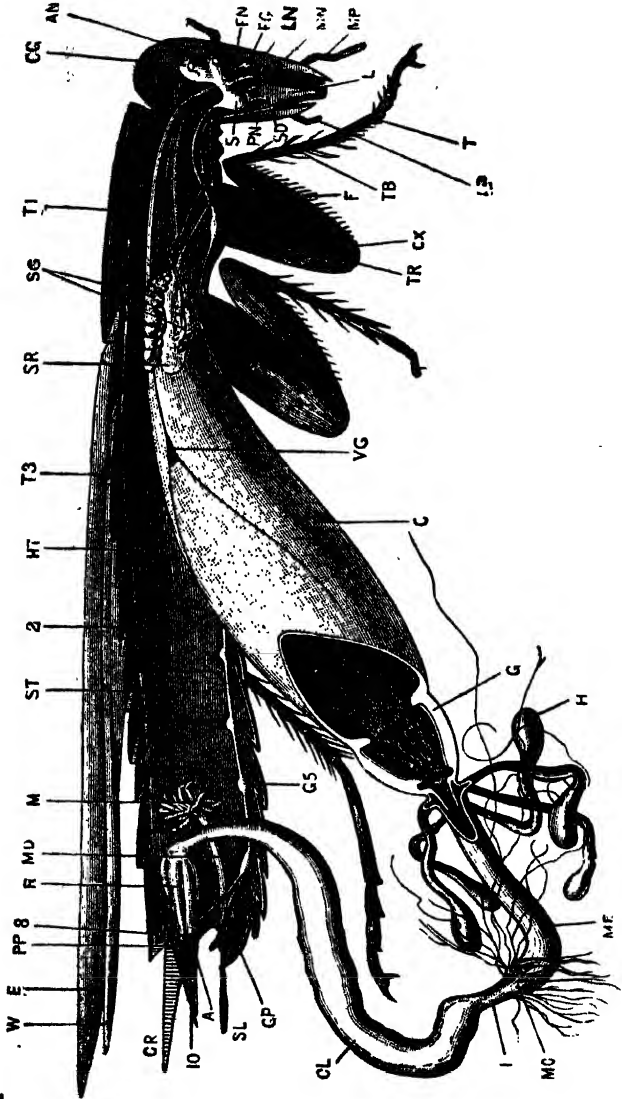
*Remove the whole of the labium (SM to PG, fig. 39) without injury to the structures beneath it. Mount it in glycerin.*

*Similarly remove and mount the right first maxilla and the right mandible.*

- b. The mandibles are a pair of stout jaws, strongly toothed on their inner margins, and working sideways. They lie immediately below the genæ, and articulate with the epicranium and with the clypeus.

Each appendage of the next two pairs consists of (1) an inner series of stout, somewhat flattened pieces, movably articulated to one another, and acting as jaws; and (2) a slender, sensory branch springing from the outer side of the inner series. The appendage, as a whole, bears some resemblance to a typical forked Crustacean limb; but the student is warned that no safe comparison can at present be made between the two.

- c. The first maxillæ are situated behind the mandibles. Each consists of the following parts :
- i. The proximal portion consists of two segments, the **cardo** or basal piece, and the **stipes** or stem.
  - ii. The distal portion is in two divisions, an inner and an outer, both articulating with the stipes. The inner division, or **lacinia**, is a hard blade pointed at the end, and provided with stiff setæ along its inner border. The outer division, or **galea**, is softer and is elongated : on the inner surface of its distal end is an oval cushion covered with short curved stiff setæ, and notched to receive the point of the lacinia.
  - iii. The **maxillary palp** is a five-jointed palp, borne on the outer side of the distal end of the stipes. Its first two segments are short.
- d. The second maxillæ are similar in shape to the first maxillæ, but smaller. They are fused in the median plane by their proximal portions, and together constitute the **labium** or posterior lip.
- i. The two proximal portions, fused in the median plane, form a three-jointed plate. The **submentum** or basal segment is the largest of the three, and is very broad from side to side. The middle segment, or **mentum**, is smaller, and is followed by the **prementum**.
  - ii. The distal portions are separate. Each is divided into an outer division, the **paraglossa**, corresponding to the galea of the first maxilla ; and an inner division, the **glossa**, corresponding to the lacinia.
  - iii. The **labial palps** are three-jointed, and correspond in form and position to those of the first maxillæ. They are borne by the prementum, and the stump supporting each is called the **palpiger**.
2. The **thoracic appendages** are three pairs of legs, borne by the **sterna** of the thoracic segments. They are very



similar to each other, but the hindmost are rather the largest. Each leg consists of the following parts :

- a. The coxa is the stout flat proximal piece of each leg.
- b. The trochanter is a very small piece attached to the distal end of the coxa.
- c. The femur resembles the coxa in form, but is more slender.
- d. The tibia is a slender straight segment armed with strong spines.
- e. The tarsus, or foot, is six-jointed, each segment having a soft white setose patch under its distal end, giving the animal a foothold in climbing steep or slippery surfaces. The terminal piece
  - or pulvillus is small and bears a pair of claws.

3. Abdominal appendages are very rare amongst adult insects. The anal cerci already described, and possibly also the styles on the ninth sternum of the male, may be appendages, as also may the gonapophyses; but it is doubtful whether these really belong to the same category as the appendages of the head and thorax.

The gonapophyses belong to the genital apparatus, and will be described later.

FIG. 40.—*Periplaneta americana*. The male dissected from the right side. The testes and vasa deferentia are not figured. (C. H. H.)

A, anus. AN, antennary lobe of supra-oesophageal ganglion, with antennary nerve out short. C, crop. CG, supra-oesophageal ganglion. CL, colon. CR, anal cercus. CX, coxa. E, tegmen. F, femur. FG, frontal ganglion. FN, visceral nerve. G, gizzard. GP, one of the gonapophyses. G 5, fifth abdominal ganglion. H, hepatic cæcum. HT, heart. I, ileum. L, lingua. LN, nerve to labrum. LP, labial palp. M, mushroom-shaped gland. MC, Malpighian cæca opening into junction of mesenteron and ileum: they are much longer and more numerous than indicated. MD, ejaculatory duct. ME, mesenteron. MN, maxillary nerve. MP, maxillary palp. PN, labial nerve. PP, podical plate, diagrammatically drawn. R, rectum. S, sub-oesophageal ganglion. SD, salivary duct just above its opening into the mouth. SG, salivary glands. SL, style borne by ninth sternum. SR, salivary receptacle. ST, one of the abdominal stigmata. T, proximal joint of the tarsus. TB, tibia. TR, trochanter. T 1, first thoracic tergum, or pronotum. T 3, third thoracic tergum, or metanotum. VG, visceral ganglion. W, wing. 2, tergum of second abdominal segment. 8, tergum of eighth abdominal segment. 10, tergum of tenth abdominal segment.



### III. DISSECTION OF THE COCKROACH.

*Fix the animal down with the dorsal surface upwards. This may be done by drying it with blotting-paper, and immersing its under surface in melted paraffin or wax, and holding it in this position till the wax is cool: or the animal may be fixed to a board by means of small pins passed through the lateral regions of the mesothorax and of the abdomen.*

*Cut off the tegmina and the wings. Carefully cut through the terga of the abdomen and thorax close to each side, and remove the terga, avoiding injury to the heart, which lies just beneath, and, indeed, can be seen through the terga.*

#### A. The Circulatory System.

1. The heart is a straight chambered tube running along the mid-dorsal line of the abdomen and thorax. It receives blood through paired lateral openings or ostia, arranged segmentally, and drives it forwards by rhythmical contractions.

#### B. The Digestive and Excretory Systems.

The alimentary canal, with its glandular appendages, is situated almost entirely in the abdomen, and is enveloped in an opaque white dendritic mass, the fat-body.

*Expose and unravel the alimentary canal and its appendages. The dissection consists almost entirely of cutting through the tracheæ which bind the organs together. In dissecting the salivary ducts great care must be taken not to injure the nervous system in the head.*

1. The alimentary canal is short, and slightly convoluted in its hinder part. It may be divided according to its mode of development into three regions—viz. the stomodæum and the proctodæum, which are invaginations of the anterior and posterior ends of the embryo respectively; and the mesenteron, or middle portion, which alone is formed from the primitive alimentary tract of the embryo.

a. The stomodæum has a chitinous cuticular lining, continuous with the cuticular investment of the head; and is divided into the following regions:

i. The buccal cavity is lodged in the head, and its posterior wall is raised up to form an elongated fleshy tongue or lingua.

The salivary duct opens by a median aperture in the angle between the lingua and the labium (fig. 40).

ii. The œsophagus is a narrow tube running from the mouth through the nerve-collar and along the neck. It is laterally compressed in the cervical region.

iii. The crop is a large thin-walled pyriform sac, extending through the thorax and far into the abdomen. It is not separated by any distinct line of demarcation from the œsophagus.

iv. The gizzard, or proventriculus, is a pyriform sac, with thick muscular walls. Within it is a series of six large cuticular teeth, and behind these six small elevations covered with setæ, which serve as a strainer.

*Lay the gizzard open to expose the teeth.*

b. The mesenteron is a short narrow tube extending backwards from the hinder end of the gizzard.

*Lay the mesenteron open, and note the funnel-like prolongation of the gizzard extending into it.*

c. The proctodæum is the convoluted hinder portion of the alimentary canal, and is lined by a thin chitinous cuticle. It is divided into the following regions:

i. The ileum is a short narrow tube, the anterior end of which is marked by the attachment of the numerous fine thread-like Malpighian tubules.

- ii. The colon is much wider and longer than the ileum, and is constricted at its hinder end.
- iii. The rectum is the short dilated terminal portion of the alimentary canal. Its wall has six longitudinal ridges, projecting internally. It ends at the anus, between the podical plates.

## 2. The digestive glands.

- a. The salivary glands are two pairs of diffuse white glands on the sides of the anterior part of the crop.

The salivary receptacles are a pair of thin-walled sacs, one on each side of the crop, between the two glands of its side.

The ducts of the receptacles run forwards and unite beneath the nerve-cord at the hinder end of the neck to form a median duct, which runs forwards to open into the mouth, behind the base of the lingua.

The ducts of the salivary glands unite to form one duct on each side: the two ducts thus formed run forwards and unite beneath the nerve-cord in the hinder part of the neck to form a median duct: this runs forwards between the nerve-cord and the median duct of the receptacles, and opens into the latter at the anterior end of the neck.

*Having made out the anatomical relations of the salivary glands, receptacles, and ducts, remove the whole apparatus, spread it out in a little salt solution, and fix with alcohol. Stain it with carmine; dehydrate, mount in balsam, and examine with the microscope.*

Nuclei are visible in the walls of the ducts, and in the secretory cells of the glands.

The chitinous lining of the ducts shows a spiral thickening.

- b. The 'hepatic' cæca are eight or seven cæcal diverticula of the anterior end of the mesenteron.

They are convoluted and club-shaped.

*Note the openings of the hepatic cæca into the mesenteron.*

3. The excretory system consists of sixty or more Malpighian tubules, which are fine filamentous diverticula of the anterior end of the ileum, arranged in six bundles. They are very long and convoluted, and are interlaced among the tracheæ and the filaments of the fat-body all through the abdomen.

### C. The Respiratory System.

The respiratory system consists of a series of tracheal tubes containing air. These commence at the respiratory apertures, or *stigmata* on the sides of the thorax and abdomen, and ramify through all parts of the body. Expiration is effected by contraction of the muscles of the body, which compress the tracheæ; inspiration, by dilatation of the tracheæ through the elasticity of their cuticular lining.

The readiness with which air is carried to all parts of the body, through the great perfection of the respiratory system, accounts for the extreme imperfection of the circulatory system in an animal which is otherwise very highly organised.

1. The tracheal tubes when full of air are silvery white.

*Remove a large trachea, and examine it microscopically in glycerin.*

- a. The cuticular lining has a very strong spiral thickening, which gives great elasticity to the tube.

- b. The cells which form the organised wall of the tube, and secrete the chitinous lining, are thin and not easily seen till stained.

*Stain with carmine, and note the nuclei of the cells.*

*Remove small portions of muscle from the leg, of the fat-body, of the salivary gland, etc., and note and examine the fine tracheal tubes ramifying through them. Stain as above.*

### D. The Nervous System.

The nervous system consists of supra-oesophageal and sub-oesophageal ganglia, and para-oesophageal connectives in

the head ; a double ventral chain in the thorax and abdomen ; and a visceral nervous system in relation with the alimentary canal (fig. 40, p. 178).

1. The cephalic nervous system.

*If the buccal cavity has already been exposed, a second specimen will probably be necessary for the dissection of the nervous system of the head.*

*Fix the head, with the anterior surface upwards, by means of a fine pin through the upper part of the epicranium and another between the mandibles.*

*Remove the clypeus and the anterior portion of the epicranium with scissors or the point of a scalpel, taking care not to injure the ganglia, which lie close beneath the clypeus. Carefully expose and clean the following structures, avoiding injury to the cephalic portion of the visceral nervous system.*

- a. The supra-oesophageal, or 'cerebral,' ganglia are a pair of large closely apposed ganglia close to the anterior surface of the head. They are supported by an internal chitinous framework, the tentorium.
- i. The 'hemispheres' are the large rounded upper parts of the ganglia. From them arise the large optic nerves.
- ii. The antennary lobes are the smaller and lower portions of the ganglia. From them the antennary nerves arise.

*Turn the head and fix it with the right side uppermost. Remove the gena and mandible, and as much as is necessary of the first maxilla, submentum, and mentum, to expose the following structures on the right side :*

- b. The para-oesophageal connectives are a pair of short thick bands of nervous tissue, running round the sides of the oesophagus, from the lower part of the supra-oesophageal ganglia to the sub-oesophageal ganglia. From each a nerve arises supplying

the labrum, as well as a nerve belonging to the visceral system.

- c. The sub-oesophageal ganglia are a pair of large ganglia lying between the submentum and the oesophagus. Below they give off several nerves, of which the two largest on each side supply the maxillary and labial palps. Above, they give off connectives, which run back through the neck and form the anterior part of the ventral chain.

## 2. The ventral chain.

*Fix the cockroach with the dorsal surface uppermost; remove the gizzard, mesenteron, and proctodæum; and turn the crop aside.*

The ventral chain consists of a double series of ganglia, with double connectives, running along the ventral wall of the body.

A pair of closely apposed ganglia lie in each of the three thoracic segments, and a pair of smaller ganglia in each of the first six abdominal segments. The last pair are the largest of the abdominal ganglia, and give off nerves to the various parts of the sixth and succeeding segments.

3. The visceral nervous system arises as a pair of nerves, one from the anterior part of each para-oesophageal connective. The two nerves, after giving off a pair of nerves to the labrum, unite in the frontal ganglion, a small median ganglion on the anterior wall of the oesophagus, just below the antennary lobes. From this ganglion a median recurrent nerve runs backwards on the oesophagus, beneath the supra-oesophageal ganglia, from which it receives a pair of ganglionated nerve-trunks; it then continues its course backwards, as a median nerve, along the oesophagus and crop to a small triangular ganglion on the dorsal surface of the crop, about the middle of its length. From this ganglion two branches run obliquely backwards over the surface of the crop.

**E. Sense Organs.**

1. The tactile organs have already been examined. They are the antennæ, the maxillary palps, the labial palps, and the anal cerci.
2. The eyes are very large compound organs which agree in essential characters with those of the crayfish. The corneal facets are hexagonal.
3. The fenestræ are probably the vestiges of the simple eyes (*ocelli*) which occur in many other insects.

**F. The Reproductive System.****1. In the male.**

- a. The testes are a pair of organs lying immediately below the fourth and fifth terga of the abdomen. They are imbedded in the fat-body, and are only functional in young males.
- b. The vasa deferentia are a pair of exceedingly narrow tubes leading from the testes to the vesiculæ seminales.
- c. The vesiculæ seminales, together known as the 'mushroom-shaped gland,' are two tufts of white glandular cæca, opening into the slightly dilated anterior end of the ejaculatory duct.
- d. The ejaculatory duct is a short muscular tube opening behind to the exterior, just below the anus.
- e. The gonapophyses are a series of strong chitinous hooks and plates, forming a complex copulatory organ. They are asymmetrical, and surround the genital aperture.

**2. In the female.**

- a. The ovaries are two sets of elongated tubular organs in the hinder part of the abdomen. Each set consists of eight tubes, united in front and attached by a ligament to the dorsal wall of the thorax. Behind and below they unite to form

the oviducts. Each tube has a moniliform appearance, from the bulgings caused by the contained ova: in the hinder and lower part of the tube the ova are large and nearly mature; those in the upper part of the tube are in various earlier stages of development.

At the time of laying, one ovum escapes from

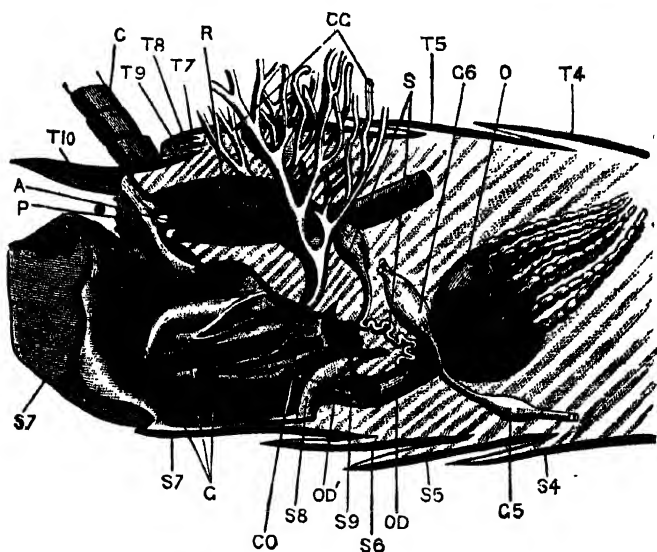


FIG. 41.—*Periplaneta americana*. The hinder part of the abdomen of the female dissected from the right side to show the reproductive apparatus. The right ovary with its duct has been removed, and only a small portion of the colleterial glands is shown. The thick black lines represent the cut edges of the terga, sternae, etc.,  $\times 8$ . (C. H. R.)

A, anus. C, anal cercus. CG, colleterial glands. CO, aperture of ducts of colleterial glands. G, gonapophyses. G 5 and G 6, the last two abdominal nerve-ganglia. O, left ovary. OD, left oviduct. OD', median oviduct. P, podical plate. R, rectum. S, the two divisions of the spermatheca. S 4, S 5, etc., fourth and following sternae. T 4, T 5, etc., fourth and following terga.

each ovarian tube, and the sixteen are laid side by side in a capsule.



- b. The **oviducts**, formed as above, are a pair of short wide tubes, which unite, and open to the exterior by a median vertical slit in the eighth sternum.
- c. The **spermatheca** consists of two unlike and unequal cæca of small size, opening by a median aperture on the ninth sternum. It lies close behind the last nerve-ganglia of the ventral chain.
- d. The **colleterial glands** are a pair of much-branched tubular glands, whose ducts open separately, but close together, behind the spermatheca, and between the inner gonapophyses.
- e. The **gonapophyses** are six symmetrically arranged processes, strongly chitinised on their outer surfaces. They are outgrowths from the sternal surface, between the vulva and the anus; and aid in depositing the eggs.

## CHAPTER XI.

AMPHIOXUS (the Lancelet). *Branchiostoma lanceolata*.

AMPHIOXUS is a small semi-transparent fish-like animal, about a couple of inches in length, found in the English Channel, the Mediterranean and other seas. It is by day of sluggish habits, and usually remains buried in the sand, either completely or with the anterior end alone protruding; but at night, or if disturbed, it swims actively by rapid lateral movements of the body.

Though obviously related to the great group of vertebrate animals, Amphioxus is in several important respects different from any of the more familiar members of the group. Indeed, in spite of its fish-like appearance and habits, the differences between Amphioxus and an ordinary fish, such as a dog-fish or whiting, are of greater morphological importance than those separating Fishes from the most highly organised vertebrates, such as Birds or Mammals. It is therefore necessary to divide vertebrates into two main divisions, the first of which, **Acrania**, includes Amphioxus and a probably degenerate group, the Ascidians; while the second division, **Craniota**, includes all remaining vertebrates, from Fishes to Mammals.

Owing to the small size of Amphioxus, it is not practicable to determine all the points in its anatomy by dissection. The method of procedure adopted in the case of the other animals dealt with in this book will in consequence be departed from to some extent; and the present chapter will be arranged under three heads.

## I. A description of the anatomy.

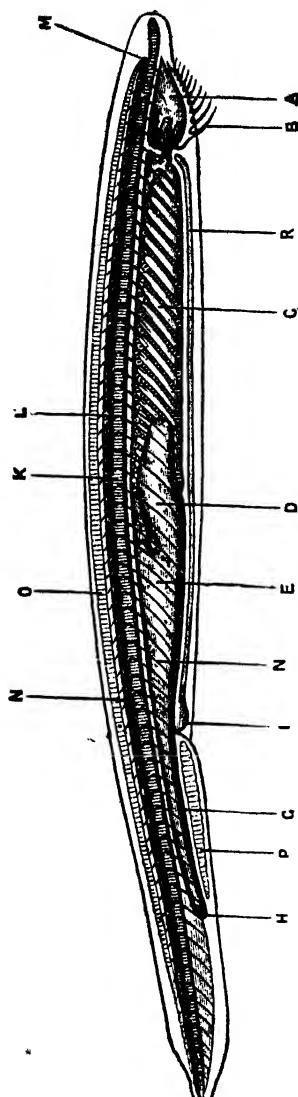


FIG. 42.—*Amphioxus*. A young specimen, viewed from the right side as a transparent object. In the adult the gill-slits are much more numerous. (A. M. M.)

A, buccal cavity. B, buccal tentacles. C, pharynx. D, liver. E, stomach. G, intestine. H, anus. I, atrial pore. K, notochord. L, spinal cord. M, eye. N, septa separating the myotomes from each other. O, skeleton of dorsal fin. P, skeleton of ventral fin. R, transverse muscles in the floor of the atrial cavity.

## II. Directions for dissection.

## III. Descriptions of transverse sections taken through different regions, and examined as microscopical objects.

### I. THE ANATOMY OF AMPHIOXUS.

#### A. External Characters.

1. The **shape**. Amphioxus is elongated, pointed at both ends, and compressed from side to side, especially towards the posterior end. There is no obvious head, and no trace of limbs.

2. The  **fins**. A low dorsal fin runs along the mid-dorsal line from end to end of the animal, becoming more prominent at the hinder end as the upper lobe of the caudal fin.

The ventral surface bears a median fin in its posterior third, but in front of this is flattened, so that the body is triangular in transverse section. The sides of this flattened surface are bordered by the lateral fins, or metapleural folds.

3. The **myotomes**. The sides of the body are marked by a series of > shaped lines, formed by septa of connective tissue which divide the great lateral muscles of the body into segments or myotomes.

4. The '**mouth**' or opening of the oral vestibule is a large oval aperture on the ventral surface of the anterior end of the body, and is fringed on each side by a series of ciliated tentacles or cirri.

5. The **anus** is on the ventral surface, not far from the hinder end of the body. It is placed a little to the left of the median plane, at the base of the caudal fin.

6. The **atrial pore** is a median aperture on the ventral surface, bordered by prominent lips. It is in front

of the anus, at the junction of the ventral and lateral fins, and about one-third the length of the animal from its hinder end. Through it the water escapes which has been taken in at the mouth with the food, and which serves for respiration.

### B. The Skeletal System.

The skeleton of *Amphioxus* is extremely simple, and contains neither bone nor cartilage.

1. The **notochord** is a median elastic rod which traverses the body from end to end, lying rather nearer the dorsal than the ventral surface, and between the central nervous system and the alimentary canal. It is in contact with the integument at the two ends of the body; and it serves slightly to stiffen the animal.

It consists of cells in which, at an early stage, large vacuoles appear: these vacuoles increase in size and ultimately almost completely fill the cells, rendering their outlines difficult to trace. On the dorsal and ventral surfaces of the notochord, the cells are comparatively unaltered.

In all vertebrates a notochord is formed in early stages of development, but it is generally replaced more or less completely by a vertebral column in the adult.

2. The **buccal skeleton**. At each side of the mouth is a curved bar, resembling the notochord in structure. Each bar is divided transversely into a number of short segments, and from these filaments arise which support the buccal cirri, which vary from twenty to forty in number, becoming more numerous as age advances.
3. The **skeleton of the median fins**. Along the whole of the dorsal fin, except at its extreme anterior and posterior ends, is a longitudinal series of connective-tissue compartments, filled with a gelatinous substance. The compartments are more than twice as

numerous as the segments of the body. A similar, but double, structure extends along the ventral fin, between the anus and the atrial pore.

4. The **branchial skeleton**. A series of elastic rods in the walls of the pharynx support the gill-arches. Their arrangement will be described in connection with the alimentary canal.
5. The **connective-tissue skeleton**. The connective-tissue of *Amphioxus* is very dense, and forms a kind of skeleton, of which the following are the chief parts :
  - a. The sheath of the notochord is thick and closely surrounds that organ.
  - b. The neural sheath surrounds the central nervous system, and is continuous below with the notochordal sheath.
  - c. The **septa** are sheets of connective tissue which run outwards from the notochordal and neural sheaths to the integument. They separate the successive muscle-segments, or **myotomes**, from each other ; and their lines of insertion into the integument form the > shaped markings along the sides of the animal. The septa on the two sides of the body are not paired, but alternate with each other.

### C. The Muscular System.

1. The **lateral muscles** are by far the largest part of the muscular system. They form the side-walls of the body along its whole length, and are divided, as noticed above, into muscle-segments or **myotomes** by the connective-tissue septa. The muscle-fibres run longitudinally, *i.e.* parallel to the axis of the body ; and it is by alternate contractions of these muscles on opposite sides of the body, aided by the elasticity of the notochord, that the lateral undulatory swimming movements of the animal are produced.

There have been found to be 61 myotomes on each side of the body in a considerable number of specimens.

2. The **ventral muscles** form a sheet covering the ventral surface of the body from the mouth to the atrial pore. The muscle-fibres run transversely from side to side, and by their contraction expel the water from the atrial cavity.
3. Smaller muscle-bundles are found in relation with the mouth and its cirri, with the gill-apparatus, and with the anus and atrial pore.

Nearly all the muscles are striated.

#### D. The Digestive and Respiratory Systems.

The alimentary canal is a nearly straight tube, the anterior part of which is so modified as to allow of the escape of water taken in at the mouth with the food, and to utilise this water for respiration, as is the case in aquatic vertebrates generally.

1. The **buccal cavity** or oral vestibule is bounded laterally by folds, within which and near their free margins are the curved bars which support the cirri. There are no jaws.

The anterior part of the buccal cavity is lined by a single layer of short columnar epithelial cells, some of which bear short cilia. In the hinder part of the cavity the epithelium is altogether different, the cells being very long and slender and either secretory or provided with long cilia. This epithelium forms the **wheel-organ**.

2. The **velum** is a muscular diaphragm between the buccal cavity and the pharynx, opposite the anterior angle of the seventh myotome. It is perforated below its middle by an aperture (larval mouth) which leads upwards and backwards into the pharynx, and the border of which is fringed with a circle of twelve backwardly projecting **velar tentacles**.

3. The **pharynx** is a wide sac, forming about half the length of the alimentary canal. It is attached along its mid-dorsal line to the under surface of the sheath of the notochord, and is almost surrounded by a space—the **atrial cavity**—which receives the water that passes out of the pharynx. Its sides are perforated by a large number of slit-like apertures—the **gill-slits**—which run obliquely downwards and backwards. The parts of the pharyngeal wall between the successive slits are narrow bars—the **gill-arches**—each of which is strengthened by an **axial rod** of a chitinous substance. These arches are of two kinds, arranged alternately: the axial rods of the third, fifth, etc., arches being forked at their ventral ends, while the alternate rods are unsplit. Each double gill-slit is originally a single one, but becomes divided in the course of development by the downgrowth of the unsplit bar from its dorsal end. The split rods may hence be called **primary rods**, and the unsplit ones **secondary rods**. Like the myotomes, the gill-arches are not in pairs, but alternate on the two sides of the body.

The successive gill-arches are connected by horizontal bars, of which there are usually three or more crossing each slit, so that the pharynx has the character of an open meshwork. The inner surface of each gill-slit is lined by columnar ciliated cells, which maintain a continual stream of water through the gill-slits from the pharynx to the atrial cavity, the stream serving to aerate the blood in the vessels of the arches as it passes over them. The inner (pharyngeal) edge of each bar also bears ciliated cells separated from those lining the gill-slits by two groups of cells bearing very short cilia.

Along the mid-dorsal line of the pharynx is the deep **epibranchial groove**, lined by a single layer of long columnar ciliated cells. A band of similar cells runs along the **endostyle** or mid-ventral wall



of the pharynx, which is folded longitudinally to form a groove. The endostyle contains mucous glands, the secretion from which is wafted upwards towards the epibranchial groove by the cilia lining the walls of the pharynx. It arrives in the groove mixed with food particles, and is then urged towards the intestine by ciliary action.

4. The intestine commences at the hinder end of the pharynx, close to the dorsal surface, and runs straight to the anus. It is a direct continuation of the epibranchial groove, and at its anterior end is very narrow; further back it dilates considerably; and this expanded part, which is sometimes called 'stomach,' is produced into a large pouch-like sac—the liver—which runs forwards some distance along the right side of the pharynx, and ends blindly in front.

#### E. The Atrial Cavity.

*The boundaries and relations of this cavity can best be determined by the examination of a series of transverse sections.*

The atrial cavity is the large space which surrounds the pharynx at the sides and below: into it the stream of water passes from the pharynx through the gill-slits, to escape finally from the atrial pore.

The atrial cavity develops in the larva as a groove along the under surface of the body; by fusion of its lips the groove becomes a tube, which ends blindly in front, but retains its opening behind at the atrial pore. The cavity extends laterally so as to surround the pharynx both below and at the sides, lying between the pharynx and the muscular body-wall.

The epithelium lining the atrial cavity is supported by a layer of connective tissue, and usually contains a good deal of brown pigment, which renders it easy to trace. It is represented by the thick black line in figs. 43-46, which show its distribution in different regions of the body. It lines the

inner surface of the atrial folds, covers the outer surface of each of the gill-arches, and invests the liver and the anterior portion of the intestine.

On the primary gill-arches this layer of atrial epithelium is wider than on the secondary arches, and towards the dorsal surface of the pharynx it rises up to cover the **suspensory folds** of the pharynx, which run across from the dorsal part of the sides of the pharynx to the inner surface of the atrial folds and separate the atrial cavity below from the dorsal coelomic canals above. It should be borne in mind, however, that this atrial epithelium is *ectoderm* and is always separated from the alimentary canal by a mesodermal layer.

The atrial cavity begins opposite the anterior end of the pharynx, and extends back almost as far as the anus; behind the atrial pore it is confined to the right side of the body.

#### F. The Coelom or Body-cavity.

*This can only be traced by means of sections.*

The coelom, or body-cavity, is perfectly distinct from the atrial cavity, though its boundaries are not easy to follow, and its relations differ considerably in different regions of the body. It contains during life a coagulable fluid.

1. Behind the atrial pore the coelom is a cavity of some width surrounding the intestine and separating it from the body-wall.
2. In front of the atrial pore it becomes greatly reduced owing to the increased size of the atrial cavity: it is, however, easily recognisable as a narrow space immediately surrounding the intestine and the liver.
3. In the region of the pharynx the coelom is much subdivided and more difficult to trace. Its chief divisions are as follows:—
  - a. The dorsal coelomic canals are a pair of wide spaces lying at the sides of the dorsal part of the pharynx, between the atrial folds and the suspensory folds of the pharynx.

- b. The **branchial cœlomic canals** are a series of tubular cavities in the primary gill-arches, lying within the folds into which the atrial epithelium is thrown along the outer sides of these arches. These cavities are very small in the ventral portions of the arches, but widen out towards their dorsal ends, and open, as shown in figs. 43 and 44, into the large dorsal cœlomic canals above the suspensory folds. Branchial cœlomic canals also traverse the skeletal rods of the secondary gill-arches.
- c. The **endostylar cœlomic canal** is a space, in which the cardiac aorta runs, below the endostyle. The branchial cœlomic canals of both primary and secondary gill-arches communicate with it.
- d. A series of **perigonadial cœlomic spaces** surround the reproductive organs.

#### G. The Circulatory System.

*The main features of the circulatory system can be made out by examination of a series of transverse sections.*

There is no heart, but the general course of the circulation is the same as in other gill-breathing vertebrates. The blood is colourless and contains but few corpuscles.

The principal vessels are as follows :

1. The **cardiac aorta** is a median longitudinal vessel running forwards along the ventral wall of the pharynx in the endostylar cœlomic canal.
2. The **aortic arches** are a series of vessels running up the pharyngeal bars or gill-arches. There appear to be three in each bar, the cœlomic, the somatic, and the visceral. The **cœlomic aortic arch** is the outermost of the three, and in the primary bars lies close to the atrial epithelium in the wall of the branchial cœlomic canal, while in the secondary bars it appears to lie within the skeletal rod. The **somatic aortic arch** runs along the inner edge of the skeletal

rod. The **visceral aortic arch** runs near the inner edge of the bar. The aortic arches open above into the dorsal aortæ. Those of the primary pharyngeal bars alone arise directly from the cardiac aorta. The cœlomic aortic arches of adjacent bars communicate with each other by vessels in the horizontal bars of the pharynx.

3. The **dorsal aortæ** are a pair of longitudinal vessels into which the aortic arches of both primary and secondary gill-arches open at their dorsal ends. They lie just beneath the notochord, one on each side of the epibranchial groove, and project into the dorsal cœlomic canals.

The dorsal aortæ carry the aërated blood backwards: they unite at the hinder end of the pharynx to form a single vessel, which runs back along the dorsal surface of the intestine.

4. The **portal veins** are vessels running in the cœlom along the ventral surface of the intestine: they collect the blood from the intestine and carry it forwards to the liver, where they break up into capillaries.
5. The **hepatic veins** are vessels which collect the blood from the liver and carry it backwards along the dorsal surface of the liver. On reaching the junction of the liver and intestine they unite to form a single vessel, which runs forwards along the ventral surface of the pharynx and becomes the **cardiac aorta**.
6. A longitudinal vessel runs along the inner side of each atrial fold, and supplies the myotomes and reproductive organs.

#### H. The Lymphatic System.

Distinct from the cœlomic spaces is a system of lymphatic spaces associated with the myotomes, nerve-roots, and other parts: of these the most conspicuous are a pair of large **metapleural canals** running longitudinally within the **metapleural folds**.

### I. The Excretory System.

Three kinds of excretory organs have been described in *Amphioxus*.

1. Weiss and Boveri discovered a series of curved **nephridia** lying in the dorsal coelomic canal along each side of the pharynx. Each tubular nephridium communicates with the atrial cavity by a single opening on the outer side of a secondary pharyngeal bar, close to its dorsal end. The hollow stalks of many club-shaped flame-cells open into the nephridial tube.
2. Müller's renal papillæ are numerous pigmented papillæ on the floor of the atrial cavity.
3. Lankester's pigmented canals are a pair of short wide funnels, with deeply pigmented walls, in the twenty-seventh segment, opposite the hinder end of the pharynx. They lie, one at each side of the body, in the dorsal coelomic canals above the suspensory folds of the pharynx. Each tube is attached along its outer side to the body-wall, and opens by its wider end into the atrial cavity; in front it is considerably contracted, but appears to open into the coelomic canal.

### K. The Nervous System.

The nervous system of *Amphioxus* consists of: (1) the **central portion**, which, as in other vertebrates, is a tube of nervous matter lying in a sheath of connective tissue immediately above the notochord, and extending almost the entire length of the body; (2) the **peripheral portion**, which consists of the nerves connecting the central portion with the various parts of the body.

*The nervous system can be well seen in transverse sections of adults, or by examination of young specimens mounted whole. The entire nervous system of fresh specimens or of animals fixed in alcohol can be isolated by placing them in 20 per cent. nitric*

*acid for three days, then washing thoroughly and leaving in water for a day. By this treatment the connective tissue is so softened and loosened that on shaking the bottle the nervous system is readily and completely separated from all the other parts. It may then be transferred to alcohol, stained, and mounted in the usual manner.*

1. The central nervous system or spinal cord is of nearly uniform diameter along the greater part of its length: it diminishes slightly in size towards the anterior end, and much more markedly near the posterior end, where it is very slender.

The central canal lies much nearer the ventral than the dorsal surface: it is very small except at the extreme front end, where it expands to form the **ventricle**. From the anterior end of this a small diverticulum arises, which in early life communicates by a pore with a ciliated pit on the dorsal surface and left side of the anterior end of the body. Through this pit the central canal of the nervous system at first opens directly to the exterior, but the pore closes during development.

At intervals along the spinal cord are spots of black pigment, contained in cells in the floor of the central canal.

2. The **peripheral nervous system** consists of nerves of two kinds: (1) nerves which arise by single roots, and, except in the case of the first pair, from the dorsal surface of the spinal cord; (2) nerves arising by multiple roots, and from the ventral surface of the cord.

- a. **Nerves arising by single roots.** These apparently correspond to the dorsal or sensory roots of the spinal nerves of other vertebrates. Only the first two pairs have ganglionic enlargements. The first and second are purely sensory nerves, and the remainder are chiefly sensory.

- i. The first pair of nerves arise from the ventral surface of the anterior end of the central nervous system, and supply the anterior fin. Their branches have ganglionic swellings near their distal ends.
- ii. The second pair of nerves are much larger. They arise from the dorsal surface of the spinal cord behind the first pair. Each divides into three main branches, supplying the anterior fin. The finer branches have ganglionic enlargements near their distal ends.
- iii. The third pair of nerves are much smaller than the second, and arise immediately behind them. They supply the parts about the mouth.
- iv. The fourth pair of nerves arise from the dorsal surface of the spinal cord, a short distance behind the third pair; the nerve of the right side being a short distance behind that of the left side.
- v. The fifth pair of nerves are still more oblique, the right nerve arising some distance behind the left.

The succeeding nerves, along the whole length of the cord, arise alternately on the two sides. These nerves run outwards along the connective-tissue septa separating the myotomes, and divide into branches supplying the skin, and, to a limited extent, muscles.

- b. Nerves arising by multiple roots. These apparently correspond to the ventral or motor roots of the spinal nerves of other vertebrates.

They arise from the ventral surface of the spinal cord along nearly its whole length, alter-

nating with the dorsal nerves; a ventral nerve on one side being opposite a dorsal nerve on the other. Each arises by a large number, thirty or more, of very slender rootlets, placed one in front of another, the entire breadth of a ventral root being nearly equal to the interval between two successive roots. The several rootlets do not unite, but pass separately through the connective tissue sheath of the cord, and end in the myotomes.

#### L. The Sense Organs.

The sense organs of *Amphioxus* are extremely simple in structure, and differ markedly from those of the higher vertebrates in being unpaired.

1. The pit-like depression of the skin at the front end which in the young places the central canal of the nervous system in communication with the exterior has been described as an **olfactory organ**. In the adult it is connected by a solid stalk with the roof of the ventricle.
2. Perception of light is probably enhanced by the black pigment cells scattered along the spinal cord, and by an especially large pigment-spot, or 'eye,' in the anterior wall of the ventricle.

#### M. The Reproductive Organs.

The sexes are distinct, but the males and females are alike except as regards the microscopic structure of their reproductive organs. There are no genital ducts.

##### 1. The female.

The **ovaries** are a series of saccular organs of a horseshoe shape arranged in a row along the inner surface of the atrial fold on each side of the pharynx, and extending back as far as the atrial pore. They lie in cavities, which are extensions of the coelom



into the atrial folds: these cavities are easily recognisable while the ovaries are young, but become almost obliterated when the ova ripen.

The ova, when mature, measure 0.1 mm. in diameter; they are discharged into the atrial cavity by dehiscence of the proper wall of the ovary and of the atrial membrane, and escape through the atrial pore. The discharged ova, together with the ovaries, form a bulky mass, which causes great distension of the atrial cavity and distortion of the pharynx and other organs.

## 2. The male.

The testes are similar in form and position to the ovaries; and the spermatozoa, when ripe, are shed like the ova.

The fertilised eggs develop into minute, asymmetrical larvæ.

## II. DISSECTION OF AMPHIOXUS.

*Take an adult specimen which has been macerated for about a day and a half or longer in 20 per cent. nitric acid, and dissect it as described below.*

*Specimens which have been preserved in alcohol serve perfectly well for this purpose. The effect of the nitric acid is to soften and loosen the connective tissue, and so render the dissection much easier.*

### 1. External Characters.

*Place the animal under water in a small dissecting dish. Determine all the external characters, as described on p. 191.*

*Lay the animal on its left side, and fix it down by two small pins passed through the body slightly nearer the ventral than the dorsal border, one pin passing through the buccal cavity about one-sixteenth of an inch from the anterior end; the other through the tail, behind the anus, and about one-eighth of an inch from the hinder end of the body.*

### 2. The skin.

*With needles or fine forceps strip off the skin from the right*

*side of the body; stain and mount a piece, and examine it under the microscope.*

The skin consists of two layers:—

- a. The **epidermis** is a single layer of short columnar and somewhat dumb-bell-shaped cells, with a thick cuticle on their outer ends.
- b. The **dermis** is a very thin layer of connective tissue underlying and supporting the epidermis. It is so thin that it is difficult to recognise it in specimens treated in this way; but it will be easily seen in transverse sections of the animal.

*Strip off the myotomes of the right side one by one with needles or fine forceps; beginning just behind the anus and working forwards until nearly the whole of the myotomes of the right side have been removed, a few only being left at the anterior and posterior ends of the animal.*

*In removing a myotome, take hold of its anterior end or angle, and very carefully draw it off backwards, taking care not to pull away the reproductive or other underlying organs.*

3. The **notochord** is a conspicuous yellow rod traversing the animal from end to end: lying rather nearer the dorsal than the ventral surface, and at the level of the angles of the myotomes.
4. The **spinal cord** is a white band lying immediately dorsal to the notochord.
5. The **skeleton of the dorsal fin** extends along the whole length of the dorsal surface except the extreme anterior and posterior ends: it is a firm gelatinous rod, divided transversely into segments which are much more numerous than the myotomes.
6. The **skeleton of the ventral fin** is a similar but double structure on the ventral surface extending from the atrial pore to the anus.
7. The **reproductive organs** are a series of squarish masses

lying along the ventral edge of the anterior three-fourths of the length of the animal.

*Remove two or three of the reproductive organs; put them on a slide in a drop of glycerin: tease them, and examine with a microscope.*

The **ovary** of the female consists of large rounded and polyhedral ova, with large nuclei: *cf.* fig. 44.

The **testis** of the male has a finely granular appearance, the spermatozoa, when ripe, consisting of minute heads with long thread-like tails.

8. The **transverse muscles** of the ventral body-wall in the pharyngeal region are well seen, immediately ventral to the reproductive organs.

*Remove the reproductive organs of the right side completely, so as to expose the alimentary canal along its whole length.*

9. The **atrial cavity** is the space surrounding the walls of the pharynx at the sides and below. It opens to the exterior by the atrial pore.

10. The **alimentary canal** runs nearly straight from mouth to anus: it consists of the following parts:

a. The **buccal cavity** is the most anterior portion: the mouth, opening into it below, is bordered by tentacles, which increase in length from before backwards.

b. The **pharynx**, which is in part concealed by the liver, forms about half the length of the alimentary canal: it is crossed by close-set parallel lines, oblique to the axis of the body, and marking the positions of the gill-clefts: these do not quite reach either the mid-dorsal or mid-ventral lines, where the wall of the pharynx is formed by the epibranchial groove and the endostyle respectively.

c. The **oesophagus** is a short narrow tube leading from

the dorsal surface of the hinder end of the pharynx to the intestine.

- d. The intestine is wider in front, and narrows behind, running back to the anus.
- e. The liver is a large saccular diverticulum from the front end of the intestine, which extends forwards along the right side of the hinder two-thirds or more of the pharynx.

*To make out the relations of the pharynx, œsophagus, and intestine to each other, carefully remove the liver.*

#### 11. The structure of the alimentary canal.

##### a. The buccal tentacles.

*Remove the entire buccal skeleton, with the tentacles, on both sides, carefully dissecting it with needles from its attachments. Stain it with picrocarmine; mount on a slide in glycerin, and examine with the microscope.*

A jointed skeletal bar borders the buccal aperture on each side, and a similar rod supports each buccal tentacle.

##### b. The pharynx.

*Remove a portion of the pharynx carefully; divide it along the mid-dorsal line, and spread it out flat on a slide; stain it; mount in glycerin or balsam, and examine with the microscope.*

The arrangement of the gill-arches and gill-clefts, and their relation to the endostyle, can be well made out.

*Remove a second length of the pharynx, and with a fine brush pencil off the epithelium from the gill-arches. Treat a third portion with a solution of caustic potash. Mount in glycerin, and examine with the microscope.*

The primary or split rods, and the secondary or unsplit rods (compare p. 195), can be readily made out; also the horizontal bars connecting the successive pairs of primary rods together, and the relations of the rods to the endostyle.

**12. The nervous system.**

*Remove the nerve-cord along its entire length (see p. 200); stain it; mount on a slide in glycerin, and examine with the microscope.*

The dorsal roots of the nerves and their alternate arrangement are well seen (compare pp. 201-203).

**13. The structure of the notochord.**

*Remove a piece of the notochord: stain it; mount in glycerin, and examine with the microscope.*

The notochord breaks up very readily into transverse discs.

**III. EXAMINATION OF TRANSVERSE SECTIONS.**

*Many points in the anatomy of Amphioxus are determined far more easily by an examination of transverse sections of the animal than by dissection. For this purpose a specimen that has been anaesthetised with urethane and preserved in formol should be cut by means of a microtome, and the sections mounted on slides in their proper sequence. It is only necessary to examine in detail a few of the more typical ones.*

**A. Transverse Section passing through the Buccal Cavity.**

1. **General characters.** The dorsal surface is indicated by the laterally compressed dorsal fin: the ventral surface by the mouth-opening, which is bordered at the sides by the thickened lips; within the buccal cavity are usually seen sections of the tentacles. About the middle of the section is the notochord, and above this is the spinal cord. At the sides are the myotomes, separated from each other by connective-tissue septa.

2. **The skin consists of two layers.**

- a. **The epidermis** is a single layer of short columnar cells, with a thick cuticle on their outer ends.
- b. **The dermis** is a very thin layer of connective tissue underlying and supporting the epidermis.

### 3. The skeletal system.

- a. The notochord is oval in section, the longer axis being vertical. It is crossed by numerous wavy transverse bands, the spaces between which are occupied by a homogeneous substance: this latter is the coagulated semi-fluid matter occupying the vacuoles of the notochordal cells, the outlines of which are indicated by the wavy bands.

Near the surface of the notochord, and especially in the dorsal region, cells may be seen which have undergone comparatively little vacuolation.

- b. The connective tissue forms a thick deeply staining investment to the notochord, which is prolonged upwards to enclose the spinal cord, and outwards to form the septa: these latter separate the myotomes from each other, and are continuous at the outer borders with the dermis.
- c. The buccal skeleton. Sections of the segmented rods which strengthen the lips are seen bordering the entrance to the buccal cavity: a smaller rod occupies the axis of each tentacle. In structure these rods resemble the notochord.
- d. The skeleton of the dorsal fin. The dorsal fin is filled with a homogeneous gelatinous substance, which shrinks and is stained slightly by reagents.

### 4. The muscles.

- a. The myotomes are seen in section as squarish masses of muscle lying along the sides of the body in the compartments formed by the septa. Owing to the obliquity of the myotomes, three or more are cut in each transverse section, and owing to their > shape each myotome is cut twice. The myotomes of the two sides are not opposite, but alternate with each other.

- b. Other much smaller muscles are seen in connection with the buccal skeleton and tentacles.

#### 5. The buccal cavity.

The epithelium lining the buccal cavity consists of a single layer of cells, which in the anterior and ventral part are short and columnar, but in the posterior and dorsal region are much elongated, and either ciliated or secretory (wheel-organ).

#### 6. The nervous system.

- a. The spinal cord lies in a connective-tissue sheath immediately above the notochord. In transverse section it is somewhat triangular, with rounded angles, and is rather wider from side to side than it is dorso-ventrally.

The central canal lies nearer the ventral than the dorsal surface: it is lined by short columnar ciliated cells, and immediately below it are the large deeply pigmented cells already mentioned (p. 201). From the central canal a narrow vertical slit extends upwards to the dorsal surface of the cord, both the canal and the slit being bordered by large nerve-cells. In young specimens the slit is open above, but in adults it is closed by connective tissue, and by processes of the nerve-cells growing across it from side to side. The greater part of the cord has a finely stippled appearance, caused by the cut ends of the nerve-fibres.

- b. The nerves can only be recognised in sections which happen to pass through their roots.
  - i. The dorsal nerves arise by large single roots from the sides of the cord, about midway between the dorsal and the ventro-lateral angles.
  - ii. The ventral nerves arise by very minute and multiple rootlets from the ventro-lateral angles of the cord.

## B. Transverse Section through the Anterior Part of the Pharynx.

1. **General characters.** The section is triangular in shape, the apex being formed by the dorsal fin, the base by the ventral surface, and the basal angles by the metapleural folds. The pharynx, perforated by the gill-slits, and surrounded by the atrial cavity, lies below the notochord.

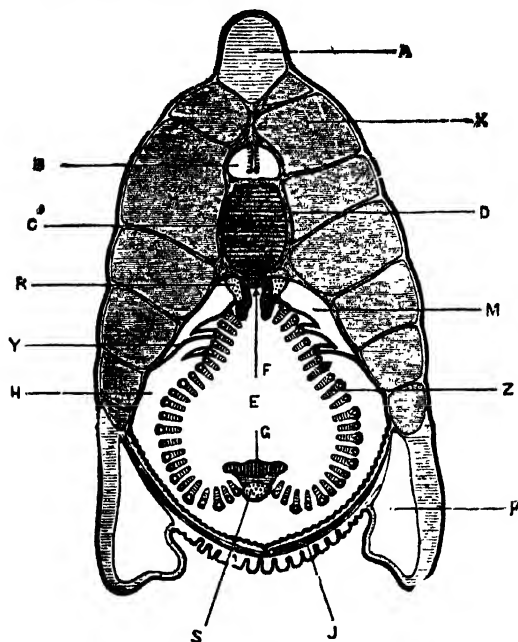


FIG. 43.—*Amphiurus lanceolatus*. Transverse section through the anterior part of the pharynx of an adult specimen. The boundary of the atrial cavity is indicated by a thick black line. (A. M. M.)

A, skeleton of dorsal fin. B, spinal cord. C, notochord. D, connective-tissue sheath surrounding notochord. E, cavity of pharynx. F, epibranchial groove of pharynx. G, endostyle (note that this is really a groove which has flattened under the action of the fixative). H, atrial cavity. J, transverse muscles in floor of atrial cavity. M, dorsal coelomic canal. P, metapleural canal. R, left dorsal aorta. S, endostylar coelomic canal in which the cardiac aorta lies. X, myotome. Y, suspensory fold of pharynx, separating the dorsal coelomic canal from the atrial cavity. Z, gill-arch or branchial bar: the triangular white spot represents the cut surface of the skeletal rod of the arch.



2. The skin of the ventral surface is thrown into deep folds to allow for the distension of the atrial cavity when the reproductive organs attain their full size. Its general characters are the same as in A.
3. The skeletal system is the same as in A, except that the branchial skeleton is present, and that there is no buccal skeleton.

**The muscular system.**

- a. The myotomes are similar to those of section A, but considerably larger.
- b. The ventral muscles form a thin sheet in the atrial fold of each side, extending from the lowest myotome to the mid-ventral line, where the muscles of the two sides meet in a median raphe.
- c. Small muscular bands are present in the suspensory folds of the pharynx and in the gill-arches.
5. The pharynx is often of an inverted heart shape in transverse section (but this is due to deformation when the animal is killed).
- a. The branchial bars, or gill-arches. Owing to their obliquity and extreme closeness to each other, twenty or more bars may be cut on each side in a single section. Each bar is clothed on its outer surface by the atrial epithelium, which is a single layer of columnar cells. Within this is the skeletal rod, deeply grooved along its inner edge. From the rod a thin plate of connective tissue extends inwards, clothed on each side by the pharyngeal epithelium, a single layer of very long columnar ciliated cells.

The branchial bars are alternately large and small, the difference being especially marked at their outer edges. The large ones are the primary, and the small ones the secondary bars.

In the large primary bars a small space is visible between the atrial epithelium and the skeletal rod. This space, the branchial coelomic

canal, which is part of the coelom, is much larger in the dorsal than in the ventral bars of the section, and in the most dorsal ones it is a space of considerable size, the atrial epithelium being produced outwards for some distance. The uppermost two or three of these outward prolongations of the atrial epithelium unite together to form the suspensory folds of the pharynx, which sling it to the inner surface of the atrial folds, the branchial coelomic canals opening here into the dorsal coelomic canals (fig. 44).

- b. The epibranchial groove is a deep median groove in the dorsal wall of the pharynx immediately beneath the notochord. It is lined by columnar epithelium.
  - c. The ventral wall of the pharynx is occupied by a deep groove, the endostyle, lined by a layer of columnar epithelial cells. This groove is sometimes flattened out by the killing reagent.
6. The atrial cavity surrounds the sides and ventral surface of the pharynx, lying between it and the atrial folds, and communicating with the cavity of the pharynx through the gill-slits. The atrial epithelium consists of a single layer of pigmented columnar cells, and is often much folded on the ventral wall.
7. The coelom is much subdivided in this region: its principal divisions are as follows:
- a. The dorsal coelomic canals are a pair of large irregular spaces at the sides of the epibranchial groove, above the suspensory folds of the pharynx, and between these and the atrial folds.
  - b. The branchial coelomic canals are the cavities in the primary branchial bars, between the atrial epithelium and the skeletal rods. They all open at their dorsal ends into the dorsal coelomic canals.

- c. The endostylar coelomic canal is a median space in the ventral region of the endostyle. It encloses the cardiac aorta.
  - 8. The metapleural canals are a pair of large spaces, triangular in section, lying in the metapleural folds.
  - 9. The circulatory system. The larger vessels can be recognised in sections by the coagulated blood which they contain.
    - a. The cardiac aorta is a median vessel lying in the endostylar coelomic canal.
    - b. The dorsal aortæ are a pair of vessels lying one on each side of the epibranchial groove.
    - c. The aortic arches lie in the branchial bars, both primary and secondary (see pp. 198, 199).
  - 10. The nervous system is the same as in section A.
- C. Transverse Section passing through the Hinder Part of the Pharynx.

- 1. General characters. The section is larger than B, passing through the thickest part of the body. It is triangular in shape, the angles being formed by the dorsal and lateral fins respectively. The section passes through the laterally compressed pharynx, on the right side of which is the liver. The reproductive organs project into the atrial cavity from the inner sides of the atrial folds.

The cutaneous, skeletal, muscular, and nervous systems are practically the same as in section B.

- 2. The digestive system.
  - a. The pharynx has the same structure as in section B, but differs markedly in shape, being greatly compressed laterally, so that its two sides are almost in contact with each other; both endostyle and epibranchial groove are well marked.
  - b. The liver lies at the right side of the pharynx, and is oval in section. Its walls are thick, and consist

of a single layer of very long and slender ciliated cells, resting on a thin outer wall of connective tissue.

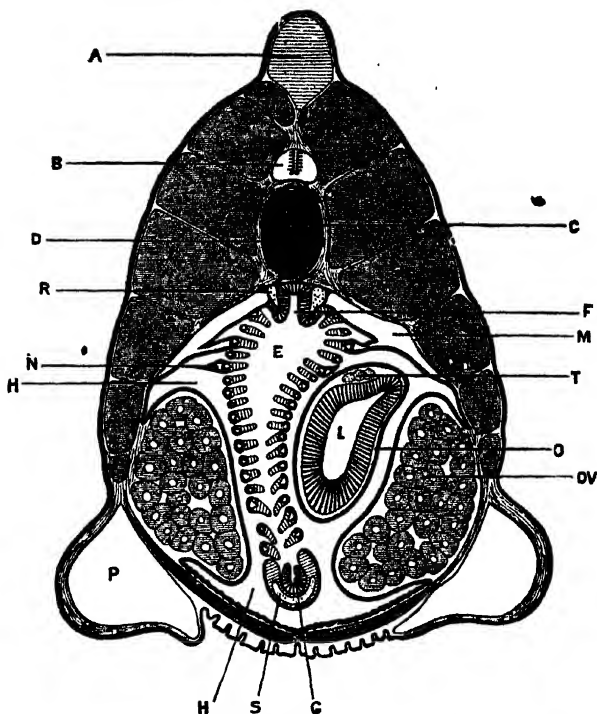


FIG. 44.—*Amphioxus lanceolatus*. Transverse section through the hinder part of the pharynx of an adult female, passing through the liver and ovaries. The boundary of the atrial cavity is indicated by a thick black line. (A. M. M.)

A, skeleton of dorsal fin. B, spinal cord. C, notochord. D, connective tissue sheath of notochord. E, cavity of pharynx. F, epibranchial groove. G, endostyle. H, atrial cavity. L, liver. M, dorsal oesophageal canal. N, branchial oesophageal canal. O, oesophageal space surrounding liver. OV, ovary. P, metapleural canal. R, left dorsal aorta. S, endostylar oesophageal canal. T, hepatic veins.

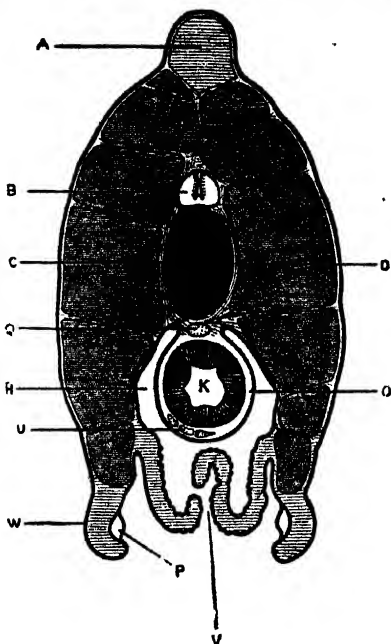
3. The atrial cavity has the same general relations as in section B. The atrial epithelium covers the outer surfaces of the branchial bars, and the suspensory

folds of the pharynx; and is continued downwards over the inner surfaces of the atrial folds, covering the reproductive organs, and being thrown into folds along the ventral wall of the atrial cavity. It also forms an investment to the liver.

4. The coelom is still more subdivided than in section B; its main divisions are as follows:
  - a. The dorsal coelomic canals are a pair of large spaces above the suspensory folds of the pharynx, as in section B.
  - b. The branchial coelomic canals are a series of cavities in the primary branchial bars, as in section B.
  - c. The endostylar coelomic canal is a median space in the endostyle.
  - d. A space surrounding the liver, between its proper wall and the atrial epithelium, is part of the coelom.
  - e. Paired spaces immediately surrounding the reproductive organs are also extensions of the coelom.
5. A pair of large metapleural canals lie in the lateral fins.
6. The circulatory system.
  - a. The cardiac aorta, the dorsal aortæ, and the aortic arches are as in section B.
  - b. The portal veins lie on the liver, in the coelomic space surrounding it. They are often difficult to identify.
  - c. The hepatic veins are three or four vessels lying side by side on the dorsal surface of the liver, in the coelomic space between the liver and the atrial membrane investing it.
7. The reproductive organs occupy similar positions in the two sexes. They are masses, varying in size according to the degree of ripeness of the ova or spermatozoa, lying on the inner sides of the atrial folds, and projecting into the atrial cavity.

**D. Transverse Section passing through the Atrial Pore.**

1. General characters. The section is smaller than the preceding one, and the myotomes reach much farther down the sides. The intestine is cut across,



**FIG. 45.**—*Amphioxus lanceolatus*. Transverse section of an adult specimen, passing through the atrial pore. The boundary of the atrial cavity is indicated by a thick black line. (A. M. M.)

A, skeleton of dorsal fin. B, spinal cord. C, notochord. D, connective-tissue sheath of notochord. H, atrial cavity. K, intestine. O, coelomic space surrounding intestine. P, metapleural canal. Q, dorsal aorta. U, portal veins. V, atrial pore, represented diagrammatically. W, metapleural folds.

but the section lies entirely behind the reproductive organs. The metapleural folds are present, but are much smaller than in sections B and C, and between them in the median plane is the atrial pore.

The skin, and the skeletal, muscular, and nervous

systems are practically as in section B, except that the ventral muscles are absent.

2. The intestine is circular in section. Its walls are thick, and, like those of the liver, consist of a single layer of very long and slender epithelial cells, resting on a thin connective-tissue basement membrane.
3. The atrial cavity surrounds the sides and the ventral surface of the intestine, and opens to the exterior

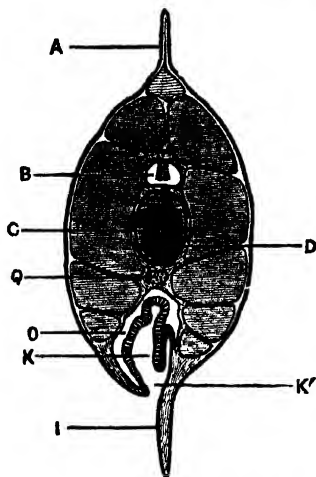


FIG. 46.—*Amphioxus lanceolatus*. Transverse section of an adult specimen, passing through the anus. (A. M. M.)

A, dorsal fin. B, spinal cord. C, notochord. D, connective-tissue sheath of notochord. I, ventral fin. K', anus. K, intestine. O, coelom. Q, dorsal aorta.

at the atrial pore in the mid-ventral line between a pair of thickened and prominent lips, which are prolonged backwards like a spout.

4. The coelom is reduced to a narrow space surrounding the intestine, between its proper wall and the atrial membrane.
5. The metapleural canals are very greatly reduced in size.

**6. The circulatory system.**

- a. The dorsal aorta is a median vessel between the notochord and the intestine.
- b. The portal or sub-intestinal veins are three or four vessels lying side by side on the ventral surface of the intestine, in the coelomic space surrounding it.

**E. Transverse Section passing through the Anus.**

1. **General characters.** The section is much smaller than the preceding ones. It is oval, with median dorsal and ventral fins, and the notochord occupies its centre.

The section passes behind the atrial cavity, which is therefore entirely absent in it.

The skin and the skeletal, muscular, and nervous systems are practically as in section B, except that the ventral muscles are absent.

2. The intestine lies below the notochord, and the anus is on the left side of the ventral fin.
3. The coelom is a space surrounding the dorsal and lateral surfaces of the intestine.
4. The dorsal aorta is a median vessel in the connective tissue below the notochord.



## CHAPTER XII.

THE DOG-FISH. *Scyllium canicula*.

THE dog-fish, together with the sharks and skates, belongs to the group of fish known as Elasmobranchs, the great majority of which are powerful swimmers, of carnivorous habits, and exceedingly voracious. One of the chief characters of the group is that almost the whole of the internal skeleton remains cartilaginous throughout life: hence Elasmobranchs are frequently spoken of as cartilaginous fish.

There are several kinds of dog-fish found off our own coasts. The following description is taken from one of the most abundant species, but will apply with but slight changes to any of the common forms. Skates differ markedly from dog-fish in external appearance, owing to the enormous size of their pectoral fins, which form the great lateral wing-like expansions of the body; as regards internal structure, however, the differences are comparatively unimportant, and a skate might easily be dissected by following the directions given in this chapter. All the measurements here given are taken from a dog-fish of about two feet in length, which will be found the most convenient size for dissection.

*Scyllium canicula*, like most other species of dog-fish, lays eggs which are of large size, and enclosed in horny capsules produced at their angles into long spirally twisted strings for attachment. In many Elasmobranchs the eggs are retained within the oviduct during part or the whole of their development; and in some few species a still closer relation is established between the mother and the embryo, similar in some respects to that found in mammals, whereby the embryo

obtains during its development a supply of nutriment direct from the mother.

## I. EXTERNAL CHARACTERS.

*Lay the dog-fish on a board, and determine the following points :*

### A. General Appearance.

The body is greatly elongated : it is broadest about the level of the pectoral fins, in front of which it is flattened dorso-ventrally, ending in the blunt rounded snout. The hinder part of the body is compressed laterally, and tapers gradually to the end of the long slender tail, the hindmost three or four inches of which are bent up at an angle.

The general colour is grey ; paler on the ventral surface, and marked on the dorsal and lateral surfaces with dark brown spots which are generally larger and fewer in the female than in the male. The animal is capable of slightly altering the intensity of these spots. The entire surface is covered with small scales, and along each side of the head and body there runs a slight longitudinal mark, the lateral line.

### B. The Fins.

The fins are flattened outgrowths supported by an internal cartilaginous and horny skeleton, and usually triangular in shape, the base or attached border being very commonly free at its posterior end.

#### 1. Median Fins.

a. The dorsal fins are two in number, the anterior and larger one being placed about the middle of the length of the body, and the posterior one a short distance farther back.

b. The caudal fin forms a vertical fringe round the posterior four or five inches of the tail. Its dorsal portion is narrow, its hinder end truncated, and its ventral portion partially subdivided into a small posterior and a large anterior lobe.

- c. The anal fin is on the ventral surface opposite the interval between the two dorsal fins.
- 2. Paired fins, representing the limbs of higher vertebrates.
  - a. The pectoral fins are the largest of all the fins, and project horizontally outwards from the sides of the ventral surface of the body, just behind the head.
  - b. The pelvic fins are smaller than the pectoral, and are placed on the ventral surface of the body, a little way in front of the middle of its length. Their inner borders touch each other, and in the male are fused together behind.

In the male a part of each pelvic fin is separated from the rest of the fin, and specially modified to form a copulating organ or 'clasper.' This is a stout backwardly directed rod, deeply grooved along its inner and dorsal surface. The groove leads forwards into a sac which lies just beneath the skin of the ventral surface of the body, close to the median line, and ends blindly about an inch in front of the pelvic girdle.

### C. External Apertures.

#### 1. Median apertures.

- a. The mouth is a large transverse crescentic opening on the under surface of the head, a short distance from its anterior end.
- b. The cloacal aperture is on the ventral surface of the body between the pelvic fins, i.e. in front of the middle of the length of the body. It gives exit to faecal matter from the intestine, and to the renal and genital products.

#### 2. Paired apertures.

- a. The nostrils are a pair of large circular apertures on the under surface of the head in front of the

mouth, with which they are connected by wide grooves covered by flaps of skin.

- b. The spiracles are a pair of small apertures on the sides of the head, just behind the openings of the eyes. They are really a pair of modified gill-clefts. Through the spiracles sea-water can pass into the pharynx.

*Pass a seeker down one of the spiracles into the mouth.*

- c. The gill-clefts are a series of five vertical slits on each side of the neck in front of and slightly above the pectoral fins. They open obliquely backwards, and during life give exit to the water passed from the mouth and spiracles over
  - the gills for the purpose of respiration.

*Pass a seeker through the gill-clefts into the mouth.*

- d. The cloacal pouches are a pair of pocket-like depressions at the sides of the cloacal aperture and between the pelvic fins.
- e. The cloacal papillæ are attached in front of the cloacal pouch, with their apices directed backwards. Each is traversed by a canal (peritoneal canal) which opens anteriorly into the body-cavity and posteriorly by the abdominal pores into the cloacal pouches. The pores are minute, and are only open in mature dog-fish.

### 3. Scattered apertures.

The apertures of the lateral line and ampullary canals are rows of minute openings arranged symmetrically on the surface of the body. The openings of the ampullary system are especially abundant on the snout. They lead into tubes of considerable length, which lie beneath the skin and are filled with a transparent gelatinous substance.

*Squeeze the head so as to press out the gelatinous substance, and so render the openings of the tubes more obvious.*

### D. The Scales and Teeth.

1. The scales. The whole surface of the body is covered with small placoid scales, which are special developments of the skin.

a. General arrangement. The scales are larger on the dorsal than on the ventral surface, and form a powerful caudal 'rasp' on the sides of the tail. Their projecting points are directed backwards, so that the finger can be readily passed along the body from the head to the tail, but meets with considerable resistance in the reverse direction.

b. Structure of the scales.

*Cut out a small piece of skin, and boil it for a few minutes in a solution of caustic potash to isolate the scales. Mount them in glycerin, and examine with the microscope.*

Each scale consists of a base, often four-lobed, from which a pointed spine projects outwards and backwards. Both base and spine are composed of dentine.

2. The teeth are really the enlarged scales of the skin covering the jaws. They are arranged in several rows, and have their points directed backwards.

## II. THE SKELETON.

The skeleton of the dog-fish forms an important link between the exceedingly simple condition seen in *Amphioxus* and the complicated bony framework of the higher vertebrates.

In the embryo a rod-like notochord extends down the back, immediately beneath the central nervous system and dorsal to the alimentary canal, similar to that of *Amphioxus*, except that it does not quite reach to the anterior end of the body. Around this notochord a sheath of cartilage is formed, which in the head gives rise to the base of the skull, and in

the body becomes divided transversely into segments, the centra or bodies of the vertebræ, the flexibility of this region being thereby increased.

Above the centra neural arches are formed, which surround and protect the brain and spinal cord ; and below them hæmal arches, which tend to encircle the body-cavity.

Besides this axial skeleton a visceral skeleton is developed around the anterior part of the alimentary canal, and skeletal elements are also formed in relation with the fins.

The greater part of the skeleton consists throughout life of cartilage. It is hardened in many places by deposition of calcareous salts, but is never replaced by bone.

*The skeleton of the dog-fish is best prepared by taking a specimen which has been some days in spirit, dipping it in hot water a few degrees below boiling-point for a few minutes, in order to soften the connective tissue, and then scraping or brushing away the soft parts until the skeleton is clean. Specimens so prepared must not be allowed to dry, but should be kept in weak spirit.*

#### A. The Vertebral Column.

A trunk vertebra consists of a centrum, traversed by the notochord ; a dorsal or neural arch, surrounding the spinal cord ; and transverse or hæmal processes. In the caudal or tail vertebræ of the dog-fish the hæmal processes unite ventrally, forming a hæmal canal which encloses the caudal artery and vein.

*The structure of the vertebral column is best made out by cutting sagittal, transverse, and horizontal sections through various parts of its length with a strong knife, and comparing these with each other.*

1. The centra are short cylinders of cartilage, about as long as they are wide, connected together by intervertebral ligaments of strong connective tissue, which allow slight movement between the successive vertebræ and free flexion of the column as a whole.

Each centrum is a ring, thin at its ends, but thickened on its inner side in the middle of its length, so that the cavity is hour-glass-shaped (fig. 51, p. 248). The inner surface of the ring is lined by a layer of calcified connective tissue.

The notochord persists throughout the whole length of the column: it is greatly constricted opposite the middle of each vertebra, but thickened almost to the full width of the column in the inter-vertebral spaces.

### The hæmal arches.

In the anterior part of the vertebral column the centra are flattened ventrally, and produced laterally into blunt horizontal **transverse processes** which bear at their ends movably articulated cartilaginous ribs about half an inch in length.

Further back the transverse processes become more prominent and project ventrally as **hæmal processes**, causing the under surface of the column to appear grooved.

In the tail the ribs are absent, and the hæmal processes of each vertebra meet and unite mid-ventrally, thereby completing the hæmal arch, which encloses the caudal artery and vein.

At the hinder end of the tail, opposite the caudal fins, the hæmal arches are produced downwards into median hæmal spines.

The hæmal arches develop independently of the vertebral centra, but become connected with them at a very early stage.

3. The neural arches are made up of elements of three kinds: neural processes, neural plates, and neural spines.

- a. The neural processes, forming the bases of the neural arches, are blunt processes projecting

upwards from the sides of each centrum opposite its middle.

- b. The neural plates are a series of thin hexagonal plates of cartilage which form the sides of the neural canal (figs. 48 and 51). On each side there are twice as many neural plates as there are vertebræ, the neural plates being placed alternately opposite the middles of the vertebræ, and opposite the intervertebral intervals. The former or vertebral neural plates are fused in the adult with the tops of the neural processes, and have their posterior borders notched for the passage of the ventral roots of the spinal nerves. The dorsal roots of the nerves pass out through
  - notches in the posterior borders of the intervertebral neural plates.
- c. The neural spines are a series of small median blocks of cartilage wedged in between the dorsal ends of the neural plates so as to complete the neural arches above.

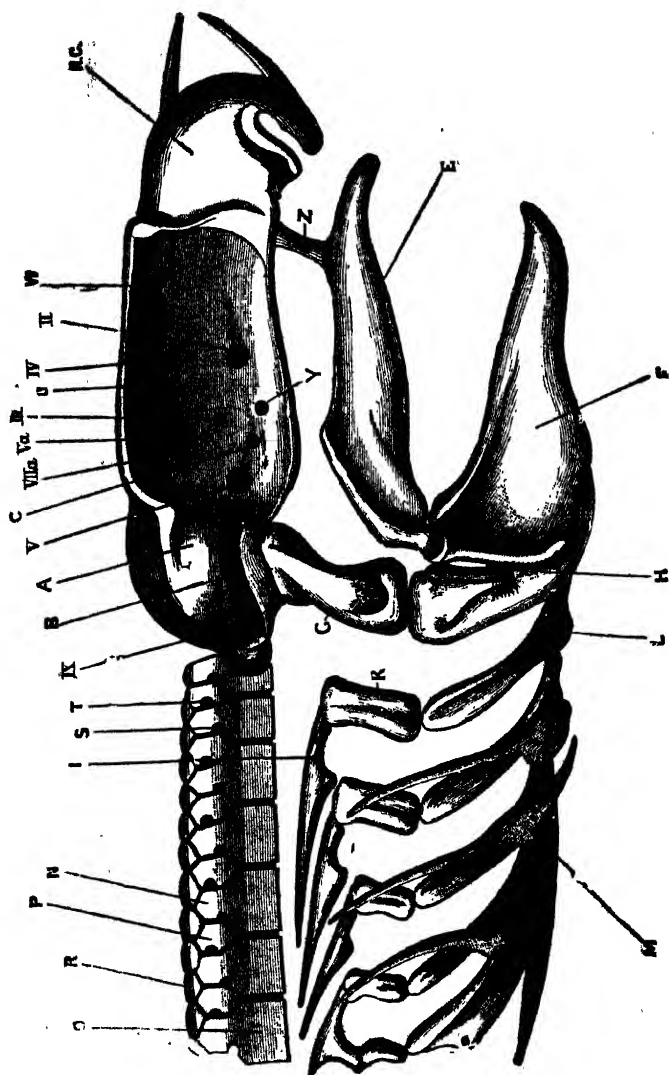
Along the greater part of the length of the column there are two neural spines to each vertebra, but in places the arrangement is less regular.

## B. The Skull.

The skull of the dog-fish remains cartilaginous throughout life, thereby escaping the complications that result from the development of bone: in it, also, the several factors of which the skull is made up are more easily determined than in the 'higher' forms. For these reasons it is peculiarly instructive, affording an important clue to the complex condition met with in other vertebrates.

The skull consists of (1) an axial tube, the cranium proper, open at both ends, which lodges the brain, and is to be regarded as an anterior unsegmented continuation of the vertebral column; and (2) the olfactory and auditory sense-





capsules, which are cartilaginous capsules investing the nose and the ear respectively. These latter are at first independent of the cranium, but in the adult fuse with it forming lateral expansions of its anterior and posterior ends. This fusion of the sense-capsules and cranium is so complete that they will be described together. Logically, we should consider here the eye capsules also, for they are morphologically comparable with the others, though remaining unattached to the cranium.

### 1. General form of the skull.

The skull is a somewhat oblong box of cartilage, deeply hollowed at the sides to form the orbits, which lodge the eyes, and ending in front in a short-pointed rostrum formed by three converging rods.

The olfactory capsules are thin-walled lateral expansions of the anterior end of the skull, in front of the orbits; and the auditory capsules are more massive projections behind the orbits.

*Examine the several surfaces of the skull in succession, identifying the parts described below.*

### 2. The dorsal surface of the skull.

a. The olfactory capsules are a pair of large oval cartilaginous cups at the anterior end of the skull: they have very thin walls and are easily

---

**FIG. 47.—***Scoyllium canicula*. The skull and visceral skeleton with the anterior part of the vertebral column seen from the right side. The labial cartilages and gill-rays are omitted. (A. M. M.)

A, auditory capsule. B, post-orbital groove. C, inter-orbital canal. E, upper jaw. F, lower jaw. G, hyo-mandibular cartilage. H, cerato-hyal. I, pharyngo-branchial. K, epi-branchial. L, cerato-branchial. M, extra-branchial. N, vertebral neural plate. N.C., olfactory capsule. O, centrum of vertebra. P, intervertebral neural plate. R, neural spine. S, foramen for the ventral root of a spinal nerve. T, foramen for the dorsal root of the same nerve. U, orbital grooves, lodging the ophthalmic branches of the fifth and seventh nerves. W, aperture at end of orbital groove through which the ophthalmic branches of the fifth and seventh nerves leave the orbit. Y, foramen for hyoidean artery. Z, ethmo-palatine ligament.

II, optic foramen. III, foramen for third nerve. IV, foramen for fourth nerve. V, foramen for the main branches of the fifth and seventh nerves, and for the sixth nerve. Va, foramen for the ophthalmic branch of the fifth nerve. VIIa, foramen for the ophthalmic branch of the seventh nerve. IX, foramen for the ninth or glosso-pharyngeal nerve.

- torn. Their long axes are placed somewhat obliquely, and they are separated from each other by a thin median internasal septum.
- b. The rostrum is formed by three cartilaginous bars, of which two run forwards from the upper surface of the olfactory capsules, converging in front; while the third is an anterior prolongation of the floor of the cranium, or brain-case.
  - c. The anterior fontanelle is a large, almost circular hole in the roof of the skull, between and behind the olfactory capsules. During life it is closed by a connective-tissue membrane, in connection with the inner surface of which is the pineal body.
  - d. The supra-orbital crests are prominent curved ridges of cartilage running along the sides of the skull from the olfactory to the auditory capsules, and forming the dorsal boundaries of the orbits. Along the inner side of each crest, between it and the cranium, is a shallow longitudinal groove in which lies a bundle of sensory canals.
  - e. The foramina for the ophthalmic nerves are a pair of small apertures behind and to the outer sides of the anterior fontanelle, and to the inner sides of the supra-orbital crests. Through them the ophthalmic branches of the fifth and seventh nerves pass from the orbit to the dorsal surface of the olfactory capsules.
  - f. The auditory capsules are large lateral projections at the hinder end of the skull. They lodge the auditory organs, certain parts of which can be recognised without dissection.
  - g. Between the two auditory capsules there is a median depression, at the bottom of which are a pair of holes. Each hole leads downwards and outwards into a canal, the aquæ-ductus vestibuli, which opens below into the internal ear.

*Pass a seeker down the aquæductus vestibuli on one side into the ear.*

- ii. From the outer side of the aperture of the aquæductus vestibuli on each side a ridge runs forwards and outwards across the skull-roof and towards the orbit. In this lies the **anterior vertical semicircular canal** of the ear, which can usually be seen through the cartilage.
- iii. A similar ridge, running backwards and outwards from the same point, lodges the **posterior vertical semicircular canal**.
- iv. The **external or horizontal semicircular canal** can usually be seen through the cartilage, lying to the outer side of the other two canals, and with its convexity directed outwards.

### 3. The side of the skull.

- a. The **rostrum and olfactory capsule** have already been seen.
- b. The **orbit** is the deep oval concavity at the side of the skull, extending from the olfactory to the auditory capsule, and bounded above and below by the prominent **supra-orbital** and **sub-orbital ridges**. It lodges the eyeball and its muscles, and is traversed by numerous nerves, the rest of the space being occupied by the large **orbital blood-sinus**.

*Identify the following structures within the orbit (see fig. 47).*

- i. The **orbito-nasal foramen** is a small round hole at the anterior inferior angle of the orbit, through which the veins of the anterior part of the head communicate with the orbital sinus.
- ii. The **optic foramen** is a large hole about the middle of the length of the orbit and near its ventral border. Through it the **optic nerve** enters the orbit.

- iii. The foramen for the third nerve is a small hole in the inner wall of the orbit, about a quarter of an inch behind the optic foramen and a little above it.
- iv. The foramen for the fourth nerve is a very small hole near the dorsal border of the inner wall of the orbit, vertically above the optic foramen, or very slightly behind this.
- v. The foramen for the fifth and seventh nerves is a large hole at the posterior and ventral angle of the orbit, immediately in front of the auditory capsule. Through it the main branches of the fifth and seventh nerves, and also the sixth nerve, enter the orbit.
- vi. The aperture of the inter-orbital canal is a small round hole in front of and a little below the foramen for the fifth and seventh nerves, and below and behind the foramen for the third nerve. The canal traverses the base of the skull, and places the orbital blood sinuses of the two sides in communication with each other.
- vii. The foramen for the hyoidean artery lies a little in front of, and slightly below, the opening of the inter-orbital canal. Through it the hyoidean artery enters the skull.
- viii. The foramina for the ophthalmic branches of the fifth and seventh nerves. These nerves enter the orbit through two holes near its hinder end, just in front of the auditory capsule, and above the foramen for the main branches of the fifth and seventh nerves: the aperture for the ophthalmic branch of the seventh nerve is the larger of the two, and is placed slightly above and behind that for the fifth. From these apertures shallow grooves run forwards

along the inner wall of the orbit, close to its dorsal border, to the foramen by which the two nerves leave the orbit: this is situated at the antero-superior angle of the orbit, and has already been seen on the dorsal surface of the skull.

c. The articular surface for the hyo-mandibular cartilage is a concave depression on the side of the hinder end of the skull, below the auditory capsule.

d. The post-orbital groove is a deep horizontal groove immediately above the articular surface for the hyo-mandibular cartilage, and overhung by the projecting ledge of the auditory capsule which lodges the horizontal semicircular canal: it lodges during life the venous canal through which the orbital sinus communicates with the anterior cardinal sinus.

The anterior end of the groove is bridged over by stout ligamentous tissue.

e. The foramen for the glosso-pharyngeal nerve is at the hinder end of the floor of the post-orbital groove, behind and below the horizontal semicircular canal of the ear.

#### 4. The ventral surface of the skull.

a. The base of the skull is a broad flat plate of cartilage, crossed almost transversely a little behind its middle by a pair of grooves in which the carotid arteries lie. At the point of meeting of the grooves in the middle line is an aperture through which the internal carotid artery enters the skull.

b. The apertures of the olfactory capsules are large, but are considerably reduced by the nasal cartilages, which are liable to be torn in cleaning

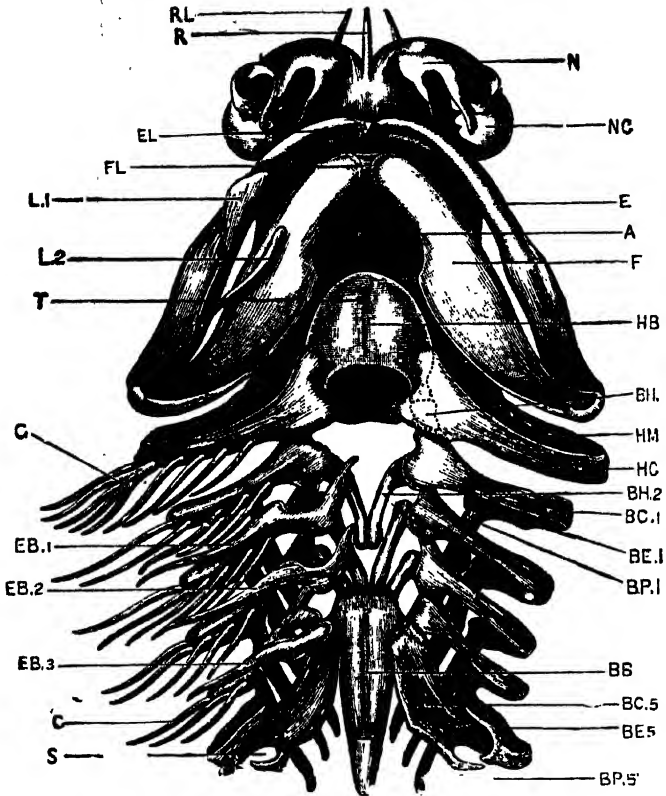


FIG. 48.—*Squalus canicula*. The skull and visceral skeleton seen from the ventral surface. The labial cartilages, extra-branchials, and gill-rays of the left side have been removed. (A. M. M.)

A, base of skull. BB, basi-branchial. BC 1, BC 5, first and fifth cerato-branchials. BE 1, BE 5, first and fifth epi-branchials. BH 1, first hypo-branchial, represented as though seen through the cerato-hyal. BH 2, second hypo-branchial. BP 1, BP 5, first and fused fourth and fifth pharyngo-branchials. E, upper jaw. EB 1, EB 2, EB 3, first, second, and third extra-branchials. EL, ligament connecting the two halves of the upper jaw. F, lower jaw. FL, ligament connecting the two halves of the lower jaw. G, gill-ray. HB, basi-hyal. HC, cerato-hyal. HM, hyo-mandibular cartilage. L 1, L 2, labial cartilages. N, nasal cartilage. NC, olfactory capsule. R, median bar of rostrum. RL, lateral bar of rostrum. S, notch for Ouvian sinus. T, foramen for neck of thyroid gland.

the skull. Within the capsules are seen the large foramina, closed in the natural condition by fenestrated membranes, through which the olfactory nerves enter.

#### 5. The posterior end of the skull.

*To see this properly the skull must be separated from the vertebral column.*

- a. The foramen magnum is the large median hole through which the spinal cord enters the skull before expanding into the brain.
- b. The notochord enters the base of the skull immediately below the foramen magnum.
- c. The condyles are a pair of round prominences at the sides of the notochord, and below the foramen magnum: they articulate with the first vertebra.
- d. The foramen for the pneumogastric nerve of each side is at the bottom of a pit-like depression at the side of the foramen magnum, below and to the inner side of the auditory capsule.

#### C. The Visceral or Pharyngeal Skeleton.

This consists of a series of cartilaginous hoops or arches placed one behind another, and encircling the anterior part of the alimentary canal. In conformity with the shape of the mouth and pharynx, which they surround, the hoops are wide from side to side, and compressed dorso-ventrally.

The first arch gives rise to both upper and lower jaws.

The second or hyoidean hoop is large, and plays an important part in slinging the jaws to the skull.

The third and succeeding hoops are more slender: they surround the pharynx and support the gills.

*To see the visceral skeleton properly, a roll of paper should be passed in at the mouth-opening, and backwards through the several hoops.*



1. The first or mandibular arch is very greatly modified : it consists of two elements only on either side, forming the jaws.
  - a. The upper jaw consists of a pair of stout cartilaginous rods, wide behind and narrowing towards their anterior ends, where they are united across the middle line by ligament. They extend forwards as far as the openings of the olfactory capsules, and are connected by stout ethmo-palatine ligaments with the base of the skull, at the antero-inferior angles of the orbits. They bear teeth along the ventral surface of the anterior two-thirds of their length, but these are lost in skulls prepared as described.
  - b. The lower jaw consists of a pair of wide flattened bars of cartilage, which are movably hinged with the upper jaw behind, and bound together by a median ligament in front. It lies, when the mouth is shut, parallel to and immediately behind the upper jaw. It bears teeth along the dorsal surface of the anterior two-thirds of its length on each side, but these are lost in skulls prepared as described.
2. The second or hyoidean arch is incomplete above : it consists of a pair of rods the dorsal ends of which articulate with the sides of the skull, while the ventral ends are connected together by a median plate of cartilage. Each rod is divided into an upper and a lower segment.
  - a. The hyo-mandibular cartilage, or upper segment, is a short stout bar of cartilage, projecting almost horizontally outwards from the skull, but slightly downwards and backwards. Its inner and upper end articulates with a concave surface on the side of the skull, near its hinder end, and immediately

below the post-orbital groove: its outer end articulates with the lower segment of the arch opposite the angle of the mouth. To its hinder border are attached a series of rods of cartilage—**gill-rays**—which support the gill-folds.

The hyo-mandibular cartilage in the dog-fish is spoken of as the **suspensorium**, because it forms the skeletal link between the jaws and the skull.

Skulls, like that of the dog-fish, in which the hyoidean arch forms the suspensorium of the lower jaw, are spoken of as *hyostylic*.

- b. The **cerato-hyal**, or lower segment of the hyoidean arch, is a longer and more slender bar which runs forwards and inwards in the floor of the mouth, just behind the lower jaw, and partly overlapped by it. It bears gill-rays along its posterior border.
  - c. The **basi-hyal** is a broad median plate of cartilage lying in the floor of the mouth behind the lower jaw. It is produced behind into two horns which are attached by ligaments to the dorsal surfaces of the ceratohyals. It is perforated by the neck of the **thyroid gland**.
3. The **branchial arches** are the remaining five visceral arches: they diminish in size from before backwards, and each is divided into four segments on each side.
- a. The **pharyngo-branchials**, the most dorsal elements, are flattened rods running forwards and outwards in the roof of the pharynx. The anterior ones are connected with their fellows of the opposite side by ligament; and the last two of each side are much smaller than the others, and fused together.
  - b. The **epi-branchials** are short broad plates attached to the outer ends of the pharyngo-branchials.

With the exception of the hindmost, they bear gill-rays along their posterior borders.

- c. The **cerato-branchials** are stout rods running forwards and inwards in the ventral wall of the pharynx, and bearing gill-rays along their posterior borders. The fifth or hindmost cerato-branchial is shorter, but much broader than the others: it has no gill-rays, and its posterior border is deeply notched to lodge the Cuvierian sinus (p. 252).
- d. The **hypo-branchials** are small rods in connection with the inner ends of the first, second, third and fourth cerato-branchials. The first hypo-branchial, which is very small, is directed forwards, and connects the first cerato-branchial with the basi-hyal. The three hinder hypo-branchials are larger, and are directed backwards.
- e. The **basi-branchial** is an elongated flattened median plate, pointed behind. It is connected with the two hinder pairs of hypo-branchials in front, and at the sides with the fifth cerato-branchials. With these latter it strengthens and supports the dorsal wall of the pericardial cavity (fig. 48, p. 234).
- f. The **extra-branchials** are three pairs of elongated curved rods lying along the outer sides of and beneath the second, third, and fourth branchial arches.
4. The **labial cartilages** are two pairs of slender cartilaginous rods in the folds of skin at the sides of the mouth.

#### D. The Skeleton of the Fins.

##### 1. The median fins.

The skeleton of the dorsal fins consists of a series of parallel rods of cartilage, the **basal cartilages**, sloping upwards and backwards, and calcified along their axes. The lower or basal ends of the rods

often unite together, and the dorsal ends support one or more rows of closely fitting polygonal plates. On each side of this median cartilaginous skeleton is a series of slender elongated horny fibres derived from the skin.

The other median fins are similar to the dorsal ones, except that the cartilaginous elements may be reduced to a longitudinal basal rod, or may even be completely absent.

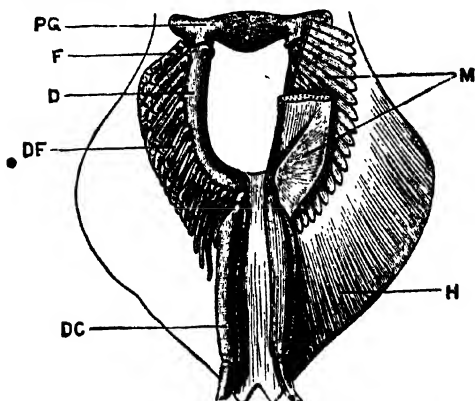


FIG. 49.—*Scyllium canicula*. The pelvic girdle and fins of a male seen from below. In the right fin the cartilaginous skeleton is shown, in the left the muscles and the horny dermal fibres. (A. M. M.)

D, basi-ptyergium. DC, posterior end of the basi-ptyergium, forming the skeleton of the clasper. DF, radial cartilages. F, anterior radial, articulating directly with the pelvic girdle. H, horny fibres. M, muscles. PG, pelvic girdle.

2. The paired fins are essentially similar to the median fins, and are possibly to be regarded as local enlargements of lateral fins, which originally extended along the sides of the body.

It is convenient to take the posterior or pelvic fins before the pectoral, as their structure is simpler.

- a. The pelvic girdle is a nearly straight rod of cartilage, placed transversely across the ventral region of the body, about half an inch in front of the

cloaca. The ends of the rod are produced forwards into blunt processes, and bear on their posterior surfaces the articular facets for the pelvic fins.

- b. **The pelvic fins.** The cartilaginous skeleton of each fin consists of a slightly curved basal rod, the **basi-ptyrgium**, which lies along the inner side of the fin, and articulates in front with the pelvic girdle. From the outer side of the basi-ptyrgium a series of parallel cartilaginous **radial cartilages**, about fourteen in number, run outwards and backwards, supporting at their ends smaller polygonal plates. The anterior one or two of the radials may articulate independently with the pelvic girdle.

In the adult male the posterior end of the basi-ptyrgium is produced backwards into the skeleton of the clasper.

Besides the cartilaginous skeleton, horny fibres like those of the median fins are present in great numbers on both surfaces of the fin.

- c. **The pectoral girdle**, which lies immediately behind the last branchial arch, is considerably larger than the pelvic, and consists of a hoop of cartilage incomplete above.

The ventral portion of the hoop is produced forwards into a flattened process, which forms part of the floor of the pericardial cavity, and is hollowed dorsally to receive the ventricle of the heart.

At each side the arch is thickened, and bears on its outer border a triple articular facet for the basal cartilages of the fin.

- d. **The pectoral fin** has three basal cartilages, the **pro-ptyrgium**, **meso-ptyrgium**, and **meta-ptyrgium**, articulating with the three facets on the pectoral girdle. Of these the pro-ptyrgium is the smallest, and the meta-ptyrgium, which

extends along the inner or attached border of the fin, and corresponds to the basi-ptyerygium of the pelvic fin, is much the largest.

From the outer borders of the basal cartilages a series of close-set radial cartilages diverge: of these the pro-ptyerygium supports a single large one; the meso-ptyerygium also supports one,

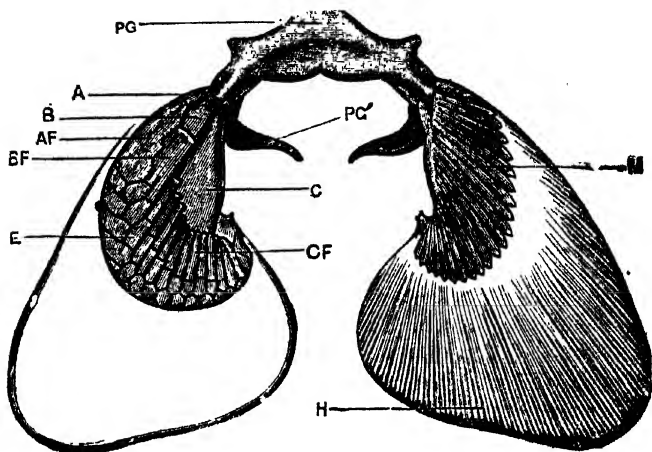


FIG. 50.—*Scyllium canicula*. The pectoral girdle and fins of a male seen from the ventral surface. In the right fin the cartilaginous skeleton is shown, in the left the muscles and horny dermal fibres. (A. M. M.)

A, pro-ptyerygium. AF, pro-ptyerygial radial. B, meso-ptyerygium. BF, meso-ptyerygial radial. C, meta-ptyerygium. CF, meta-ptyerygial radial. E, polygonal cartilaginous plates. H, horny fibres. M, muscles of fin. PG, ventral portion of pectoral girdle. PG', dorsal portion of pectoral girdle.

which is, however, split distally into two or three; while the meta-ptyerygium supports twelve or more much narrower radials.

To the outer ends of the radials two or more rows of polygonal plates of cartilage are attached, forming the peripheral portion of the skeleton.

Horny fibres are present in large numbers, as in the pelvic fins.

## III. THE ABDOMINAL CAVITY AND VISCERA.

*Lay the dog-fish on its back on the dissecting-board, and pin it down through the fins. Determine the positions of the pectoral and pelvic girdles by feeling them through the skin, the pectoral girdle being a little in front of the pectoral fins, and the pelvic girdle a short distance in front of the cloacal aperture.*

*Open the abdominal cavity by a median ventral incision, extending from the pelvic girdle behind to the pectoral girdle in front. Cut through the body-wall transversely, just behind the pectoral girdle, and pin the two flaps down to the dissecting-board. Cut through the pelvic girdle in the median plane, and prolong the cut backwards to the level of the cloacal aperture, keeping a little to its right side. Wash or sponge out the abdominal cavity.*

The coelom or body-cavity extends forwards into the head in the embryo, but in the adult is reduced to the pericardial cavity which lodges the heart, and the abdominal cavity in which lie the principal viscera. The abdominal cavity is a wide space extending from the level of the pectoral girdle backwards as far as, or slightly beyond, the cloacal aperture, where it communicates with the exterior through the abdominal pores (p. 223).

*Pass a seeker from the abdominal cavity through one of the abdominal pores to the exterior.*

*Identify the positions and relations of the following organs before proceeding further with the dissection.*

1. The liver is a very large solid organ of a brownish yellow colour, attached by a median suspensory ligament to the anterior wall of the abdominal cavity. It consists of two lobes of about equal size, which are united in front, and extend back along the sides of the abdominal cavity for the greater part of its length.
2. The stomach is a wide U-shaped tube lying between the

lobes of the liver, and extending about two-thirds the length of the abdominal cavity.

3. The **spleen** is a large brownish-red body attached to the loop of the stomach, and sending a long narrow lobe along its distal limb.
4. The **pancreas** is a whitish, laterally compressed body, about an inch and a half long, lying in the angle between the distal limb of the stomach and the intestine. Its anterior end is expanded and gives off a small ventral lobe, which is closely applied to the intestine.
5. The **intestine** is a wide and nearly straight tube running along the right side of the abdominal cavity from the stomach to the cloaca.
6. In the female the **ovary** is single, and attached by a delicate median fold of peritoneum to the wall of the abdominal cavity. The contained ova give its surface a tuberculated appearance.

In the male the **testes** are a pair of elongated solid bodies, of a whitish colour, lying along the dorsal region of the anterior two-thirds of the abdominal cavity. Their hinder portions fuse together.

7. The **peritoneum** is a smooth membrane lining the abdominal cavity, and reflected downwards from the mid-dorsal line as a double sheet, the **mesentery**, which invests the alimentary canal and other viscera, and attaches them to the body-wall.

The mesentery is well developed at the hinder end of the abdominal cavity, but is interrupted by one or more large fenestræ extending along the greater part of the length of the intestine.

8. The **kidneys** and their ducts are covered by the peritoneum, but can be recognised as a pair of slightly elevated longitudinal ridges, one on each side of the mid-dorsal line of the abdominal cavity, and extending nearly its whole length.



## IV. DISSECTION OF THE DIGESTIVE SYSTEM.

*In dissecting the alimentary canal be careful not to injure the blood-vessels in relation with it—these lie for the most part in the mesentery.*

## A. The Alimentary Canal.

1. The mouth and pharynx. The detailed examination of these parts is best deferred until the circulatory system is dissected.
2. The œsophagus is a short wide tube, which enters the abdominal cavity at its anterior end and expands almost at once into the stomach.

*Pass the handle of a scalpel or seeker through the mouth and down the œsophagus into the stomach.*

3. The stomach is U-shaped. Its proximal limb, which is very wide and directly continuous with the œsophagus, extends back nearly to the hinder end of the abdominal cavity; it then turns sharply forwards to form the distal limb, which is shorter and much narrower.
4. The intestine is separated from the distal limb of the stomach by a slight pyloric thickening. Its proximal part is about equal in width to the stomach, alongside which it lies; but it soon dilates to form the wide ileum, the surface of which is marked spirally by blood-vessels, corresponding to the line of attachment of the spiral valve. At its hinder end the intestine narrows to form the rectum, which, after a course of about an inch and a half, opens to the exterior at the cloacal aperture.

The spiral valve.

*Open the intestine along its whole length by a longitudinal incision along its right side. Wash out its contents. Carefully cut away with scissors the ventral wall from the several turns*

*of the spiral valve, and turn it over to the left side, so as to expose fully the cavity of the intestine. Wash freely.*

The spiral valve is a membranous fold, attached along one edge to the inner surface of the intestine, round which it runs spirally. The fold is about an inch and a half wide at its anterior end, but gradually diminishes in width towards the posterior end, and disappears at the commencement of the rectum. The first turn of the spiral is a long one, but the succeeding ones, of which there are usually seven or eight, are only about a quarter of an inch apart. The general appearance of the valve is that of a series of cones one within another, the apices of the cones being usually directed forwards, but sometimes at the hinder end backwards.

The valve serves to retard the passage of food down the intestine, and to increase the extent of its absorptive surface.

## B. The Glands.

1. The liver has been described above.

a. The gall-bladder is a large irregular sac imbedded in the anterior part of the left lobe of the liver, close to the median plane.

b. The bile-duct leaves the gall-bladder between the two lobes of the liver, and almost in the median plane. It receives ducts from the lobes of the liver, and runs back along the ventral margin of the mesentery to the intestine, along which it runs for a short distance to open into the anterior end of the ileum. The bile-duct has a total length of about three inches.

*Find the duct along the edge of the fold of mesentery between the liver and the intestine: make an incision in its walls, and inject it with a coloured fluid such as Prussian*

*blue injection : follow it forwards to the liver and gall-bladder, and backwards to its opening into the intestine.*

2. The pancreas has been described above (p. 243).

The pancreatic duct runs forwards through the pancreas close to its ventral border. It leaves the gland at the posterior angle of its ventral lobe, and at once enters the ventral wall of the intestine about an inch beyond the pylorus : it runs in the wall of the intestine for about half an inch, and opens just to the outer side of the line of attachment of the spiral valve.

*Find the duct along the ventral border of the pancreas : trace it to the intestine : slit open the intestine, and trace the duct backwards in its wall as a white ridge ending in a very small papilla. It is easier to follow after injection with a coloured fluid.*

3. The rectal gland is a thick-walled tube, about three-quarters of an inch long, lying in the abdominal cavity dorsal to the rectum. From its hinder end a duct runs forwards along the edge of the mesentery to open into the dorsal wall of the rectum.

*Cut the gland across about the middle of its length. Note the thickness of its walls and the small size of its cavity. Pass a bristle down the gland and duct into the rectum ; and slit open the rectum to see the opening of the duct.*

## V. DISSECTION OF THE RESPIRATORY SYSTEM.

The dog-fish breathes by gills, which are vascular folds of the mucous membrane of the pharynx, supported by the branchial arches. Respiration is effected by rhythmical compression and expansion of the muscular pharynx causing water to enter in at the mouth, to pass between the branchial arches, over the gills, and out through the gill-clefts.

1. The gills.

*Expose thoroughly the gills on the left side.*

The gills are series of closely set, soft, and highly vascular folds of mucous membrane radiating outwards from the cartilaginous branchial arches and supported by the gill-rays.

Gills are borne on the posterior surface of the hyoid arch, and on both the anterior and posterior surfaces of each of the four following arches. The inner borders of the branchial arches have cartilaginous processes, which hinder the passage of food to the gill-clefts. The last branchial arch bears no gill.

## 2. The pseudobranchs.

*Slit up the spiracle of the left side in the same way as the gill-clefts.*

The pseudobranch is a vestigial gill, consisting of about half a dozen small parallel folds, on the anterior wall of the spiracle. Its presence shows that the spiracle is really a gill-cleft.

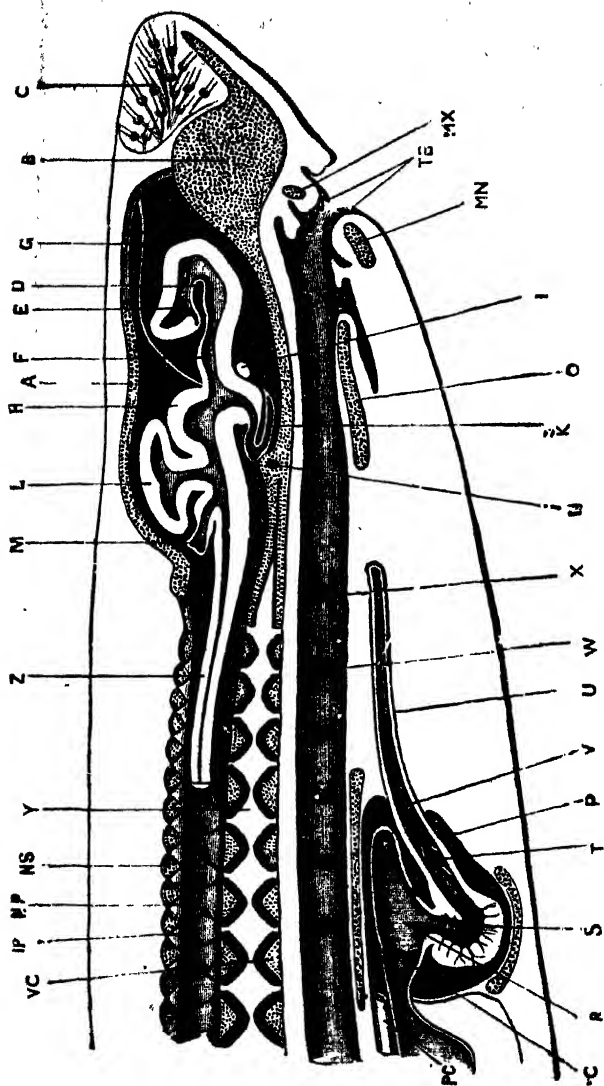
# VI. DISSECTION OF THE CIRCULATORY SYSTEM.

## A. The Pericardial Cavity and Heart.

### 1. The pericardial cavity.

*Cut off the tail of the fish an inch or two behind the pelvic fins. Lay it on its back on the dissecting-board, and pin it down through the fins. Open the pericardial cavity by removing the middle portion of the pectoral girdle, taking care not to injure the heart, which lies in close contact with it. Cut away the ventral wall of the cavity so as to expose it fully.*

The pericardial cavity is median, and lies between the gills: it is triangular in shape, with the apex directed forwards, and is almost completely filled by the heart, of which the globular ventricle is the most prominent portion. Its ventral wall is stiffened by the anterior prolongation of the pectoral



girdle, and its dorsal wall by the wide basi-bran-  
chial plate and the fifth cerato-branchials.

2. The heart is a single tube bent on itself in an S-shape, and dilated to form a series of chambers separated by transverse constrictions.

*Determine the position and general characters of the divisions of the heart in order from behind forwards, pressing them aside when necessary, but making no further dissection.*

- a. The sinus venosus is a thin-walled transversely placed tube attached along its whole length to the posterior and dorsal wall of the pericardial cavity. It receives laterally the veins returning blood from the body, and opens in front into the
  - auricle by a median aperture.

*To expose the sinus venosus, press the ventricle slightly forwards.*

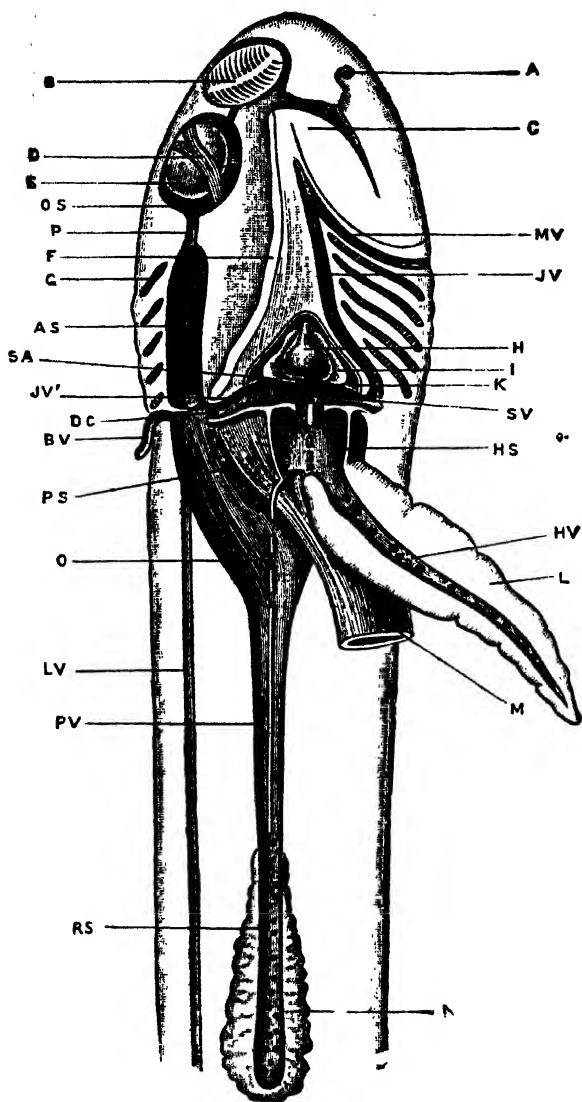
- b. The auricle is a large thin-walled sac occupying the dorsal half of the pericardial cavity. It is triangular in shape, with its posterior angles produced into processes which, in the natural position of the parts, project laterally at the sides of the ventricle.

*To expose the auricle, push the globular ventricle to one side.*

- c. The ventricle is a thick-walled globular sac lying

FIG. 51.—*Scyllium canicula*. A longitudinal and vertical section through the head and anterior part of the body. The section of the brain is taken a little to one side of the median plane, and the spinal cord has been cut across a short way behind the brain. The cut surfaces of the cartilaginous skeloton are dotted. (A. M. M.)

A, roof of the cranium. B, internasal septum. C, ampullary canals. D, fold of the wall of the hemisphere in which lies the choroid plexus. E, aperture leading from the cerebral ventricle to the olfactory ventricle. F, third ventricle. G, stalk of the pineal body. H, optic lobe. I, optic chiasma. IP, intervertebral neural plate. K, pituitary body. L, cerebellum. M, restiform body. MN, lower jaw. MX, upper jaw. N, interorbital sinus. NP, vertebral neural plate. NS, neural spine. O, basi-hyal, supporting the tongue. P, pericardial cavity. PC, pericardio-peritoneal canal. Q, sinus venosus. R, auricle. S, ventricle. T, conus arteriosus. TE, teeth. U, cardiac aorta. V, aperture of afferent branchial vessel. VC, vertebral centrum. W, first branchial cleft. X, spiracle or hyo-mandibular cleft. Y, notochord. Z, spinal cord.



ventral to the auricle, and forming the most conspicuous part of the heart.

d. The **conus arteriosus** is a cylindrical tube, running forwards from the ventricle to the anterior end of the pericardial cavity.

3. The **pericardio-peritoneal canal** is a median passage, about an inch long, opening in front into the hinder end of the pericardial cavity dorsal to the **sinus venosus**, and running backwards along the ventral surface of the **œsophagus**, to open behind into the abdominal cavity. Its anterior opening is large and conspicuous; the opening into the abdominal cavity, which may be double, is smaller and slit-like.

*Find the pericardial opening in the middle line, immediately dorsal to the sinus venosus. Insert a seeker, and pass it down the canal into the abdominal cavity.*

## B. The Venous System.

The venous system of the dog-fish consists of three great divisions: (1) the **veins opening into the sinus venosus**, which return blood from all parts of the body to the heart; (2) the **hepatic portal system**, which conveys to the liver the blood from the alimentary canal, pancreas, and spleen; (3) the **renal portal system**, which conveys to the kidneys the blood from the part of the body behind the cloaca.

### 1. The veins opening into the sinus venosus.

These veins are most readily traced by following

FIG. 52.—*Scyllium canicula*. Dissection of the venous system from the ventral surface. The right half of the lower jaw, the right lobe of the liver, and the alimentary canal from the **œsophagus** backwards have been removed. (A. M. M.)

A, nostril. AS, anterior cardinal sinus. B, right olfactory organ. BV, subclavian vein. C, left half of lower jaw. D, fifth nerve and buccal branch of seventh nerve crossing the orbit. DC, Cuvierian sinus. E, right eye. F, cut edge of floor of mouth. G, first branchial cleft. H, ventricle. HS, left hepatic sinus. HV, left hepatic vein. I, auricle. JV, left inferior jugular sinus. JV', opening of right inferior jugular sinus into Cuvierian sinus. K, pericardial cavity. L, left lobe of liver. LV, right lateral vein. M, **œsophagus**, cut across. MV, hyoidian sinus. N, kidney or mesonephros. O, communication between the right and left posterior cardinal sinuses. OS, orbital sinus. P, post-orbital sinus. PS, posterior cardinal sinus. PV, posterior cardinal vein. RS, apertures of renal veins into posterior cardinal veins. SA, aperture from sinus venosus to auricle. SV, sinus venosus.



them back from the sinus venosus, and they will be described in this way, though it must be remembered that the flow of blood in them during life is towards the sinus venosus. They are chiefly remarkable for their usually enormous size, the dilated portions being spoken of as sinuses.

*To dissect the veins, slit open the ventral wall of the sinus venosus transversely, and wash out the contained blood; then follow the veins with a seeker, slitting them open along their ventral walls, and washing out the blood. If preferred, they may be injected with plaster of Paris, or they may be inflated with air.*

- a. The hepatic sinuses open into the sinus venosus by a pair of apertures in its posterior wall close to the median plane and near the dorsal surface. The apertures lead into a pair of wide sinuses, separated from each other by an imperfect septum, and lying immediately behind the pericardium, between it and the liver, and ventral to the œsophagus.

*Slit open one of the hepatic sinuses, and follow it back into the corresponding lobe of the liver, noting its large size and the numerous veins opening into it.*

- b. The Cuvierian sinuses are a pair of rather narrow tubes, forming lateral continuations of the sinus venosus, the wall of the pericardium marking the boundary between the two. Each is about a quarter of an inch long, and curves upwards from the sinus venosus round the side of the œsophagus, lying in a notch in the posterior border of the fifth cerato-branchial cartilage. Each Cuvierian sinus receives about the middle of its course the inferior jugular sinus, and at its dorsal end the great anterior and posterior cardinal sinuses.

- i. The inferior jugular sinus, which is of small size, can be traced forwards and inwards

along the outer wall of the pericardial cavity ;  
and then forwards, in the floor of the mouth.

*Take especial care not to injure the branchial arteries (p. 257).*

- ii. The anterior cardinal sinus opens into the Cuvierian sinus by a small aperture placed immediately behind the fifth cerato-branchial cartilage, and guarded by a very perfect valve of which the ventral flap is much the larger.

From this opening the sinus extends forwards as a wide irregular space, immediately above the gill-arches. In front of the first gill this sinus communicates with the orbit by the narrow post-orbital sinus. This passes above the spiracle and below the ear, and opens in front into the large orbital sinus which surrounds the eyeball and its muscles, and is usually filled with blood-clots. The orbital sinuses of the two sides communicate with each other by the inter-orbital sinus, which runs across in the floor of the skull, between the hinder parts of the orbits.

Just in front of the first gill the anterior cardinal sinus receives the large hyoidean sinus, which lies in a groove on the outer surface of the hyo-mandibular cartilage, and may be followed downwards and inwards to the floor of the mouth, where it communicates with the inferior jugular sinus.

*Find the opening of the left anterior cardinal sinus into the Cuvierian sinus ; insert a seeker into it, turn the fish over, and lay open the cardinal sinus along its whole length by slitting through its dorsal wall ; wash out the blood-clots, and follow it forwards to the orbit. Follow the hyoidean sinus, from the anterior end of the cardinal sinus, downwards along the hyo-mandibular cartilage to the floor of the mouth.*

- iii. The **posterior cardinal sinus** extends back along the dorsal surface of the abdominal cavity close to the median plane, its dorsal wall being firmly united to the body-wall, and its ventral surface covered by the peritoneum. Its anterior end forms a very large thin-walled sac, three-quarters of an inch or more in width. In front it lies at the side of the œsophagus, and close to the hepatic sinus; further back it lies dorsal to the œsophagus, and alongside its fellow of the other side, with which it communicates freely. Behind this point, i.e. about two inches behind the pericardium, the sinuses of the two sides narrow considerably, and run back side by side to the hinder end of the abdominal cavity, lying between the kidneys, from which they draw blood by numerous renal veins. The right sinus extends to the hinder end of the kidneys, the left usually not so far.

*Slit open the ventral walls of both sinuses at their anterior ends, and wash out the blood; note the enormous size of the sinuses and their free communication with each other, dorsal to the œsophagus. Pass a seeker backwards along the right sinus to its commencement between the posterior ends of the kidneys (fig. 52); but do not lay it open in this hinder part, lest the reproductive organs and the cloaca should be injured.*

At its anterior end, immediately to the outer side of its opening into the Cuvierian sinus, the posterior cardinal sinus receives, *via* the **subclavian vein**, the **brachial vein**, which returns blood from the pectoral fin. The subclavian lies in a groove along the inner surface of the cartilage. There are two pairs of **lateral veins**. One pair arises from the pelvic region and runs forward to join the subclavian. This, the **lateral abdominal vein**, corresponds to the anterior

abdominal vein of the Frog. The other paired vein is the **lateral cutaneous vein**, which runs—more superficially—from the tail right up to the Cuvierian sinus.

## 2. The renal portal system.

The blood from the muscles of the tail is returned by the **caudal vein**, which lies below the caudal artery in the hæmal arches of the vertebræ. Opposite the hinder ends of the kidneys the caudal vein divides into the **right and left renal portal veins**, which run forwards along the dorsal edges of the right and left kidneys respectively, receiving branches from the body-wall, and entering the kidneys along their whole length.

*Cut across the tail about two inches behind the cloaca. Find the caudal vein lying in the hæmal arches of the vertebræ, ventral to the caudal artery; trace the vein forwards with a seeker, or inject it, and then dissect it out.*

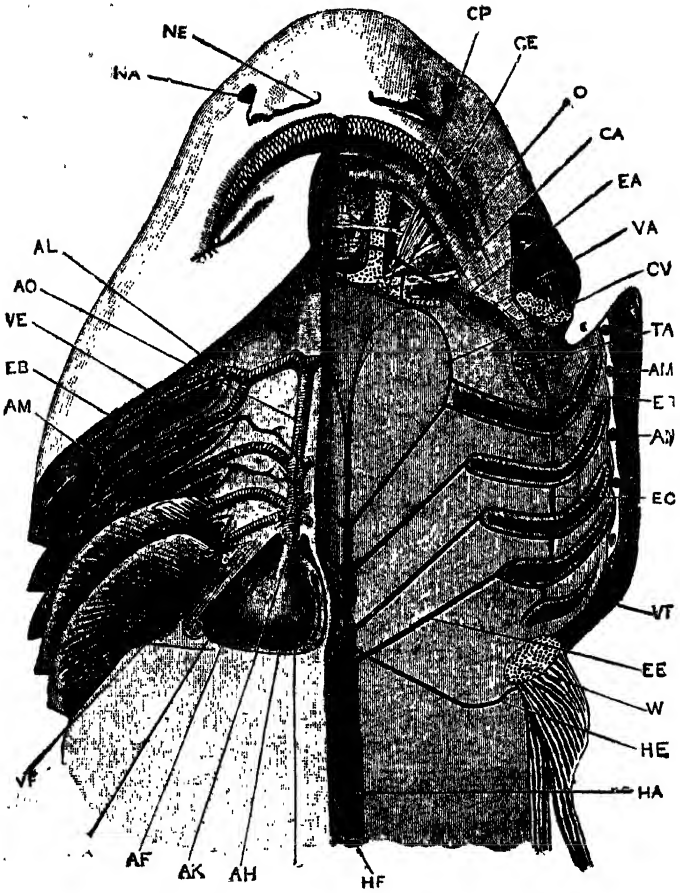
## 3. The hepatic portal system.

The **hepatic portal vein** is formed by the union of two veins, one from the main lobe of the spleen and the other from the intestine. It runs forwards in the mesentery along the dorsal border of the pancreas, and, receiving veins from the pancreas and from the stomach, enters the liver a little to the right of the median plane.

*Find the hepatic portal vein at the point where it enters the liver, a little to the right of the junction of the two lobes, and follow it backwards, turning aside the viscera as may be necessary, but not cutting anything.*

## C. The Arterial System.

The arterial system may conveniently be described under three heads: (1) the **afferent branchial vessels**, which carry the venous blood from the heart to the gills to be aerated; (2) the **efferent branchial vessels**, which collect the aerated blood from the gills; and (3) the **dorsal aorta**, which is formed



by the union of the efferent branchial vessels, and conveys arterial blood to the body generally.

# 1. The afferent branchial vessels.

*Skin the ventral surface of the head between the lower jaw and the pericardium, removing the thin superficial layer of muscles that lies beneath, and exposing the obliquely longitudinal pairs of muscles in front of the pericardium. Press these apart in the middle line till the thyroid gland—a red oval body—is found: this overlies the anterior end of the ventral aorta, which may then be dissected backwards with care, so as to avoid injuring the afferent vessels, which it gives off, and which must now be followed up to the gills. To do this, isolate one by one the paired muscles, and remove them. The afferent vessels lie between successive pairs. The dissection is greatly simplified if each gill-slit is opened up ventrally with scissors.*

- a. The ventral or cardiac aorta is a direct continuation forwards of the conus arteriosus. It is little more than an inch in length, and gives off laterally the five pairs of branchial arteries.

*Note the thyroid gland lying just over the anterior end of the cardiac aorta.*

**FIG. 53.—*Scyllium catulus*.** Dissection from below to show the arterial system. The floor of the mouth has been cut through a little to the left of the median plane, and the left half turned outwards. The lower jaw, the lower portion of the hyoid arch, and the whole of the branchial skeleton have been removed on the left side. The floor of the brain-case and that of the left orbit have been removed. On the right side the skin and muscles and portions of some of the gills have been removed. The thyroid gland is not shown. (C. H. H.)

AA, pericardial cavity. AE, sinus venosus. AF, auricle. AH, ventricle. AK, conus arteriosus. AL, AM, and AN, first, second, and third branchial arteries, in hyoid and first and second branchial arches respectively. AO, ventral aorta. CA, hyoidean artery. CE, external carotid artery. CP, internal or posterior carotid artery. CV, carotid artery. EA, post-spiracular artery. EB, anterior limb of first efferent branchial loop. EC, communicating vessel between second and third efferent branchial loops. EE, fourth epibranchial artery, bringing blood from gills of fourth and fifth clefts. HA, dorsal aorta. HE, subclavian artery. HF, coeliac artery. NA, nostril. NE, nasal flap: in this species the two flaps are not united as in *S. canicula*. O, eyeball. TA, hyo-mandibular cartilage cut across. VA, spiracle with pseudo-branch. VE and VF, first and fifth branchial clefts. W, pectoral girdle cut across, with a portion of the muscles of the pectoral fin.

- b. The branchial arteries arise in pairs from the cardiac aorta, and carry the blood from it to the gills. The two hindmost pairs arise close together or sometimes by a common trunk, immediately in front of the pericardial cavity. The third pair arise about a quarter of an inch further forwards. At its anterior end, about midway between the pericardial cavity and the mouth, the cardiac aorta divides into right and left branches, each of which again divides into the two anterior branchial arteries of its side.

The first or anterior branchial artery runs along the outer border of the hyoid arch, extending nearly to its dorsal end, and giving off branches to the gill borne by the arch.

The four hinder branchial arteries follow similar courses along the outer borders of the first four branchial arches, extending almost to their dorsal ends, and giving off numerous anterior and posterior branches to the gills borne by these arches.

## 2. The efferent branchial vessels.

*The efferent branchial vessels can easily be injected from the caudal artery in the following manner. Cut across the tail about a couple of inches behind the cloaca. Find the caudal artery in the hæmal arches of the vertebral column, lying immediately below the vertebral centra, and dorsal to the caudal vein. Inject it with a coloured fluid (see Introduction, p. xxix).*

*Insert one of the blades of a strong pair of scissors into the mouth, and cut back horizontally along the left side through the gill-arches, as far back as the last gill-arch; from the hinder end of this incision cut transversely across the floor of the pharynx, behind the heart, to the corresponding point on the opposite side. Turn the floor of the mouth, with the heart, over to the right side.*

*Wash the mouth and pharynx thoroughly. Dissect off the mucous membrane from the roof of the mouth; find the efferent*

*branchial vessels running inwards and backwards from the gill-slits, and follow them, on the right side, outwards to the gills, and inwards to the dorsal aorta in the middle line.*

The efferent branchial vessels form loops, one of which runs round the margin of each of the first four branchial clefts, and receives the arterial blood from the gills of that cleft. A single vessel, *i.e.* a half-loop, runs along the anterior border of the fifth branchial cleft, and opens into the loop of the fourth cleft. Each loop communicates with the next one about the middle of its length by a short horizontal vessel.

From the ventral ends of the loops small arteries arise, which supply the floor of the mouth and adjacent parts.

From the dorsal ends of the loops, four main efferent trunks, or epibranchial arteries, arise on each side: these run backwards and inwards in the roof of the mouth to the middle line, where they unite in pairs to form the median dorsal aorta.

- a. The carotid artery is a small vessel which arises on each side from the dorsal end of the efferent vessel of the hyoidean gill, just in front of the origin of the first efferent trunk. It runs forwards and inwards across the ventral surface of the skull, opposite the hinder border of the orbit, and divides, about one-third of an inch from the middle line, into external and internal carotid arteries. Of these, the former runs forwards and outwards across the floor of the orbit, and supplies the upper jaw and snout; while the latter, continuing its course in a groove in the ventral surface of the skull, passes through a median foramen into the cranial cavity. In the foramen the two internal carotids cross each other, each uniting within the cranial cavity with the hyoidean artery of the opposite side.



- b. The hyoidean artery arises from the anterior limb of the first loop about the middle of its length, in line with the connecting vessels between the successive branchial loops, and runs forwards to the anterior wall of the spiracle, where it gives branches to the pseudobranch. It then continues its course forwards and inwards across the floor of the orbit, crossing ventral to the external carotid artery, and entering the skull by a small hole,  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch in front of the inter-orbital foramen, joins with the internal carotid artery of the opposite side, and divides into branches supplying the brain.

3. The dorsal aorta and its branches.

The anterior pair of efferent branchial vessels unite about the level of the inner openings of the fourth gill-clefts, forming the dorsal aorta, into which the hinder vessels open in pairs.

In front of the point of union of the first efferent branchial vessels the aorta is continued forwards beneath the skull as a slender vessel: after a short course this divides into right and left branches which, running outwards, join the carotid arteries just before their division into external and internal carotids.

The dorsal aorta runs backwards along the whole length of the body, lying in the trunk just below the vertebral column, and in the tail, where it becomes the caudal artery, in the hæmal arches of the vertebræ. It gives off branches supplying the whole of the body behind the head.

*The anterior part of the aorta should be dissected between the kidneys; the posterior part, which is deeply placed between and behind the kidneys, is best seen by dissecting one of the kidneys from the body-wall and turning it inwards. The posterior part is, however, best left until the excretory system is dissected.*

The principal branches of the dorsal aorta are the following :

- i. The subclavian arteries are a pair of vessels, which arise from the dorsal surface of the aorta between the third and fourth pairs of efferent branchial vessels, and run outwards and backwards in the body-wall and along

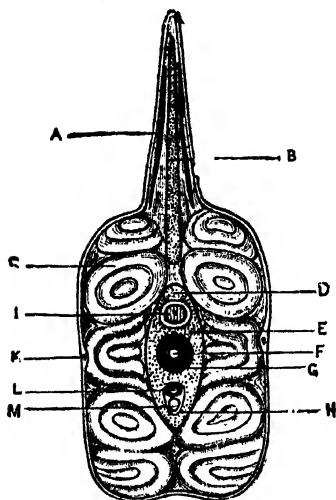


FIG. 54.—*Scyllium canicula*. Transverse section passing through the posterior dorsal fin. (A. M. M.)

A, horny fibre. B, basal cartilage of the dorsal fin. C, myotomes. D, neural spine. E, base of neural arch. F, notochord. G, calcified portion of centrum. H, haemal arch. I, spinal cord. K, lateral cutaneous vein. L, caudal artery. M, caudal vein.

the hinder border of the pectoral girdle to the pectoral fins, which they supply.

- ii. The coeliac artery is a large median vessel arising from the ventral surface of the aorta, about half an inch behind the openings of the last pair of efferent branchial vessels. It runs backwards in the mesentery close to the dorsal surface of the stomach, and divides

into two main branches, one of which supplies the proximal end of the stomach and the liver, and the other the first part of the intestine and the pancreas.

- iii. The anterior mesenteric artery is a median vessel arising from the aorta about an inch and a half behind the coeliac artery. It supplies the intestine and rectum, and gives branches to the genital organs.
- iv. The lieno-gastric artery is a median vessel arising from the aorta immediately behind the mesenteric artery. It supplies the loop of the stomach between its proximal and distal limbs, and also the spleen and part of the pancreas.
- v. The posterior mesenteric artery is a small median vessel arising from the aorta about an inch and a half behind the lieno-gastric, and running backwards in the mesentery to the rectal gland, which it supplies.
- vi. The parietal arteries are small paired vessels arising at intervals along the whole length of the aorta, and supplying the body-walls.
- vii. The renal arteries are small paired vessels arising from the parietal arteries, and supplying the kidneys, which they enter from the dorsal surface.

*The dissection of the renal arteries should be postponed until after the dissection of the reproductive organs and cloaca.*

*To see the arteries, dissect one kidney away from the body-wall and turn it inwards, so as to expose its dorsal surface.*

- viii. The iliac arteries are a pair of small vessels leaving the aorta near the hinder end of the body-cavity, and running outwards in the body-walls to the pelvic fins, which they supply.

**D. Dissection of the Heart.**

*Remove the floor of the mouth, with the heart and pericardium, and pin it down in a dish under water, with the ventral surface upwards. Open and examine the several cavities of the heart in the order given below, washing out the contained blood with a stream of water.*

*Open the ventricle by a horizontal incision, carrying the cut forwards along the right side of the conus arteriosus to its anterior end and then along the ventral side of the ventral aorta in order to expose the origins of the branchial arteries. Turn the ventral portions of both ventricle and conus over to the left side.*

1. The **conus arteriosus** contains two sets of valves, each set consisting of three valves.

The posterior set is just in front of the ventricle, and the anterior and larger set about the middle of the length of the conus. Each valve is thick in its central part, thin and membranous at the edges.

2. The **ventricle** has very thick muscular and spongy walls, and a small central cavity. The opening from the auricle is a transverse slit guarded by a two-lipped valve, and is placed in the dorsal wall of the ventricle near its hinder end, and slightly to the left side.

3. The **auricle**.

*Cut across the conus at its anterior end ; open the auricle by horizontal incisions along its lateral and anterior borders, turn the ventral wall back, and wash out the blood from the cavity.*

The walls of the auricle are thin, with radiating muscular bands ; the cavity is very large and triangular in shape. The opening leading from the sinus venosus is a vertical slit in the posterior wall of the auricle ; and the transverse aperture leading to the ventricle is in the ventral wall, and slightly to the left of the median plane.

4. The **sinus venosus** has already been laid open. Its walls are thin, with a very feebly developed muscular

network. The sinu-auricular aperture is a median vertical slit in the anterior wall, to the left of the ventral end of which is a small aperture from the coronary sinus, which returns to the sinus venosus the blood from the walls of the heart.

## VII DISSECTION OF THE RENAL AND REPRODUCTIVE SYSTEMS.

These two systems have already been seen in part, but may now be examined more fully. They are originally independent of each other, but in the course of development become associated, owing to the genital ducts being formed from parts of the kidney-ducts.

The kidneys are paired organs, lying side by side along the whole length of the dorsal wall of the abdominal cavity. Each consists at an early age of its development of a number of convoluted tubules, placed one behind another, and opening at one end into the abdominal cavity: at their other ends they open into a longitudinal duct, the **segmental duct**, which runs the whole length of the kidney, and opens in front into the abdominal cavity and behind into the cloaca.

During development, as in many vertebrates, each kidney appears in two portions: an anterior part or **pronephros**, which is small and abortive in the dog-fish and other Elasmobranchs; and a posterior portion, the **mesonephros** or **Wolffian body**, including the greater part of the length of the primary kidney (largely developed in most ordinary fish).

The ducts also undergo division. The **segmental duct** becomes split longitudinally into two separate ducts: the **Müllerian duct**, which loses its connection with the kidney; and the **Wolffian duct**, into which the kidney tubules open. At a later stage several of the hinder kidney tubules unite to form one or more independent ducts, or **ureters**.

In the female the right and left Müllerian ducts unite in front, so as to open into the abdominal cavity by a single median aperture, and become converted into the oviducts;

while the mesonephros and its ducts form the functional kidney and ureters of the adult.

In the male the Müllerian ducts are abortive and functionless; the anterior mesonephric tubules become connected with the vasa efferentia of the testis, conveying the spermatozoa to the mesonephric or Wolffian duct, which acts as vas deferens. The posterior part of the kidney and its ducts, as in the female, become the functional kidney and ureters. The tubules of the kidney have persistent peritoneal funnels opening into the body-cavity.

TABLE SHOWING THE EMBRYONIC AND ADULT CONDITIONS OF THE KIDNEYS AND THEIR DUCTS.

Embryo	Female	Male
Pronephros . . . . .	Absent.	Absent.
Wolffian body, or } divided	{ Abortive portion.	Epididymis.
mesonephros } into		
Müllerian duct. . . .	Kidney.	Kidney.
Wolffian duct . . . .	Oviduct.	Abortive.
	Small in front,	Vas deferens,
	dilating behind to	urino-genital sinus,
	form urinary sinus.	and sperm-sac.
Posterior ducts . . .	Ureters.	Ureters.

#### A. The Female.

1. The ovary, which is single, is an elongated soft lobulated mass, varying a good deal in size, but usually about two or three inches long in specimens of the size described. It lies in the abdominal cavity a little to the right of the median plane, and is attached to the dorsal wall by a narrow fold of peritoneum, which is very easily torn. The ova form conspicuous rounded projections on the surface of the ovary, and when fully formed are half an inch or more in diameter.
2. The oviducts, which are formed from the Müllerian ducts of the embryo, are a pair of tubes running

along the dorsal wall of the abdominal cavity ventral to the kidneys, and not far from the median plane. Their anterior ends curve inwards round the sides of the œsophagus, and unite immediately in front of the liver, to open into the abdominal cavity by a median ventral slit, through which the ova enter the oviducts from the abdominal cavity.

About a third of its length from the anterior end, each oviduct expands to form the thick-walled **oviducal gland**, which secretes the horny capsules of the eggs. Behind the glands the oviducts are large and dilatable, with longitudinally folded walls: their posterior ends unite, and open by a large median aperture into the dorsal wall of the shallow cloaca, immediately behind the rectum. This aperture is closed in the young female by a thin membrane, the hymen.

*Find the anterior opening of the oviducts in the suspensory ligament of the liver, immediately behind the pericardial wall: insert a seeker through it into the oviducts, and follow one of these back to the cloaca, slitting through its ventral wall.*

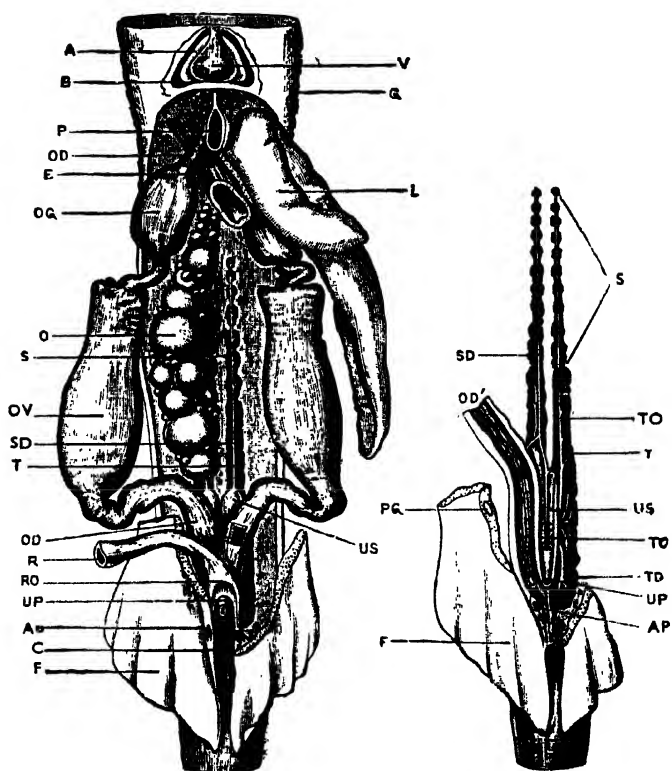
3. The kidneys, or mesonephra, extend nearly the whole length of the abdominal cavity, lying dorsal to the peritoneum, and one at each side of the vertebral column. The anterior half or more of each kidney

---

FIG. 55.—*Scyllium canicula*. Dissection of a female from the ventral surface, to show the renal and reproductive systems. The right lobe of the liver and the alimentary canal from the œsophagus to the rectum have been removed. An arrow is passed up the left oviduct, which is cut open to show its point. (A. M. M.)

FIG. 56.—Further dissection of the renal and reproductive systems. The left oviduct is removed; and the right oviduct and the urinary sinuses are laid open. (A. M. M.)

A, auricle. AP, abdominal pore. B, pericardial cavity. C, cloaca. E, œsophagus. F, pelvic fin. G, gill-slit. L, liver. O, ovary. OD, oviduct. OD', oviduct laid open. OG, oviducal gland. OV, egg in the oviduct. P, abdominal opening of oviduct. PG, pelvic girdle. R, rectum. RO, opening of rectum into cloaca. S, anterior part of kidney. SD, Wolffian duct. T, hinder part of kidney. UD, posterior ducts or ureters. TO, openings of ureters into urinary sinus. UP, urinary papilla. US, urinary sinus. V, ventricle.





is abortive, and appears as an ill-defined tract of soft yellowish-brown degenerate gland-tissue, arranged in patches corresponding to the vertebræ.

The posterior third or so of the kidney is a well-developed, compact, laterally compressed, and lobulated mass of a brownish colour, extending back as far as the level of the cloaca.

*Dissect off the peritoneum from the ventral surface of one of the kidneys, so as to expose it along its whole length. At the hinder end dissect along its outer side from the body-wall, so as to see its full size.*

4. The **Wolfian ducts** are a pair of straight narrow tubes lying on the ventral surface of the kidneys along their whole length. Their posterior ends are enlarged to form a pair of tubular sacs, the **urinary sinuses**, which run back side by side, unite together posteriorly, and open into the cloaca at the apex of the small **urinary papilla** in the posterior margin of the opening of the oviducts.

*Find the opening at the apex of the urinary papilla; pass a seeker through the opening and forwards along the urinary sinus of one side; slit up the ventral wall of the sinus along its whole length.*

5. The **ureters** are slender tubes, usually four to six in number on each side, which run from the functional kidney to open into the dorsal surface of the **urinary sinus** by four to six slit-like apertures lying along the septum between the two sinuses. The anterior ureter is much longer than the others.

*Find the ureters, lying on the ventral surface of the posterior half of the kidney, and trace them back to the urinary sinus. Slit up the sinus, unless this has already been done, and examine its dorsal wall to see the openings of the ureters.*

6. The **cloaca** is a shallow depression between the pelvic fins. In the female there are three openings into

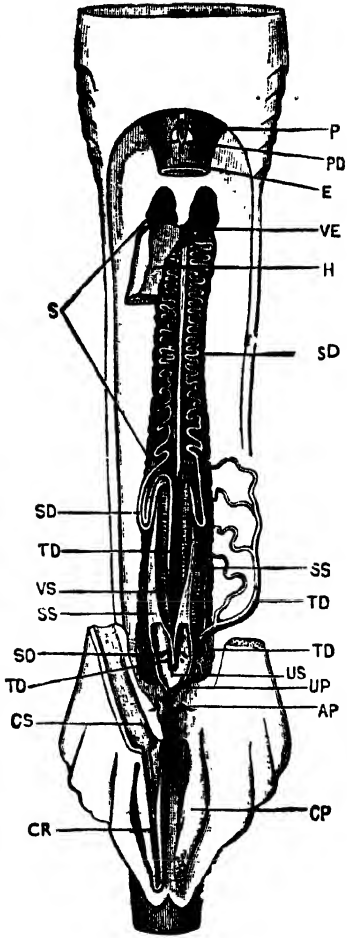
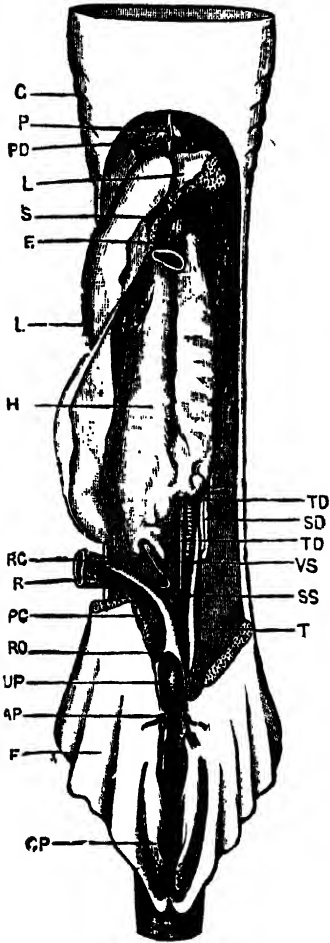
it: the rectum in front, the genital aperture in the middle, and the urinary sinus behind.

### B. The Male.

1. The **testes** are a pair of soft elongated bodies lying along the dorsal wall of the abdominal cavity, and in the adult united with each other at their hinder ends. Like the ovary, they are attached to the body-wall by delicate folds of peritoneum which are very easily torn, so that in many specimens the testes appear to lie free in the abdominal cavity.
2. The **vasa efferentia** are a number of very slender ducts which arise on each side from the dorsal surface of the testis, and run forwards in the fold of peritoneum to the Wolffian body, which they enter at its anterior end.
3. The **kidneys**. Each kidney is, as in the female, divided into an anterior part and a posterior excretory part. The anterior half differs from that of the female in being secondarily connected with the reproductive system forming the epididymis or genital portion. The hinder part, as in the female, is a laterally compressed mass of considerable size, especially thick at its hinder end. This part is the functional kidney.

*Dissect off the peritoneum from the ventral surface of one of the kidneys, so as to expose it along its whole length. At the hinder end dissect the kidney from the body-wall along its outer side, so as to see its full size.*

4. The **Wolffian ducts** are a pair of thick-walled tubes running in a very sinuous course along the ventral surface of the genital portion of the kidney, from which the ducts receive numerous segmentally arranged tubules. Opposite the junction of the two portions of the kidney they dilate rather suddenly into two wide thin-walled tubes, the **vesiculae**



**seminales**, which run straight back along the ventral surface of the kidney to open into the **urino-genital sinus**, just in front of the cloaca. The walls of the **vesicula seminalis** are marked by close-set transverse lines, corresponding to internal foldings of its lining membrane.

The **Wolffian duct** acts as **vas deferens**, conveying the spermatic fluid from the testis to the exterior.

*Dissect the Wolffian duct of one side away from the ventral surface of the mesonephros, noting the tubules it receives from this; and follow it back to the cloaca.*

5. The **sperm-sacs** are a pair of thin-walled tubes lying along the ventral surfaces and the outer sides of the **vesiculæ seminales**, to which they are closely attached, and which they about equal in length. Each sperm-sac ends blindly in front, and dilates behind to form the **urino-genital sinus**.

*Dissect away the sperm-sac from the vesicula seminalis and follow it back to the urino-genital sinus.*

**FIG. 57.**—*Scyllium canicula*. Dissection of a male from the ventral surface, to show the renal and reproductive systems. The left lobe of the liver and the alimentary canal from the oesophagus to the rectum have been removed. The excretory organs of the left side only are shown. An arrow passes through the left abdominal pore into the abdominal cavity. (A. M. M.)

**FIG. 58.**—Further dissection of the renal and reproductive organs. The liver and the greater part of the testis have been removed. The right ureter is shown in its natural position; the left has been displaced outwards. The urino-genital sinuses of both sides have been laid open. (A. M. M.)

AP, abdominal pore. CP, clasper. CR, groove in clasper. CS, sac continuous with groove in clasper. E, oesophagus. F, pelvic fin. G, gill-slit. H, testis. L, liver. P, abdominal opening of Müllerian ducts. PD, abortive Müllerian duct. PG, pelvic girdle. R, rectum. RG, rectal gland. RO, opening of rectum into cloaca. S, Wolffian body. SD, Wolffian duct or vas deferens. SO, opening of Wolffian duct into urino-genital sinus. SS, sperm-sac. T, functional kidney. TD, ureter. TD', ducts from hinder part of kidney, joining the ureter as it reaches the urino-genital sinus. TO, opening of ureter into urino-genital sinus. UP, urino-genital papilla. US, urino-genital sinus. VE, vasa efferentia. VS, vesicula seminalis, the dilated hinder end of the Wolffian duct.

6. The urino-genital sinus of each side is the posterior end of the sperm-sac: the vesicula seminalis and the ureter open into it. About a quarter of an inch behind these openings the sinuses of the two sides unite, and then open into the cloaca by a small aperture at the apex of the urino-genital papilla, which is situated immediately behind the opening of the rectum.

*Find the opening at the apex of the urino-genital papilla: pass a seeker through the opening, and forwards along the urino-genital sinus and sperm-sac of one side: slit up the ventral wall of the sinus and sac along their whole length: examine, and pass a seeker into the orifices of the vesicula seminalis and ureter.*

7. The ureters are usually five in number on each side; they arise from the outer border of the ventral surface of the secreting portion of the kidney at intervals along its length. The four anterior ducts, after a short course, unite to form a wide thin-walled tube which runs backwards along the inner side and dorsal surface of the vesicula seminalis to open into the urino-genital sinus, immediately to the inner side of the opening of the Wolffian duct; just before reaching the sinus this tube is joined by the fifth or hindmost duct, from the posterior portion of the kidney. From three to five smaller ducts open separately into the urino-genital sinus a little further back.

*The ureters are more easily followed after injecting them with a coloured fluid from the main ureter, which is a wide tube, lying along the inner side of the vesicula seminalis.*

8. The cloaca is the shallow depression between the pelvic fins into which, in the male, the rectum opens in front and the urino-genital sinus behind.
9. The Müllerian ducts are abortive in the male, their

anterior ends alone being present. A small pocket-like sac in the suspensory ligament of the liver, between it and the pericardium, represents the abdominal opening of the oviducts of the female. From this sac the ducts can be traced a short distance round the sides of the oesophagus.

10. The **claspers** (see p. 222).

11. The **spermatozoa** are delicate thread-like structures, each with a thickened middle-piece round which a spiral membrane runs.

#### VIII. DISSECTION OF THE NERVOUS SYSTEM.

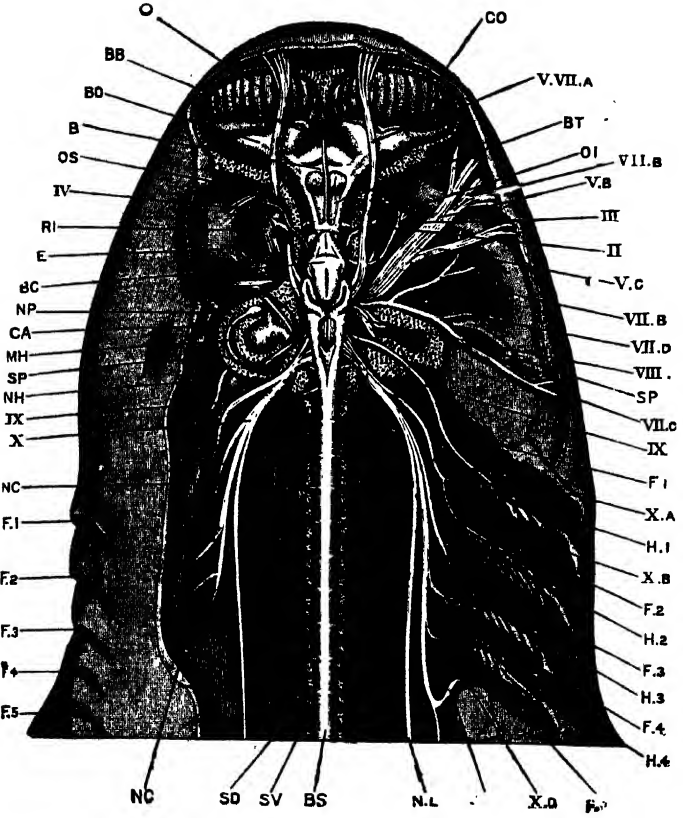
*For this purpose a dog-fish should be taken which has been hardened in spirit or formol, a piece of the roof of the skull having been previously removed so as to allow the fluid free access to the brain. The specimen must be moistened from time to time during the dissection to prevent the nerves drying up.*

The nervous system consists of (1) a **central portion**, the brain and spinal cord, lodged within the skull and vertebral column respectively; and (2) a **peripheral portion**, the nerves themselves, which connect the brain and spinal cord with all parts of the body.

From the mode of its development the central nervous system is tubular, and it retains this character throughout life. The central canal is very small in the spinal cord, but widens out considerably in the brain, its local dilatations being spoken of as the **ventricles** of the brain.

##### A. The Dorsal Surface of the Brain.

*Remove the skin from the dorsal surface of the head. Dissect away the eyelids on the right side so as to open up the orbit. Slice away the roof of the cranium so as to expose the brain fully, slicing through the auditory capsule on the right side, but leaving it uninjured on the left.*



The brain nearly fills the cranial cavity: it is narrow between the orbits, but expands considerably in front of them. As seen from above, the following parts are visible in order from before backwards.

1. The **prosencephalon** is the most anterior and the largest division of the brain. It is a smooth somewhat globular mass, lying in the expanded anterior part of the cranial cavity, between the olfactory capsules and the orbits. It is marked in front by a shallow median groove, and is sharply separated behind from the succeeding part of the brain. It corresponds to the **cerebral hemispheres** of higher vertebrates.
2. The **olfactory lobes** are a pair of large oval masses, arising by stout stalks from the sides of the prosencephalon, their distal surfaces being closely applied to the olfactory capsules.
3. The **thalamencephalon** is the narrow portion of the brain immediately behind the prosencephalon; its roof is very thin, so that the cavity, or **third ventricle**, can be seen through it. From the hinder part of the roof arises the **pineal body**, a slender tubular process which extends forwards over the prosencephalon,

FIG. 59.—*Scyllium catulus*. Dissection of the brain and cranial nerves from the dorsal surface. The right eye has been removed. The cut surfaces of the cartilaginous skull and vertebral column are dotted. About two-thirds the natural size. (A. M. M.)

B, prosencephalon. BB, pineal body. BC, cerebellum. BO, olfactory lobe. BS, spinal cord. BT, thalamencephalon. CA, auditory capsule. CO, olfactory capsule. E, eye. F.1-F.5, first to fifth branchial clefts. H.1-H.4, first to fourth branchial arches. MH, external or horizontal semi-circular canal. NC, anterior cardinal sinus. NH, opening of hyoidean sinus into anterior cardinal sinus. N.L, nerve of the lateral line. NP, post-orbital sinus. O, olfactory organ. OI, obliquus inferior. OS, obliquus superior. RI, rectus internus. SD, dorsal root of spinal nerve. SP, hyomandibular cleft or spiracle. SV, ventral root of spinal nerve.

II, optic nerve. III, third nerve. IV, fourth nerve. V, VII. A, ophthalmic branches of fifth and seventh nerves. V. B, maxillary branch of fifth nerve. V. C, mandibular branch of fifth nerve. VII. B, palatine branch of seventh nerve. VII. B<sup>1</sup>, buccal branch of seventh nerve. VII. C, hyoidean branch of seventh nerve. VII. D, 'pre-spiracular' branch of seventh nerve. VIII, auditory nerve. IX, ninth or glosso-pharyngeal nerve. X, tenth or pneumogastric nerve. X. A, branch of pneumogastric nerve to second branchial cleft. X. B, branch of pneumogastric nerve to third branchial cleft. X. D, branch of pneumogastric nerve to fifth branchial cleft. X. F, visceral branch of pneumogastric nerve.



and ends in a slightly dilated knob attached to the membranous roof of the skull some little distance in front of the brain.

4. The optic lobes are a pair of closely apposed ovoid protuberances lying in the narrowest part of the cranial cavity opposite the middle of the orbits. Their posterior halves are overlapped and concealed by the cerebellum.
5. The cerebellum is a long flattened oval body arising from the dorsal surface of the brain immediately behind the optic lobes, and extending forwards over them, and backwards for an equal distance over the medulla oblongata. Its surface is slightly grooved.
6. The medulla oblongata is the part of the brain behind the cerebellum. Its roof is very thin, and liable to be torn away so as to expose its cavity, the fourth ventricle. Its sides are thickened, especially in front, where they give origin to the roots of the fifth, seventh, and eighth cerebral nerves. Immediately above these roots, and below the posterior projection of the cerebellum, the medulla is produced into a pair of large lateral wing-like processes, the restiform bodies, which are united with each other beneath the overhanging cerebellum.

#### B. The Orbit.

*This should be examined before the dissection of the nerves is proceeded with. If the eyelids have been removed as directed above, no further dissection is necessary. Wash out the blood-clots from the orbital sinus with a stream of water, avoiding injury to the nerves.*

1. The eyeball is almost hemispherical in shape, its outer or corneal surface being very flat.
2. The eye-muscles, by which the movements of the eye are effected, are six narrow muscular bands which arise from the skull-wall and are inserted into the eyeball: they are arranged in two groups.

- a. The recti muscles are four in number. They arise close together, near the hinder end of the orbit, and diverge outwards to be inserted into the eyeball.
  - i. The rectus superior runs outwards and forwards, to be inserted into the dorsal surface of the eyeball.
  - ii. The rectus internus, or anterior, runs forwards between the skull-wall and the eyeball, and is inserted into the anterior surface of the latter.
  - iii. The rectus externus, or posterior, is the hindmost of the eye-muscles, and runs directly outwards behind the eyeball, to be inserted into its posterior surface.
  - iv. The rectus inferior runs outwards and forwards beneath the eyeball, and is inserted into its ventral surface.

*The origin of the rectus inferior can be seen from above, between the other recti muscles ; to see its insertion, turn the eyeball up.*

- b. The obliqui muscles are two in number. They arise close together at the anterior end of the orbit and run backwards and outwards to the eyeball.
  - i. The obliquus superior is inserted into the dorsal surface of the eyeball, just in front of the insertion of the rectus superior.
  - ii. The obliquus inferior is inserted into the ventral surface of the eyeball, just in front of the insertion of the rectus inferior.

*To see the obliquus inferior, turn the eyeball up.*

### C. The Cranial Nerves (fig. 59).

*These should be dissected before the brain is removed, in order that their entire course may be seen.*

*Dissect the nerves on the right side, leaving the left side for the dissection of the sense-organs.*

*The ophthalmic branches of the fifth and seventh nerves, which run through the orbit close to the skull-wall, and dorsal to all the eye-muscles, should be identified at once; and care must be taken not to injure them (see pp. 280, 281, and fig. 59, p. 274).*

1. A paired **pre-olfactory nerve** arises at the extreme front end of the brain, and, resting upon the olfactory lobe, passes to the nasal septum. The **olfactory 'nerves'** arise on each side in two large bundles from the anterior surface of the olfactory lobe, and pass at once through the sieve-like membrane separating the cranial cavity from the nose. They end in the folds of the large olfactory organ.

*Dissect the olfactory nerves from the dorsal surface, taking care to preserve the ophthalmic branches of the fifth and seventh nerves, which run forwards across the olfactory lobe, but separated from this by the cartilaginous cranium.*

2. The **optic 'nerve'** enters the orbit through a foramen in the side wall of the skull, near its ventral surface, and about midway between the origins of the recti and of the obliqui muscles. In the orbit it is enclosed in a very tough connective-tissue sheath. It is not a nerve but a portion of the brain (see p. 484).

*Press the eye-muscles aside to see the optic nerve between the recti and obliqui. The course of the nerve within the skull will be seen when the brain is removed.<sup>1</sup>*

3. The **third nerve, or motor oculi**, is a rather slender nerve which, arising from the ventral surface of the brain below the optic lobes, runs outwards and slightly backwards to the skull-wall, which it perforates about a quarter of an inch behind the optic nerve, and immediately in front of the origins of the recti muscles.

In the orbit it divides at once into three branches, of which the first supplies the rectus internus, and the middle one the rectus superior. The hindmost

<sup>1</sup> Though not essential for the dissection of the nerves of the orbit, the eyeball may now be removed by severing the optic nerve and cutting through the outer ends of the eye-muscles close to the eye.

branch passes downwards between the rectus superior and rectus externus close to their origins, and then forwards, ventral to the rectus inferior, which it supplies, to the obliquus inferior, in which it ends. As it crosses the rectus inferior it is joined by a branch from the fifth nerve.

*Gently press away the optic lobe from the skull-wall, so as to see the third nerve within the skull, and also the point at which it enters the orbit. In the orbit the branches to the rectus internus and rectus superior are easily dissected from above. To trace the branch to the obliquus inferior place the fish on its side, and turn the eyeball upwards so as to expose the nerve from below.*

4. The fourth or pathetic nerve is a very slender nerve which arises from the dorsal surface of the brain, in the angle between the optic lobe and the cerebellum, and almost in the median plane. From the brain it runs forwards and outwards to the skull-wall, which it perforates a little in front of the middle of the orbit, dorsal to the optic nerve, and immediately ventral to the ophthalmic branches of the fifth and seventh nerves. In the orbit it runs outwards and forwards to the posterior border of the obliquus superior, in which it ends.

*Though very slender, the fourth nerve is easy to trace. Lift up the front end of the cerebellum to see its origin between the cerebellum and the optic lobes; trace it forwards within the skull, and in the orbit outwards to the obliquus superior.*

5. The fifth, seventh, and eighth nerves arise very close together from the side of the medulla at its widest part, opposite the posterior part of the cerebellum. The eighth or auditory nerve, which is the hindmost of the three, enters the auditory capsule at once; while the fifth and seventh nerves pass outwards through the skull-wall, by a foramen at the posterior and inner angle of the orbit, immediately behind the origins of the recti muscles.

*Gently press away the medulla from the skull-wall until the nerve-roots come into view, and then carefully cut away the skull-wall and the auditory capsule until the roots are fully exposed.*

a. The fifth or trigeminal nerve has three main branches.

i. The superficial ophthalmic branch arises from the anterior border of the root of the nerve, close to the brain. It runs forwards and upwards for about a quarter of an inch within the skull, and then perforates the skull-wall to enter the orbit. The deep ophthalmic branch found in the skate is absent in the dog-fish.

In the orbit it runs forwards close to the skull-wall, alongside of and immediately below the ophthalmic branch of the seventh nerve, and dorsal to all the eye-muscles. At the anterior and inner angle of the orbit it passes through a canal between the olfactory capsule and the cranium, crosses the olfactory lobe and continuing its course forwards divides into branches, which supply the skin of the dorsal surface of the snout.

*Gently press away the brain from the skull-wall to see the root and the part of the nerve within the cranium, taking care not to confound it with the ophthalmic branch of the seventh nerve, which lies immediately dorsal to it. In the orbit dissect from the side, and in front of the orbit from above.*

The main stem of the fifth nerve on entering the orbit (accompanied by the buccal branch of the seventh) runs forwards and outwards across its floor as a broad ribbon-like band, easily mistaken in spirit specimens for a muscle. Near the outer margin of the orbit this separates into the maxillary and mandibular branches. The buccal branch of the seventh nerve lies between and dorsal to these.

*Turn the eye up; trace the nerve across the floor of the orbit, and follow its branches to their distribution.*

- ii. The maxillary branch, which is the anterior of the three, turns over the upper jaw at the anterior border of the orbit, and divides into branches which run forwards to supply the region of the upper jaw.
  - iii. The mandibular branch, the posterior of the three, crosses the upper jaw, and then curving round the angle of the mouth, where it lies very close to the surface, runs forwards along the lower jaw. It supplies the muscles moving the lower jaw.
6. The sixth nerve is very slender, and arises by three or four roots from the ventral surface of the medulla near the median plane, and a short way behind the roots of the fifth and seventh nerves; it passes out through the same foramen with these nerves, lying below them and separated from them by dense connective tissue. It supplies the rectus externus.

*To see the part of the sixth nerve within the skull, cut through the roots of the fifth and seventh nerves, and press the brain aside. In the orbit the nerve can be seen along the inferior border of the rectus externus.*

7. The seventh or facial nerve has four main branches.
- i. The superficial ophthalmic branch arises from the dorsal edge of the medulla, immediately behind the cerebellum. It runs forwards for about a quarter of an inch within the skull, and then enters the orbit through a foramen above and a little behind the origins of the recti muscles. In the orbit it runs forwards close to the skull-wall, alongside of and dorsal to the ophthalmic branch of the fifth nerve. It supplies the sensory ampullæ and sensory canal of the supra-orbital region.

*To see the root, which is large, press the brain away from the skull. The dissection is the same as for the corresponding branch of the fifth nerve.*

The main stem of the seventh nerve enters the orbit immediately behind the fifth, and divides almost at once into three main branches.

*Turn the eye up and dissect the nerve from the side, following the branches to their distribution.*

- ii. The buccal branch arises from the brain along with the ophthalmic. It accompanies the maxillary branch of the fifth nerve, lying between this and the mandibular branch on the floor of the orbit. It supplies the sensory ampullæ and the sensory canal of the infra-orbital region. This nerve is better seen in the skate.
- iii. The palatine branch is a slender nerve which runs forwards and outwards across the floor of the orbit, immediately behind the main stem of the fifth nerve: it then turns forwards beneath this nerve and runs along the upper jaw, sending branches to the roof of the mouth.
- iv. The hyoidean or post-spiracular branch is a much stouter nerve, which runs straight outwards along the posterior wall of the orbit towards the spiracle. Continuing its course outwards and backwards, in close contact with the anterior wall of the auditory capsule, it passes along the posterior border of the spiracle, where it lies just beneath the skin, and then runs downwards and backwards along the anterior border of the hyoid arch, giving off an external mandibular branch to the ampullæ and sensory canals of the hyo-mandibular region.

Close to its origin it gives off a number of small pre-spiracular branches, one or more

of which pass to the anterior wall of the spiracle and to the pseudobranch.

8. The eighth or auditory nerve, immediately after its origin, enters the auditory capsule through a hole in the anterior end of its inner wall, and divides into branches supplying the several parts of the internal ear.

*Slice away the auditory capsule down to the level of the root of the auditory nerve, and trace the nerve into it.*

9. The ninth or glosso-pharyngeal nerve arises from the side of the medulla, about an eighth of an inch behind the auditory nerve and nearer the ventral surface. It at once enters a foramen on the inner side of the auditory capsule and about the middle of its length, and, passing horizontally outwards and backwards along a canal in the floor of the capsule, emerges at its posterior and outer angle, opposite the upper end of the first branchial cleft, where it divides into two branches.

- i. The anterior or pre-branchial branch is the smaller of the two, and runs down the posterior border of the hyoid arch.
- ii. The posterior or post-branchial branch is larger, and runs down the anterior border of the first branchial arch.

*Press away the medulla from the skull-wall to see the root of the nerve, about an eighth of an inch behind the auditory nerve. Lay open the anterior cardinal sinus by slitting up its dorsal wall, wash out the blood, and identify the branchial branches of the ninth and tenth nerves.*

10. The pneumogastric nerve or vagus is a large nerve, which arises by a number of roots from the side of the hinder part of the medulla. The root of the lateral-line nerve is dorsal to that of the glosso-pharyngeal.

The vagus, accompanied for some distance by the lateral-line nerve, runs outwards and backwards



through the skull-wall, emerging at its hinder end between the cranium and the auditory capsule. It then runs horizontally backwards, parallel to the vertebral column, and a short distance to its outer side, lying along the inner wall of the anterior cardinal sinus, and giving off numerous branches.

*Press away the medulla from the skull-wall to see the roots of origin of the vagus. Identify the branches of the vagus running along the inner wall and across the floor of the anterior cardinal sinus. Dissect these branches out, and follow them to their distribution. Trace the vagus and the ninth nerve back to the brain by slicing away the auditory capsule and the hinder end of the skull.*

- i. The **branchial nerves**, which are four in number, run backwards and outwards in the floor of the anterior cardinal sinus to the upper ends of the four hinder, i.e. second to fifth, branchial clefts. Each then divides into a smaller anterior and a larger posterior branch, which supply the two borders of the corresponding cleft, just as the glosso-pharyngeal supplies the two borders of the first branchial cleft.
- ii. The **visceral or intestinal nerves** are continuations backwards of the trunk from which the branchial nerves arise: they give off several branches, of which the most important are the **cardiac nerves** to the heart, and the **gastric nerves** to the stomach.

The nerve of the lateral-line arises dorsal to the root of the ninth nerve. It runs backwards above and to the inner side of the branchial division of the vagus, continuing its course to the hinder end of the body and parallel to the lateral line, the sense-organs of which it supplies. It is to be associated with those parts of the seventh nerve that innervate the lateral line organs of the head.

**D. Dissection of the Brain.****1. Removal of the brain.**

*Cut across the medulla a short way behind the roots of the vagus. Cut through the olfactory nerves so as to separate the olfactory lobes from the nasal capsules; and cut through the several cranial nerves one by one, about midway between the brain and the skull-wall. Turn out the brain from the cranium, taking care not to damage the pituitary body: this latter lies on the under surface of the brain, opposite to the optic lobes, and in a hollow of the skull-floor, to which it is firmly attached, and from which it must be dissected away.*

*Examine the skull after removal of the brain, and identify the several nerve-stumps and their foramina of exit.*

**2. The ventral surface of the brain.**

*Place the brain in spirit, with the ventral surface upwards, and identify the following structures:*

- a. The **prosencephalon** is marked by a shallow median groove; posteriorly it is directly continuous with the **thalamencephalon**.
- b. The **olfactory lobes** have much the same appearance as from the dorsal surface.
- c. The **optic chiasma** is formed by the decussation of the optic nerves on the under surface of the **thalamencephalon**. Beyond the chiasma the nerves diverge outwards towards the foramina in the skull-wall which lead to the orbits.
- d. The **infundibulum** consists of a pair of prominent oval swellings, sometimes called **lobi inferiores**, on the under surface of the **thalamencephalon**, immediately behind the optic chiasma. It is produced posteriorly into a large thin-walled pouch, the **saccus vasculosus**.
- e. The **pituitary body** is a thick-walled median tubular body lying immediately beneath and attached to the **infundibulum**, the posterior end being, in the

natural condition of the parts, attached to the floor of the skull.

It is important to remember that the pituitary body, as here defined, is not developed from the brain.

- f. The roots of the third nerves arise from the ventral surface of the brain close to the middle line, and opposite the junction of the infundibulum with the pituitary body.

*Lift up the pituitary body and infundibulum so as to expose the third nerves fully.*

- g. The medulla oblongata is narrow in front: it widens considerably opposite the roots of the fifth and seventh nerves; and then narrows again as it passes back into the spinal cord.

- h. The roots of the sixth nerves, three or four on each side, arise from the ventral surface of the medulla, near the middle line, and a short distance behind the level of the roots of the fifth and seventh nerves.

### 3. The cavities of the brain.

*Bisect the brain by a median vertical incision along its whole length. Slice away the inner surface of one half of the prosencephalon until the cavity within it is fully exposed.*

The brain, as already noticed, is tubular, and its cavity is continued into all the principal lobes or processes, which may be regarded as formed by foldings of its wall, or rather by unequal growth at various parts. The roof of the brain varies greatly in thickness at different parts, but the floor is nearly uniform throughout (cf. fig. 51, p. 248).

- a. The lateral ventricles are a pair of large laterally compressed cavities in the prosencephalon, separated from each other by a median vertical septum. Posteriorly they open into the cavity of the thalamencephalon, and on their outer sides they are prolonged into the olfactory lobes.

The posterior wall of the prosencephalon, just in front of and above the thalamencephalon, is produced on each side into a very thin-walled fold, which projects forwards into the lateral ventricle nearly to its anterior end. Between the two layers of the fold are numerous blood-vessels forming the choroid plexus.

- b. The **third ventricle** is a cavity within the thalamencephalon: it communicates in front with the lateral ventricles, above with the very narrow cavity of the stalk of the pineal body, behind with the cavity beneath the optic lobes, and below with the infundibulum.
- c. The **saccus vasculosus** is a sac with very thin walls, standing in this respect in marked contrast to the **infundibulum**, which has thick walls. Its cavity does not communicate with the **pituitary body** which lies on its ventral surface. The pituitary body has only a secondary connection with the brain.
- d. The **optic lobes, cerebellum, and restiform bodies** are all hollow outgrowths from the dorsal surface of the brain. Their walls are of moderate thickness, excepting the dorsal ends of the restiform bodies, which are very thin.
- e. The **fourth ventricle** is the cavity in the medulla, beneath and behind the cerebellum: its sides and floor are thick, its roof very thin.

#### E. The Spinal Cord and Nerves.

*Slice away the roof of the neural canal horizontally, so as to expose the dorsal surface of the spinal cord.*

*Gently press the cord away from the side of the canal, to expose the roots of the spinal nerves.*

1. The **spinal cord** lies in the neural canal of the vertebral column. It is flattened dorso-ventrally; marked by

median longitudinal grooves or fissures along its dorsal and ventral surfaces ; and traversed throughout its whole length by a narrow central canal, continuous in front with the fourth ventricle of the brain.

2. The **spinal nerves** arise in pairs from the sides of the spinal cord. Each nerve arises by two roots, a **dorsal** or ganglionated sensory root, and a **ventral** or motor one : of these, the dorsal root is some distance in front of the corresponding ventral one, the successive dorsal and ventral roots alternating at about equal intervals along the sides of the spinal cord.

Each dorsal root passes out from the neural canal through a notch in the hinder margin of the intervertebral neural plate. The corresponding ventral root arises by three or more rootlets, and passes out from the neural canal through a smaller notch in the hinder margin of the vertebral neural plate. Outside the vertebral column the two roots unite to form the spinal nerve.

*Make out the pectoral plexus arising from the first thirteen spinal nerves ; and the pelvic plexus arising from nerves 25-35.*

## IX. DISSECTION OF THE SENSE ORGANS.

### A. The Nose.

*Dissect out one of the olfactory organs from its capsule ; cut it across transversely about the middle ; wash it, and examine its structure.*

The olfactory organ is a sac, the walls of which are thrown into a large number of transverse folds attached in pairs to a median septum. Each fold is covered by a soft mucous membrane, the surface of which is increased by secondary foldings. The olfactory nerves enter the organ from the dorsal surface, and spread out in the folds.

The great size of the olfactory organ, and of the nerves it receives, is very characteristic of Elasmobranch fishes.

**B. The Eye.**

*Remove one of the eyes by cutting across the eye muscles and the optic nerve. Snip off the remains of the muscles, and divide the eye into an inner and an outer half by cutting all round it equatorially. Place the two halves under water in a dissecting dish.*

The walls of the eye consist of three concentric layers, and within its cavity, near the outer side, is the spherical lens about the size of a pea.

1. The sclerotic, or outermost coat of the eye, is thin and cartilaginous. It invests the whole of the eye except the part covered by the cornea.
2. The cornea is an oval patch on the outer surface of the eye, through which the light enters. It is about half an inch long and a quarter of an inch broad, and is almost flat. It consists of transparent connective tissue, and is continuous at its edges with the sclerotic.
3. The choroid is a black opaque membrane, lying within the sclerotic. It adheres closely to the sclerotic, and is firmly attached to the line of union of sclerotic and cornea. Beyond this line it is continued into the iris, which lies free behind the cornea, and is perforated in its centre by an elongated oval slit, the pupil, through which light passes to the interior of the eye.

The inner surface of the choroid, especially in the inner half of the eye, is covered by a glistening silvery membrane, the tapetum.

4. The retina is a delicate membrane lying on the inner surface of the choroid, and readily separating from it except at the point of entrance of the optic nerve, the blind spot where it adheres firmly, and is continuous with the nerve. The retina is the only part of the eye sensitive to light.

5. The lens is a solid spherical body, suspended in the eye immediately behind the pupil.

The spherical shape of the lens, together with the flatness of the cornea, is very characteristic of aquatic animals.

6. The **falciform process** is an ingrowth of the choroid projecting into the vitreous humor from the blind spot.

### C. The Ear.

The ear consists of a membranous sac, or **vestibule**, filled with fluid, and produced into three curved tubes, the **semicircular canals**, which lie in planes of which each is at right angles to the other two. Each canal opens at both its ends into the vestibule.

The whole sac is lodged within the cartilaginous auditory capsule, which is firmly united with the side of the hinder end of the skull.

*Scrape clean the hinder end of the skull, so as to expose the left auditory capsule fully. Note, on the dorsal surface, the prominent ridges lodging the anterior and posterior vertical semicircular canals, the former running backwards and inwards from the hinder margin of the orbit, and the latter backwards and outwards to the posterior end of the skull. Note also, at the inner side of the point of meeting of the two canals, a hole leading downwards and outwards into a canal, the aquæductus vestibuli.*

*Hold the skull in your left hand and carefully pare away the cartilage with a sharp scalpel until the several parts of the auditory organ are fully exposed. Owing to the transparency of the cartilage, the parts can be seen before they are met with, and the dissection, though requiring care, is not difficult.*

1. The **vestibule** is a laterally compressed sac lying in the lower and inner part of the auditory capsule. It is partially divided into two; contains milky calcareous concretions; and communicates with the dorsal surface of the head by the **aquæductus vestibuli**,

which is a persistent relic of the involution of the dorsal integument from which the ear is developed.

*Pass a seeker down the aquæductus vestibuli into the vestibule.*

2. The **semicircular canals** are three in number. They open at both ends into the vestibule, and each is dilated at one end into an oval **ampulla**, which receives a branch of the auditory nerve.
  - i. The **anterior vertical canal** has its ampulla at the anterior end close to the orbit.
  - ii. The **posterior vertical canal** is the longest of the three, and forms an almost complete circle. Its ampulla is at its posterior and inferior end, on the ventral wall of the skull.
  - iii. The **horizontal canal** lies in the wing-like lateral process of the auditory capsule behind the orbit: its ampulla is at its anterior end, close to that of the anterior vertical canal.
3. The **auditory nerve** enters the auditory capsule on its inner side, and at once divides into branches, which can be traced to the vestibule and to the ampullæ of the semicircular canals.

#### D. The Sensory and Ampullary Canals.

The dog-fish possesses at least two kinds of tegumentary sensory organs. (1) The **sensory canals**, a continuous system, developed along certain lines on the head, the jaws, and down the sides of the body forming the organs of the **lateral line**. These structures are found in almost all fishes. (2) The blind and more or less short **ampullary canals** not found outside the group of Elasmobranchs, and distinguished from the sensory canals by the swellings or ampullæ at their blind ends.

These ampullæ are collected principally into a large mass at the anterior end of the snout, in front of the cranial cavity ;



and two smaller masses at the sides of the head, between the nose and the orbit. From these masses the tubes diverge to their external openings on the dorsal and ventral surfaces of the head. The tubes are filled with a transparent gelatinous matter, which can be squeezed out from their openings.

The function of the two canal systems is not known with certainty, but they are sense organs. The nerves supplying them in the head are the ophthalmic, buccal, and external mandibular branches of the seventh nerve.

*Squeeze the head of a fresh specimen, so as to make the gelatinous matter exude, and so render the openings visible.*

*Remove the skin from the dorsal and ventral surfaces of the head, an operation much facilitated by dipping the head into hot water for a few moments; identify the masses of ampullæ and the nerves in connection with them, and trace the tubes outwards and backwards to their openings. Some of the tubes which run along the dorsal surface of the skull, between the cranium and the orbit, are some inches in length.*

*Cut out a small piece of the mass of ampullæ: put it on a slide in a drop of water: separate the parts with needles: cover, and examine under the microscope. Note the ampullæ, their internal divisions, the nerves supplying them, and the tubes.*

## CHAPTER XIII.

### THE SKELETON OF THE RABBIT. *Lepus cuniculus*.

IN the early stages of development the skeleton of the rabbit consists entirely of cartilage. This primary cartilaginous skeleton agrees in general plan with the skeleton of the dog-fish.

The skeleton of the adult rabbit is made up of bone, together with a small amount of cartilage. The bones are of two chief kinds :

(1) **Cartilage-bones** are so called from their arising in direct relation with the pre-existing cartilage. They make up the greater part of the adult skeleton.

(2) **Membrane-bones** are developed independently of the primary cartilaginous skeleton, and are almost confined to the head. They are to be regarded as dermal bones which have lost their connection with the skin, and become in many cases firmly united with the underlying cartilage and cartilage-bones : they are morphologically equivalent to the bony scales of ' bony ' fishes like the herring.

The **sesamoid bones** form a third class. These are small nodules of bones developed within the tendons of certain of the limb-muscles close to the joints : they modify the action of these muscles by altering the direction in which they pull.

The teeth of the rabbit are cutaneous structures, comparable to the scales or teeth of the dog-fish ; they are, however, in the adult so intimately associated with the bones

of the jaws that they may conveniently be described with the skeleton. The hairs and claws, which are special developments of the epidermis, or surface-layer of the skin, will be described in the next chapter.

The rabbit's skeleton may be divided, like that of the dog-fish, into **axial** and **appendicular** portions, which will be dealt with successively.

The following points in the rabbit's skeleton should be noticed as characteristic of the great majority of mammals, and separating them from lower vertebrates :

Epiphyses are present at the ends of the vertebral centra, as well as at the ends of the long bones of the limbs ; and the successive vertebræ are connected by intervertebral ligaments : the cervical vertebræ are seven in number. The sternum is transversely jointed. In the skull there is a completely ossified occipital ring, with two condyles : the cranial and olfactory cavities are separated by a bony cribriform plate : there is not a distinct para-sphenoid on the under surface of the skull : the lower jaw articulates directly with the squamosal : there are three or four small but distinct auditory ossicles. The teeth form a single but discontinuous row round the margin of each jaw. In the shoulder girdle the coracoid is reduced to a small process of the scapula, and there is no interclavicle. The ankle-joint is situated between the tibia and fibula above, and the proximal tarsal bones below : the fourth and fifth carpalia, and the corresponding tarsalia, fuse to form a single bone in each limb : the preaxial digit, corresponding to the thumb, has two phalanges, while the others have each three. In the rabbit the first digit of the hind limb, corresponding to the great toe in man, is abortive : in those mammals where it is present it has two phalanges like the thumb.

*Examine prepared skeletons and make drawings to scale of the several parts.*

## I. THE AXIAL SKELETON

## A. The Vertebral Column, or 'Backbone.'

This consists of a series of bony rings or *vertebræ*, placed end to end so as to form a tube, which stiffens the back, and lodges and protects the spinal cord. The successive *vertebræ* are movably articulated with each other, and their centra are separated by *intervertebral discs* of fibro-cartilage, except in the sacrum, where a certain number are fused together to support the pelvis.

The *vertebræ* fall readily into five groups, named as follows from before backwards :

- (1) The *cervical* or neck *vertebræ*.
- (2) The *thoracic* or chest *vertebræ*, which bear movably articulated ribs.
- (3) The *lumbar* *vertebræ*, which are the largest of the series, and bear no ribs.
- (4) The *sacral* *vertebræ*, which are fused together and support the pelvis.
- (5) The *caudal* or tail *vertebræ*.

## 1. General characters of a vertebra.

*Examine, as a type, the second lumbar vertebra.*

- a. The vertebra is tubular, the cavity or *neural canal* being traversed during life by the spinal cord.
- b. The *centrum* or *body* is the thickened ventral wall of the tube, forming the floor of the neural canal. It corresponds in position to the notochord of the embryo, which it partially replaces.
- c. The *epiphyses* are two thin plates of bone applied to the ends of the centrum, with which they fuse after the animal is full grown.
- d. The *neural arch* forms the sides and roof of the neural canal, and presents at each end, close to the centrum, a pair of *intervertebral notches* for

the passage of the spinal nerves, the posterior notches being much the deeper.

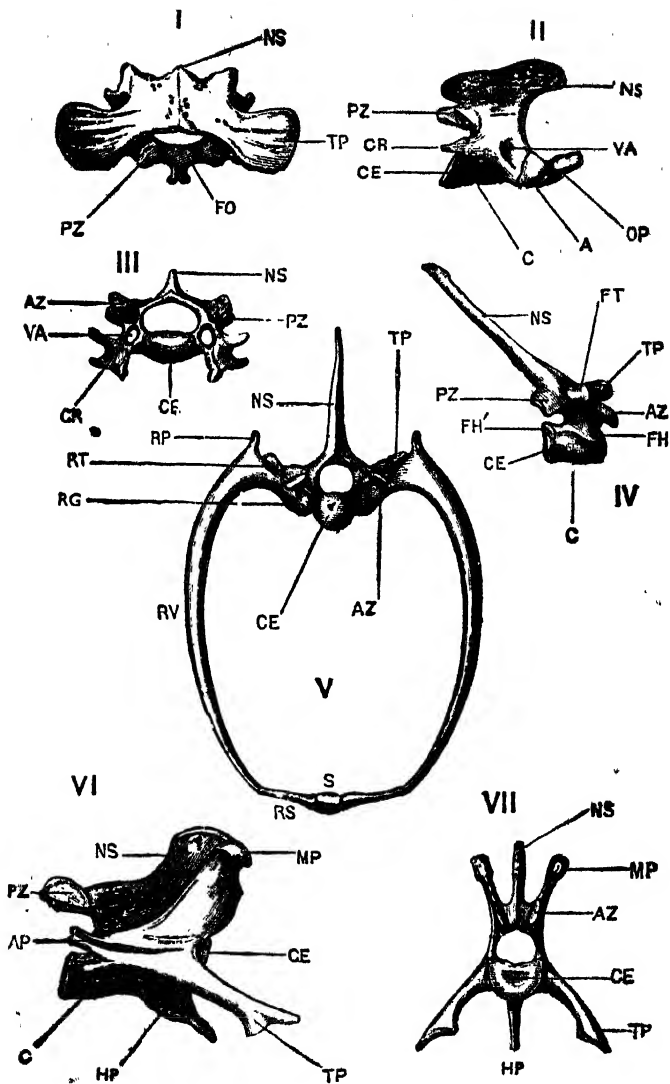
- e. The neural spine or spinous process is a median dorsal crest, projecting upwards and forwards from the top of the neural arch.
- f. The hypapophysis is a median ventral process from the under surface of the centrum, projecting downwards, forwards, and slightly to the right.
- g. The transverse processes are a pair of large flattened processes with expanded ends, projecting forwards, downwards, and outwards from the sides of the centrum.
- h. The zygapophyses or articular processes are borne on the two ends of the neural arch: they articulate with those of the adjacent vertebræ, so as to limit torsion of the vertebral column, and lateral displacement of the contiguous vertebræ.
- i. The pre-zygapophyses, or anterior articular processes, project upwards from the anterior end of the neural arch. The articular surfaces are concave, and turned inwards towards each other: above them the processes extend upwards in this vertebra to form the stout metapophyses.

---

FIG. 60.—*Lepus cuniculus*. Selected vertebræ. (A. M. M.)

I. First cervical vertebra, or atlas, from the dorsal surface. II. Second cervical vertebra, or axis, from the right side. III. Fifth cervical vertebra; anterior surface. IV. Fourth thoracic vertebra, from the right side. V. Fourth thoracic vertebra, and fourth pair of ribs; anterior surface. VI. Second lumbar vertebra, from the right side. VII. Second lumbar vertebra; anterior surface.

A, articular surface for atlas. AP, anapophysis. AZ, anterior or pre-zygapophysis. C, centrum. CE, epiphysis of centrum. CR, cervical rib. FH, facet for capitulum or head of the fourth rib. FH', facet for capitulum of the fifth rib. FO, facet for odontoid process. FT, facet for tuberosity of fourth rib. HP, hypapophysis. MP, metapophysis. NS, neural spine, or spinous process. OP, odontoid process. PZ, post-zygapophysis. RC, capitulum or head of rib. RP, process of rib for attachment of ligaments. RS, sternal portion of rib. RT, tuberosity of rib. RV, vertebral portion of rib. S, sternum. TP, transverse process. VA, vertebral arterial canal.



- ii. The **post-zygapophyses**, or **posterior articular processes**, project backwards from the top of the hinder end of the neural arch. The articular surfaces are slightly convex, and face outwards and downwards.
- iii. The **anapophyses** are a pair of small backwardly directed processes from the hinder end of the neural arch, below the post-zygapophyses and above the intervertebral notches.

## 2. The cervical vertebræ.

These are seven in number in the rabbit, as in almost all other mammals. As a group they are characterised by the shortness of their centra; the small size of their spinous processes; and the fusion of the ribs with the vertebræ to form the perforated transverse processes, through which the vertebral arteries run.

- a. The **first**, or **atlas vertebra**, differs very markedly from all the others: its more important characters are as follows:
  - i. The **neural canal** is very large, and is divided into two parts by a transverse ligament, which is often preserved in the dried skeleton: of these, the upper and larger is the true neural canal, giving passage to the spinal cord; while the lower and smaller one lodges the odontoid process of the second vertebra.
  - ii. The **centrum** is probably represented by the odontoid process, which has become detached from the atlas, and fused with the centrum of the second vertebra. The mid-ventral portion of the atlas is very narrow, and is produced backwards into a short process.
  - iii. The **neural spine** is an inconspicuous ridge, most prominent in front.
  - iv. The **transverse processes** are broad horizontal

lamellæ, consisting of the V-shaped cervical ribs, the space between the articulation of the rib forming the longitudinal **vertebrarterial canals**. In front of each transverse process the canal is continued upwards as a groove to a foramen in the neural arch, through which the vertebral artery enters the neural canal and the first spinal nerve leaves it.

Along the inner and hinder border of each transverse process is a deep groove, corresponding to an intervertebral notch, for the passage of the second spinal nerve.

- v. **The articular surfaces.** The anterior end of the atlas has two very large deeply concave surfaces, for articulation with the condyles of the skull: the posterior end has two much smaller facets for the second vertebra.

**b. The second or axis vertebra.**

- i. **The centrum** is broad and flat, and is produced in front into the conical **odontoid process**, which is probably the centrum of the atlas vertebra. The suture between the odontoid process and the body of the axis is easily seen in young rabbits.
- ii. **The neural spine** forms a large vertical crest, very prominent in front, and bifid behind.
- iii. **The transverse processes** are small backwardly directed spines, perforated at their bases by the **vertebrarterial canals** or rib spaces.
- iv. **The anterior articular surfaces** are large and convex, and situated at the sides of the anterior end of the centrum.
- v. **The post-zygapophyses** project backwards from the hinder edge of the neural arch, their articular surfaces facing downwards and outwards.



- c. The remaining cervical vertebræ : third to seventh.
  - i. The centra are short, broad from side to side, thin from above downwards, and obliquely truncated at the ends. The centrum of the seventh vertebra bears at its posterior end a pair of facets, which form parts of the articular surfaces for the heads of the first pair of thoracic ribs.
  - ii. The neural spines are small, excepting that of the seventh vertebra.
  - iii. The transverse processes are composed of ribs fused with the vertebra. They are perforated at their bases by the vertebrarterial canals : beyond these they divide into dorsal and ventral portions, of which the latter, the inferior lamellæ, form prominent bony plates, except in the seventh vertebra, from which they are absent.
  - iv. The zygapophyses are borne on the sides of the neural arches ; the anterior facing upwards and inwards, the posterior downwards and slightly outwards.

### 3. The thoracic vertebræ.

These are usually twelve, sometimes thirteen, in number, and are characterised by bearing movably articulated ribs. The neural spines are long, especially in front : that of the tenth or anticlinal vertebra is nearly vertical, those in front of it sloping backwards, and those behind forwards. The posterior two or three thoracic vertebræ are larger than the others, and gradually approach the lumbar vertebræ in size and shape.

- a. A typical thoracic vertebra : any one of the first six.
  - i. The centrum is short, and thick from above downwards. On each side in front is a small facet, which, with a similar one on the hinder

edge of the vertebra next in front, forms the articular surface for the head of the rib. At the posterior end are a similar pair of facets for the ribs of the succeeding vertebra.

- ii. The neural arch is notched, both in front and behind, for the passage of the spinal nerves.
- iii. The transverse processes are short, stout, and horizontal, and bear on their under surfaces the articular facets for the tuberosities of the ribs.
- iv. The neural spine is long and slender, and slopes obliquely backwards.
- v. The zygapophyses. The pre-zygapophyses face upwards and inwards, the post-zygapophyses downwards and outwards.

b. The posterior three or four thoracic vertebræ.

- i. The centra are larger than in the anterior thoracic vertebræ: the facet for the head of each rib is confined to the anterior end of the centrum, the posterior end having no articular surface.
- ii. The neural spines are lower than in the anterior vertebræ, but longer from before backwards.
- iii. The transverse processes are placed further back, and have no articular facets for the ribs.
- iv. Metapophyses appear in the ninth thoracic vertebra, and increase considerably in size in the succeeding ones. They are usually confluent with the pre-zygapophyses in all except the ninth thoracic vertebra.

4. The lumbar vertebræ.

These are usually seven in number: the most anterior one may, however, bear ribs, in which case it is reckoned as a thirteenth thoracic vertebra, and the lumbar vertebræ are then reduced to six.

The characters of a typical lumbar vertebra have already been described : as a group they are characterised by their large size, and the great development of their processes, especially the transverse processes. They increase in size from before backwards, the last but one being the largest. The first two have hypapophyses : the last one has a short stout centrum, and a stout crest-like neural spine.

#### 5. The sacral vertebræ.

Strictly speaking, the sacral vertebræ are those of which the expanded ribs directly support the pelvis : and of these the rabbit has only one, or at most two. A certain number of the succeeding vertebræ, which are fused with each other and with the last true sacral vertebra, are, however, commonly included under the same name, the whole fused mass being spoken of as the *sacrum*. Reckoned in this way, the rabbit has three or more sacral vertebræ, the lines of boundary between which can easily be made out in spite of their fusion.

- a. The first sacral vertebra is much the largest, and is produced laterally into a pair of large wing-like expansions which support the pelvis, and are probably modified ribs fused with the vertebra. The neural spine is large and nearly vertical.
- b. The hinder sacral vertebræ are much smaller, and decrease in size from before backwards. Their number is variable, increasing with age through fusion with the anterior caudal vertebræ.

The anterior outer border of the second sacral vertebra just touches the pelvis, but it is doubtful whether any true costal element is present in it.

#### 6. The caudal vertebræ.

These are about sixteen in number : they decrease in size from before backwards, gradually losing all their processes, and ultimately the neural arches as

well, the hindmost vertebræ being reduced to mere rod-like centra.

### B. The Ribs and Sternum.

These form, with the thoracic vertebræ, the skeletal framework of the wall of the thorax, which plays an essential part in the mechanism of respiration, besides protecting the thoracic viscera, and giving origin to some of the extrinsic muscles of the fore-limbs.

1. The ribs are curved bony rods, movably articulated with the vertebræ above, and connected at their lower ends with the sternum. There are in the rabbit twelve, or sometimes thirteen, pairs.

- a. A typical rib, such as the fifth, consists of two portions of very unequal size, joined together almost at right angles.

The vertebral portion, which is the larger part of the rib, is a flattened rod of bone, strongly curved above, nearly straight below. The dorsal end or capitulum articulates with a concave surface, furnished partly by the centrum of the corresponding vertebra, and partly by that of the vertebra next in front. A short way beyond the capitulum, and on the dorsal surface of the rib, is the tuberosity or surface for articulation with the transverse process of the corresponding vertebra; and immediately beyond the tuberosity is a short vertical projection for the attachment of ligaments.

- ii. The sternal portion is a short bar of calcified or imperfectly ossified cartilage, connecting the lower end of the vertebral portion with the sternum.

- b. The ribs in general. The ribs increase in length from the first, which is very short, to the sixth, behind which they diminish. The first nine pairs

of ribs have both capitular and tubercular articulations with the vertebræ : in the remaining three (or four) pairs, which are more slender than the anterior ones, the tuberosities are absent, and the capitular articulations, which alone are present, are confined to the corresponding vertebræ.

The sternal portions of the first seven pairs articulate directly with the sternum : the remaining ones do not reach the sternum, though those of the eighth and ninth pairs are closely connected with the ribs in front of them.

2. The sternum is an elongated laterally compressed median rod, situated in the ventral wall of the thorax, and divided transversely into segments or sternæ. It is developed in connection with the ventral ends of the ribs, and consists at first of right and left halves.

The anterior segment or manubrium is much the largest, and is produced ventrally and in front into a prominent keel.

Behind the manubrium come four segments of about equal length, then a very short segment, and finally the xiphisternum, a long slender bony rod ending behind in a horizontal plate of cartilage.

The first pair of ribs articulate with the sides of the manubrium, and the succeeding six pairs between the several sternæ.

### C. The Skull.

This is made up of cranium proper, olfactory and auditory capsules, and visceral skeleton. The following description applies not only to the skull of the rabbit but (with certain modifications) to that of the dog, which is the better of the two for study because of its larger size. The differences may be understood by reference to the figures and descriptions.

In the adult rabbit, the original cartilaginous skull is almost completely replaced by bones. In addition to these

cartilage-bones, *membrane-bones* are largely developed; and the two groups of bones, though primitively distinct, become intimately and immovably united to form a complex structure, in which the several morphological components, and even the boundaries of individual bones, are difficult to determine, and of which the essential composition can only be ascertained by a study of the embryonic stages.

In the following description the *membrane-bones* are described in connection with the cartilage-bones with which they are most closely associated, and their names are printed in italics. Though it is convenient to deal with the membrane-

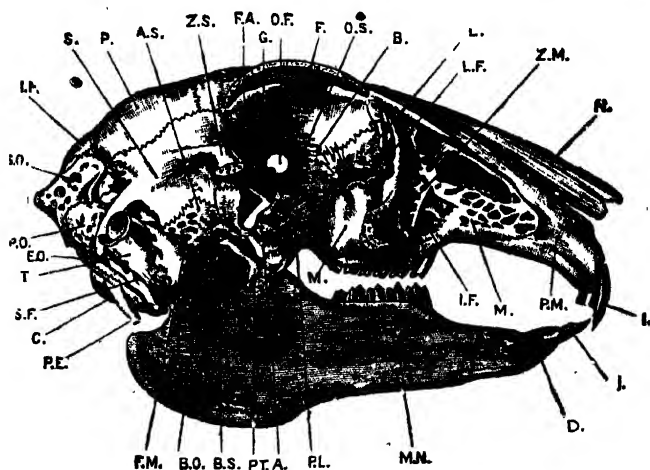


FIG. 61.—*Lepus cuniculus*. The skull from the right side. The middle portion of the zygomatic arch and the right half of the mandible have been removed. (A. M. M.)

A, external pterygoid process of all-sphenoid. AS, all-sphenoid. B, internal orbital foramen. BO, basi-occipital. BS, basi-sphenoid. C, occipital condyle. D, mandibular symphysis. EO, ex-occipital. F, frontal. FA, foramen lacerum anterius. FM, foramen ovale, confluent with the foramen lacerum medium. G, orbital groove, for ophthalmic division of trigeminal nerve. I, anterior upper incisor. IF, infra-orbital foramen. IP, interparietal. J, lower incisor. L, lacrimal bone. LF, lacrimal foramen. M, maxilla. MN, mandible. N, nasal bone. OF, optic foramen. OS, orbito-sphenoid. P, parietal. PE, par-occipital process of ex-occipital. PL, palatine bone. PM, pre-maxilla. PO, periotic. PT, pterygoid. S, squamosal. SF, stylo-mastoid foramen. SO, supra-occipital. T, tympanic bone. ZM, zygomatic process of maxilla, cut short. ZS, zygomatic process of squamosal, cut short.

bones in this way, it must be borne in mind that, inasmuch as they are primitively independent of the cartilaginous skeleton, any attempt to group them according to the divisions of this primary skeleton must be more or less arbitrary.

1. The **cranium proper**, or brain-case, forms the posterior part of the skull, and is situated almost completely behind the orbits, or sockets for the eyeballs. The anterior or facial part of the skull is not in a line with the base of the cranium, but is deflected downwards through an angle of about  $60^{\circ}$ .

The bones of the cranium proper are arranged in a series of **segments** or rings, one in front of the other; of these, the hindmost or **occipital segment** is the most obvious, and is very easily detached from the rest of the skull as a bony ring.

Care must be taken not to compare these segments with *vertebræ*, with which they do not correspond.

- a. The **occipital segment** consists entirely of cartilage-bones, which may fuse together inseparably. It articulates with the first vertebra by means of the **occipital condyles**.
  - i. The **basi-occipital** is a flat median bone, forming the floor of the hinder part of the cranial cavity. It forms the ventral boundary of the foramen magnum, and a small part of each occipital condyle.
  - ii. The **ex-occipitals** bound the foramen magnum laterally, and form the greater part of the condyles. Each is produced at its outer side into a long downwardly directed **par-occipital** (jugular) process, which is closely applied to the posterior surface of the **tympanic bulla**.
  - iii. The **supra-occipital** is a large median bone, which completes the occipital segment above. The whole bone is markedly cancellous, and its outer surface is raised into a prominent

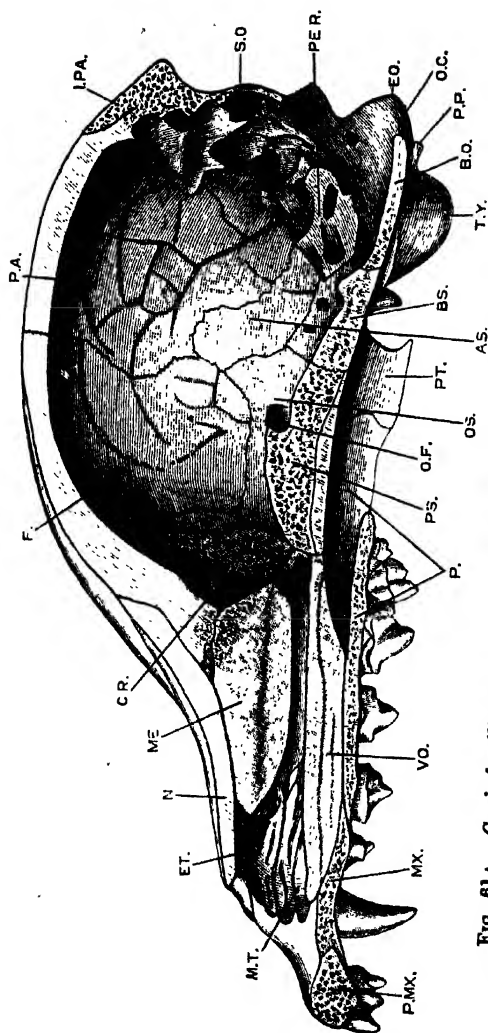


FIG. 61A.—*Canis familiaris*. Longitudinal vertical section of the skull. (After Collinge.)  
 AS, all-sphenoid. BO, basal-sphenoid. BS, basal-sphenoid. CR, cribriform plate. EO, ex-occipital. ET, ethmoidal. F, frontal. IPA, interparietal. ME, mesethmoid. MT, maxillo-turbinal. MX, maxilla. N, nasal. OC, occipital. OF, optic. OS, orbital-sphenoid. P, palatine. PA, parietal. PER, periosteal. PMX, pre-maxilla. PP, par-occipital process. PS, pre-sphenoid. PT, pterygoid. SO, supra-occipital. TY, tympanic bulla. VO, vomere.



shield-shaped elevation, giving attachment to the muscles raising the head.

b. The parietal segment consists of both cartilage-bones and membrane-bones. It is situated in front of the occipital segment, with which it is in contact above and below; while at the sides the two segments are separated by the interposition of the auditory capsules and the squamosal bones.

i. The basi-sphenoid is a median bone placed directly in front of the basi-occipital, with which it is connected by a thin plate of cartilage. Seen from below it is triangular, with the apex directed forwards. On its upper or dorsal surface is a depression, the *sella turcica*: this lodges the pituitary body, and is bounded behind by the large overhanging posterior clinoid process; while its floor remains unossified as the pituitary foramen.

ii. The ali-sphenoids are a pair of wing-like bones ankylosed with the sides of the basi-sphenoid, and forming parts of the floor of the cranial cavity. From the ventral surface of each ali-sphenoid there projects downwards a vertical plate of bone, the external pterygoid process, which is placed nearly transversely to the longitudinal axis of the skull, and is connected along its inner edge with the palatine bone; it is perforated at its base by three foramina, of which the innermost and largest transmits the internal maxillary artery and vein, and the two outer ones transmit branches of the mandibular division of the fifth nerve.

Between the ali-sphenoid and the anterior end of the basi-sphenoid on each side is a large slit-like notch, the *foramen lacerum anterius*

or *sphenoidal fissure*, through which the third, fourth, and sixth nerves, and the first and second divisions of the fifth nerve pass out from the cranial cavity into the orbit.

At the posterior border of each *ali-sphenoid* is a deep notch, the *foramen ovale*, for the passage of the third division of the fifth nerve.

- iii. The *parietals* are a pair of flattened membrane-bones, meeting each other in the mid-dorsal line at the sagittal suture, and forming a great part of the roof of the cranial cavity.

From the posterior and outer angle of each parietal a thin plate runs down on the inner surface of the squamosal, which latter bone separates the parietal from the *ali-sphenoid*.

- iv. The *interparietal* is a small median bone in the roof of the skull, between the parietals and the supra-occipital.

c. The *frontal segment* surrounds the anterior end of the brain: it is placed in front of the parietal segment, with which it articulates closely.

- i. The *pre-sphenoid* is a median laterally compressed bone in front of the *basi-sphenoid*, and connected with it by cartilage. It forms the lower margin of the *optic foramen*, a large aperture through which the optic nerve enters the orbit from the cranial cavity. The two orbits communicate in the dried skull through these foramina. The upper and posterior border of the *pre-sphenoid* is produced backwards into the small *anterior clinoid processes*, which bound the *sella turcica* in front.

- ii. The *orbito-sphenoids* are a pair of lamellar bones, which are fused with the *pre-sphenoid*, the boundary between the two being indistinguishable. They surround the *optic foramen*,

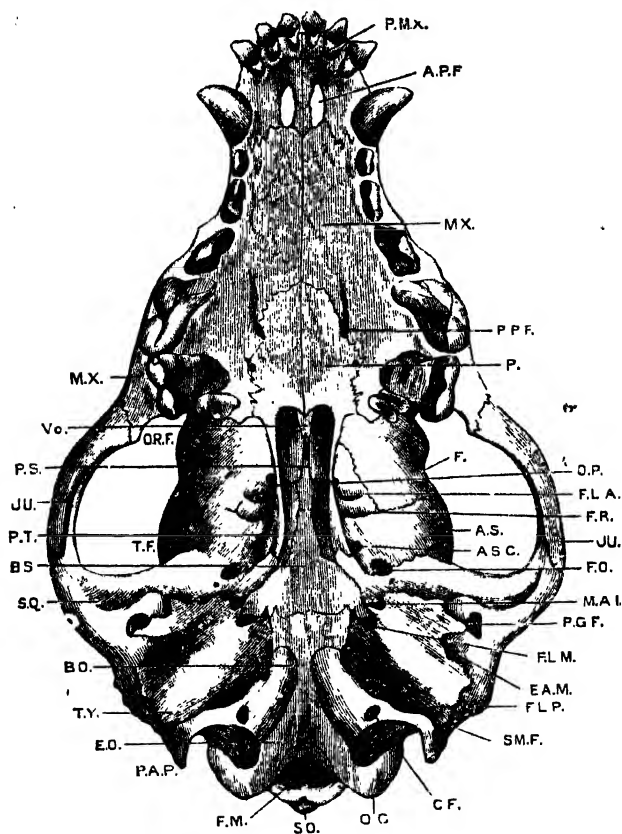


FIG. 61 B.—*Canis familiaris*. Ventral surface of the Skull.  
(After Collinge.)

APF, anterior palatine foramen. AS, all-sphenoid. ASC, all-sphenoid canal, posterior opening. BO, basal-occipital. BS, basi-sphenoid. CF, condylar foramen. EAM, external auditory meatus. EO, ex-occipital. F, frontal. FLA, foramen lacerum anterius. FLM, foramen lacerum medium. FLP, foramen lacerum posterius. FM, foramen magnum. FO, foramen ovale. FR, foramen rotundum. JU, jugal. MAI, meatus auditorius internus. MX, maxilla. OC, occipital condyle. OP, optio foramen. ORF, orbital fossa. P, palatine. PAP, par-occipital process. PGF, post-glenoid foramen. PS, pro-sphenoid. PT, pterygoid. PMX, pre-maxilla. SMF, stylomastoid foramen. SO, supra-occipital. SQ, squamosal. TF, temporal fossa. TY, tympanic. VO, vomer.

behind which they form part of the wall of the cranium and of the orbits, uniting suturally with the ali-sphenoids and with the frontals and squamosals. In front of the optic foramen the orbito-sphenoids are continued forwards as a pair of vertical laminæ, diverging from each other at an acute angle, and forming parts of the inner walls of the orbits.

- iii. The *frontals* are a pair of large membrane-bones completing the frontal segment. They unite suturally with each other in the mid-dorsal line, with the parietals behind and with the orbito-sphenoids below.

The frontals form the roof and sides of the anterior part of the cranial cavity, and meet each other on its floor in front: they extend forwards into the region of the nose. The outer surface of each frontal forms the upper part of the wall of the orbit, and bears a prominent crescentic *supra-orbital process*, in front of which it sends forwards a slender process between the maxilla and premaxilla.

- d. The *ethmoidal region* lies entirely in front of the cranial cavity, and is in close relation with the olfactory organs.

- i. The *mesethmoid* is a median vertical plate of cartilage, which extends forwards and downwards in front of the pre-sphenoid as the *nasal septum* separating the right and left olfactory cavities from each other.

Its upper and posterior border is ossified and expanded laterally into the *cribriform plate*, which is placed obliquely across the anterior end of the cranial cavity, in the plane of the base of the skull, and is perforated by a number of holes through which the olfactory nerves pass from the brain to the nose. "

2. **The sense-capsules.** Each of the organs of special sense has in the embryo rabbit, as in the dog-fish, a protecting investment of cartilage or strong connective tissue. In the case of the olfactory and auditory organs these capsules are closely connected with the cranium, and in the adult are more or less extensively ossified. Membrane-bones are also developed in immediate relation with the sense-capsules, and may conveniently be considered with them.

a. **Bones in relation with the olfactory capsules.** The olfactory capsules are very large in the rabbit, and occupy a great part of the facial portion of the skull. They are so closely connected with the ethmoidal region and with the upper jaw that certain of the bones may be referred, with equal propriety, to either of these divisions.

- i. The *nasals* are a pair of elongated membrane-bones, forming the roof of the nasal cavities. They unite suturally with the frontals behind, and with each other in the median plane.
- ii. The *ethmo-turbinals* are intricately folded laminæ of bone, fused to the lower surface of the cribriform plate of the ethmoid, and occupying the upper and posterior part of each nasal cavity.
- iii. The *maxillo-turbinals* are a pair of somewhat similar, but more delicate and more complex bones, lying in the interior portion of the nasal cavities, in front of the ethmo-turbinals.
- iv. The *naso-turbinals* are a pair of thin laminæ of bone, folded to form pouches, and fused with the under surfaces of the nasal bones.
- v. The *vomers* are a pair of slender blade-like bones, fused with each other along their ventral margins, and embracing the lower edge of the mesethmoid cartilage. Behind they are

expanded laterally, and connected with the ethmo-turbinals.

**b. Bones in relation with the optic capsules.**

The *lacrimals* are a pair of small lamellar bones forming part of the anterior walls of the orbits, and loosely wedged in between the frontals and the maxillæ. Each is notched at its outer border for the passage of the lacrimal duct, which is supported by a process of this bone that extends forwards into the nose.

The lacrimals correspond to the most anterior of a series of small bones bordering the orbits in bony fishes.

**c. Bones in relation with the auditory capsules (cf. fig. 66, p. 384).**

i. The *periotics* are the bones which replace the cartilaginous capsules enclosing the organs of hearing in the embryo. Each ossifies from three centres: but the several bones—*pro-otic*, *epiotic*, *opisthotic*—early unite to form an irregular mass, which fits loosely into the side-wall of the cranium, between the occipital segment and the squamosal and which readily falls out from the dried skull.

In each periotic there may be distinguished a dense *petrous portion*, enclosing the essential part of the organ of hearing; and a porous *mastoid portion*, which forms its outer and posterior part, and is produced downwards into the *mastoid process*, lying immediately in front of the par-occipital process of the *ex-occipital* bone.

On the inner surface of each periotic, as seen in a bisected skull, there are two depressions. Of these the upper and larger one, the *floccular fossa*, lodges the floccular lobe of

fossa on the outer surface of the periotic bone, just above the fenestra ovalis.

The narrow end or stalk of the incus projects downwards: its tip is bent inwards, and has attached to it a very small bony disc, the *os orbiculare*.

γ. The *stapes* is a very small stirrup-shaped bone, articulating by its arch with the *os orbiculare*, and attached by its basal plate to the membrane closing the fenestra ovalis.

3. The jaws. The cartilaginous maxillary and mandibular arches of the embryo, corresponding to the upper and lower jaws of the dog-fish, disappear almost completely during development; the jaws of the adult rabbit consisting of membrane-bones developed around and in front of these arches.

a. Bones in relation with the maxillary arch. These are very closely connected with the cranium and with the olfactory capsules.

i. The *pterygoids* are a pair of narrow vertical plates of bone, attached to the base of the skull at the junction of the basi-sphenoid with the ali-sphenoids. The posterior border of each pterygoid is free, and ends below in the curved *hamular process*, while the anterior border unites with the palatine and ali-sphenoid. On the outer side of the pterygoid, between it and the external pterygoid process of the ali-sphenoid, is the triangular *pterygoid fossa*.

ii. The *palatines* are a pair of nearly vertical plates of bone, attached above to the ventral border of the pre-sphenoid, and behind to the pterygoids and ali-sphenoids, thus completing the anterior boundaries of the pterygoid fossæ. They form the side-walls of the posterior nasal passage, which they separate from the

orbits. In front they are produced inwards into the horizontal palatal processes, which meet each other in the median plane in the roof of the mouth, opposite the grinding teeth, forming the posterior third of the bridge of bone supporting the hard palate.

- iii. The *maxillæ* are a pair of large irregular bones forming a large part of the skeleton of the upper jaw and of the face.

The body, or alveolar portion, of each maxilla projects into the front part of the orbit, and is excavated by the alveoli or sockets for the grinding teeth. Its inner surface is covered by the palatine behind; and in front is produced inwards into the horizontal palatal process, which meets its fellow in the median plane, and forms the anterior part of the bony bridge supporting the hard palate.

From the outer side of the body arises the stout zygomatic process, which is prolonged upwards into the orbital process, forming the anterior boundary of the orbit. In front, the maxilla is prolonged into the large fenestrated facial plate, which forms the lateral boundary of the olfactory chamber, and is perforated just above the first grinding tooth by the infra-orbital foramen, for the passage of the maxillary division of the trigeminal nerve.

- iv. The *premaxillæ* are a pair of bones forming the anterior part of the upper jaw, and lodging the incisor teeth: they articulate with the *maxillæ* behind, and with each other in the median plane in front.

The upper and posterior angle of each premaxilla is produced backwards into a



fossa on the outer surface of the periotic bone, just above the fenestra ovalis.

The narrow end or stalk of the incus projects downwards: its tip is bent inwards, and has attached to it a very small bony disc, the *os orbiculare*.

γ. The *stapes* is a very small stirrup-shaped bone, articulating by its arch with the *os orbiculare*, and attached by its basal plate to the membrane closing the fenestra ovalis.

3. The *jaws*. The cartilaginous maxillary and mandibular arches of the embryo, corresponding to the upper and lower jaws of the dog-fish, disappear almost completely during development; the jaws of the adult rabbit consisting of membrane-bones developed around and in front of these arches.

a. *Bones in relation with the maxillary arch*. These are very closely connected with the cranium and with the olfactory capsules.

i. The *pterygoids* are a pair of narrow vertical plates of bone, attached to the base of the skull at the junction of the basi-sphenoid with the ali-sphenoids. The posterior border of each pterygoid is free, and ends below in the curved *hamular process*, while the anterior border unites with the palatine and ali-sphenoid. On the outer side of the pterygoid, between it and the external pterygoid process of the ali-sphenoid, is the triangular *pterygoid fossa*.

ii. The *palatines* are a pair of nearly vertical plates of bone, attached above to the ventral border of the pre-sphenoid, and behind to the pterygoids and ali-sphenoids, thus completing the anterior boundaries of the pterygoid fossæ. They form the side-walls of the posterior narial passage, which they separate from the

orbits. In front they are produced inwards into the horizontal palatal processes, which meet each other in the median plane in the roof of the mouth, opposite the grinding teeth, forming the posterior third of the bridge of bone supporting the hard palate.

- iii. The *maxillæ* are a pair of large irregular bones forming a large part of the skeleton of the upper jaw and of the face.

The body, or alveolar portion, of each maxilla projects into the front part of the orbit, and is excavated by the alveoli or sockets for the grinding teeth. Its inner surface is covered by the palatine behind; and in front is produced inwards into the horizontal palatal process, which meets its fellow in the median plane, and forms the anterior part of the bony bridge supporting the hard palate.

From the outer side of the body arises the stout zygomatic process, which is prolonged upwards into the orbital process, forming the anterior boundary of the orbit. In front, the maxilla is prolonged into the large fenestrated facial plate, which forms the lateral boundary of the olfactory chamber, and is perforated just above the first grinding tooth by the infra-orbital foramen, for the passage of the maxillary division of the trigeminal nerve.

- iv. The *premaxillæ* are a pair of bones forming the anterior part of the upper jaw, and lodging the incisor teeth: they articulate with the *maxillæ* behind, and with each other in the median plane in front.

The upper and posterior angle of each premaxilla is produced backwards into a

long **nasal process**, which lies along the outer border of the nasal bone, and above the maxilla and the anterior process of the frontal.

On the under surface of the skull, bounded laterally by the premaxillæ and maxillæ, and behind by the hard palate, is a large triangular aperture, divided longitudinally into the slit-like **anterior palatine foramina** by the palatal processes of the premaxillæ, a pair of thin longitudinally rolled laminæ attached in front to the premaxillæ, and enclosing the organs of unknown function known as Jacobson's organs.

- v. The *jugals* or *malars* are a pair of laterally compressed bars forming the greater part of the length of the **zygomatic arches**, which bound the orbits below. Their anterior ends are fused with the zygomatic processes of the maxillæ, and posteriorly they articulate along their dorsal edges with the squamosals.

**b. Bones in relation with the mandibular arch.**

The uppermost part of the mandibular arch is said to give rise to the **malleus**, which has already been described in connection with the auditory capsule (p. 315).

- i. The *squamosals* are a pair of slightly curved bony plates, which complete the side-walls of the cranial cavity, lying in front of the periotics, and articulating with the parietals, frontals, orbito-sphenoids, and ali-sphenoids.

From the hinder border of each squamosal a slender **post-tympanic process** arches backwards over the external auditory meatus, lying along the outer surface of the periotic.

From the outer surface of the squamosal arises a stout **zygomatic process**, which bears

on its under surface the articular facet for the mandible: beyond the facet it bends downwards, to articulate by an expanded end with the jugal bone, and so complete the zygomatic arch.

- ii. The *mandible*, or lower jaw, consists of a pair of somewhat triangular plates of bone, suturedly united in front, and articulating by their posterior and upper angles with the zygomatic processes of the squamosals.

The anterior portion of each half or *ramus* is stout: it lodges an incisor tooth in front, and further back, on its upper margin, the grinding teeth. The hinder part of the ramus is much thinner: its postero-inferior border, or *angle*, is rounded, and inflected along its margin; its posterior border, above the angle, is deeply notched; its upper border is thickened to form the longitudinally elongated condyle, which articulates with the squamosal in such a way as to allow free movement of the jaw backwards and forwards, but very restricted movement from side to side: its anterior border is deeply grooved, the outer lip or coronoid process being inflected.

On the inner surface of each ramus, just behind the grinding teeth, is the *inferior dental foramen*, through which the mandibular nerve enters to supply the teeth.

4. The *hyoid bone* lies in the floor of the hinder part of the mouth, between the rami of the mandible.

It consists of a median body, and two pairs of backwardly projecting cornua, of which the posterior are the larger.

The anterior cornua are the ventral ends of the hyoidean arches, the dorsal end of each of which has aborted. The middle piece has separated off as a

small bone (**stylo-hyal**) attached to the par-occipital process. The posterior cornua are the lower ends, and only persistent parts, of the first pair of branchial arches.

#### 5. Apertures on the surface of the skull.

After the several bones have been examined, the positions of the more important foramina should be determined, most of which have already been seen. Except when otherwise stated, the several apertures are paired.

##### a. Foramina for the passage of cranial nerves.

- i. The optic foramen is a large round median hole in the orbito-sphenoids: it transmits the optic nerves, and in the dry skull puts the two orbits in communication with the cranial cavity and with each other.
- ii. The foramen lacerum anterius, or sphenoidal fissure, is a vertical slit below and behind the optic foramen, and between the basi-sphenoid and ali-sphenoid. Through it the third, fourth, and sixth nerves, and the ophthalmic and maxillary divisions of the fifth, enter the orbit from the cranial cavity. In most mammals the maxillary division of the fifth nerve leaves the skull by a separate aperture, the foramen rotundum, which in the rabbit is confluent with the sphenoidal fissure.
- iii. The internal orbital foramen perforates the inner wall of the orbit, about a quarter of an inch in front of the optic foramen, and at the anterior end of a groove which curves back over the optic foramen towards the sphenoidal fissure. Through it the nasal branch of the ophthalmic division of the fifth nerve passes from the orbit into the cranial cavity, which it enters just behind the lower edge of the cribriform plate.

- iv. The **infra-orbital foramen** is on the side of the face, in front of the zygomatic process of the maxilla: it transmits the **infra-orbital branch** of the maxillary division of the fifth nerve from the orbit to the face.
- v. The **anterior palatine foramen** or **foramen incisivum** is a large slit-like aperture, extending from the bony bridge of the palate almost to the incisor teeth, and imperfectly separated from its fellow by the palatal processes of the premaxillæ. Through it pass the **naso-palatine branch** of the maxillary division of the fifth nerve and the **naso-palatine canal**.
- vi. The **posterior palatine foramen** is a small hole in the bony palate, at the junction of its maxillary and palatine portions: it transmits the **anterior palatine branch** of the maxillary division of the fifth nerve, and the blood-vessels of the palate.
- vii. The **foramen lacerum medium** is an irregular aperture on the under surface of the skull, between the ali-sphenoid and the periotic, just in front of the tympanic bulla. Its anterior part, which represents the separate **foramen ovale** of other mammals, transmits the **mandibular division** of the fifth nerve.
- viii. The **stylomastoid foramen** is a small aperture about the middle of the posterior border of the tympanic bone, between it and the mastoid process of the periotic. Through it the main trunk of the **seventh, or facial, nerve** leaves the skull.
- ix. The **foramen lacerum posterius** is an irregular fissure on the under surface of the hinder end of the skull, between the occipital condyle and the **tympanic bulla**. It transmits the

glossopharyngeal, pneumogastric, and spinal accessory nerves, and the internal jugular vein.

- x. The condylar foramina are a couple of holes running obliquely through the ex-occipital, just in front of the condyle. They transmit the two divisions of the hypoglossal nerve, and are best seen through the foramen magnum.

**b. Other important apertures in the skull.**

- i. The anterior narial opening is at the anterior end of the skull, and is bounded by the nasals and the premaxillæ. It is single in the dried skull, but divided in the natural condition by the vertical cartilaginous nasal septum.
- ii. The lacrimal foramen is formed by a deep notch in the outer border of the lacrimal bone, completed in front by the orbital process of the maxilla. It leads into the canal along which the lacrimal duct runs into the nose.
- iii. The pituitary foramen is a median hole, perforating the floor of the pituitary fossa in the centre of the basi-sphenoid: in the natural condition it is closed by membrane.
- iv. The carotid foramen perforates the ventral surface of the tympanic bone near its inner border, close to the occipital condyle: through it the internal carotid artery enters the skull.
- v. The opening of the Eustachian canal is on the under surface of the skull, at the anterior and inner angle of the tympanic bone, immediately behind and to the inner side of the foramen lacerum medium: through it the Eustachian tube passes from the tympanic cavity to the posterior narial chamber.
- vi. The external auditory aperture is the large upwardly directed opening of the neck of the

tympanic bone, round the edge of which the cartilage of the external ear is attached.

- vii. The foramen magnum is the large median hole at the hinder end of the skull, surrounded by the bones of the occipital segment. It is traversed by the central nervous system, and marks the boundary between the brain and the spinal cord.

## 6. The teeth.

The teeth are cutaneous structures developed from the mucous membrane of the mouth. They consist of an extremely hard outer layer of **enamel**, which is epidermal in origin; and a central less hard portion of **dentine**, which is developed from the dermis. The dentine mass is hollow, its cavity containing the 'pulp' of the tooth, which receives vessels and nerves through the large aperture at its base. Surrounding the lower part of the tooth, and filling up the folds of its surface, is a thin layer of bone, the **cement**.

*These structures should be studied in sections through the head of a fœtal mouse or rabbit.*

It is characteristic of the rabbit, which is herbivorous, that the aperture at the base of each tooth remains wide open, the tooth continuing to grow throughout life; whereas in most mammals the base of the tooth sooner or later becomes narrowed to form a **root** or **fang**, the aperture becoming almost obliterated, and the growth of the tooth ceasing entirely.

The teeth of the rabbit do not form a continuous series, as in man, but the front teeth or **incisors** are separated by a great gap or **diastema** from the group of **grinding teeth** in the hinder part of the mouth. The rabbit has no teeth corresponding to the canine teeth of other mammals.

### a. The teeth of the upper jaw.

- i. The incisors are two pairs of teeth at the front



of the upper jaw, lodged in sockets or *alveoli* in the *premaxillæ*.

- a. The **anterior incisors** are long, and curved almost into semicircles, the greater part of each being lodged in an *alveolus* which extends almost to the hinder end of the bone. Along the anterior surface the enamel is thick, and folded so as to form a longitudinal groove. Behind and at the side it is much thinner, and hence wears away sooner, rendering the cutting edge chisel-shaped.
  - β. The **posterior incisors**, which are lodged in *alveoli* immediately behind the 'anterior ones, are much smaller and slightly curved.
- ii. The **grinding teeth** form a set of six teeth on each side, borne by the maxilla, and fall into two groups.

- a. The **premolars** are the three anterior grinders of each side, and are distinguished from the posterior ones by the fact that, like the incisors, they are preceded in early life by 'milk' or deciduous teeth, which in the rabbit are shed shortly after birth.

Each premolar is flattened from before backwards, and each of the two hinder ones has a deep groove along its outer surface which carries the enamel almost across the tooth, giving rise to a prominent ridge on the grinding surface.

- β. The **molars** are the three posterior grinders on each side: they differ from the premolars, in having no deciduous predecessors. The first two are similar to the premolars; the last is small and not grooved.

**b. The teeth of the lower jaw.**

- i. The incisors are two in number, and project forwards from the anterior end of the mandible. They are similar to the large upper incisors, but are less strongly curved and are not grooved: the alveoli in which they are lodged extend back in the jaw as far as the anterior grinders.
- ii. The grinding teeth form a set of five on each side, placed opposite those of the upper jaw, and like these are divisible into two groups. They differ from the upper grinders in being curved so as to be convex instead of concave outwards.

"

- a. The premolars are the two anterior grinders on each side. They are somewhat similar to the upper ones, but narrower from side to side. The outer surface of the first, which is the larger of the two, is marked by two deep longitudinal grooves, and that of the second by a single groove. The inner surface of each is less deeply grooved than the outer.
- β. The molars are the three hinder grinders on each side: they are similar to the second premolars, but have no deciduous predecessors: the hindmost one is smaller and simpler than the other two.

**II. THE APPENDICULAR SKELETON.**

The appendicular skeleton comprises the bones of the two pairs of limbs, and the girdles which support them. The bones of the limbs are mostly elongated, and provided with epiphyses at their ends.

**A. The Pectoral Girdle.**

This lies outside the ribs, and is attached to the axial

skeleton by muscles and ligaments only. In the rabbit, as in nearly all other mammals, it is very incomplete: the dorsal or scapular portion on each side is well developed, but the ventral or coracoid portion is almost entirely absent, being represented merely by a small knob of bone fused with the scapula; the clavicles also are imperfect.

- i. The **scapula** is a triangular plate of bone, of which the apex is directed downwards and forwards, and is expanded and hollowed on its ventral surface to form the shallow **glenoid cavity**, with which the head of the humerus articulates.

Of the three borders, the anterior or **coracoid border** is nearly straight; the posterior or **glenoid** is slightly concave; and the dorsal or **suprascapular**, which is the shortest of the three, is convex and supports the cartilaginous **suprascapular**.

The **spine** is a prominent ridge running along the outer surface of the scapula, nearly parallel to and a short distance behind the coracoid border. It is continued ventrally into a free downwardly directed process, the **acromion**, from the posterior border of which the long **metacromion** projects backwards.

The coracoid border is continuous below with the **coracoid process**, which overhangs the glenoid cavity, and is produced inwards into a blunt hook. This is a distinct bone in the young rabbit, and is the sole representative of the coracoid portion of the pectoral girdle.

- ii. The **clavicle** is a slender curved cartilage-bone, rather less than an inch in length, and is attached to a ligament running from the scapula to the sternum.

Small cartilaginous nodules occur, one at the outer and two at the inner end of the clavicle.

### B. The Fore-limb.

The fore-limb of the rabbit corresponds to the upper limb of man, and may be divided, like this, into arm, forearm, wrist, and hand. The relative positions of these several divisions are considerably altered from the primitive condition, and are best understood by comparing them with the human arm in the following manner :

Extend your right arm horizontally outwards from the shoulder, with the palm of the hand vertical and the thumb upwards : there may now be distinguished a ventral or flexor surface ; a dorsal or extensor surface ; a preaxial border, along which are the thumb and the radius ; and a postaxial border, along which are the little finger and the ulna.

Next bend the elbow at right angles, so that the fingers point forwards, and bring the whole arm down to the side, rotating it through  $90^{\circ}$ , so that the preaxial border becomes the outer and the postaxial border the inner one. Now pronate the hand, turning it through  $180^{\circ}$ , so that the thumb is brought to the inner side, and the palm directed downwards. Place the rabbit's skeleton in front of you, with the vertebral column vertical, the head directed upwards, and the limbs pointing away from you, and the right fore-limb will correspond in position to your own right arm. Note that the preaxial border is on the outer side in the arm, and on the inner side in the hand, while in the forearm the two bones cross each other obliquely. The hand in the rabbit is fixed permanently in the prone position—that is, with the palm turned downwards.

#### 1. The arm contains only a single bone.

The humerus is an elongated bone, articulating by its enlarged proximal head with the glenoid cavity of the scapula, and at its distal end, by the trochlea, with the bones of the forearm.

At the proximal end of the bone, in front of the head, is the longitudinal bicipital

groove, for the tendon of the biceps muscle : this is bounded on its inner side by the *lesser tuberosity* ; and on its outer side by the *greater tuberosity*, a large roughened projection continued as a ridge down the anterior surface of the bone as far as its middle.

The *trochlea* at the distal end of the bone is an oblique pulley-like surface, divided in front by a ridge, and articulating with the radius and ulna to form the elbow-joint. Immediately above the *trochlea*, in front and behind, are the *supra-trochlear fossae*, which communicate with each other through the *supra-trochlear foramen* : the posterior or *olecranon fossa* is much the larger of the two, and lodges the *olecranon process* of the ulna when the arm is extended.

2. The forearm contains two bones, of about equal size, immovably articulated, though not ankylosed, with each other.

- i. The *radius*, or preaxial bone, lies in front of the ulna at the proximal end of the forearm, but in the distal half lies along its inner or preaxial side.

It is an elongated bone, slightly convex forwards. Its proximal end or head articulates with both grooves of the *trochlea* of the humerus, and also with the anterior surface of the ulna ; its distal and larger end articulates with the bones of the wrist.

- ii. The *ulna*, or postaxial bone of the forearm, has a greatly enlarged proximal end, on the anterior surface of which are the *sigmoid notch* for articulation with the *trochlea*, and also two small articular surfaces for the radius. Behind the elbow-joint, the bone forms the large laterally compressed *olecranon process*.

The distal end of the ulna is small, and articulates with the carpus.

3. The wrist. In the rabbit the wrist or carpus consists of nine small bones, of which one, the pisiform, is commonly regarded as a sesamoid bone or ossification in the tendon of a muscle, but by some anatomists is considered to be a vestige of a sixth digit. The arrangement of the remaining eight can best be understood by comparison with more primitive types.

The typical carpus consists of nine bones, arranged in a proximal row of three, articulating with the radius and ulna; a distal row of five, each of which supports one of the digits; and a central bone wedged in between the proximal and distal rows. In the rabbit the arrangement is as follows:

- a. The proximal row of carpals consists of the three typical bones.

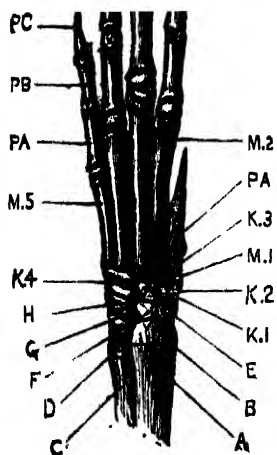
- i. The radiale, or scaphoid, is on the inner or pre-axial side, and articulates with the radius.
- ii. The intermedium, lunar, or semilunar, is the middle bone of the three, and articulates with the radius.
- iii. The ulnare, or cuneiform, is the outer or post-axial bone of the proximal row, and articulates with the ulna.

- b. The central bone.

The centrale is a small bone, articulating with the distal surfaces of the intermedium and radiale, and appearing to belong to the distal row of carpals.

- c. The distal row of carpals consists of four bones, the two outermost of the typical carpus having fused to form a single bone.

- i. The first carpal, or trapezium, is on the inner or



-M.2

-M.J

preaxial side of the wrist: it articulates with the radiale, and supports the first metacarpal.

ii. The second carpal, or trapezoid, articulates with the radiale and centrale, and supports the second metacarpal.

iii. The third carpal, or os magnum, is very small: it articulates with the intermedium, the centrale, and the third metacarpal.

iv. The fourth and fifth carpalia are fused to form the unciform bone, which is much larger: it articulates with the ulnare, and supports the fourth and fifth metacarpals.

d. The pisiform is a small bone on the posterior or flexor surface of the carpus, and articulates with the distal end of the ulna and with the ulnare.

4. The hand (manus) in the rabbit has five digits, as in man: the bones of each consist of a proximal metacarpal, followed by the phalanges, the last of which, the ungual phalanx, is conical and slightly curved, and supports the claw.

The pollex, or preaxial digit, corresponding to the thumb in man, is much shorter than the others, and has only two phalanges, while each of the other digits has three.

Sesamoid bones are developed in the tendons

FIG. 62.—*Lepus cuniculus*. Skeleton of the left hand, extensor surface. The pisiform bone is not seen in this view. Natural size. (C. H. H.)

A, radius. B, epiphysis of radius. C, ulna. D, epiphysis of ulna. E, radiale. F, intermedium. G, ulnare. H, centrale. K. 1, K. 2, K. 3, first three carpalia. K. 4, unciform bone. M. 1, M. 2, M. 5, first, second, and fifth metacarpals. PA, proximal phalanges of first and fifth digits. PB, PC, middle and ungual phalanges of fifth digit. T, claw.

FIG. 63.—*Lepus cuniculus*. Skeleton of the left foot, extensor surface. Natural size. (C. H. H.)

E, astragalus. G, calcaneum. H, naviculare. K, process representing first tarsale. K. 2, K. 3, second and third tarsalia. K. 4, cuboid. M. 1, M. 2, first (rudimentary) and second metatarsals fused together. M. 5, fifth metatarsal. PA, PC, proximal and ungual phalanges of second toe. T, claw enclosing ungual phalanx of fifth toe.



of the flexor muscles, opposite the metacarpophalangeal and certain other joints.

### C. The Pelvic Girdle.

The pelvic girdle, which supports the hind-limb, consists of two halves, which, though primitively nearly at right angles to the vertebral column, are in the adult rabbit almost parallel to it. They are firmly attached to the sacrum in front, and to each other in the ventral symphysis behind.

Each half, or *os innominatum*, consists of three bones—ilium, ischium, and pubis—and presents about the middle of its outer surface a deep cup-shaped acetabular cavity for the femur, in the formation of which all the three bones take part.

- i. The ilium is the anterior and dorsal member of the girdle, corresponding to the scapula in the pectoral girdle. It is expanded and blade-like in front, and narrowed behind. On its inner or sacral surface, a little way in front of the acetabulum, is a roughened crescentic surface for articulation with the sacrum; while its outer surface is divided by a longitudinal ridge into ventral or iliac, and dorsal or gluteal fossae. The ilium forms about half of the acetabulum, the lines of boundary between it and the ischium and pubis being easily seen in the young skeleton.
- ii. The ischium forms the posterior and dorsal portion of the *os innominatum*, and is separated from the pubis by the large oval obturator foramen. It forms about a third of the acetabulum, behind which it bears on its inner surface the sharp, backwardly directed ischial spine. Its posterior part is flattened, the margin being thickened to form the ischial tuberosity, which is raised on its outer surface into a prominent hooked

process. The ischium corresponds to the coracoid in the shoulder-girdle.

- iii. The pubis is the smallest bone of the three. Its acetabular portion ossifies separately in the rabbit, as a small cotyloid bone, completing the margin of the acetabulum below. The pubis unites along its ventral border with its fellow of the opposite side to form the anterior part of the symphysis, the hinder portion of which is formed by the ischium; the line of union between these two bones is visible only in the skeletons of very young rabbits.

#### D. The Hind-limb.

The hind-limb is much larger than the fore-limb, and, like this, is divisible into four main portions.

In the hind-limb the departure from the primitive condition is much less marked than in the fore-limb. The whole limb has rotated forwards through about a right angle, so that the preaxial border is directed inwards, and the postaxial outwards; the original dorsal surface being turned forwards, and the ventral surface backwards.

1. The thigh, like the arm, contains a single bone, the femur. Certain sesamoid bones in connection with the knee-joint may be considered with it.
  - i. The femur is an elongated bone, consisting of a cylindrical shaft and two enlarged extremities.

The proximal end bears on its inner or preaxial side the prominent rounded head, which articulates with the acetabulum to form the hip-joint. To the outer side of the head, and forming the end of the bone, is a large rough process, the great trochanter: between this and the head, on the posterior

surface of the bone, is a deep pit, the trochanteric or digital fossa.

On the inner or preaxial side of the bone, immediately below the head, is a rough ridge, the lesser trochanter; opposite to which on the outer or postaxial side is the prominent third trochanter.

The lower or distal end of the bone bears two large condyles which articulate with the tibia. These are separated from each other by the intercondylar notch, which is continuous with a deep groove on the front of the bone, along which the patella slides.

- ii. The patella, or knee-pan, is a large sesamoid bone in the tendon of the extensor muscles of the leg. It is connected by ligaments with the tibia, and slides in the groove on the front of the lower end of the femur.

At the back of the knee-joint are smaller sesamoids, the fabellæ.

2. The leg contains two bones, which are very unequal in size, and in the adult are fused together distally.

- i. The tibia, or preaxial bone of the leg, is a stout and straight bone, the longest in the body. Its enlarged proximal end, which is triangular in section, bears on its upper end two oval surfaces for articulation with the condyles of the femur. Below the head is the prominent cnemial crest, extending some distance down the anterior surface of the bone.

The distal end of the tibia, which is indistinguishably fused with the lower end of the fibula, bears an articular surface for the astragalus.

- ii. The fibula, or postaxial bone, is very slender: its proximal end is distinct, and articulates

with a facet on the outer surface of the head of the tibia.

Its distal portion is completely fused with the tibia, and bears at its end an articular surface for the calcaneum.

3. The tarsus (fig. 63) consists, in the rabbit, of six bones, arranged, like the bones of the wrist, in a proximal and a distal row, with a central bone between them. The typical tarsus exactly corresponds to the typical carpus in number and arrangement of bones.

a. The proximal row of tarsals consists of two bones.

i. The *astragalus*, which probably corresponds to the *tibiale* and *intermedium* of the typical tarsus fused together, lies on the inner or preaxial side of the tarsus: it articulates by a prominent pulley-like surface with the distal end of the tibia.

ii. The *calcaneum*, or *fibulare*, is the largest bone of the tarsus: it lies along the outer side of the *astragalus*, articulating with the fibula, and is produced backwards into the large *calcaneal process* or *heel*.

b. The central bone.

The *naviculare*, or *centrale*, is placed immediately in front of the *astragalus*. It sends forwards a large process along the ventral surface of the foot.

c. The distal row of tarsals consists of three bones, the innermost or preaxial bone of the typical tarsus being absent, together with the digit which it supports, though probably represented by the process at the proximal end of the second metatarsal; while the two outer tarsalia, like the corresponding carpalia, fuse together.

i. The second tarsale, or *meso-cuneiform*, is very

small: it articulates with the navicular, and supports the second metatarsal.

ii. The third tarsale, or ecto-cuneiform, lies to the outer side of the meso-cuneiform. It articulates with the navicular, and supports the third metatarsal.

iii. The cuboid, formed by the fusion of the fourth and fifth tarsalia, is a much larger bone, on the outer side of the foot: it articulates with the calcaneum and navicular, and supports the fourth and fifth metatarsals.

4. The foot (*pes*) of the rabbit has only four toes, the preaxial digit (*hallux*) of the typical foot, corresponding to the great toe in man, having almost completely disappeared.

Each of the four digits consists of a long metatarsal bone, followed by three phalanges, the last of which bears a claw.

The second (apparent first) metatarsal has at its proximal end a backwardly directed process, which articulates with the navicular: this is a distinct bone in the young rabbit, and probably represents the ecto-cuneiform and the metatarsal of the lost first toe or *hallux* (see fig 63, p. 330).

## CHAPTER XIV.

## DISSECTION OF THE RABBIT.

THE rabbit, rat, or cavy may be taken as a type of the *Mammalia Rodentia*; and the following points should be noted as characteristic of the great majority of the *Mammalia*:

The distinguishing features of the skeleton have been noted in the preceding chapter.

Externally the body is covered with hair; the urino-genital and anal apertures are distinct from each other; and there are large external ears.

As regards the viscera: Mammary glands are present, opening to the exterior on teats placed on the ventral surface of the body. The heart has four chambers: there is a single aortic arch in the adult, formed from the fourth left arch of the embryo: the blood is hot, and the red corpuscles non-nucleated. There is a complete diaphragm; and the lungs, which are not attached to the ribs, are completely surrounded by pleuræ. The ureters open directly into the bladder. In the brain there is a corpus callosum, connecting the hemispheres; and corpora quadrigemina in place of corpora bigemina, i.e., four optic lobes in place of two. The cochlea is coiled spirally.

The ova are extremely small, and are retained within the uterus during almost the whole period of their development. The embryo receives a constant supply of nutriment direct from the mother by means of the placenta, a structure in which the blood-vessels of the embryo and of the mother are brought into very close relation, so that diffusion can readily take place from one to the other.

In the following account the several systems are described one by one, in order that each may be studied in its entirety

as far as practicable, and the mutual relations of its several parts demonstrated. This method is the best, and should be followed whenever possible. If, however, it is intended to perform the whole dissection on a single rabbit, it will be found advisable somewhat to modify the order of proceeding.

*For most purposes, young immature rabbits are best for dissection, but for the examination of the reproductive organs, it is necessary to have specimens six months old. They may be killed by pouring a few drops of solution of cyanide of potassium into the mouth, or else by chloroform, or by coal gas in a lethal chamber. If cyanide is used the mouth must be well washed after death.*

*The brain should be removed at once and put into either strong spirit, if required soon, or still better, into a mixture of equal parts of 1·0 per cent. potassium bichromate and 8·0 per cent. formalin. This hardening fluid should be renewed at least once, and allowed to act for three weeks. Then wash the brain in running water for a day, and keep it in 5·0 per cent. formalin.*

## I. EXTERNAL CHARACTERS.

The whole body is covered with hairs variously coloured ; and is obviously divided into head, neck, trunk, a short tail, and two pairs of limbs.

### A. The Head.

*Note the general form of the head. Determine the position of the mandible, the zygomatic arches, the supra-orbital processes of the frontals, and other parts of the skull by feeling through the skin.*

1. The mouth is a small transverse aperture on the under surface of the front of the head, bounded by the soft hairy lips. The upper lip is divided by a median cleft, which connects the mouth with the nostrils, and leaves the upper incisors exposed.

2. The nostrils are a pair of oblique slits at the end of the hairy snout.

3. The **eyes** are large, and placed at the sides of the head. Each eye is protected by an upper and a lower eyelid, fringed with scanty eyelashes; and by a third eyelid, or nictitating membrane, a hairless fold of opaque white skin, which lies within the other eyelids, and can be pulled across the eyeball from the anterior angle or canthus.
4. The **vibrissæ**, or whiskers, are long stiff tactile hairs, at the side of the snout and above and below the eyes.
5. The **external ears**, or **pinnae**, are very large and freely movable. Each is folded longitudinally, and is supported by cartilage at its base, where it surrounds the external auditory aperture.

#### B. The Trunk.

This is divided into an anterior portion or **thorax**, stiffened laterally by the ribs, and a posterior part or **abdomen**.

*Feel through the skin, and determine the positions of the vertebral column, the ribs, and the sternum.*

1. The **anus** is a small median aperture beneath the base of the tail.
2. The **perinæal pouches** are a pair of hairless depressions of the skin, in front of and at the sides of the anus: into them open the ducts of the **perinæal glands**, the secretion of which has the strong smell characteristic of the rabbit. These glands should be removed at once if the rat is under dissection.
3. The **urino-genital aperture** is situated in both sexes in front of the anus.
  - a. In the **male** the aperture is placed at the end of the long cylindrical **penis**, which can be retracted within a loose sheath of skin, the **prepuce**.
  - b. In the **female** the opening, or **vulva**, is slit-like, and larger than in the male; and its anterior margin is produced into a small fleshy process, the **clitoris**, which corresponds to the penis of the male.



4. The **scrotal sacs**, found in the male only, are a pair of prominent oval pouches of skin, at the sides of the penis, into which the testes descend.
5. The **teats**, or **mammæ**, of the female are four or five pairs of small papillæ, perforated by the openings of the ducts of the **mammary** or **milk glands**. They are arranged at intervals along the ventral surface of the thorax and abdomen: the most anterior pair being about two and a half inches apart and an inch behind the elbow, and the hindmost pair opposite the thighs and rather more than an inch apart.

### C. The Limbs.

1. The **fore-limbs**, as far as the elbows, are closely applied to the sides of the thorax and hidden by the skin of the trunk. The several bones of the shoulder-girdle and limb, which have been already studied in the skeleton, can easily be identified by feeling them through the skin. The palmar surface of the paw is hairy; the innermost digit or pollex is shorter than the others, not reaching the ground. All the digits bear claws.
2. The **hind-limbs** are much longer than the fore-limbs. The pelvic girdle and the several bones of the limb can be felt through the skin. In the foot the innermost digit or hallux is absent, and the remaining four are long and clawed. The plantar surface or sole of the foot is hairy.

## II. THE ABDOMINAL VISCERA.

*Remove the skin from the trunk and limbs. Lay the rabbit on its back, and fasten it down to the dissecting-board by awls through the limbs.*

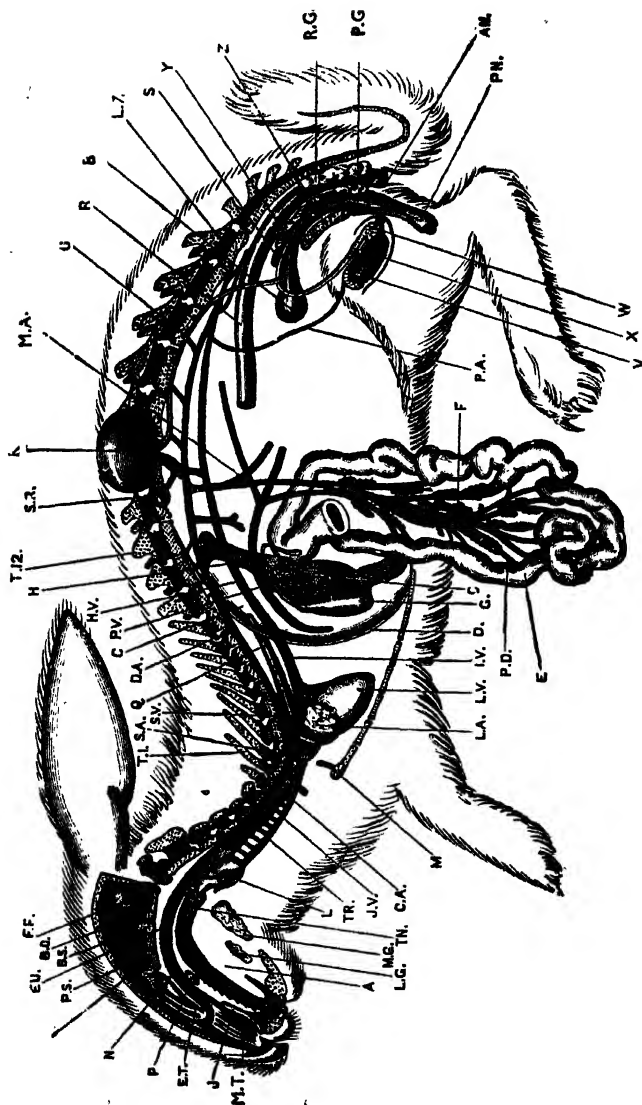
- A. The **mammary glands** in the female lie immediately beneath the skin. They are yellowish, fatty-looking,

dendriform masses, covering the ventral surface of the whole length of the thorax and abdomen ; their ducts may easily be traced, converging to the teats.

### B. The Abdominal Viscera in situ.

*Open the abdominal cavity by a median incision through its ventral wall, from the hinder end of the sternum to the pubic symphysis, taking care not to injure the viscera. From the anterior end of the incision, cut outwards for about two inches on each side, just behind the ribs, and pin out the flaps right and left. Note the positions of the following viscera, without disturbing them :*

1. The liver is a large dark-red body at the anterior end of the abdominal cavity, extending further back on the left side than on the right.
2. The stomach lies immediately behind the liver and is partially covered by it ; its surface is smooth and of a bluish white colour.
3. The duodenum is a narrow pinkish tube, a small part of which is seen to the right of the stomach.
4. The small intestine is a long narrow much-convoluted tube, part of which is seen at the left side of the abdominal cavity, behind the liver.
5. The cæcum is a very wide tube, of a dark colour, coiled on itself and marked by a spiral constriction. In the natural position of the parts it covers almost all the other viscera behind the stomach. On the right side the cæcum ends in the pale fleshy vermiform appendix.
6. The colon is a wide tube, with markedly sacculated walls, running obliquely across the abdomen between the folds of the cæcum.
7. The rectum is a white tube, dilated at intervals by the faecal pellets : small parts of it are seen to the right of the stomach, and at the hinder end of the abdomen.



8. The bladder is a thin-walled sac at the posterior end of the abdomen, just in front of the pubic symphysis.

*Turn the alimentary canal over to the right side, without cutting or tearing anything, to expose the following parts :*

9. The spleen is an elongated, dark-red body lying behind the stomach, and attached to its left or cardiac end.
10. The kidneys are a pair of compact ovoid bodies attached to the dorsal wall of the abdomen; the right one being immediately behind the liver, and the left one about an inch and a half further back. In front of each kidney is a small round yellow adrenal body.
11. The diaphragm is a muscular partition forming the anterior wall of the abdomen, and separating it from the thorax. To see it the liver should be pressed back.
12. The peritoneum is a glistening membrane which lines the abdominal cavity. The mesentery is a double layer of peritoneum, reflected from the dorsal wall of the abdomen, which at its margin supports and encloses the alimentary canal: between its two layers blood vessels, lymphatics, and nerves pass to and from the various organs. The omentum is a special

---

FIG. 64.—*Lepus cuniculus*. Diagrammatic view from the left side. The head and vertebral column are represented in longitudinal section; the lungs, the left half of the liver, the stomach, the greater part of the intestine, and the brain and spinal cord have been removed, and the loop of the duodenum spread out. (A. M. M.)

A, tongue. AN, anus. B, bladder. BO, basi-occipital. BS, basi-sphenoid. C, liver. CA, carotid artery. D, diaphragm. DA, aorta. E, duodenum. ET, ethmo-turbinal. EU, aperture of Eustachian tube. F, pancreas. FF, foveolar fossa. G, gall-bladder. H, bile-duct. HV, opening of hepatic vein into posterior vena cava. IV, posterior vena cava. J, organ of Jacobson. JV, left external jugular vein. K, kidney turned up. L, larynx dissected. LA, left auricle. LG, sublingual gland. LV, left ventricle. L. 7, seventh lumbar vertebra. M, manubrium of the sternum, with the sternal portion of the first rib. MA, anterior mesenteric artery. MG, submaxillary gland. MT, maxillo-turbinal. N, posterior nasal chamber. O, optic foramen. P, hard palate. PA, spermatic artery. PD, pancreatic duct. PG, perineal gland. PN, penis. PS, pre-sphenoid. PV, portal vein. Q, oesophagus. R, hinder part of the rectum. RG, rectal gland. S, uterus masculinus. SA, left subclavian artery. SR, suprarenal body, displaced. SV, left anterior vena cava. TN, right tonsil. TR, trachea. T. 1, first thoracic vertebra. T. 12, twelfth thoracic vertebra. U, ureter. V, testis. W, epididymis. X, vas deferens, Y, prostate. Z, pelvic symphysis.

fold of peritoneum extending backwards from the stomach and loaded with fat.

13. The coeliac and mesenteric ganglia and the nerves connecting them should now be recognised. They lie in the mesentery near the vertebral column (see p. 349).
14. The portal vein and its branches should be identified (p. 357) and drawn.

### III. THE DIGESTIVE SYSTEM.

In this section the abdominal portion of the digestive system will alone be considered; the buccal cavity, pharynx, salivary glands, and œsophagus will be described later.

#### External Characters of the Digestive System.

##### 1. The stomach.

*Expose the stomach fully, by turning the liver forwards, and the intestine over to the animal's left.*

The stomach is much dilated at its left or cardiac end; narrower towards the right or pyloric end; and markedly curved, the concavity being directed forwards. Near the left end of its anterior border is the cardia, or opening of the œsophagus; and from the thick-walled pyloric end a small aperture, the pylorus, leads to the duodenum.

2. The duodenum, or first portion of the intestine, runs from the pylorus along the right side of the abdominal cavity almost to its hinder end: it then turns back on itself, forming a U-shaped loop. In the mesentery connecting the two limbs of the loop are the large duodenal vessels.

##### 3. The pancreas.

*Turn the duodenal loop over to the left side without injuring the mesentery, and spread it out over the other viscera.*

The pancreas is a diffuse fat-like gland, of a pinkish colour, scattered in the mesentery of the duodenal loop. It lies mainly around the large vessels of the loop, and is more compact at its anterior end.

The pancreatic duct commences in front, and runs backwards through the gland, receiving smaller ducts from its several lobes: it opens into the inner side of the distal limb of the duodenal loop, about three inches beyond the bend.

*Open the duodenum, opposite to the entrance of the pancreatic duct; wash out the contents; note the aperture of the duct, and insert a bristle into it.*

4. The liver is a large solid organ, thick in the middle and thinner towards the edges. Its anterior surface is convex and fits against the diaphragm, to which it is attached by a median vertical fold of peritoneum, the suspensory ligament: its posterior surface is concave, and lies against the stomach. The large size of the liver is due to the need for extensive stores of glycogen and to a massive mechanism for regulating the quality of the blood passed along the portal vein.

a. The lobes of the liver.

The liver is divided into five distinct lobes, of which one is grooved for the gall-bladder.

- b. The gall-bladder is an elongated thin-walled sac, rather less than an inch in length, of a dark green or brown colour, and lying in the groove in the posterior surface of the right central lobe of the liver.

- c. The bile-duct is a narrow tube, about two inches long, running backwards from the smaller and dorsal end of the gall-bladder to open into the dorsal surface of the duodenum, about a third of an inch beyond the pylorus. It receives

ducts from the several lobes of the liver, and lies in the mesentery immediately to the right of the large portal vein.

*Open the duodenum opposite the opening of the bile-duct; wash out its contents, and find the aperture of the duct on a small papilla. The bile-duct is most easily traced from the duodenum forwards, and may with advantage be first injected from a point about half an inch from the duodenum.*

*Unravel the coils of the intestine, freeing them from each other by cutting through the mesentery along its line of attachment to the intestine. Leave the duodenal loop and the rectum, with their mesenteries, untouched. Carefully avoid injuring or removing the celiac and mesenteric ganglia and the associated nerves (see p. 349).*

*Lay out the intestine on the dissecting-board, so as to show the relations and proportions of its several parts. Avoid all unnecessary injury to the blood-vessels, and ligature any that bleed.*

5. The small intestine, which is directly continuous with the duodenum, is about seven or eight feet in length, and of uniform diameter throughout.

a. Peyer's patches are slightly thickened oval spots, granular in appearance, and about a third of an inch in diameter, which occur at intervals along the whole length of the small intestine, on the side opposite to the attachment of the mesentery.

b. The **sacculus rotundus** is the dilated distal end of the small intestine, opening into the side of the cæcum about an inch from its proximal ends. Its walls have the structure of Peyer's patches.

6. The cæcum and vermiform appendix.

The cæcum is a large thin-walled diverticulum of the alimentary canal, at the junction of the small intestine and colon. It is about twenty inches long and an inch or more in diameter, and is marked externally by a spiral constriction which runs

twenty to thirty times round it. The small intestine opens into the side of the cæcum about an inch from its proximal end, a large Peyer's patch in the wall of the cæcum being continuous with the sacculus rotundus.

Proximally, the cæcum passes directly into the colon, while distally it ends blindly in the thick-walled finger-like vermiform appendix. This latter is about four inches long, and its walls resemble Peyer's patches in appearance and structure.

In the rabbit the cæcum is of enormous size, as in most herbivorous mammals with simple stomachs.

7. The colon is about a foot and a half in length. The first part of it is very markedly sacculated, the sacculations lying in three longitudinal rows, separated by smooth areas of unequal width. Towards the rectum the walls become smooth.
8. The rectum or terminal portion of the intestine is a narrow tube, about two and a half feet in length, pale in colour, and presenting a moniliform appearance, owing to the contained faecal pellets. At its hinder end it passes through the pelvic cavity to the anus.

NOTE.—Numerous semi-transparent sacs usually occur, attached to the peritoneum in the pelvic and gastric regions. These are the cysts of a Tapeworm, and they develop to maturity in a dog (see p. 47).

### Internal Structure of the Alimentary Canal.

#### 1. The stomach.

*Slit up the stomach along its posterior surface: wash out its contents, and examine it under water.*

The wall of the stomach consists of an outer peritoneal investment; a middle muscular layer, thickened at the pyloric end; and an inner layer of



mucous membrane, which is raised into irregular longitudinal folds. The pyloric orifice is narrowed by a prominent muscular rim.

## 2. The small intestine.

*Cut out a small piece from the wall, and examine its inner surface under water.*

The villi are minute tag-like processes of the mucous membrane, covering its surface, and giving it a velvety appearance.

Peyer's patches present a honeycombed appearance, the depressions being occupied by smooth convex lymph-follicles, and bordered by villi.

## 3. The cæcum.

*Remove the cæcum from the body in a sink, cutting across the small intestine and the colon about an inch from it. Slit it open longitudinally; wash out its contents thoroughly, and examine under water.*

The inner surface is papillose, and raised along the line of the external constriction into a prominent spiral fold a quarter of an inch or more in width. The opening from the sacculus rotundus is small and circular; that into the colon is much larger.

*Cut the vermiform appendix across to see the thickness of its wall; and slit it open to examine its inner surface, which is similar to that of Peyer's patches, but with smaller follicles.*

## 4. The colon.

*Slit open part of the colon; wash; and examine under water, noting the papillose surface and the sacculations of the wall.*

## 5. The rectum.

*Examine a part of the rectum in a similar manner, and note its smooth mucous membrane.*

## IV. THE ABDOMINAL SYMPATHETIC GANGLIA.

These are well seen in a fresh rabbit, especially in lean specimens. There are two main ganglia, one, the *coeliac*, in front of, and one, the *anterior mesenteric*, behind the origin of the anterior mesenteric artery, at the level of the left adrenal body. To see them, spread the viscera over to the left side of the dissection (*right* side of animal). A small additional ganglion occurs in relation to the posterior mesenteric artery.

## V. THE THORACIC VISCERA.

*Open the thorax by a transverse incision just in front of the diaphragm; cut through all the ribs except the first along each side, and remove the ventral wall of the thorax as a triangular piece, taking great care not to injure the vessels and other structures beneath it.*

*Identify and examine the following parts without any further dissection:*

1. The **thymus** is a pale soft glandular-looking body in the anterior part of the thorax. It is very variable in size, being larger in the young animal, and sometimes extending back so as to overlap the heart.
2. The **heart**, enclosed in the thin transparent **pericardium**, lies in the middle of the thorax: it is dark in colour and conical in form; the apex being directed backwards and slightly to the left; and the base, with the roots of the great vessels, forwards.
3. The **lungs** are a pair of pink spongy bodies at the sides of the thorax, and filling the greater part of its cavity. Each lung collapses as soon as the side of the thorax on which it lies is opened.

The lungs lie quite free in the thoracic cavity, except at their roots, where the blood-vessels and bronchi enter them. The left lung is divided into two lobes; and the right into four, of which the smallest and hindmost lie across the median plane

- behind the heart, and closely applied to the **oesophagus**.

4. The **diaphragm** is a thin partition, separating the thoracic cavity from the much larger abdominal cavity. Its marginal portion is muscular, the fibres arising from the inner surface of the hinder ribs and from the vertebral column, and converging to be inserted into the thinner tendinous central portion. The muscular margin is specially developed in the dorsal region, forming two stout **pillars** arising from the lumbar vertebrae.

The diaphragm is arched so as to present a very convex surface towards the thorax: by contraction of its muscular portion, in the act of inspiration, this convexity is diminished and the thoracic cavity thereby enlarged. The small size of the thoracic relatively to the abdominal cavity should be noticed.

5. The **phrenic nerves** are a pair of slender white cords lying between the heart and the lungs, and easily seen on pressing these apart. Posteriorly they divide into branches supplying the muscular portion of the diaphragm (see fig. 65, p. 376).

Their origin from the fourth cervical nerves will be seen in the dissection of the neck (p. 379).

6. The **pleuræ**. Each side of the thorax is lined by a glistening membrane, the **pleura**, which is reflected over the lung at its root in the same way as the peritoneum is reflected over the abdominal viscera. The right and left pleural sacs are separated from each other by the **mediastinal cavity**, the greater part of which is occupied by the heart and pericardium, the posterior part remaining vacant.

During life the lungs are distended so as almost to fill the thoracic cavity, the **visceral layer** of the pleuræ, covering the lungs, being closely applied to the **parietal layer** lining the thorax, so that the pleural cavities are practically obliterated.

Each pleura being an air-tight sac, the lungs follow the movements of the ribs and diaphragm;

so that enlargement of the thoracic cavity causes expansion of the lungs, and hence inspiration.

7. The **oesophagus** is a narrow muscular tube, running through the thorax immediately ventral to the vertebral column, and readily seen on raising the left lung.
8. The **pneumogastric nerves**. At the anterior end of the thorax the pneumogastric nerves lie parallel to the phrenic nerves, and a little nearer the median plane. Further back the pneumogastrics lie dorsal to the heart and to the roots of the lungs, and close to the vertebral column; the left nerve lying on the oesophagus, the right nerve a little to its right side.
  - The nerves are readily seen on turning aside the lungs and heart.
9. The **sympathetic ganglia** lie on each side of the aorta, and are easily seen in a fresh rabbit as slight thickenings of a white thread that runs over the ribs.

## VI. DISSECTION OF THE CIRCULATORY SYSTEM.

### A. The Heart and the Roots of the Great Vessels.

*Remove the thymus and the parietal layer of the pericardium, and carefully clean the base of the heart and the roots of the great vessels, avoiding injury to the nerves.*

1. The **heart**. The ventricular portion of the heart, which forms almost the whole of the exposed ventral surface, is marked by a groove which runs from the base obliquely backwards and to the right, indicating the division into right and left ventricles.

The auricles lie at the base of the heart, on its dorsal aspect, the auricular appendices being the only parts of them visible on the ventral surface.

- a. The **right ventricle** forms the right side of the ventricular portion, but does not reach to the apex. It is soft to the touch.

- b. The left ventricle forms the left side and apex of the heart ; and is firmer than the right ventricle, owing to the greater thickness of its walls.
  - c. The left auricle is anterior to the left ventricle, and is largely concealed by the great vessels. It is produced ventrally into the auricular appendix.
  - d. The right auricle is dorsal to the base of the right ventricle, and is produced in front into the auricular appendix.
2. The roots of the great vessels.
- a. Opening into the right auricle.
    - i. The right anterior vena cava returns blood from the right side of the head, neck, and thorax, and from the right fore-limb. It enters the thorax at its anterior end, and runs back along the inner side of the right lung, to open into the right auricle by an aperture in its dorsal wall.
    - ii. The left anterior vena cava returns blood from the left side of the head, neck, and thorax, and from the left fore-limb. It runs back along the inner side of the left lung, and crosses between the heart and the root of the left lung, to open into the left side of the right auricle.
    - iii. The posterior vena cava returns blood from all parts of the body behind the diaphragm. It enters the thorax through an aperture in the diaphragm and runs forwards, slightly to the right of the median plane, to open into the posterior end of the right auricle.
  - b. Arising from the right ventricle.
    - The pulmonary artery conveys the venous blood from the heart to the lungs. It arises from the anterior border of the right ventricle in

the mid-ventral line, and arches over to the dorsal surface of the left auricle, where it divides into the right and left branches, supplying the two lungs.

**c. Opening into the left auricle.**

The pulmonary veins return the blood from the lungs to the heart. There are two main veins on each side, which converge to open into the dorsal surface of the left auricle.

**d. Arising from the left ventricle.**

The aorta conveys arterial blood from the heart to all parts of the body. It arises from the middle of the base of the heart, dorsal to the root of the pulmonary artery, runs forwards about half an inch, and then arches over to the left side, and runs back along the left side of the vertebral column. Its thoracic portion is readily seen on turning aside the left lung.

The ductus arteriosus is a ligamentous band, connecting the aorta with the pulmonary artery, just before the division of the latter into right and left branches. During embryonic life it forms a tubular connection between the two vessels.

*In cleaning the ductus arteriosus, take care not to injure the left recurrent laryngeal nerve which loops round it (see fig. 65, p. 376).*

**B. The Veins.**

The veins form three distinct systems, communicating with each other only through capillaries, and containing different kinds of blood.

(1) The first of these systems consists of the three venæ cavæ, with the veins opening into them: these bring to the right auricle venous blood from the body generally, and from the liver.

(2) The second or **portal system** collects the blood from the walls of the alimentary canal, and from the pancreas and spleen, and conveys it to the liver.

(3) The third or **pulmonary system** conveys arterial blood from the lungs to the left auricle.

*In dissecting the veins it is convenient to follow them from the larger to the smaller trunks, and they will be described in this order ; it must be remembered, however, that the flow of blood is in the reverse direction. Care must be taken not to cut the veins, especially at the anterior end of the thorax, as the blood obscures the dissection, and the vessels themselves, when empty, are difficult to follow, owing to the thinness of their walls. If by chance a large vein is cut, it must be ligatured immediately, to stop the bleeding.*

*During the dissection of the veins take great care not to damage or remove the arteries or nerves lying near them.*

**1. The system of the venæ cavæ.**

a. The right anterior vena cava has already been seen. It is formed by the union of the jugular and subclavian veins, immediately in front of the first rib.

i. The azygos cardinal vein is a median vein which runs forwards in the mid-dorsal line of the thorax, lying close to the vertebral column and along the right side of the aorta. It receives branches from the posterior seven or eight intercostal spaces of both sides of the body. Opposite the level of the auricles it passes round the right side of the œsophagus and trachea, to open into the vena cava close to the auricle.

ii. The right anterior intercostal vein is a small vein returning blood from the anterior four or five intercostal spaces of the right side, and opening into the vena cava just in front of the azygos vein.

iii. The right internal mammary vein runs forwards on the inner surface of the ventral thoracic wall, near the middle line, and opens into the vena cava opposite the first rib.

iv. The right subclavian vein returns blood from the fore-limb and shoulder.

*In dissecting the next two veins, take great care to avoid injury to the muscles, vessels, and nerves of the neck.*

v. The right external jugular vein is a large vein running along the side of the neck. It is formed in front by the union, just behind the angle of the jaw, of the anterior and posterior facial veins, returning blood from the face and ear.

vi. The right internal jugular vein is a small vein returning blood from the brain, and running down the neck alongside the trachea, to open into the right external jugular vein close to its union with the subclavian.

b. The left anterior vena cava resembles the right, except that it receives no azygos vein, and that its course in the thorax is somewhat different, as already described (p. 352).

c. The posterior vena cava is a large median vein, commencing at the hinder end of the abdomen, and running forwards close to the vertebral column and to the right (or left) of the aorta. In front it leaves the abdominal wall and becomes imbedded in the dorsal surface of the liver, beyond which it enters the thorax through an aperture in the central tendon of the diaphragm, and runs forwards, as already described (p. 352), to open into the right auricle.

The following are the principal veins opening into the posterior vena cava :

*In dissecting these veins, take care not to damage the arteries, which accompany and roughly correspond to them,*



*or the renal and reproductive organs, or the nerves in the mesentery.*

- i. The phrenic veins are small veins in the substance of the diaphragm, opening into the vena cava as it passes through this.
- ii. The hepatic veins are large vessels returning blood from the several lobes of the liver, and opening into the portion of the vena cava imbedded in the liver. There are four chief ones.
- iii. The renal veins are a pair of large veins running inwards from the kidneys to the vena cava, the right and shorter one being about three-quarters of an inch in front of the left.  
Each renal vein receives a small vein from the corresponding adrenal body, and a much larger one from the dorsal wall of the abdomen.
- iv. The spermatic veins in the male [or ovarian veins in the female] are a pair of small veins returning blood from the testes [or ovaries], and opening into the vena cava near the hinder end of the abdomen. The left one frequently opens into the renal vein, or the ilio-lumbar vein.
- v. The ilio-lumbar veins are paired, and return blood from the hinder part of the abdominal walls, opening into the vena cava about the level of the anterior border of the thigh. The left one often receives the spermatic [or ovarian] vein, and opens into the renal vein.
- vi. The external iliac veins are a pair of large veins returning blood from the hind-limbs, and opening into the vena cava at the hinder end of the abdomen, about an inch in front of the pubic symphysis. They receive small veins from the bladder [and in the female from the uterus].

They are direct continuations of the femoral veins, which lie along the inner or preaxial borders of the thighs.

- vii. The internal iliac veins return blood from the backs of the thighs, and, running forwards through the pelvic cavity, unite about half an inch behind the external iliacs to form the hinder end of the posterior vena cava.

- 2. The portal system consists of the veins conveying blood from the whole length of the alimentary canal from the stomach backwards, and also from the pancreas and spleen. These veins lie in the mesentery, and converge to form the main trunk, or portal vein: this lies close alongside the posterior vena cava and, entering the liver, divides into branches supplying its several lobes.

*The portal system is best seen in a freshly killed animal on opening the abdomen and turning the viscera aside. The veins are large and usually gorged with blood, and care must be taken not to injure them, as they bleed very freely.*

The following are the main trunks which unite to form the portal vein.

- i. The lieno-gastric vein returns blood from the walls of the stomach and from the spleen.
- ii. The duodenal vein returns blood from the duodenum and pancreas.
- iii. The anterior mesenteric vein is formed by the union of veins from the whole length of the small intestine, and from the cæcum, the colon, and the greater part of the length of the rectum.
- iv. The posterior mesenteric vein lies in the mesorectum or hindmost part of the mesentery, and returns blood from the terminal portion of the rectum.

3. The **pulmonary system** consists of the pulmonary veins, which have already been described (p. 353).

*In drawing the veins make a large sketch of the head, neck, ribs, and abdomen. Then draw the veins in relation to them and the chief organs. The portal vein had better be drawn separately.*

### C. The Arteries.

The arteries form two distinct systems, of which one, the **aortic system**, conveys arterial blood from the left ventricle to all parts of the body; while the other, or **pulmonary system**, carries venous blood from the right ventricle to the lungs. The arteries are thicker-walled, and hence paler in colour, than the veins.

*The aortic system should be dissected first. Clean the aorta along its whole length, and follow the arteries arising from it to their distribution.*

*During the dissection of the arteries, take great care not to damage or remove the nerves lying near them.*

1. The **aorta** arises from the base of the left ventricle, and, turning towards the left side to form the **arch of the aorta**, runs backwards through the thorax and abdomen. It lies on the ventral surface of the vertebral column, and divides about an inch in front of the level of the pubic symphysis into the two common iliac arteries.

#### 2. Arteries arising from the aorta in the thorax.

- a. The **innominate artery** arises from the commencement of the arch of the aorta: it gives off, close to its origin, the **left carotid artery**, and then runs forwards a short distance and divides into the **right subclavian** and **right carotid arteries**.

- i. The **right subclavian artery** runs outwards just in front of the first rib: it gives branches to the shoulder, and runs on as the **brachial artery** into the right fore-limb. Its principal branches are the following:

- a. The vertebral artery arises from the subclavian just beyond its origin, and passing dorsalwards enters the vertebrarterial canal of the cervical vertebræ, along which it passes, supplying the spinal cord and the brain.
- β. The internal mammary artery arises from the subclavian just before it leaves the thorax, and runs backwards along the inner surface of the ventral wall of the thorax.

*The next two arteries may be better seen during the dissection of the neck. If dissected now, the greatest care must be taken not to injure the nerves (see fig. 65, p. 376).*

- ii. The right carotid artery runs forwards alongside the trachea, supplying the neck. The ramus descendens of the hypoglossal nerve crosses it. Opposite the angle of the jaw, it divides into (1) the internal carotid artery, which enters the skull through the carotid foramen to supply the brain; and (2) the external carotid artery, which supplies the right side of the head and face.
- iii. The left carotid artery corresponds to the right carotid in its course and distribution.
- b. The left subclavian artery arises from the left side of the arch of the aorta: its course and branches correspond to those of the right subclavian.
- c. The intercostal arteries are a series of small paired arteries, arising from the dorsal surface of the aorta, and running outwards on the inner surface of the thoracic walls, one behind each rib.

### 3. Arteries arising from the aorta in the abdomen.

*In examining these arteries the mesentery must not be cut.*

- a. The coeliac artery is a large median vessel, arising from the ventral surface of the aorta, about half

an inch behind the diaphragm. It runs in the mesentery, and divides into the hepatic artery supplying the liver, and the lienogastric artery supplying the stomach and the spleen.

- b. The anterior mesenteric artery is a large median vessel, arising from the aorta about three-quarters of an inch behind the coeliac artery. It divides into numerous branches, which run in the mesentery to supply the duodenum, pancreas, small intestine, caecum, and colon.
- c. The renal arteries are paired, the right one arising just behind the anterior mesenteric artery, and the left a little farther back. Each gives a small branch to the muscles of the back, and then runs outwards to the kidney.
- d. The spermatic arteries, in the male, are a pair of very small arteries, which arise about a couple of inches behind the left renal artery, and run backwards and outwards along the dorsal surface of the abdomen to enter the epididymes at their anterior ends.  
The ovarian arteries, in the female, arise in the same position as the spermatic, but run outwards and slightly forwards to the ovaries.
- e. The posterior mesenteric artery is a median vessel, arising from the aorta about an inch in front of its division into the common iliacs. It supplies the hinder part of the rectum.
- f. The lumbar arteries are small median arteries, arising from the dorsal surface of the aorta, and dividing into right and left branches supplying the body-walls.
- g. The median sacral artery is a small vessel arising from the dorsal surface of the aorta, shortly before its division, and running along the ventral surface of the sacrum to the tail. It is to be regarded as a posterior continuation of the aorta.



## 1. The auricles.

*Cut away the outer walls of both auricles so as to expose the cavities. Wash out the contained blood.*

- a. The right auricle. The wall of the auricle is thin; that of the auricular appendix is thicker, and is marked internally by muscular ridges.

## i. The orifices of the venæ cavæ.

The right anterior vena cava opens into the anterior part of the auricle.

The left anterior vena cava opens into the left side of the posterior end of the auricle: just before its opening it receives the coronary vein, returning blood from the substance of the heart.

The posterior vena cava opens into the dorsal surface of the auricle, in front of the left anterior vena cava.

- ii. The Eustachian valve is a membranous fold, between the orifices of the left anterior vena cava and of the posterior vena cava. During foetal life it directs the blood from the posterior vena cava through the foramen ovale into the left auricle.

- iii. The septum auricularum is a thin partition between the right and left auricles. In it is an oval patch, the fossa ovalis, close to the opening of the posterior vena cava. This is thinner than the rest of the septum, and is perforated in the embryo by the foramen ovale, which sometimes persists in the adult, and is guarded by a membranous valve with chordæ tendinæ (p. 363). Even when the foramen is closed, the notched edges of the valve, and remnants of the chordæ tendinæ are often recognisable.

- iv. The right auriculo-ventricular aperture is a

wide crescentic opening leading into the right ventricle.

- b. The left auricle. The wall of the auricle is thin : that of the auricular appendix is thicker, and is marked by a network of muscular ridges.
  - i. The apertures of the pulmonary veins. The veins of the two sides unite as they enter the dorsal surface of the auricle.
  - ii. The left auriculo-ventricular aperture is a large circular funnel-like opening leading into the left ventricle.

## 2. The ventricles.

*Cut across the ventricles about one-third of an inch from the apex ; note the shapes of the cavities.*

The cavity of the right ventricle is crescentic in section : its wall is comparatively thin, embracing and half surrounding the left ventricle.

The left ventricle has very thick walls and a small irregular cavity.

### a. The right ventricle.

*Remove the auricles, and cut short the aorta and pulmonary artery. Remove the outer wall of the right ventricle, by longitudinal incisions through its dorsal and ventral walls, and a transverse incision across its base a short distance behind the anterior border. Avoid injury to the valve.*

- i. The tricuspid valve guards the right auriculo-ventricular aperture, and is formed of three membranous flaps attached round its margin. The borders of the flaps project into the ventricle, and are connected by tendinous strings, the *chordæ tendinæ*, to muscular processes of the wall of the ventricle, the larger of which are known as *musculi papillares*.



- ii. The orifice of the pulmonary artery is at the left anterior angle of the ventricle, and is guarded by three pocket-like semilunar valves, the free edges of which are directed away from the ventricle.

*Note the position of the valves from above; slit up the pulmonary artery between two of them, and examine them.*

#### b. The left ventricle.

*Remove the outer wall in the same manner as that of the right ventricle.*

- i. The mitral valve, guarding the left auriculo-ventricular aperture, resembles the tricuspid valve, except that there are only two flaps, and the muscoli papillares are much larger.
- ii. The orifice of the aorta is at the base of the ventricle, immediately to the right of the mitral valve. It is guarded by three semilunar valves, one of which is dorsal, and the other two ventro-lateral in position. Immediately beyond the two latter valves the coronary arteries, which supply the heart, arise from the aorta.

The heart of a sheep may be dissected with advantage, and it differs so little from that of the rabbit, that the foregoing description applies, with very little modification, to it. The chief differences are the union of the two anterior venæ cavæ before entering the auricle, and the presence of a muscular 'moderator' band crossing the cavity of the right ventricle obliquely.

### VII. DISSECTION OF THE RENAL AND REPRODUCTIVE SYSTEMS.

The kidney of the rabbit is not represented in that of the dog-fish. It is a new development, and occurs at the hinder end of the kidney (Wolffian body) of the embryo. This new structure is the *Metanephros*.

In the rabbit, as in the dog-fish, certain parts of the Wolffian bodies and their ducts lose their excretory function, and become converted into accessory genital organs and genital ducts. Owing to the close connection of the two systems, they may, in the adult, be conveniently considered together, though it must be remembered that the connection is merely a secondary one (*cf.* pp. 264-265).

In the male rabbit the pronephros is absent or abortive; the embryonic kidney, or Wolffian body, acquires an intimate connection with the testis, and becomes converted into the caput epididymis, the proximal part of the Wolffian duct becoming converted into the cauda epididymis, while its distal portion becomes the vas deferens.

In the female, the pronephros is absent; the Müllerian duct becomes the oviduct; the Wolffian body and its duct are absent, or abortive.

In both sexes alike, the metanephros and its duct become the kidney and ureter respectively.

The bladder of the rabbit arises as a ventral diverticulum of the rectum, and is at first entirely independent of the kidney ducts, which open into the dorsal wall of the rectum, a condition retained throughout life in the frog. During development the ducts shift round so as to open into the bladder, which then separates from the rectum and acquires a separate opening to the exterior, through which the urinary and genital products leave the body.

## A. The Male Rabbit.

### 1. The renal system.

- a. The kidneys are a pair of dark-red bodies about an inch and a quarter long, imbedded in fat in the dorsal wall of the abdomen, outside the peritoneum. Each is of a flattened ovoid shape, with a notch, the hilus, on its inner side where the ureter and blood-vessels enter and leave it.

*Bisect one of the kidneys, longitudinally, from its outer*

*edge; and turn the central half inwards, so as to expose the cut surfaces.*

- i. The cortical substance forms the superficial layer of the kidney; the Malpighian bodies, which are confined to it, give it a dotted appearance.
  - ii. The medullary substance, forming the deeper part of the kidney, is radially striated, and consists mainly of the non-glandular parts of the tubules. The inner surface of the medullary substance projects as a conical process, the pyramid, on which the tubules open.
  - iii. The pelvis is the expanded anterior end of the ureter, which lies in the cavity of the kidney, and receives the urine from the apertures on the pyramid.
- b. The ureters are a pair of slender tubes, running back from the kidneys along the dorsal wall of the abdomen, a short distance from the middle line. At the hinder end of the abdomen they turn inwards and open into the bladder, opposite the anterior border of the pubic symphysis.
  - c. The bladder is a thin-walled muscular sac, of which the anterior end, in front of the pubic symphysis, can alone be seen at this stage of the dissection.

## 2. The reproductive system.

The testes, in early life, lie against the dorsal wall of the abdomen, close to the kidneys. Before maturity, however, they separate from the dorsal wall, and pass through the inguinal canals into the scrotal sacs.

- a. The scrotal sacs are a pair of muscular pouch-like diverticula of the abdominal wall, lying ventral to the pelvis and close to the median plane. Each

scrotal sac communicates with the abdominal cavity through the narrow inguinal canal.

*Slit up one of the scrotal sacs along its ventral surface to expose the testis lying in it. Lay open the inguinal canal.*

b. The testes.

The testes are a pair of elongated, ovoid bodies, of a pink colour, varying greatly in size at different times, and about an inch and a half in length when fully developed. They are attached to the hinder ends of the scrotal sacs, but can easily be pulled back into the abdominal cavity.

- c. The epididymes are a pair of irregular masses of convoluted tubes, lying along the inner edges of the testes. Each epididymis consists of (1) a soft pinkish body, the *caput epididymis*, in close contact with the anterior end of the testis; (2) a narrow band, extending backwards from the *caput* along the testis; and (3) a larger, more conical, and much-convoluted body, the *cauda epididymis*, lying at the posterior end of the testis, and connected by a short cord, the *gubernaculum*, with the bottom of the scrotal sac.

The epididymes are the modified Wolffian bodies of the embryo, the tubules of which grow into the testes, and so form the *vasa efferentia*, through which the spermatozoa escape from the testes.

The spermatic arteries and veins enter and leave the epididymes at their anterior ends.

- d. The *vasa deferentia* are a pair of whitish tubes one of which arises from each *cauda epididymis* and runs forwards, alongside the testis, to enter the abdominal cavity through the inguinal canal. Within the abdomen it loops round the ureter from the outer to the inner side, and runs back to the neck of the bladder. The first part of

its course is sinuous, but further forwards it becomes straighter.

The vasa deferentia are the modified Wolffian ducts of the embryo.

*Dissect both scrotal sacs from the abdominal wall, and turn them forwards with the testes and vasa deferentia. Determine the line of the pelvic symphysis and cut it through with a strong knife placed exactly along the median line. Separate the two halves. Note the corpora cavernosa, a pair of hard ligamentous bodies running backwards from the hinder border of the ischia to the penis; and cut them across close to the ischia.*

*Inflate the bladder and urino-genital canal by means of a blowpipe inserted into the terminal aperture of the penis, and tie a ligature round the penis half an inch from its end, to prevent the air escaping.*

*Clean the various structures in the order given below.*

- e. The urethra, or urino-genital canal, is the continuation backwards of the neck of the bladder through the pelvic cavity. It is a straight tube, with thin and very vascular walls, and lies immediately dorsal to the pelvic symphysis, and ventral to the rectum. Behind the symphysis it is continued into the penis.
- f. The penis is an elongated body, projecting from the ventral surface of the animal, immediately behind the pelvic symphysis and in front of the anus. It is traversed by the urethra, through which the urinary and genital products are discharged. The posterior wall of the penis is very vascular, and forms the corpus spongiosum; while its anterior surface is stiffened by the corpora cavernosa. The free end of the penis is soft and obliquely truncated; and is invested by a loose sheath of skin, the prepuce. The external aperture of the urethra is a slit-like opening on its posterior surface.

- g. The *uterus masculinus* is a large median sac, slightly bilobed in front, attached to the dorsal surface of the urino-genital canal, into which it opens, and extending forwards along the dorsal surface of the bladder to about the middle of its length.

NOTE.—*The mature rat and cavy have large seminal vesicles which are not present as such in the rabbit.*

- h. The posterior ends of the *vasa deferentia* are slightly dilated, and run back, side by side, along the dorsal surface of the neck of the bladder, between it and the *uterus masculinus*. They open separately into the ventral wall of the *uterus masculinus*, just in front of its communication with the urino-genital canal, and opposite the hinder end of the obturator foramen.

*Slit up the uterus masculinus along one side with scissors. Note the large aperture leading into the urino-genital canal, and, just in front of this, the small paired openings of the vasa deferentia.*

- i. The *prostate* is a series of glandular masses, grouped around the dorsal surface and sides of the *uterus masculinus* and *vasa deferentia*, and opening by short ducts into the urino-genital canal. There are four or five lobes, the largest of which is an anterior lobe, closely applied to the dorsal wall of the *uterus masculinus*, and bilobed in front: behind this is a smaller posterior lobe, sometimes divided into two: a pair of still smaller lateral lobes lie in the angle between the *vasa deferentia* and the *uterus masculinus*.

- k. *Cowper's glands* are a pair of glandular bodies, varying greatly in size, and placed on the dorsal wall of the urino-genital canal, behind the *prostate*.

l. The **perinæal glands** are a pair of elongated glandular bodies, dark in colour, and about three-quarters of an inch long. They lie at the sides of the penis, and in the anterior walls of the perinæal sacs, into which their ducts open.

m. The **rectal glands** are a pair of pale yellowish bodies, much larger than the perinæal glands, and lying along the sides and posterior surface of the last two inches of the rectum.

*Slit up with scissors the urino-genital canal along its whole length, in the mid-ventral line.*

n. The **aperture of the uterus masculinus** is a large crescentic opening in the dorsal wall of the urino-genital canal.

o. The **verumontanum** is a small vascular papilla, immediately behind the aperture of the uterus masculinus.

p. The **apertures of the ducts of the prostatic glands** are small slit-like openings at the sides of the verumontanum.

## B. The Female Rabbit.

1. The **urinary system** is the same as in the male, except that the ureters open into the bladder much further forwards, close to its anterior end.

2. The **reproductive system**.

*Divide the pelvic symphysis as in the male (p. 368); and inflate the vagina and bladder with a blowpipe, inserted into the vulva. Ligature the vestibule about an inch in front of the vulva to prevent the air escaping.*

a. The **ovaries** are a pair of oval bodies, of a pale yellowish colour, and about three-quarters of an inch long, attached to the dorsal wall of the abdomen, behind the kidneys and about an inch in front of the crests of the ilia.

On their surfaces the **Graafian follicles**, each of which contains an ovum, are visible as small rounded semi-transparent projections. The larger, yellowish-white patches—**corpora lutea**—are the remains of such follicles from which eggs have been shed.

b. The **oviducts** are formed from the **Müllerian ducts** of the embryo. Their anterior ends are narrow, and form the **Fallopian tubes**: the middle portions are wider, and become the **uteri**, within which the young are developed; and the posterior ends unite to form a median tube, the **vagina**.

i. The **Fallopian tubes** are a pair of narrow, slightly convoluted tubes, about the size of ureters. They lie along the free edges of the **broad ligaments**, a pair of folds of peritoneum suspending them from the dorsal wall of the abdomen.

The anterior ends of the Fallopian tubes form wide membranous funnel-shaped mouths lying along the outer sides of the ovaries, and attached to their anterior ends.

ii. The **uteri**, which are continuous with the posterior ends of the Fallopian tubes, are a pair of thick-walled tubes which vary enormously in size according to the presence or absence of embryos, and the stage of their development. The two uteri open by separate apertures into the anterior end of the vagina.

iii. The **vagina** is a very wide median tube, commencing a little in front of the crests of the ilia, and extending straight back to unite, within the pelvic cavity, with the neck of the bladder, at the commencement of the vestibule.

c. The **vestibule** or **urino-genital canal** is a wide median tube, commencing opposite the hinder end of



the obturator foramen, and running back ventral to the rectum through the pelvic cavity, to the vulva. Its walls are very vascular, and correspond to the corpus spongiosum in the male.

- d. The clitoris is a small rod-like body, corresponding to the penis of the male, and lying in the anterior or ventral wall of the vestibule, just within its external opening. In the rat it is traversed by the urethra. It ends in a soft conical body, the *glans clitoridis*, and is connected with the ischia by two *corpora cavernosa* similar to those of the male, but smaller.

e. Cowper's glands are reduced or absent.

- f. The perineal and rectal glands are similar to those of the male (p. 370).

*Slit up with scissors the vestibule and the hinder part of the vagina along one side. Note the great vascularity of the walls, the position and relations of the clitoris, and the opening of the bladder into the vestibule.*

*Slit up the anterior part of the vagina along the mid-ventral line, to expose the openings of the uteri into the vagina. Note the very prominent lips of these openings.*

#### VIII. DISSECTION OF THE NECK.

A special dissection of the neck is desirable, on account of the great importance of the structures contained in it, more particularly the nerves (see fig. 65, p. 376).

*Lay the rabbit on its back on a dissecting-board, and pin back the head so as to extend the neck fully. Make a median ventral incision through the skin of the neck, and dissect the skin away from the underlying parts, taking care not to damage the muscles. Keep the dissection moist.*

##### A. The Hyoid Bone.

The body of the hyoid is a transverse bar of bone, deeply placed between the rami of the mandible, and about midway between the hinder end of the mandibular symphysis and the angles of the jaw.

The posterior cornua of the hyoid are a pair of slender rods of bone, about half an inch long, running backwards and outwards from the outer angles of the body of the hyoid, parallel to the angles of the jaw.

*Cut up in the middle line between the halves of the mandible. Notice the paired submaxillary glands and press them slightly outwards. Between them is the triangular mass of muscle in which the hyoid lies imbedded, its posterior cornua conspicuous by its iridescence. Just to the outer side of these lies the hypoglossal nerve.*

### B. The Blood-vessels of the Neck.

The two most important, on each side, are the following :

1. The external jugular vein has already been seen (p. 355).
2. The carotid artery runs forward along the outer border of the trachea (see p. 359).

*Clean the carotid artery carefully, taking great care to avoid injuring the nerves which lie close alongside it, and a nerve, the ramus descendens of the hypoglossal, which crosses its ventral surface about the level of the thyroid cartilage.*

### C. The Trachea.

The trachea, or windpipe, is a straight tube running down the neck almost in the middle line. It is only partially exposed at present, but will be seen better in the course of the dissection. Its anterior end, the **larynx**, which lies almost immediately behind the hyoid, is dilated, and surrounded on its ventral and lateral surfaces by the wide **thyroid cartilage**, which forms a prominent median swelling in the throat, between the rami of the mandible. Behind this is the **annular cricoid cartilage**, which is wide dorsally and narrow ventrally. Behind the cricoid the trachea narrows slightly, and is strengthened by a series of cartilaginous rings, incomplete along the mid-dorsal line. The trachea runs backwards along the neck, and, entering the thorax, divides

about the level of the middle of the heart into the right and left bronchi, which enter the right and left lungs respectively.

#### D. The Thyroid Body.

The thyroid is a soft vascular body, consisting of a pair of lateral lobes at the sides of the anterior part of the trachea, connected by a narrow median lobe, which runs across the ventral surface of the trachea a short way behind the thyroid cartilage. The size of the thyroid varies, increasing with the age and maturity of the rabbit.

#### E. The Nerves of the Neck.

*Stretch the carotid artery on one side, and spread out the surrounding connective tissue. Note the large nerve running on its outer side—the vagus or pneumogastric nerve. In following the nerves for the first time, this nerve, the hypoglossal, and sympathetic are alone of importance. A lymphatic gland and duct lie close to the origin of the nerves of the neck, and should not be mistaken for a nerve and its ganglion.*

1. The spinal accessory nerve, the eleventh cranial nerve, leaves the skull by the foramen lacerum posterius, between the auditory capsule and the ex-occipital bone, in company with the pneumogastric and glosso-pharyngeal nerves. Outside the skull it runs almost vertically downwards for about half an inch, and then divides into branches distributed to the sterno-mastoid and other muscles.

*The sterno-mastoid muscle runs from the front end of the sternum to the mastoid process of the skull behind the ears. Turn it back and follow the branches of the nerve to the base of the skull.*

2. The hypoglossal nerve—the twelfth cranial, and the motor nerve of the tongue—is a stout nerve which leaves the skull by the condylar foramina, immediately behind the foramen lacerum posterius. Outside the skull it runs downwards and inwards for about half an inch, and then turns forwards, crossing the internal carotid artery near the point of division of the carotid into internal and external

carotids. It then runs forwards and inwards, parallel to the posterior cornu of the hyoid, to the base of the tongue, in the muscles of which it ends.

*The hypoglossal nerve is readily found just outside the posterior cornu of the hyoid; it should be followed from this point backwards to the skull, and forwards to the tongue.*

The **ramus descendens** is a branch of the hypoglossal, which arises from the main nerve just before it reaches the internal carotid artery. It runs backwards along the outer side of the carotid for about half an inch. It then crosses the carotid, about the level of the hinder border of the thyroid cartilage, and runs backwards, ending in muscles of the hyoid and thyroid regions. It receives fibres from the first and second spinal nerves.

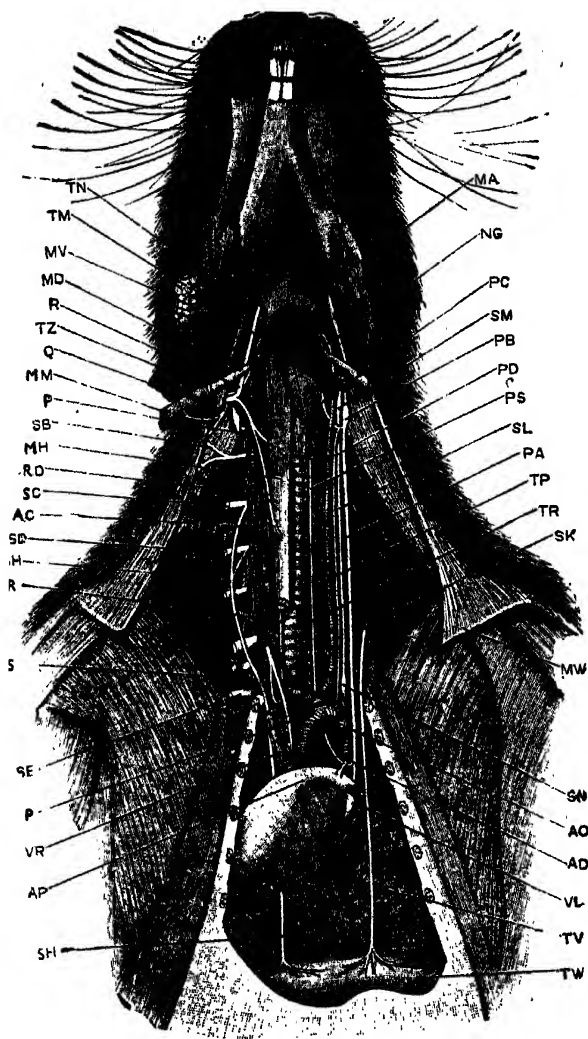
*The ramus descendens is easily found crossing the carotid about the point named above, and should be traced backwards along the sterno-thyroid muscle, and forwards to the point at which it leaves the main stem of the hypoglossal.*

3. The **pneumogastric or vagus nerve**, the tenth cranial, is a stout nerve which leaves the skull by the foramen lacerum posterius, presenting a very distinct ganglionic swelling near its origin. It runs downwards and backwards until it reaches the carotid artery, and then straight backwards along the neck, lying immediately to the outer side of, and slightly dorsal to, the carotid artery. Entering the thorax, it runs alongside the œsophagus to the stomach, where it ends.

Its principal branches are the following:

*Find the pneumogastric nerve in the neck, along the outer side of the carotid artery. Follow it backwards along the neck to the thorax, and forwards to the skull.*

- a. The **anterior laryngeal nerve** is a small nerve, arising from the pneumogastric opposite the upper border of the thyroid cartilage. It runs almost directly inwards, passing dorsal to the carotid artery, and ends in branches distributed to the mucous membrane of the larynx, and to the crico-thyroid muscle.



*The sole difficulty in dissecting the anterior laryngeal nerve lies in the possibility of confusing it with the ramus descendens of the hypoglossal. This is avoided if it be remembered that, while both nerves cross the carotid artery, the ramus descendens lies ventral to the artery, and the anterior laryngeal, dorsal to it.*

The depressor nerve is a very slender branch of the anterior laryngeal nerve, which runs backwards along the neck: it lies dorsal to the carotid artery, and along the inner side of the main stem of the pneumogastric nerve, very close to the sympathetic nerve-trunk. It ends in the heart.

*Find the depressor nerve where it leaves the anterior laryngeal nerve, about the level of the posterior end of the thyroid cartilage, and follow it backwards along the neck. Its dissection in the thorax is difficult.*

b. The right posterior or recurrent laryngeal nerve arises from the pneumogastric nerve at the posterior end of the neck. It loops round the subclavian artery, and then runs forwards along

FIG. 65.—*Lepus cuniculus*. Dissection to show the nerves of the neck. The hinder part of the trachea is pushed slightly to the right side, and the thyroid body is removed. Two-thirds natural size. (C. H. H.)

AC, right carotid artery. AD, ductus arteriosus, with loop of left recurrent laryngeal nerve passing behind it. AO, arch of aorta. AP, root of pulmonary artery. AC, right subclavian artery, with loop of right recurrent laryngeal nerve passing behind it.

MA, mandibular muscle. MD, stylo-hyoid muscle. MH, sterno-hyoid muscle; the sterno-thyroid is seen at the hinder end, where both muscles are out across. MM, sterno-mastoid muscle. MV, posterior cornu of hyoid. MW, clavicle.

NG, glosso-pharyngeal nerve. P, anterior and posterior portions of right pneumogastric nerve. The middle portion has been removed. PA, left pneumogastric nerve. PB, ganglion of the pneumogastric nerve. PG, anterior laryngeal nerve. PD, depressor nerve. PR, PS, right and left recurrent laryngeal nerves. Q, spinal accessory nerve. R, hypoglossal nerve. RD, descending ramus of the hypoglossal: its connections with the first and second spinal nerves are not shown. SB, great auricular nerve arising from the third cervical spinal nerve. SC, SD, SE, fourth, fifth, and eighth cervical spinal nerves. SH, SK, right and left phrenic nerves: the anterior portion of the left one has been removed. SL, cervical sympathetic nerve. SM, anterior cervical ganglion. SN, middle cervical ganglion.

TM, submaxillary gland. TN, Wharton's duct. TP, oesophagus. TR, trachea. TV, lung. TW, diaphragm. TZ, ear, cut off short. VL, VR, left and right anterior vena cava.

the neck, lying alongside the trachea, and dorsal to the carotid artery, or slightly to its inner side. It supplies almost all the muscles of the larynx.

On the left side, the nerve is not given off until after the pneumogastric has entered the thorax. It loops round the ductus arteriosus, and then runs forwards along the neck to the larynx (see fig. 65).

*Find the nerve, as it loops round the subclavian artery, or on the left side the ductus arteriosus and arch of the aorta; and follow it forwards along the neck to the larynx.*

The curious course of the recurrent laryngeal nerves is explained by the shifting backwards of the heart which occurs during development. As this shifting involves the roots of the great vessels, these nerves, which are originally straight, become pulled out into loops.

- c. **Branches of the pneumogastric to the heart, lungs, and œsophagus.** These are of small size, and are given off in the thorax: the cardiac branches end in a plexus, lying between the roots of the aorta and pulmonary artery.

*Turn the lungs and heart over to one side; follow the pneumogastric backwards through the thorax, alongside the œsophagus, and trace out its branches.*

4. The **cervical sympathetic nerve** lies alongside the trachea, to the inner side of the carotid artery, and close to the pneumogastric and depressor nerves.

About the level of the angle of the jaw it has a small oval swelling, the **anterior cervical ganglion**, and at the posterior end of the neck, a short distance in front of the subclavian artery, there is a similar swelling, the **middle cervical ganglion**. In the thorax this sympa-

thetic nerve is connected with a chain of ganglia and connectives which cross the heads of the ribs.

5. The phrenic nerve is a branch of the fourth cervical nerve, which arises just beyond the point of emergence of this nerve from the neural canal, and runs back alongside the vertebral column. Entering the thorax it continues its course backwards, lying between the heart and the lungs, and ends in the diaphragm, which it supplies with motor fibres.

In the neck it crosses the roots of the hinder cervical nerves almost at right angles. It receives a small branch from the fifth cervical nerve, and sometimes one from the sixth, as it passes them.

*To expose the phrenic nerve gently press the heart and lung apart. Follow the nerve back to the diaphragm, and forwards along the neck to its origin.*

## F. The Spinal Nerves.

The spinal nerves arise in pairs from the sides of the spinal cord. There are eight cervical, twelve thoracic, seven lumbar, four sacral, and six coccygeal. Each spinal nerve arises from two roots, and divides into three branches. The two roots are (a) a dorsal or sensory and ganglionated one, and (b) a ventral or motor. The nerve so formed passes out of the spinal canal by the intervertebral foramen. Its three branches are :—

- a. The sympathetic nerve, which, together with its fellows, forms a longitudinal ganglionated trunk lying under the vertebral column and supplying the vessels and viscera.
- b. The dorsal branch, which supplies the muscles and skin of the mid-dorsal region.
- c. The ventral branch, which supplies the lateral and ventral muscles and most of the skin.

*The chief portions of the sympathetic nervous system, have*



*already been seen (pp. 349, 378). The dorsal branches of the spinal nerves are easily found, especially in a fresh rabbit. The ventral branches are seen traversing the intercostal muscles, and forming the brachial plexus and the pelvic plexus, which can be dissected both down the limb and back to their origin.*

#### G. The Larynx.

The larynx, or organ of voice, is the anterior part of the trachea. The thyroid and cricoid cartilages form its outer wall, and it is protected in front by the epiglottis.

*Make a medium longitudinal section through the anterior part of the trachea.*

1. The epiglottis is a curved plate of cartilage covered by mucous membrane attached to the anterior and ventral border of the larynx. When food is being swallowed it closes over the glottis like a lid, preventing the passage of the food into the larynx.
2. The thyroid cartilage forms the most anterior ring of the trachea : it is about half an inch in length along the mid-ventral line, but is incomplete dorsally.
3. The cricoid cartilage, or second ring of the trachea, is a complete ring, lying immediately behind the thyroid. It is narrow ventrally, but wide dorsally ; and articulates with the postero-dorsal angles of the thyroid cartilage.
4. The arytenoid cartilages are a pair of cartilaginous nodules, articulated to the anterior edge of the dorsal surface of the cricoid cartilage.
5. The vocal cords are a pair of folds of mucous membrane, strengthened by elastic ligaments. They are attached dorsally to the arytenoids, and at their ventral ends to the thyroid cartilage. It is by their vibration that the ' voice ' is produced.
6. The glottis is the median slit between the vocal cords, through which the air passes to and from the lungs.

## IX. DISSECTION OF THE HEAD.

*Skin the head. Open the jaws, examine the mouth (pp. 381-382), and with bone forceps inserted between the lower incisors separate the halves of the lower jaw. With strong scissors cut close to the left mandibular bone, follow its course, and remove it. Insert the bone forceps between the two nasal bones and remove the left one; then between the front incisors, so as to divide the halves of the upper jaw. With strong scissors cut through the soft palate and nasal cavity a trifle to the left of the middle line. Cut through the hard palate, ethmoid, &c., with bone forceps. In this way the left half of the skull may be removed.*

*Notice the cartilaginous mesethmoid plate separating the right from the left nasal cavity. Carefully remove it from before backwards, noticing and retaining the vascular organ of Jacobson attached to its ventral surface in the first part of its course.*

*Sponge the turbinal bones that now lie exposed. With scissors carefully expose the nasal passage and follow it backwards to the pharynx. Scrape the tongue clean, lay open the pharynx, the first part of the trachea, and the œsophagus. Make a drawing of this lateral dissection at least twice the natural size.*

## 1. The roof of the mouth.

a. The palate, or median part of the roof, is long and narrow, and separates the buccal from the nasal cavity. Its anterior half, the hard palate, is raised into hard transverse ridges, against which the tongue works; the posterior half, or the soft palate, is smooth and soft, and ends behind in a free notched border, nearly opposite the angle of the jaw.

b. The upper teeth, comprising the incisors at the front of the palate, and the grinders at the sides opposite the junction of hard and soft palates, have already been described (pp. 323-324).

- c. The **naso-palatine canals**, which connect the nasal and buccal cavities, open in a pair of grooves running backwards from the small posterior incisors, and about an eighth of an inch behind these.
- d. The **tonsils** are a pair of small pits at the sides of the posterior part of the soft palate, near its hinder border. The outer wall of each is much thickened, forming a papilla which nearly closes the opening.

## 2. The floor of the mouth.

- a. The **tongue** is an elongated muscular mass, attached along the greater part of its length to the floor of the mouth, and produced in front into a free flattened tip.

The surface of its hinder part is hard and slightly elevated; that of the anterior part is softer and dotted over with small white **taste papillæ**, which are especially numerous at and under the tip.

At the sides of the tongue, opposite the last molar teeth, are a pair of oval patches, the **papillæ foliatæ**, the surfaces of which are crossed obliquely by close-set parallel ridges, in which are imbedded numerous taste-bulbs.

About a quarter of an inch above and behind the **papillæ foliatæ** are a pair of **circumvallate papillæ**, which are small and white, and surrounded by circular grooves.

- b. The **lower teeth**, already described with the skeleton (p. 325), are placed opposite the corresponding teeth of the upper jaw, and bite against them.

## 3. The sides of the mouth are smooth and soft, with the exception of a hairy patch on each side, between the incisor and molar teeth.

4. The **pharynx** is a continuation backwards of the buccal cavity, beyond the margin of the soft palate. The mouth and the posterior narial chamber open into it in front; behind it is continued into the oesophagus; and ventrally it communicates through the glottis and trachea with the lungs.
  - a. The **glottis** is a large opening in the floor of the pharynx, a short way behind the tongue, leading into the trachea or windpipe.
  - b. The **epiglottis** is a thin bilobed cartilaginous flap, forming the anterior boundary of the glottis, and projecting into the pharynx behind the tongue, opposite the free edge of the soft palate.
    - During the act of swallowing it is folded back over the glottis, so as to close its entrance.

5. The **posterior nasal chamber** lies above the soft palate, which separates it from the buccal cavity.

- a. The **orifices of the Eustachian tubes** are a pair of oval apertures at the sides of the roof of the chamber, about the middle of its length.

The Eustachian tubes connect the tympanic cavities with the posterior nasal chamber. The tympano-Eustachian passage is the modified hyomandibular pouch of the embryo, corresponding to the spiracle of the dog-fish. Its connection with the ear is purely secondary, the passage serving to keep the pressures of air on the two sides of the tympanic membrane equal.

*Pass a seeker backwards and outwards, along one of the Eustachian tubes, into the tympanic cavity (cf. fig. 66).*

- b. The **organs of Jacobson** are a pair of small tubular bodies enclosed in the palatal processes of the premaxillæ, and lying in the floor of the anterior part of the nasal cavities. Each communicates

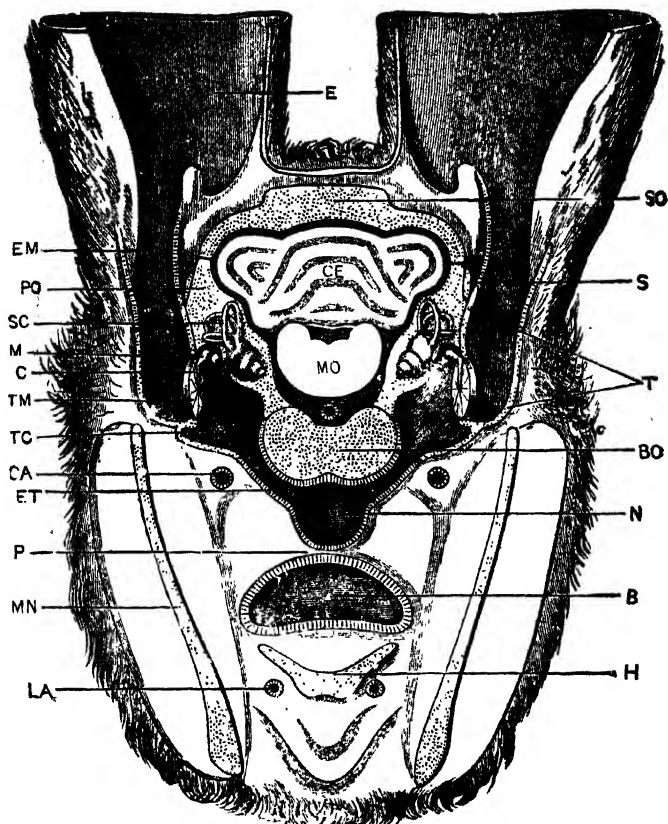


FIG. 66.—*Lepus cuniculus*. Diagrammatic section across the head to show the relations of the internal ear, tympanic cavity and membrane, and the auditory ossicles. The section is drawn as seen from the front, and is taken along a line joining the reference letters SO and MN in fig. 61, p. 305. The external ears are out short, and the floccular lobes of the cerebellum, which lie between the three semicircular canals on each side, are omitted entirely. (A. M. M.)

B, buccal cavity. BO, basal-occipital. C, cochlea. CA, right external carotid artery. CE, cerebellum. E, external ear or pinna. EM, external auditory meatus. ET, Eustachian tube. H, body of the hyoid. LA, right lingual artery. M, malleus: to its inner side are seen the incus and stapes. MN, mandible. MO, medulla oblongata. N, posterior nasal chamber. P, soft palate. PQ, periotic. S, post-tympanic process of squamosal. SC, anterior vertical semicircular canal. SO, supra-occipital. T, tympanic bone. TC, tympanic cavity. TM, tympanic membrane.

in front with the nostril, and through the nasopalatine canal with the mouth.

*Make a drawing of the dissection to show the parts exposed in this vertical section of the head.*

6. The salivary glands are large and paired.

*Dissect from the right side.*

- a. The parotid gland, the largest of the salivary glands, is a soft pinkish mass lying in front and below the external auditory meatus, between this and the hinder edge of the mandible. It is very variable in size, and may extend beyond the angle of the jaw and some distance forwards along its inner surface.

The duct of the parotid, or Stenonian duct, leaves the gland at its anterior border, and runs forwards just beneath the skin, parallel to and about a quarter of an inch below the zygomatic arch. It opens into the mouth by a small aperture on the inner side of the cheek, opposite the second upper premolar tooth.

- b. The infra-orbital gland is an irregular lobulated mass, about three-quarters of an inch long, lying below and in front of the eye, partly above the zygomatic arch and partly hidden by it.

The duct runs downwards to open into the mouth, close to the Stenonian duct.

- c. The sub-maxillary gland is a compact reddish ovoidal mass, lying close to its fellow between the angles of the mandible, and in front of the larynx (fig. 65, TM).

The duct, Wharton's duct, leaves the outer side of the gland near its hinder end, and runs forwards along the inner side of the jaw to open into the floor of the mouth midway between the lower incisors and the root of the tongue, the openings of the ducts of the two sides being about an eighth of an inch apart.

*Dissect from the ventral surface. To follow the duct into the mouth, turn the halves of the lower jaw aside.*

- d. The sublingual gland is an elongated flattened reddish body, about three-quarters of an inch long, lying along the inner side of the ramus of the mandible, between this and Wharton's duct.

The ducts open separately on the floor of the mouth.

## X. DISSECTION OF THE BRAIN.

*The brain should be removed directly after the rabbit is killed, and placed at once in strong spirit or the mixture given below, as it decomposes rapidly. It is well to put a loose pad of cotton-wool in the bottom of the bottle, and place the brain upon it, in order to prevent flattening from contact with the glass, and to ensure free access of the spirit to all parts of the surface; the brain should be turned over after it has been a few hours in spirit.*

*To remove the brain, first skin the head; then expose the brain by snipping away, with the bone forceps, the roof and sides of the skull, beginning at the foramen magnum, and working forwards. Take special care in the region of the ears to avoid injury to the floccular lobes of the cerebellum, which are lodged in the floccular fossæ of the petiotic bones (p. 313).*

*Having completely removed the roof and sides of the cranium and cut through the dura mater, a tough fibrous membrane which lines the cranial cavity, cut across the spinal cord about half an inch behind the foramen magnum, and turn out the brain from behind forwards, lifting it up gently with the handle of a scalpel.*

*Note and identify the several nerve-roots as you do so, and cut through them in order, close to the skull-wall, so as to leave as much of the roots as possible attached to the brain.*

*Place the brain in spirit or a mixture of equal parts of 1·0 per cent. potassium bichromate and 8·0 per cent. formalin at once, handling it with great care, as it is very soft and easily damaged. Leave it in spirit for three or four days, or in the mixture three weeks; after which wash in water for a day, and then dissect it as described below.*

*The several divisions of the rabbit's brain are the same as those of the brain of the dog-fish, the most important differences between the two being (1) the great size of the cerebral hemispheres, which overlap and conceal the dorsal and lateral surfaces of the thalamencephalon and optic lobes; (2) the greater size and more complicated structure of the cerebellum; (3) the much greater development of the trans-*

verse commissures connecting the two halves of the brain with each other.

*Remove the hardened brain from spirit and examine it in a small dish of water or weak spirit.*

#### **A. The Brain-membranes.**

1. The **dura mater** is the tough connective-tissue membrane which lines the cranial cavity. The greater part of this membrane is left in the skull on removal of the brain. It projects into the cranial cavity as a median vertical fold, the **falx cerebri**, which lies between the hemispheres; and a transverse fold, the **tentorium**, which separates the hemispheres from the cerebellum.
2. The **pia mater** is a much thinner and very vascular layer of connective tissue, which closely invests the brain. The blood-vessels running to and from the brain lie in it.

#### **B. External Characters of the Brain.**

*Strip off the pia mater from the brain with fine forceps as completely as possible, taking great care on the base of the brain not to drag away the nerve-roots.*

##### **1. The dorsal surface of the brain.**

- a. The **cerebral hemispheres**, which form the anterior two-thirds of the brain, are a pair of broad triangular bodies, pointed in front and closely apposed to each other along the median plane.

Their surfaces are smooth and convex: they are marked by a few shallow grooves, or **sulci**; and are divided by rather more conspicuous grooves at their outer edges into anterior or **frontal**, and posterior or **parietal lobes**.

The two hemispheres are connected with each other by a large transverse commissure, the **corpus callosum**, which is easily seen on



gently separating the hemispheres with the handle of a scalpel.

- b. The olfactory lobes are a pair of large club-shaped bodies, projecting forwards from beneath the anterior ends of the hemispheres.
- c. The thalamencephalon is covered by the hemispheres, and cannot be seen from the dorsal surface.
- d. The corpora quadrigemina, or optic lobes, are two pairs of rounded elevations on the dorsal surface

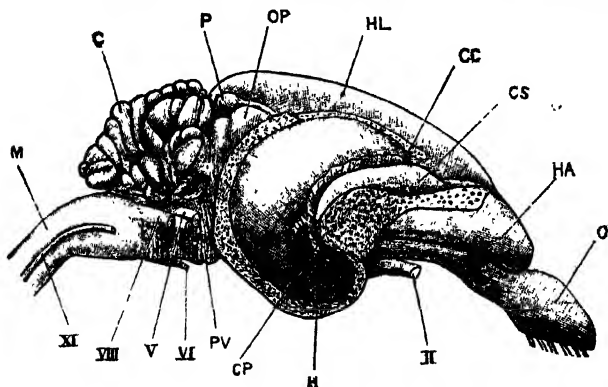


FIG. 67.—*Lepus cuniculus*. The brain dissected from the right side.  
× 2. (C. H. H.)

C, cerebellum. CC, corpus callosum. CP, choroid plexus. CS, corpus striatum. H, hippocampus major. HA, frontal lobe of right hemisphere. HL, left hemisphere. M, medulla oblongata. O, olfactory lobe. OP, anterior optic lobe. P, pineal body. PV, pons Varolii.  
II, root of optic nerve. V, root of trigeminal nerve. VI, root of abducent nerve. VIII, root of auditory nerve; immediately in front of it is seen the root of the facial nerve. XI, spinal accessory nerve.

of the brain, behind and almost completely covered by the hemispheres.

- e. The cerebellum is a large transversely elongated mass, lying behind the hemispheres. It is divided into a large median lobe, the vermis, and two lateral lobes, to the outer sides of which are the small rounded floccular lobes.

The whole surface of the cerebellum is marked by close-set folds, mainly transverse in direction.

- f. The medulla oblongata is the part of the brain beneath and behind the cerebellum. It is somewhat flattened dorso-ventrally, is widest in front, and gradually narrows behind, passing into the spinal cord.
- i. The velum medullæ anterior, or valve of Vieussens, is a thin transparent membrane connecting the hinder border of the optic lobes with the cerebellum, and roofing over the anterior part of the fourth ventricle. It lies beneath the anterior part of the cerebellum, which must be gently pressed backwards to expose it.
- ii. The velum medullæ posterior is a thin transparent membrane forming the roof of the posterior part of the fourth ventricle: it is covered in front by the cerebellum.
- g. The pineal body is a small rounded median body lying on the optic lobes, and connected by a stalk with the roof of the thalamencephalon.  
It is visible on the dorsal surface, in the angle between the hinder ends of the cerebral hemispheres and the cerebellum, but is very liable to be torn away with the dura mater. It has been shown to be a degenerate eye-like organ.

## 2. The ventral surface of the brain.

- a. The cerebral hemispheres, as seen from below, are closely apposed in front, but diverge posteriorly.  
About the middle of its length the inner border of each hemisphere presents a notch, which is continued outwards across the surface of the hemisphere as a shallow groove, the

**Sylvian fissure**, separating the frontal lobe from the temporal lobe.

- b. The **olfactory lobes** lie, in their hinder portions, along the under surface of the frontal lobes of the hemispheres, extending back as far as the Sylvian fissures. In front, they project some distance beyond the hemispheres.
- c. The **infundibulum** is a median rounded elevation lying between the temporal lobes, about the middle of the length of the brain: at its apex is the rounded vascular **pituitary body**. This latter is usually left behind in the pituitary fossa in the base of the skull when the brain is removed, and a slit-like aperture is then left at the apex of the infundibulum, leading into the third ventricle.
- d. The **optic chiasma** is a transverse band of nerve-fibres lying immediately in front of the infundibulum. From its anterior border the **optic nerves** arise, and from its outer ends the **optic tracts** may be followed backwards towards the optic lobes by gently pressing the temporal lobes aside.
- e. The **corpus mamillare**, or **corpus albicans**, is a small rounded median elevation immediately behind the infundibulum.
- f. The **pons Varolii** is a stout band of transverse nerve-fibres which crosses the ventral surface of the medulla opposite the posterior ends of the hemispheres. It connects the two sides of the cerebellum with each other.
- g. The **crura cerebri** are two large bands of nerve-fibres, immediately in front of the pons Varolii, which run forwards, diverging from each other, and connect the medulla oblongata with the hemispheres.

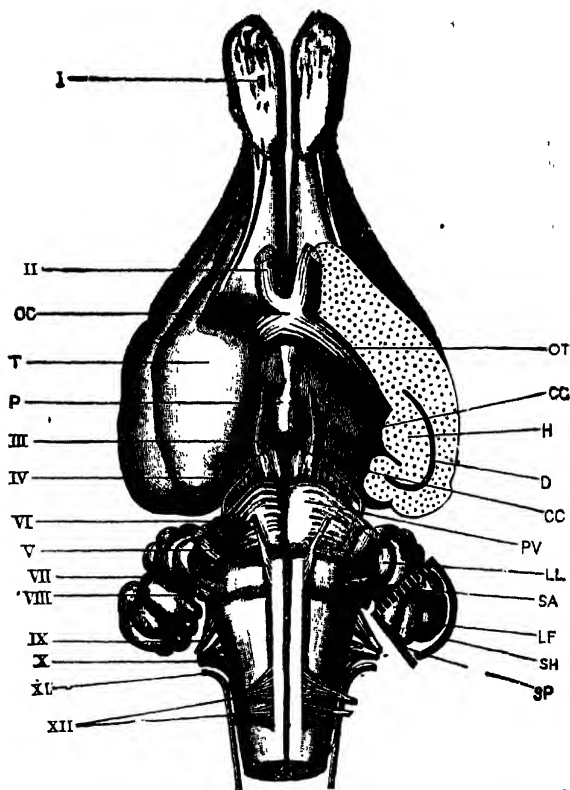


FIG. 63.—*Lepus cuniculus*. The ventral surface of the brain. The greater part of the left temporal lobe has been sliced off horizontally. The positions of the three semicircular canals of the left side are indicated by the thick lines surrounding the floccular lobe of the cerebellum.  $\times 2$ . (A. M. M.)

CC, crus cerebri. CG, corpus geniculatum. D, descending cornu of left lateral ventricle. H, hippocampus major. LF, floccular lobe of cerebellum. LL, lateral lobe of cerebellum. OC, optic chiasma. OT, optic tract. P, pituitary body. PV, pons Varolii. SA, anterior vertical semicircular canal. SH, horizontal semicircular canal. SP, posterior vertical semicircular canal. T, temporal lobe of cerebral hemisphere.  
I, olfactory lobe, with roots of olfactory nerves. II, optic nerve. III, third nerve, or motor oculi. IV, pathetic nerve. V, trigeminal nerve. VI, sixth or abducent nerve. VII, facial nerve. VIII, auditory nerve. IX, glossopharyngeal nerve. X, pneumogastric nerve. XI, spinal accessory nerve. XII, hypoglossal nerve.

- h.** The medulla oblongata, as seen from the ventral surface, is broad in front and gradually narrows behind. It is marked by a median ventral fissure, bordered by two narrow bands, the ventral pyramids. At the outer sides of the pyramids, immediately behind the pons Varolii, are a pair of oblong patches of transverse nerve-fibres, the corpora trapezoidea.

**C. The Roots of the Cerebral Nerves.**

There are twelve pairs of cerebral or cranial nerves in the rabbit, all of which, with the exception of the fourth pair, arise from the ventral surface or from the sides of the brain.

*Identify, and clean the nerve roots on one side of the brain, in the order given below, taking great care not to drag them away from the brain.*

1. The olfactory nerve arises, by many roots, from the ventral surface of the anterior end of the olfactory lobe. These roots are almost necessarily left behind in taking out the brain.
2. The optic nerve is a stout nerve, running forwards from the anterior border of the optic chiasma, and then curving outwards.
3. The oculo-motor nerve is small, and arises from the inner border of the crus cerebri, close to the middle line, and immediately behind the corpus mamillare.
4. The pathetic nerve is very small. It arises from the dorsal surface of the valve of Vieussens, close to the middle line, and just behind the optic lobes. It then runs round the side of the brain to the ventral surface, lying between the cerebellum and the optic lobe.

*Find the nerve on the ventral surface, and follow it round the side of the brain to its origin.*

5. The trigeminal nerve is very large, and arises by two closely apposed roots from the side of the hinder border of the pons Varolii. Of the two roots the

inner and smaller one is motor, the larger outer one sensory in function.

6. The **abducent nerve** is very slender, and arises from the ventral surface of the medulla, close to the middle line, and immediately behind the pons Varolii.
7. The **facial nerve** arises from the outer side of the anterior end of the corpus trapezoideum, immediately behind the trigeminal nerve.
8. The **auditory nerve** is large, and arises from the side of the medulla, immediately behind and to the outer side of the facial nerve.
- 9 and 10. The **glosso-pharyngeal** and **pneumogastric nerves** arise close together, by many slender rootlets, from the side of the medulla, close behind, and a little above the root of the auditory nerve.
11. The **spinal accessory nerve** arises from the side of the medulla and spinal cord by about ten rootlets, the most anterior of which is just behind the pneumogastric, and the hindmost as far back as the fifth spinal nerve.
12. The **hypoglossal nerve** arises by a number of rootlets from the ventral surface of the medulla, close to the middle line, and to the outer side of the ventral pyramid.

#### D. The Structure of the Brain.

The brain is, from the mode of its formation, tubular, its cavity being directly continuous with the central canal of the spinal cord. From a very early stage it presents a series of dilatations or vesicles, partially separated from each other by constrictions. Of these vesicles, the first or most anterior one is the **fore-brain** or **thalamencephalon**, from which the **cerebral hemispheres** arise as hollow outgrowths; the second vesicle is the **mid-brain** or **mesencephalon**; and the succeeding ones, of which there are at least four or five, are spoken of

collectively as the hind-brain. The cavities of the vesicles remain in communication with each other throughout life, and are spoken of in the adult as the ventricles of the brain.

## 1. Dissection of the Brain.

### a. The cerebral hemispheres.

*Lay the brain with its dorsal surface upward, and gently press the hemispheres apart: note the position of the corpus callosum.*

*Then, with the back of a knife peel off the portion of the right hemisphere lying above the corpus callosum. Keep the brain wet with spirit.*

i. The corpus callosum is a broad horizontal band of fibres connecting the two hemispheres.

### ii. The structure of the hemisphere.

a. The outer layer or cortex is a superficial investment of grey matter, about an eighth of an inch thick.

β. The central or medullary portion consists of white matter, i.e. of medullated nerve-fibres. The fibres of the corpus callosum spread out into and are continuous with it.

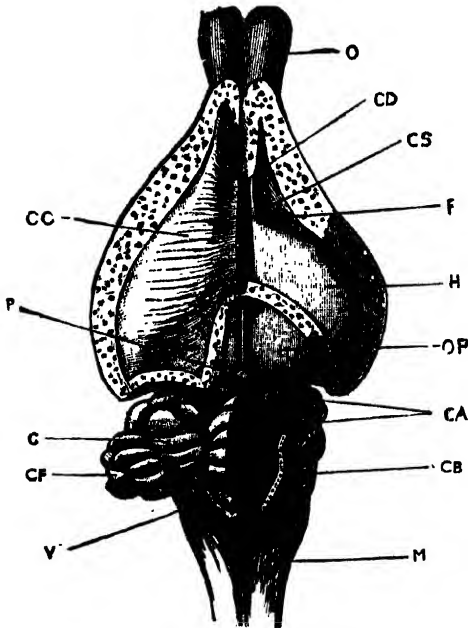
### iii. The lateral ventricle, or cavity of the hemisphere.

*Cut through the corpus callosum on the right side, so as to open the lateral ventricle beneath it. Lift up the corpus callosum, and carefully cut it away, so as to expose the ventricle fully, leaving a narrow strip along its inner edge.*

The lateral ventricle, opposite the middle of the hemisphere, is wide from side to side, but shallow dorso-ventrally. Anteriorly, it extends forwards as a narrow vertical slit, the anterior cornu, which lies nearer the inner than the outer surface of the hemisphere.

Posteriorly, the lateral ventricle curves

backwards and inwards towards the hinder end of the hemisphere as the posterior cornu; and from its outer side, a little behind the middle of the hemisphere, a descending cornu runs outwards and downwards, and then curves round in the temporal lobe to the ventral



**FIG. 69.—Lexus cuniculus.** The brain dissected from above. Enlarged.  
(C. H. H.)

C, lateral lobe of cerebellum. CA, pillars of cerebellum. CB, cut edge of valium medullae posterius. CC, corpus callosum: the right half is removed. CD, cut edge of corpus callosum. CF, floccular lobe of cerebellum. CS, corpus striatum. F, anterior limit of body of fornix. H, hippocampus major. M, medulla oblongata. O, olfactory lobe. OP, anterior optic lobe. P, pineal body. V, fourth ventricle.

region, running forwards and inwards almost to the anterior end of the lobe, and ending opposite the infundibulum (see fig. 68).



*Open up the descending cornu along its whole length, by carefully cutting away the outer and ventral walls of the temporal lobe.*

- iv. The hippocampus major is a prominent convex ridge, projecting into the floor and inner side of the descending cornu, along its whole length (cf. fig. 67, p. 388).
- v. The corpus striatum is a thickened part of the wall of the hemisphere, forming the outer side and floor of the anterior part of the lateral ventricle. It lies in front of the hippocampus major, from which it is separated by a deep groove, running obliquely backwards and outwards across the floor of the ventricle.

*Cut away carefully the outer wall of the anterior cornu of the lateral ventricle, including the corpus striatum.*

- vi. The septum lucidum is the thin vertical inner wall of the hemisphere. It is placed opposite the corpus striatum, and ventral to the corpus callosum.
- vii. The foramen of Monro is a small hole immediately beneath the hinder border of the septum lucidum, through which the lateral ventricle communicates with the third ventricle, or cavity of the thalamencephalon.
- viii. The posterior pillar of the fornix is a narrow band lying along the anterior edge of the hippocampus major. Posteriorly it follows the hippocampus into the descending cornu; while anteriorly it becomes continuous with its fellow of the opposite side in the median plane, forming the body of the fornix, immediately above the foramen of Monro.
- ix. The choroid plexus is a thin vascular fold of the inner wall of the hemisphere projecting into the descending cornu in front of the hippocampus major, and closely applied to the anterior surface of the latter along its whole length.
- x. There is a median vertical cleft between the right and left hemispheres, the 'fifth ventricle.' It lies below

the corpus callosum and above the fornix, and is bounded laterally by the inner walls of the two hemispheres (septum lucidum).

It is merely a part of the space between the two hemispheres, partially enclosed by the corpus callosum and the fornix; and is not, properly speaking, a ventricle at all.

*To expose the 'fifth ventricle' from above, carefully remove the narrow strip of the corpus callosum that has been left along the inner side of the hemisphere, and the fifth ventricle will be seen as a narrow cleft between the two hemispheres.*

**b. The fore-brain, or thalamencephalon.**

i. The optic thalami are a pair of large lateral thickenings of the sides of the fore-brain, immediately in front of the optic lobes, and overlapped by the temporal lobes of the hemispheres. They are separated by grooves from the corpora striata in front and the optic lobes behind.

ii. The optic tracts are a pair of narrow bands, which can be traced backwards and upwards from the outer ends of the optic chiasma, over the surface of the optic thalami, to the anterior borders of the optic lobes.

*Take hold of the anterior end of the right optic tract with the forceps, and strip it off the optic thalamus, so as to see its origin from the optic lobe.*

iii. The pineal body is connected by a tubular stalk with the hinder end of the thin roof.

*Remove the roof of the thalamencephalon so as to open the third ventricle.*

iv. The third ventricle, or cavity of the fore-brain, is a median vertical cleft between the optic thalami. It is very narrow from side to side, and communicates through the foramina of Monro with the lateral ventricles.

## c. The mid-brain, or mesencephalon.

- i. The corpora quadrigemina, or optic lobes, form the dorsal portion of the mid-brain, and are now well seen.
- ii. The crura cerebri form the base of the mid-brain: after removal of the optic tracts they can be traced forwards and outwards from the anterior border of the pons Varolii to the optic thalami.

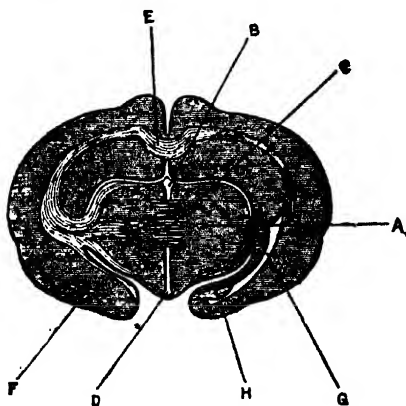


FIG. 70.—*Lepus cuniculus*. Transverse section of the brain, passing through the optic thalami and the middle commissure of the third ventricle. The shading indicates diagrammatically the distribution of white and grey matter. The section is taken somewhat obliquely, so as to show different parts on the two sides. (A. M. M.)

A, optic thalamus, forming the side-wall of the third ventricle. B, part of the third ventricle above the middle commissure. C, middle commissure. D, infundibulum. E, corpus callosum. F, temporal lobe of the left cerebral hemisphere. G, descending cornu of the right lateral ventricle. H, hippocampus major.

## 2. Longitudinal section of the brain.

*Divide the brain into right and left halves by a median longitudinal section. Place the left half in a small dish of spirit, and examine its inner surface.*

*If the dissection has been properly performed, the left half*

*of the brain will be uninjured. If it has been damaged, a second brain should be taken, and bisected as directed above.*

**a. The cerebral hemisphere.**

- i. The corpus callosum is seen cut across, and its boundaries can easily be determined.
- ii. The body of the fornix is a thin median band lying below the corpus callosum. It is continuous with this latter behind, but in front diverges from it considerably, the space between the two being the 'fifth ventricle.'

**b. The fore-brain, or thalamencephalon.**

- i. The third ventricle, though very narrow from side to side, is of considerable depth from the dorsal to the ventral surface. Owing to its narrowness its boundaries are difficult to determine.

*The outline of the third ventricle can be rendered more obvious by adding a little ink or other colouring matter to the spirit in which the brain is examined.\**

- ii. The commissures of the third ventricle are three bands of transverse fibres connecting the right and left halves of the thalamencephalon with each other. Of the three the middle one alone really crosses the cavity of the ventricle.
  - a. The anterior commissure is a small band of transverse nerve-fibres in the substance of the anterior wall of the ventricle, and immediately in front of the fornix.
  - β. The middle commissure is a very large band of fibres connecting the two optic thalami across the ventricle. It is nearly circular in outline, and crosses the ventricle about its middle, filling up the greater part of it.

γ. The posterior commissure is a small band of transverse fibres in the roof of the hinder end of the third ventricle, just in front of the optic lobes.

iii. The roof of the third ventricle has already been seen and removed.

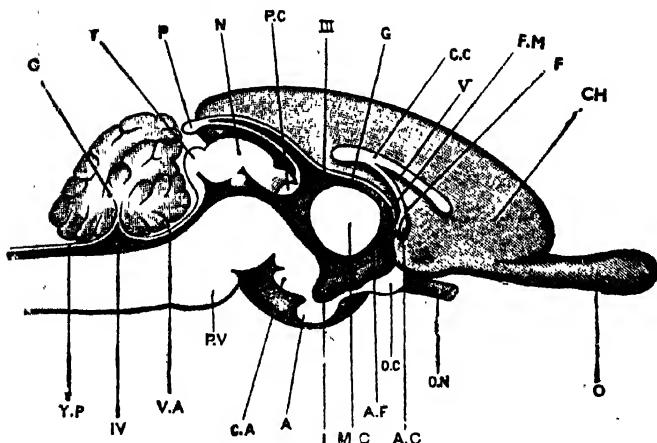


FIG. 71.—*Lepus cuniculus*. A longitudinal and vertical section of the brain, taken in the median plane. (A. M. M.)

A, pituitary body. AC, anterior commissure. AF, anterior pillar of the fornix, seen in the wall of the third ventricle. C, cerebellum. CA, corpus albicans. CC, corpus callosum. CH, inner surface of left cerebral hemisphere. F, body of the fornix. FM, foramen of Monro. G, roof of third ventricle. I, infundibulum. MC, middle commissure. N, anterior optic lobe or 'nates.' O, olfactory lobe. OC, optic chiasma. ON, left optic nerve. P, pineal body. P.C., posterior commissure. PV, pons Varolii. T, posterior optic lobe, or 'testis.' VA, velum medullae anterior, or valve of Vieussens. VP, velum medullae posterius.

III, third ventricle. IV, fourth ventricle. V, so-called fifth ventricle.

iv. The stalk of the pineal body is a tubular prolongation, upwards and backwards, of the roof of the ventricle, just in front of the posterior commissure.

v. The optic chiasma appears in this section as a thickening in the floor of the anterior end of the ventricle.

- vi. The **infundibulum** is a funnel-like depression of the floor of the ventricle, about the middle of its length; to its apex the pituitary body is attached.
- vii. The **corpus albicans** is a rounded swelling on the ventral surface of the floor of the ventricle, in the hinder wall of the infundibulum.
- viii. The **foramen of Monro** is a vertical slit-like opening at the anterior end of the ventricle, between and slightly above the anterior and middle commissures. It leads from the third to the lateral ventricle.
- ix. The **anterior pillar of the fornix** is a slender band of nerve-fibres in the side-wall of the ventricle, running backwards and downwards from the body of the fornix, beneath the middle commissure, to the corpus albicans, in which it ends.
- c. The **mid-brain, or mesencephalon.**
  - i. The **cavity of the mid-brain** is very small, and is called the **Sylvian aqueduct**.
  - ii. The **optic lobes, or corpora quadrigemina**, have moderately thick walls, and form the roof of the mid-brain, which is prolonged a short distance into them.
  - iii. The **crura cerebri**, which form the floor of the mid-brain, are very thick.
- d. The **hind-brain.**
  - i. The **fourth ventricle, or cavity of the hind-brain**, is moderately wide from side to side, but shallow from above downwards. It has a very thin roof, but thick floor and sides.
  - ii. The **valvum medullae anterioris, or valve of Vieussens**, is a thin membrane extending from the optic lobes to the cerebellum, and forming the roof of the anterior half of the fourth ventricle.

iii. The *velum medullæ posterius* is a thin membrane forming the roof of the posterior half of the fourth ventricle.

iv. The cerebellum is attached to the dorsal surface at the junction of the *vela medullæ anterioris* and *posterius*. It consists of an outer layer of grey matter, which is very deeply folded, and a central much-branched mass of white matter, the section having a tree-like appearance (*arbor vitæ*).

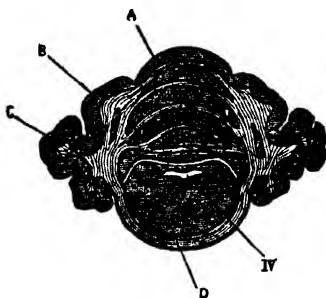


FIG. 72.—*Lepus cuniculus*. Transverse section of the brain, passing through the widest part of the cerebellum. The shading indicates diagrammatically the distribution of white and grey matter. (A. M. M.)

A, vermis, or middle lobe of the cerebellum. B, lateral lobe of the cerebellum. C, floccular lobe of the cerebellum. D, transverse fibres of the pons Varolii. IV, fourth ventricle.

v. The *pons Varolii* is seen, in transverse section, crossing the ventral surface of the anterior part of the hind-brain, opposite the *velum medullæ anterioris*.

### 3. Transverse sections of the brain.

*If another brain can be obtained, it should be cut with a razor into a series of transverse sections, about an eighth of an inch thick, and the sections arranged in order in a dish of spirit.*

Such a series of sections affords very instructive views of the mutual relations of the several parts of the brain.

## CHAPTER XV.

### THE SKELETON OF THE FOWL. *Gallus domesticus.*

THE fowl's skeleton is, on account of its larger size, more convenient for study than that of the pigeon. The differences between the two are of but slight importance, and the following description will practically apply to either.

The bird's skeleton consists essentially of the same parts as the rabbit's, but presents certain special characteristics, of which the more important are: (1) The great lightness of the bones, many of which contain large air cavities; (2) the extensive fusion of primitively distinct bones with each other during development; (3) the modifications in the limb-girdles and limbs, fitting birds for bipedal locomotion and for flight.

As in the case of the rabbit's skeleton, the names of the *membrane-bones* are printed in italics, those of the cartilage-bones in thick type.

#### I. THE AXIAL SKELETON.

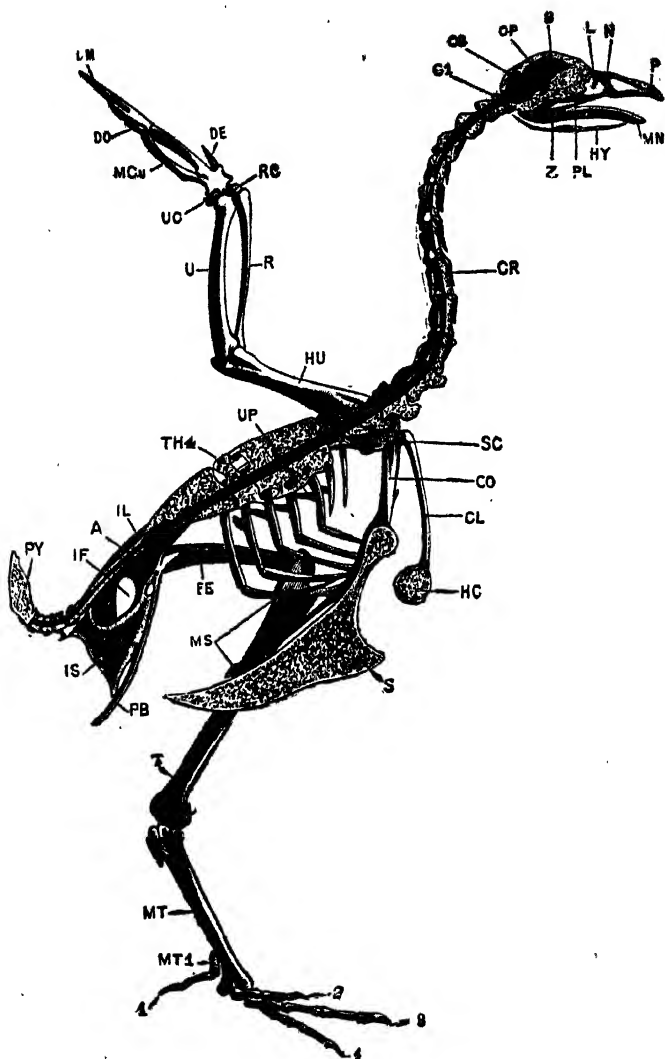
The axial skeleton, as in other vertebrates, is divisible into skull and vertebral column.

##### A. The Vertebral Column.

As compared with the rabbit's, the vertebral column of the bird is distinguished by (1) the great length and flexibility of the neck, the cervical portion being nearly equal in length to the whole of the rest of the column; (2) the rigidity of the thoracic and abdominal portions of the column, owing to the fusion of their component vertebræ; (3) the great length of



## SKELETON OF THE FOWL.



that portion of the vertebral column with which the pelvis is connected ; (4) the small number of the caudal vertebræ, and the fusion of the posterior ones to form the pygostyle ; (5) the absence of epiphyses.

The vertebral column may be divided into cervical, thoracic, sacral, and caudal regions, the boundaries between these being ill-defined, and the sacral portion being further divisible into three sub-sections.

1. The cervical vertebræ. The boundary between cervical and thoracic vertebræ is an arbitrary one, of no morphological value, and is not easy to determine in the fowl. It is usual to count as the first thoracic vertebra the most anterior one which bears a rib articulating with the sternum, and to name all the vertebræ in front of this one cervical. Reckoned in this way there are sixteen cervical vertebræ, the two hindmost of which bear well-developed and movably articulated ribs, which, however, do not reach the sternum.

In the following description the vertebral column is supposed to be placed horizontally.

- a. A typical cervical vertebra (any one from the sixth to the tenth) :

The parts of the vertebra are the same as in the rabbit, except that there are no terminal epiphyses. The chief peculiarities are the following :

---

FIG. 73.—*Gallus domesticus*. The left half of the skeleton. The skull, vertebral column, and sternum are bisected in the median plane. (C. H. H.)

A, acetabulum. B, cerebral fossa. CB, cerebellar fossa. CL, clavicle. CO, coracoid. CR, cervical rib. C1, first cervical vertebra. DE, DM, DO, preaxial, middle, and postaxial digits of the wing. FE, femur. HC, hyopoleidial. HU, humerus. HY, hyoid. IF, ilio-sciatic foramen. IL, ilium. IS, ischium. L, lacrimal bone. MCu, metacarpal bone of ulnar digit. MN, mandible. MS, metosteon. MT, tarso-metatarsus. MT 1, metatarsal bone of first digit. N, nasal bone. OP, optic foramen. P, premaxilla. PB, pubes. PL, palatine bone. PY, pygostyle. R, radius. RC, radial carpal bone. S, keel of the sternum. SC, scapula. T, tibio-tarsus. TH 4, fourth thoracic vertebra. U, ulna. UC, ulnar carpal bone. UP, uncinate process of rib. Z, infra-orbital bar.

1, 2, 3, 4, the first, second, third, and fourth digits of the foot. .

- i. The vertebra is very long and light, as compared with the cervical vertebra of a rabbit.
- ii. The centrum is slender. The terminal articular surfaces are saddle-shaped, the anterior one being convex from above downwards, and concave from side to side; while the posterior surface, which is larger and more prominent, is concave from above downwards, and convex from side to side. These saddle-shaped articular surfaces are very characteristic of the cervical vertebræ of birds.
- iii. The neural arch is shorter than the centrum, and is deeply notched in the middle line, both in front and behind. The neural arch is also notched behind, on both sides, for the passage of the spinal nerves.
- iv. The neural spine is rudimentary in the middle cervical vertebræ.
- v. The transverse processes and cervical ribs. At the anterior end of the vertebra an irregular process projects outwards at each side, which is perforated at its base by a large foramen, and is produced at its hinder border into a sharp backwardly directed process.

This process is really a rib, which, as in the cervical vertebræ of the rabbit, is fused with the vertebra; the foramen at its base transmits the vertebral artery and corresponds to the notch between the capitulum and tuberculum of the rib.

vi. The zygapophyses.

The pre-zygapophyses are borne on the upper surfaces of the transverse processes: their articular surfaces are flat and face upwards and inwards.

The post-zygapophyses project backwards from the posterior border of the neural arch,

their articular surfaces facing downwards and outwards.

- b. The atlas, or first vertebra, is very short and ring-like. Its ventral portion is thickened, resembling a centrum, and is notched above to receive the odontoid process of the axis: its anterior surface is deeply cupped to articulate with the occipital condyle of the skull. The posterior border of the neural arch is produced backwards into zygapophyses, articulating with the second vertebra.
- c. The axis or second vertebra is, with the exception of the atlas, the smallest of the cervical series: it has a blunt neural spine, but no transverse processes, and no ribs. The centrum is produced in front into the slender odontoid process.
- d. The remaining cervical vertebræ. The third and fourth cervical vertebræ are shorter than the succeeding ones, and have short thick ribs, and lateral wing-like ridges placed obliquely along their sides. The middle cervicals are the longest of the series, and the hinder ones are shorter and more massive. The last cervical vertebra is fused with the first thoracic.

The neural spines are present, though small, in the anterior cervical vertebræ: they are well developed in the hinder ones, but are almost absent in the middle ones of the region.

The hypapophyses are well developed in the hindmost half-dozen cervical vertebræ.

The ribs are more than half the length of the vertebræ in the middle of the neck, but are blunt and inconspicuous in the twelfth to the fourteenth vertebræ. In the fifteenth the ribs are well developed, and movably articulated with the vertebra; and in the sixteenth they are still larger, and resemble the thoracic ribs, but do not meet the sternum.

2. The thoracic vertebræ are five in number. The three anterior ones are fused together and with the last cervical vertebra, their centra, arches, and various processes being confluent, and the neural spines and hypapophyses forming continuous dorsal and ventral ridges.

The fourth thoracic vertebra is free; and the fifth is fused with the first sacral vertebra, its transverse processes abutting against and fusing with the ilia.

3. The sacrum consists of fourteen or fifteen vertebræ, fused together and supporting the ilia. It may be divided into the following regions:

- a. The three anterior sacral vertebræ are firmly fused together, and with the last thoracic vertebra. They have stout transverse processes, which abut against the ilia, and which in the first one of two are single, but in the third are divided into dorsal and ventral portions, the latter being very stout and projecting directly outwards from the broad centrum. The neural spines of these vertebræ are fused to form a vertical crest of bone, which is continuous in front with that of the last thoracic vertebra, and fused along its edge with the dorsal edges of the ilia.

- b. Behind these come four or five shorter vertebræ, with broad centra fused together. Their transverse processes, which have no ventral elements, are united to form bony plates, which support the ilia along their outer margins.

Between the bodies of these vertebræ and the ilia are the deep hollows in which lie the middle lobes of the kidneys.

- c. Next come seven vertebræ, the centra of which are compressed laterally in the anterior ones, and dorso-ventrally in the hindmost two or three. The transverse processes, except in the last, are

double, the dorsal elements fusing to form bony plates, continuous with those of the vertebræ in front of them. The ventral elements of the transverse processes are rod-like in the case of the first four or five vertebræ, and are regarded as ribs, because they ossify independently of the centra: in the hinder vertebræ, they are smaller. The first pair of these ribs are much stouter than the rest; they are placed in the adult opposite the acetabula, with the walls of which they are connected by bony ridges running across the inner surfaces of the ilia, and separating the fossæ for the middle and posterior lobes of the kidneys from each other. In the embryo, and in the young chick, these ribs are some distance behind the acetabula, and are no larger than those of the succeeding vertebræ.

From the special relation of the bird's sacrum to bipedal locomotion, it exhibits a necessary divergence from the sacral vertebræ of other vertebrates, usually two in number. Huxley considered that group (b) are the true sacral vertebræ, on the ground that the spinal nerves associated with them unite to form the sacral plexus. Gegenbaur and others hold that two or more of the vertebræ in group (c) are the true sacral ones, on account of their possessing separately ossified ribs.

4. The caudal vertebræ consist of four or five free ones, and a terminal pygostyle. This latter, which supports the rectrices, or large tail feathers, is much larger than the others, and triangular in shape. It is formed by the fusion of five or six vertebræ, which are distinct in the embryo.

## B. The Ribs and Sternum.

### 1. The Ribs.

- a. The cervical ribs. As already noticed, the last two cervical ribs of each side are alone movably

articulated, the remainder being fused with the transverse processes of the corresponding vertebræ.

Of these two, the first is small, but has distinct capitular and tubercular articulations; the second is larger and bears on its posterior border a backwardly projecting uncinæ process, which overlaps the next rib.

- b. The thoracic ribs are five on each side, and slightly increase in size from before backwards; each consists of vertebral and sternal portions, meeting at an angle.
  - i. The vertebral portions are flattened and slightly curved bars of bone, which articulate by capitular and tubercular surfaces with the centra and transverse processes of their respective vertebræ. Uncinæ processes project backwards from the posterior borders of all, except the last, or sometimes the last two.
  - ii. The sternal portions are slender, nearly straight rods of bone, which run forwards and downwards, from their junctions with the vertebral portions, to the side of the anterior part of the sternum, with which they articulate.
2. The sternum, or breastbone, is very large, and projects back far beyond the ribs, and over the greater part of the wall of the abdomen. Its ventral surface is raised into a prominent vertical crest or keel, which gives origin to the muscles moving the wings.
  - i. The body of the sternum is a somewhat boat-shaped plate of bone; it is wide and stout in front, and perforated on its concave dorsal surface by apertures, through which the air-sacs communicate with the cavity of the bone; it is narrow in the middle portion of its length, but widens somewhat behind.
  - ii. The manubrium is a small vertical plate of

bone, projecting from the anterior end and ventral surface of the body of the sternum.

- iii. The carina, or keel, is a very prominent triangular crest projecting downwards from the ventral surface of the sternum, and slightly thickened along its anterior border, which is concave.
- iv. The metostea are a pair of large processes, projecting backwards from the sides of the anterior end of the body of the sternum. Each metosteon divides, close to its origin, into two large flattened processes, the external and middle xiphoid processes, which are expanded at their hinder ends.
- v. The costal surfaces are the lateral borders of the body, in front of the metostea: they are notched for the sternal ends of the ribs.
- vi. The costal processes project forwards and outwards, in front of the costal surfaces.
- vii. The coracoid grooves are a pair of deep transverse grooves on the anterior end of the body of the sternum, continuous with each other across the median plane, through a hole in the base of the manubrium. With them the ventral ends of the coracoid bones articulate.

### C. The Skull.

The chief characteristics of the bird's skull are: (1) Its great lightness; (2) the very extensive fusion of the bones of the cranium with each other, most of the cranial sutures being closed, and the outlines of the bones obliterated, by the end of the first year; (3) the large size of the orbits, which are separated from each other by a thin vertical inter-orbital septum; (4) the prolongation of the face forwards into a long conical toothless beak.

The skull consists of the same essential parts as that of the rabbit, from which, however, it differs in the following



important points : (1) There is only a single occipital condyle, for articulation with the atlas vertebra ; (2) the base of the skull is strengthened by a large membrane-bone, the *basitemporal* ; (3) the orbits are placed almost entirely in front of the cranium, instead of below it, and are separated from each other only by the thin inter-orbital septum ; (4) the lower jaw is connected with the squamosal by a movably articulated bone, the quadrate ; (5) there is only a single auditory ossicle, the columella ; (6) there are no teeth.

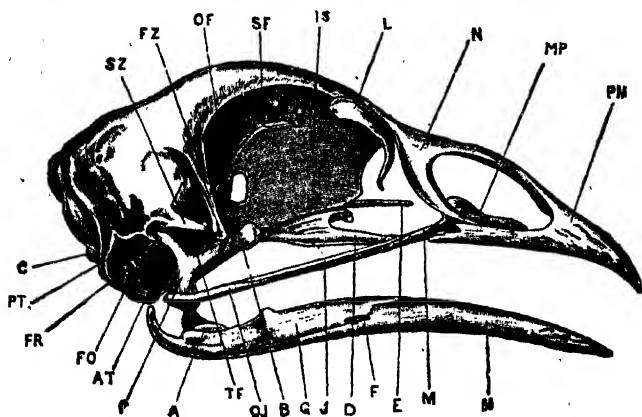


FIG. 74.—*Gallus domesticus*. The skull from the right side. (A. M. M.)

A, articular surface of the mandible. AT, anterior tympanic recess, leading to the Eustachian tube. B, pterygoid. C, occipital condyle. D, palatine. E, vomer. F, mandibular foramen. FO, fenestra ovalis. FR, fenestra rotunda. FZ, post-orbital process of frontal bone. G, supra-angular. H, dentary. IS, inter-orbital septum. J, jugal. L, lacrimal. M, maxilla. MP, maxillo-palatine process of maxilla. N, nasal. OF, optic foramen. PM, premaxilla. PT, posterior tympanic recess. Q, quadrate. QJ, quadrate-jugal. SF, olfactory foramen. SZ, zygomatic process of squamosal. TF, foramen for fifth nerve.

The fowl's skull consists of cranial and facial portions which are loosely connected together, and capable of slight movement upon each other. The cranial portion consists of the cranium proper, or brain-case, and the auditory capsules : the facial part is formed by the jaws and the olfactory capsules.

1. The cranial portion of the skull is a somewhat conical box of bone, the base of the cone forming the hinder

end of the skull, and the apex being directed forwards. In the young skull the outlines of the component bones can easily be followed, but in the adult they are indistinguishable. The following are the main points to be noticed :

**a. The hinder end of the cranium.**

- i. The foramen magnum is a large nearly circular aperture, in the middle of the posterior end of the skull, through which the spinal cord enters the cranial cavity.
- ii. The occipital condyle is a rounded knob, immediately below the foramen magnum, into which it projects slightly. It is notched in the mid-dorsal line, and has below it a deep pit-like depression.
- iii. The foramen of exit for the hypoglossal nerve, on each side, is a small aperture, immediately to the outer side of the occipital condyle, and slightly ventral to it.
- iv. The foramen of exit for the pneumogastric and glosso-pharyngeal nerves, on each side, is a larger hole about an eighth of an inch to the outer side of that for the hypoglossal nerve, and midway between the condyle and the rim of the tympanic cavity.
- v. To the outer side of the above foramen, and between it and the tympanic rim, is a group of three or four larger holes : some of these lead into the tympanic cavity ; while the most ventrally situated one is the entrance to the carotid canal, which traverses the base of the skull, and lodges the carotid artery.
- vi. The lambdoidal crest is a prominent ridge of bone surrounding the dorsal half of the hinder end of the skull, and separating the occipital from the parietal region.

**b. The ventral surface of the cranium.**

- i. The base of the skull is wide behind. The basi-sphenoid is covered by the broad transverse *basi-temporal*, a membrane bone which forms part of the boundaries of the tympanic cavities, and probably corresponds to the posterior part of the *para-sphenoid* of the frog.

In front of the basi-temporal the base of the skull is narrow, and formed by the *rostrum*, or thickened ventral border of the inter-orbital septum, which probably represents the anterior part of the *para-sphenoid*.

- ii. The anterior openings of the Eustachian canals are a pair of small holes, close to the median plane, and opening into a deep notch between the anterior end of the basi-temporal bone and the rostrum.
- iii. The foramina of exit for the carotid canals are a pair of small holes, near the middle line, and immediately to the outer sides of the Eustachian apertures. They are connected with each other by a canal, traversing the base of the skull.

*Pass a bristle along the carotid canal of one side, and through the transverse canal from side to side.*

**c. The side of the cranium.**

- i. The tympanic cavity is a hemispherical depression, at the side of the hinder end of the skull, bounded above by the *squamosal* and below by the *basi-temporal*. The tympanic membrane is attached just within its prominent lip.

Within the tympanic cavity can be seen the following:

- a. The fenestral recess is an oval depression in the middle of the cup, divided by a partition into an upper hole, the *fenestra ovalis*,

and a lower, the *fenestra rotunda*. The former of these lodges during life the inner end of the auditory ossicle or *columella*, a slender bar of bone and cartilage, the outer end of which is attached to the tympanic membrane.

- β. The posterior opening of the Eustachian canal is a funnel-like depression at the ventral and anterior corner of the tympanic cavity. The tube into which it leads passes forwards and inwards, between the *basi-temporal* and the *basi-sphenoid*, to open, as already seen, on the base of the skull, close to the middle line.

*Pass a bristle along the Eustachian canal of one side, from behind forwards.*

- γ. The anterior tympanic recess is a slit-like depression, immediately above the posterior opening of the Eustachian canal, with which it is often confluent.
- δ. The posterior tympanic recess is a large depression close to the dorsal border of the tympanic cavity, and just above the fenestral recess.
- ii. The zygomatic process of the *squamosal* is a thin bar of bone which projects forwards almost horizontally from the anterior and upper edge of the tympanic cavity. Its distal end often meets, and fuses with, the post-orbital process of the frontal bone.
- iii. The articular surface for the quadrate is a depression on the side of the skull, immediately in front of the tympanic cavity, between it and the zygomatic process of the *squamosal*.
- iv. The foramen of exit for the trigeminal nerve is a round hole in the side of the skull, below

and in front of the articular surface for the quadrate.

- v. The orbit is a very large depression in the side of the skull, which lodges the eyeball. It is bounded above by the *frontal* bone; in front, by the *frontal* and *lacrimal* bones, the latter of which is produced downwards at its anterior end into a slender curved process. Behind, the orbit is bounded by the frontal with its post-orbital process, and by the *ali-sphenoid*; and on the inner side it is separated from the orbit of the other side by the *inter-orbital septum*, a thin vertical plate of bone, formed by the coalescence of the *pre-sphenoid* and *orbito-sphenoid* behind, and the *mesethmoid* in front and above. The lower edge of the septum is thickened and covered by a membrane-bone, the *rostrum* (which represents the anterior part of the *para-sphenoid*).

Below, the orbit is very incomplete: its outer margin is formed by the slender zygomatic arch, and its floor, nearer the middle line, is formed in part by the *palatine* and *pterygoid* bones.

- vi. The foramen of exit for the olfactory nerves is a median opening at the anterior end of the cranium, and is continued forwards as a horizontal slit, between the inter-orbital septum and the frontal bones.
- vii. The optic foramen is a large median hole in the orbito-sphenoid bones, opening into the posterior part of the orbits, and continued forwards as a semicircular notch in the inter-orbital septum.
- viii. The foramina of exit for the third and fourth nerves are small holes, immediately to the

outer side of the optic foramen, and sometimes confluent with it.

**d. The dorsal surface of the cranium.**

The dorsal surface of the cranium is rounded, and formed almost entirely by the *parietal* and *frontal* bones. It is broad behind, narrower in front, and separated by a sharp, almost transverse line from the facial part of the skull. The anterior ends of the frontal bones diverge slightly from each other, and allow the mesethmoid to come to the surface between them.

**2. The facial portion of the skull lies below and in front of the cranial portion, with which it is only loosely connected. It consists of (1) the olfactory capsules, and the bones associated with them; (2) the skeletal elements of the jaws, and the hyoid apparatus.**

**a. The olfactory capsules and associated bones.** The olfactory capsules themselves remain in a cartilaginous condition throughout life, and are therefore absent in macerated skulls. They are separated only by a thin vertical septum, and almost completely fill the conical space which, in the dried skull, lies between the anterior end of the orbit and the tip of the beak. Each olfactory capsule has its cavity complicated by a spirally rolled lamina of cartilage, which projects inwards from its outer wall.

In relation with the olfactory capsules are the following bones:

**i. The *nasals*** are a pair of thin lamellar bones which cover the sides of the hinder ends of the olfactory capsules. Behind, they are fused with the anterior ends of the frontals: while their anterior borders are divided by deep notches into superior and inferior processes which embrace the external narial openings

and are closely connected with processes of the *premaxilla*.

- ii. The *vomer* is a slender median bony rod which lies below the hinder part of the olfactory capsules, and immediately in front of the *rostrum*. It is paired in some birds.
- b. The upper jaw. The bones of the upper jaw, as seen from the ventral surface, form on each side two bony arcades, which are fused together in front to form the beak, and are closely approximated behind, but widely separated from each other along the greater part of their course. The inner arcade is formed by the pterygoid and palatine bones, which articulate with the *rostrum*; the outer arcade consists of the slender sub-orbital bar and the *premaxilla*.

The upper jaw is connected with the anterior end of the frontals, and with the mesethmoid. Posteriorly, it is slung up to the side of the skull, just in front of the tympanic cavity, by the quadrate bones.

- i. The *pterygoid* is a short, stout bone, forming the hinder part of the inner arcade. It articulates at its outer and posterior end with the inner surface of the quadrate, and at its inner and anterior end with the *rostrum*, along which it can slide.
- ii. The *palatine* is a slender horizontal bar of bone lying in front of the pterygoid, and forming the greater part of the inner arcade. Behind, it articulates with the pterygoid, and is expanded into a broad lamella, which articulates with the *rostrum* along its inner edge. In front, the palatine is wedged in between the maxilla and the *premaxilla*.
- iii. The *premaxilla* is a triradiate bone, the anterior part of which is ankylosed with its fellow in

the median plane to form the tip of the beak, while the three processes diverge backwards.

The ascending or nasal process, which is much the longest of the three, is a long slender bar of bone, which runs backwards and upwards, closely applied to its fellow of the opposite side, and along the inner side of the nasal bone, to the mesethmoid, with which it is connected. The bone is very thin and elastic at its hinder end, so as to allow of a certain amount of movement of the facial on the cranial portion of the skull.

The outer or maxillary process runs backwards and slightly outwards, forming part of the margin of the upper jaw. The nasal and maxillary processes of the premaxilla, together with the superior and inferior processes of the nasal bone, surround the large aperture at the side of the beak in which the external narial opening lies.

The inner or palatine process, the smallest of the three, is a narrow plate of bone which extends horizontally backwards, a short distance from the median plane. It forms part of the roof of the mouth, and is connected behind with the anterior end of the palatine bone.

iv. The *maxilla* is a slender rod of bone, lying behind and to the inner side of the maxillary process of the premaxilla, and forming part of the sub-orbital bar. Its anterior end is expanded into a thin horizontal lamina of bone, the *maxillo-palatine process*, which projects inwards towards the median plane, lying dorsal to the palatine bone.

v. The *jugal* is a very slender rod, which forms the middle portion of the sub-orbital bar. It lies



dorsal to the other two components of the bar, and its exact limits are not recognisable in the adult.

- vi. The *quadrato-jugal* is the hindmost of the three components of the sub-orbital bar. Its posterior end is thickened, and articulates with the outer side of the distal end of the quadrate. In front it extends forwards as far as the maxilla, being overlapped for a considerable part of its length by the jugal.
- c. The mandibular arch is divided into two portions, of very unequal length, placed almost at right angles to each other. The proximal part is the quadrate bone, which connects both the upper and lower jaws with the cranium; the distal portion, forming the lower jaw, is of much greater length, is fused with its fellow in front, and is composed of several bones firmly united together.
  - i. The quadrate, which forms the suspensorium, is a stout triradiate bone. Its proximal or dorsal arm articulates with a cup-like depression in the squamosal, at the anterior and upper border of the tympanic cavity, between this and the base of the zygomatic process.

The distal or ventral arm, which is the stoutest of the three, is expanded transversely at its lower end, and bears the articular surface for the lower jaw; it also articulates at its outer edge with the quadrato-jugal, and along its inner margin with the pterygoid.

The third or anterior arm of the quadrate is a more slender process, which projects forwards and inwards into the hinder part of the orbit, lying parallel to and above the pterygoid.
  - ii. The mandible, or lower jaw, consists of a pair of long laterally compressed rami, thickened and expanded at their hinder ends, where

they articulate with the quadrates, and firmly unite together in the median plane in front. Like the upper jaw it bears no teeth, but is covered by a horny epidermal sheath.

Each ramus of the mandible really consists of five bones, one of which is developed in the primary cartilaginous arch, while the others are formed around it.

- α. The *articular* forms the expanded posterior end of the ramus. On its dorsal surface is the elongated and slightly concave articular surface for the quadrate; behind this the bone is produced backwards and upwards into the curved posterior articular process; and on the inner side into a similar but stouter internal articular process.

The *articular* is continuous in front with Meckel's cartilage, the cartilaginous bar of the mandibular arch, which persists, even in the adult, along the greater part of the length of the mandible, ensheathed in membrane-bones.

- β. The *angular* is a splint-like bone which underlies the *articular*, and extends forwards along the ventral edge and inner surface of the proximal half of the lower jaw.

- γ. The *supra-angular* forms the dorsal part of the posterior third of the mandible, along both outer and inner surfaces. Its dorsal border is raised into a small coronoid process, about the middle of its length.

- δ. The *dentary* is the largest of the bones of the jaw, and forms the distal half of each ramus. It is fused with its fellow in front at the symphysis; and posteriorly it extends

back along the ventral border of the supra-angular, between this and the angular, as far as the articular.

- e. The *splenial* is a thin lamina of bone, applied to the inner surface of each ramus of the jaw, along the middle of its length.
- d. The *columella* and the *hyoid apparatus*. These may conveniently be considered together, as the *columella* is, according to most authorities, the uppermost part of the hyoid arch, just as the quadrate is of the mandibular.
- i. The *columella* is a minute and slender rod of bone, the proximal end of which is expanded into an oval plate, fitted into the *fenestra ovalis* of the tympanic cavity; while the outer or distal end, which is cartilaginous and divided into three diverging arms, is attached to the tympanic membrane. It serves to convey the sound-vibrations from the tympanic membrane to the membrane closing the *fenestra ovalis*, and so to the internal ear.
- Owing to its small size and slight attachment, the *columella* is often lost in macerated skulls: it may, however, sometimes be found projecting from the *fenestra ovalis*.
- ii. The *hyoid apparatus* is a bony framework lying in the floor of the mouth, and supporting the tongue. It consists of a median jointed rod of bone and cartilage formed of *glosso-hyal*, *basi-hyal*, and *basi-branchial*, to the sides of which are attached in front the short *cerato-hyals*, and further back the elongated and jointed *thyro-hyals*, the ventral portions of the first branchial arches.

## II. THE APPENDICULAR SKELETON.

## A. The Pectoral Girdle.

The pectoral girdle is stout, and is firmly connected with the sternum to give support to the wings. It differs markedly from that of the rabbit in the large size of the coracoid, which is almost perpendicular to the scapula, and in the completeness of the clavicle.

- i. The scapula is a long flattened blade-like bone which in the natural condition of the parts lies above the ribs, a short distance from and almost parallel to the vertebral column. It is connected by muscles with both the ribs and the vertebræ. Its anterior end, which is expanded and firmly connected with the coracoid, bears on its outer surface a shallow depression forming part of the glenoid cavity; and is produced forwards, at its inner border, into a process which helps to form the canal for the tendon of the second pectoral muscle.
- ii. The coracoid is a stout, straight bone running from the shoulder to the anterior end of the sternum. Its upper end is connected behind and at its inner side with the scapula, and bears on its outer surface a cup-shaped depression, which forms the greater part of the glenoid cavity.

Above the glenoid cavity, the coracoid is produced upwards and inwards into a strong process, which, with the corresponding process of the scapula, completes the *foramen triosseum*, through which the tendon of the second pectoral muscle passes to its insertion into the back of the humerus. This process also articulates with the clavicle.

The lower end of the coracoid is broad and flattened, and bears a transversely elongated

surface, articulating with the anterior end of the sternum.

- iii. The **clavicles** are a pair of slender curved bones, whose upper ends are slightly expanded, and connected, as described above, with the coracoids; while their lower ends are fused together to form a median laterally compressed plate.

The two clavicles together form the **furcula** or 'merrythought.'

## B. The Fore-limb or Wing.

The wing of the bird corresponds to the fore-limb of the rabbit, but differs from it in several respects, the more important of which are: (1) the presence of only three digits; and (2) the fusion of the distal row of carpal bones with the three persistent metacarpals to form a compound bone, the **carpo-metacarpus**.

When the wing is extended for flight, its surfaces and borders correspond to those of the primitive vertebrate limb, the preaxial border being directed forwards, the postaxial backwards, and the dorsal and ventral surfaces upwards and downwards respectively. When the wing is folded, in the position of rest, the three main divisions—arm, forearm, and hand—are bent on each other like the letter Z, the elbow pointing backwards and the wrist forwards. Owing to a slight rotation at the shoulder-joint, and a slight obliquity of the elbow-joint, the dorsal surface of the arm now faces inwards and upwards; that of the forearm outwards and slightly upwards; while in the hand, which is bent on the forearm in a position of extreme abduction, the dorsal surface faces almost directly outwards.

### 1. The arm.

- i. The **humerus** is an elongated slightly curved bone expanded at both ends.

The proximal end, or **head**, presents a large convex vertically elongated surface for articulation with the glenoid cavity, bordered

by two tuberosities, which are preaxial and postaxial respectively.

The preaxial tuberosity is small, but is continued along the bone as the prominent forwardly directed deltoid ridge: this gives insertion to the great pectoral and deltoid muscles; while a small tubercle at its proximal end, and partly on the extensor surface, marks the insertion of the tendon of the second pectoral muscle, or elevator of the wing.

The postaxial or greater tuberosity is much larger, and has on its extensor surface a deep pit, the pneumatic foramen, leading to an air-cavity in the shaft of the bone.

The distal end of the humerus bears a trochlear articular surface for the radius and ulna, the radial surface being preaxial, and placed obliquely to the long axis of the bone; the ulnar surface being postaxial, and transverse to the axis.

2. The forearm has two bones, which are separate from each other along their whole length.

i. The radius is slender and nearly straight. Its proximal end, or head, presents a terminal cup-shaped articular surface for the preaxial condyle of the humerus; and its distal end articulates with the carpus.

ii. The ulna is rather longer and much stouter than the radius, and is slightly curved. Its proximal and larger end has a large articular surface for the postaxial tubercle of the humerus, beyond which it projects as the blunt olecranon process. Its distal end articulates with the carpus and with the radius.

3. The wrist consists, in the embryo, of two rows of carpals, a proximal row of two and a distal row of three. Of

these the two proximal carpals persist in the adult, while those of the distal row fuse with the metacarpals. The wrist-joint thus lies in the carpus, and not between the forearm and carpus, as in the rabbit.

The proximal row of carpals consists of two small irregular bones :

- i. The **radiale** lies between the end of the radius and the manus.
  - ii. The **ulnare** is a larger, more irregular bone, which articulates proximally with the ulna, and is notched distally to receive the carpo-metacarpus. It is very freely movable.
4. The **manus**. In the embryo there are three separate metacarpals. It is not certain whether they correspond to those of the three outer, middle, or inner digits. In the adult they fuse together, and with the distal row of carpals, to form the **carpo-metacarpus**. A small nodule of cartilage to the outer side of these disappears completely, or, according to some authorities, fuses with the postaxial metacarpal.
- a. The **carpo-metacarpus** is an elongated bone, in which the three component metacarpals can easily be distinguished.
    - i. The **preaxial metacarpal** is very short and stumpy, forming a small projection on the pre-axial side of the proximal end of the bone.
    - ii. The **middle-metacarpal** is a stout, straight bone, enlarged at its ends, and giving off near its proximal end a process from its ulnar side.
    - iii. The **postaxial metacarpal** is slightly curved, and is more slender than the middle one, with which it is fused at both ends.
  - b. The **phalanges**.
    - i. The **preaxial digit** has two phalanges, the terminal one being small.

ii. The middle digit has three phalanges, the proximal one being large and lamellar, and the distal one very small.

iii. The postaxial digit has only a single phalanx.

### C. The Pelvic Girdle.

The pelvic girdle consists of the same three elements on each side—ilium, ischium, and pubis—as the mammalian pelvis, from which, however, it differs widely in form. The three component bones are firmly united to form the *os innominatum*; and at the junction of the three is the *acetabulum*, or socket for the head of the femur, which is partially membranous at its bottom.

i. The ilium is an elongated lamellar bone, which extends a considerable distance both in front of and behind the acetabulum. Its inner border is connected along nearly its whole length with the sacral vertebræ and their processes. The outer surface of the anterior part is concave, that of the posterior part convex: the inner surface of the bone forms, with the adjacent vertebræ, two deeply concave depressions in which the kidneys lie. On the outer surface, immediately behind and above the acetabulum, is a projection, the *antitrochanter*, which bears on its outer surface an articular facet for the great trochanter of the femur.

ii. The ischium is a flattened lamellar bone projecting almost horizontally backwards from the acetabulum, of which it forms about a third. It is separated from the ilium, just behind the acetabulum, by the oval *ilio-sciatic foramen*, behind which the two bones are fused together.

iii. The pubis is a long slender bar of bone which projects downwards and backwards, parallel to



the lower border of the ischium. It forms a very small part of the ventral border of the acetabulum, in front of which it extends forwards as a blunt **pre-pubic process**.

Behind the acetabulum, the pubis and ischium are separated by the slit-like **obturator foramen**, behind which the two bones are fused for a short distance. The hinder end of the pubis is thickened, and extends some distance beyond the ischium.

#### D. The Hind-limb.

In the bird's leg there is the same extensive fusion of the bones which is characteristic of other parts of the skeleton. There are no free tarsals, the proximal row having fused with the tibia, and the distal row with the metatarsals.

The position of the limb is the same as in the rabbit; the knee pointing forwards, and the preaxial border being internal along the whole length of the limb.

##### 1. The thigh has only a single bone.

- i. The femur has a cylindrical slightly curved shaft, and enlarged ends. The proximal end is produced on its inner side into a rounded **head**, articulating with the acetabulum. On the outer or postaxial side of the head is an irregular process, the **great trochanter**. Between this and the head, at the proximal end of the bone, is the articular surface for the anti-trochanter of the ilium.

The distal end of the femur presents in front a deeply grooved pulley-like surface for the **patella**, a sesamoid bone in the tendon of the extensor muscle of the leg: this surface is bounded laterally by two prominent condylar ridges, which articulate with the tibia; the outer or postaxial condyle having on its posterior surface a deeply grooved facet for the upper end of the fibula.

## 2. The leg.

- i. The **tibio-tarsus** is a large, stout, nearly straight bone, considerably longer than the femur: it is formed by fusion of the tibia with the proximal row of tarsals. The proximal extremity of the bone is much enlarged, and bears at its end two surfaces which articulate with the condyles of the femur; on its extensor surface is the prominent **cnemial crest**, into which the tendon of the extensor muscle of the thigh is inserted, beyond the patella.

The distal end of the bone has a prominent pulley-like articular surface for the tarso-metatarsus. The distal portion, corresponding to the tarsal bones is easily detached in the young fowl.

- ii. The **fibula** is a slender bone, closely applied to the outer or postaxial surface of the **tibio-tarsus**, with which it is often fused. Its proximal end is enlarged, and articulates with the femur; the rest of the bone is very slender, and usually does not reach to the ankle.

3. The **ankle-joint** is between the proximal and distal rows of tarsals; these at a very early age fuse with the tibia and metatarsus respectively, so that in the adult there are no free tarsal bones.

4. The **pes**. The first four digits are present; the metatarsal of the first is small and imperfect; those of the next three are large, and are fused with each other and with the distal tarsal row. The fifth or postaxial digit, corresponding to the little toe in man, is represented by a rudimentary metatarsal.

- a. The **tarso-metatarsus** is a stout, straight bone, about as long as the femur, and formed by the fusion of the distal tarsal row with the second, third, fourth, and fifth metatarsals. Its proximal end is enlarged, and bears terminally two cup-shaped

facets for the tibio-tarsus ; on its posterior surface is a prominent ridge deeply grooved behind, and traversed at its base by a longitudinal canal, for the passage of the tendons of the flexor muscles of the toes. Behind the ridge, two sesamoid bones are usually present.

In the shaft of the bone, three metatarsals can easily be distinguished. They do not lie quite parallel to each other, the middle one being slightly posterior to the other two at its proximal end, and anterior distally.

At the distal end of the bone, the three metatarsals separate from each other, and each ends in a pulley-like surface for the corresponding digit.

- b. The first metatarsal is incomplete, its distal end alone being ossified. It is a small irregular nodule of bone, attached by ligament to the inner and posterior surface of the tarso-metatarsus, a short distance above its distal end.
- c. The digits. The four preaxial digits are present. In many domestic fowls, notably Dorkings, an extra or supernumerary toe is present on the inner side of the foot. The true fifth, or postaxial digit, is always absent.
  - i. The hallux, or great toe, is connected with the first metatarsal, and directed backwards. It consists of two phalanges, the last one bearing a claw.
  - ii. The second toe is directed forwards and slightly inwards. It has three phalanges, the last one clawed.
  - iii. The third toe is the largest, and is directed forwards. It has four phalanges, the terminal one clawed.
  - iv. The fourth toe is directed forwards and outwards. It has five phalanges, and the distal one is clawed.

## CHAPTER XVI.

DISSECTION OF THE PIGEON. *Columba livia*.

BIRDS are in many respects the most highly differentiated vertebrates. While agreeing in their essential morphological characters with the other air-breathing vertebrates, and more especially with reptiles, they present a number of very special characters, chiefly connected with the power of flight.

The modifications in the skeleton have been noticed in the preceding chapter ; in the other systems the most noteworthy features are : (1) The development of feathers, which are very highly specialised products of the epidermis ; (2) the great size of the pectoral muscles, by which flight is effected ; (3) the prolongation of the bronchi through the lungs into spacious thin-walled air-sacs, lying between the viscera, and prolonged into several of the bones ; (4) the persistence of the fourth right aortic arch, instead of, as in mammals, the fourth left, to form the arch of the aorta ; (5) the lateral, instead of dorsal, position of the optic lobes of the brain ; and (6) in the female, the disappearance, during development, of the ovary and oviduct of the right side.

Physiologically, the most interesting points are : the high temperature of the blood, which exceeds that of mammals, varying between 100° and 110° F. in different birds ; and the modification in the mechanism of respiration, expiration being the active movement, and inspiration almost purely passive.

Birds are oviparous, and the eggs, which are of large size, are protected by calcareous shells. The eggs are fertilised in the upper part of the oviduct before the shell is formed, and hence begin to develop before they are laid. The egg contains within itself sufficient nutriment for the development of the chick up to the time of hatching ; and all that

is necessary to ensure development is that the egg, after it is laid, should be kept at about the temperature of the parent's body. This is in most birds effected by incubation, a task usually fulfilled by the hen bird, but sometimes wholly or in part by the cock.

The food of the pigeon consists largely of hard seeds, and small stones are swallowed with it.

*Pigeons should be killed with chloroform, otherwise the lice with which they are invariably infested may prove a great nuisance. Before the dissection is begun, the bird should be thoroughly plucked, with the exception of one of the wings, on which the feathers may be left till later.*

The following description will apply also to the Fowl, and, with little modification, to any other bird.

### I. EXTERNAL CHARACTERS

Excepting the lower joints of the legs and the toes, nearly the whole surface of the body is covered with feathers.

#### A. The Main Divisions of the Body.

1. The head is elongated antero-posteriorly, and produced in front into a pointed horny beak.

At the base of the beak is a naked swollen patch of skin, the cere.

At the sides of the head are the large eyes, each provided with upper and lower lids, and with a well-developed third eyelid, or nictitating membrane, a semi-transparent fold of skin which can be drawn across the eye from its anterior angle with great rapidity.

2. The neck is very long and flexible.
3. The trunk is deep dorso-ventrally, and somewhat compressed from side to side. Along the mid-ventral line is a prominent ridge, formed by the ventral border of the carina, or keel of the sternum.

Posteriorly the trunk ends in a short blunt tail.

**B. The Limbs.****1. The wing.**

The surface of the wing is increased by the two alar membranes at the armpit and shoulder. Its inferior concavity grips the air, and the chief work in flight is done by the front edge of the wing. Hence the specially long and strong flight-feathers.

*Identify the several bones of the wing by feeling them through the skin. Note also the varying positions of the surfaces of the several divisions of the wing, when it is extended and folded respectively (p. 424).*

The ala spuria, or bastard wing, is a small tuft of feathers attached to the phalanx of the preaxial digit.

**2. The leg.**

The toes and the tarso-metatarsal region are, except in some domesticated breeds, devoid of feathers and covered with large horny epidermal scales. The ends of the toes are provided with horny claws. (In the Fowl the great toe is raised above the others.)

**C. The Feathers.**

The possession of feathers, which are specially modified epidermal structures, is one of the most characteristic features of the bird.

**1. Structure of a feather.**

*Pull out one of the large feathers from the wing or tail; and note in it the following points:*

a. The scapus, or stem, is a stiff axial rod, running the whole length of the feather. It consists of two dissimilar portions:

i. The calamus, or quill, is the tubular semi-transparent proximal portion, the base of which is inserted into the skin. At the proximal end of the quill there is a small aperture, the inferior umbilicus; and at its distal end, between the quill and the vane,

there is a second aperture, the **superior umbilicus**.

- ii. The **rachis**, or **shaft**, is the distal solid portion of the stem. It is a tapering, flexible, elastic rod, square in transverse section, and grooved along its ventral surface.
- b. The **vexillum**, or **vane**, is the flattened portion of the feather, attached along the sides of the rachis. It is made up of barbs and barbules.
  - i. The **barbs** are a series of narrow elastic laminae, attached by their bases along the two sides of the rachis.
  - ii. The **barbules** are much smaller processes, which form fringes along the sides of the barbs; they bear hooklets, which hold together the adjacent barbs, and so give the feather that resistance to the air on which the bird's power of flight depends.

## 2. Varieties of feathers.

- a. The **quill feathers** are the large feathers of the wings and tail: they are of two kinds.
  - i. The **remiges**, or **wing-quills**, have the inner or posterior half of the vane much broader than the outer or anterior half.<sup>1</sup> They are divided into groups in accordance with the bones to which they are attached (fig. 75, p. 442).

The **primary quills** are those attached to the bones of the manus. They are eleven in number, of which six are attached to the middle metacarpal, and are hence called **metacarpal quills**; one, **ad-digital**, is attached to the phalanx of the postaxial digit; two, **mid-digital**, to the proximal phalanx of the middle digit; and two, **pre-digital**, one of

<sup>1</sup> The narrow half of each feather overlaps the broad half of the one anterior to it. The effect of this is to allow air to pass between the feathers in the up-stroke of the wing, and to lock them together in the down-stroke—each feather rotating about its rachis.

which is small, are attached to the distal phalanx of the middle digit.

The secondary quills are those attached to the ulna.

- ii. The rectrices, or tail-quills, have the two halves of the vane about equal in size. They are used by the bird for steering during flight.

There are twelve in the wild rock-pigeon, but may be more in domestic breeds.

- b. The coverts are the smaller feathers which cover the bases of the quills of the wings and tail.
- c. The contour feathers are the short soft feathers covering the body generally. The barbules are less perfectly developed than in the quill-feathers, so that the barbs easily separate from each other, especially at the base of the vane.
- d. The filoplumes are the minute rudimentary feathers left in the skin after the bird has been plucked. Each consists of a hair-like stem, with a very rudimentary vane at its apex.

### 3. Arrangement of the feathers.

The feathers are attached to certain definite areas of the skin, known as pterygæ, the intervening tracts or apteria being devoid of feathers. This arrangement is not very obvious in the pigeon, in which the feathers are more uniformly distributed than in many birds. Apterium may, however, be seen in the mid-ventral and mid-dorsal regions of the body, and along the outer surfaces of the proximal segments of the wings.

## D. External Apertures.

### a. Median apertures.

- i. The mouth is a wide slit-like opening in the long pointed beak.
- ii. The cloacal aperture is a transverse slit, with prominent lips, on the ventral surface of the body, below the base of the tail.



**b. Paired apertures.**

- i. The nostrils are a pair of oblique slit-like apertures, between the beak and the cere.
- ii. The external auditory apertures are a pair of circular openings below and slightly behind the posterior or outer angles of the eyes. Each is surrounded by a circlet of small backwardly directed feathers, the auriculars.

Each leads inwards, and slightly backwards and downwards, to the tympanic cavity.

**II. DISSECTION OF THE PECTORAL MUSCLES.**

*Remove the skin from the ventral surface of the thorax and from one shoulder, so as fully to expose the first pectoral muscle. Clean this muscle along its whole length, defining its boundaries carefully. Ligature the large blood-vessels.*

*Make a stained smear of the blood (see p. 495) for future examination.*

1. The first or great pectoral muscle is large and triangular, and forms the greater part of the side of the breast. It arises from the whole length of the ventral half of the keel of the sternum, from the whole length of the clavicle, and from the lateral part of the body of the sternum. Its fibres run forwards and outwards, converging to a broad flat tendon, which is inserted into the deltoid ridge of the humerus. From the anterior border of the muscle, near the shoulder, a slip is sent off to the skin.

The great pectoral is the main depressor of the wing, and the most important of the muscles of flight.

*Cut through the great pectoral muscle, transversely to its fibres, and about the middle of its length. Turn the two halves of the muscle aside, so as clearly to define its origin and insertion; then cut away the muscle entirely.*

2. The second pectoral muscle is a smaller and more

deeply placed muscle, similar in shape to the first pectoral, and completely covered by it.

It arises from the dorsal part of the side of the keel of the sternum, and from the inner part of the ventral surface of its body. Its fibres run forwards and outwards, converging to be inserted into a long tendon, which passes through the foramen triosseum, formed by the scapula, coracoid, and clavicle, and reaches the back of the shoulder-joint, where it is inserted into the dorsal surface of the humerus, near the deltoid ridge.

Owing to the course taken by its tendon, the muscle elevates the wing, and so opposes the great pectoral muscle.

*To see the insertion of the tendon of the second pectoral muscle, remove or push aside the deltoid muscle, which covers the back of the shoulder-joint. Test the action of the muscle by pulling the tendon.*

3. The third pectoral muscle is a small triangular muscle, arising from the outer border of the ventral two-thirds of the coracoid, and from the costal process of the sternum. Its fibres run forwards and outwards, to be inserted into the postaxial border of the head of the humerus. It aids the great pectoral muscle in depressing the wing.

### III. DISSECTION OF THE AIR-SACS.

The air-sacs are large but very thin-walled sacs lying mainly along the sides and dorsal surface of the body-cavity. They communicate, as already noticed, with the bronchi, and they play a very important part in the mechanism of respiration of the bird.

Expiration is effected by the thoracic and abdominal muscles, which compress the thorax and abdomen, driving the air from the air-sacs, through the lungs and trachea.

Inspiration is effected by the elastic expansion of the

thorax and abdomen on relaxation of the muscles; this expansion causes an inrush of air along the trachea, through the lungs and into the air-sacs, the lungs being thus filled with fresh air.

A complete dissection of the air-sacs is not easy to perform, and involves a good deal of damage to other structures. The main features in their distribution and relations can, however, be easily determined, as described below. The dissection of the air-sacs must precede that of the other systems, as if they are once cut into, the walls of the sacs collapse, and they can no longer be inflated.

The air-sacs are nine in number: a median interclavicular, a pair of cervical or pre-bronchial, two pairs of thoracic or intermediate, and a pair of abdominal or posterior.

*Make a median ventral incision through the skin of the neck, and pin out the flaps. Note the œsophagus, a wide fleshy median tube; and the trachea, which lies to the left of the œsophagus, and is easily recognised by the close-set rings by which it is surrounded.*

*Separate the trachea from the surrounding tissues in the hinder part of the neck, and pass a ligature round it. Slit open the trachea about the middle of its length; pass a blow-pipe down the trachea through the slit, and tie it firmly in. Inflate the lungs and air-sacs through the blowpipe and tighten the ligature round the trachea to prevent the air escaping.*

*Make a mid-ventral incision through the skin from the posterior edge of the sternum to the cloaca, and a transverse incision along the posterior border of the sternum. Carry the incisions through the muscles of the abdominal walls, taking care not to injure the viscera beneath, and reflect the flaps outwards.*

1. The posterior or abdominal air-sacs are a pair of large sacs, with very thin transparent membranous walls, which lie along the dorsal wall of the pelvic cavity, ventral to the kidneys but dorsal to the intestine. At the hinder end of the abdomen they come close up to the ventral surface when inflated.

Each communicates with the posterior border of the corresponding lung, near its outer angle.

2. The posterior thoracic air-sacs are a pair of rather smaller sacs lying along the outer sides of the anterior ends of the abdominal sacs. They lie mainly posterior to the lungs, but overlap the ventral surfaces of their hinder ends.

Each communicates with the outer and posterior angle of the corresponding lung.

3. The anterior thoracic air-sacs cover the ventral surfaces of the anterior two-thirds of the lungs, and extend back so as to overlap the posterior thoracic sacs. They lie at the sides of the thorax, and are in extensive contact with the ribs and with the pericardium.

Each communicates with the ventral surface of the lung, rather in front of the middle of its length, and not far from the median plane of the body.

4. The interclavicular air-sac is a median sac formed by the fusion of two originally distinct ones. It consists of (1) a median portion, which surrounds the hinder end of the trachea, and can easily be seen in the angle between the two clavicles; and (2) lateral diverticula, one of which runs forwards along each side of the trachea, while others pass outwards, beneath the coracoid, and open into large axillary air-sacs in the neighbourhood of the shoulder-joints, which communicate with the cavities of the humeri.

The interclavicular air-sac opens into the ventral surface of each lung, immediately in front of the point of entrance of the main bronchus.

5. The cervical air-sacs are much smaller, and lie in front of the lungs at the base of the neck, alongside the vertebral column.

They communicate with the anterior angles or apices of the lungs.

The position, extent, and relations of the air-sacs can be best made out in a bird in which they have been distended with a solution of chromic acid (2 per cent.), and the whole bird then thoroughly hardened by immersion in the same solution for about a week. The specimen is then to be preserved in spirit.

#### IV. DISSECTION OF THE DIGESTIVE SYSTEM.

##### A. The Buccal Cavity.

*Open the mouth slightly; cut through the cheek, parallel to the jaws, for about half an inch on each side; and turn down the floor of the mouth so as to expose the cavity fully. Note the following structures:*

1. The posterior narial apertures are a pair of long narrow apertures lying side by side in the roof of the mouth. The anterior two-thirds of their length are hidden by a pair of prominent folds of the mucous membrane of the palate.
2. The aperture of the Eustachian tubes is a median opening, behind the posterior narial apertures.  
*Pass a bristle through the aperture, and along the right and left Eustachian tubes to the tympanic cavities.*
3. The tongue is triangular, ending in front in a sharp forwardly directed point; and produced behind into a pair of backwardly directed lobes, fringed with fine horny processes.
4. The glottis is an oval aperture, with tumid lips, in the floor of the mouth, just behind the tongue.
5. The entrance to the oesophagus is large and wide, and situated behind the glottis.

##### B. The Abdominal Viscera in situ.

*Lift up the hinder end of the sternum, and cut through its sides about midway between the dorsal and ventral surfaces. Cut through the coracoids and clavicles about the middle of their length. Detach the sternum with a scalpel from the underlying parts, and remove it entirely.*

1. The **falciform ligament** is a median vertical sheet of peritoneum connecting the dorsal surface of the sternum with the viscera; it is continuous in front with the pericardium, and behind with the omentum.
2. The **oblique septum**, a fibrous membrane attached to the pericardium, and extending backwards, separating the air sacs from the general body-cavity.
3. The **heart**, which is still enclosed in the pericardium, is large and conical, with the apex directed backwards. It lies in the anterior part of the thorax.
4. The **lungs** are spongy bodies lying at the sides of, and dorsal to, the heart, and very largely concealed by it.
5. The **liver** is a solid lobed organ, of a dark-red colour, lying behind and at the sides of the heart.
6. The **great omentum** is a fold of mesentery loaded with fat covering the viscera behind the liver. It is continuous in front with the falciform ligament.

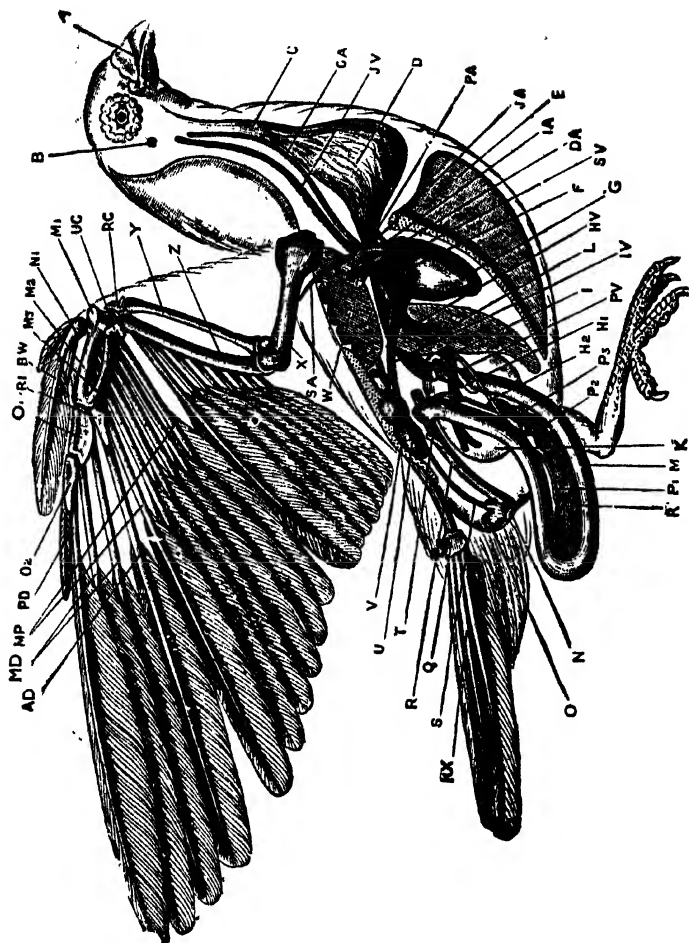
*Lift up the great omentum to expose the organs covered by it.*

7. The **gizzard** is a large firm body lying immediately behind the left lobe of the liver.
8. The **duodenum** is a loop of intestine lying along the right side of the abdominal cavity, and embracing the pancreas.
9. The **intestine** forms a convoluted mass in the hinder part of the abdomen.

### C. The Alimentary Canal.

*Unravel the intestine by cutting through the mesentery close to it, but taking care not to touch the duodenal loop.*

*Note* the veins in the mesentery, which collect the blood from the alimentary canal, and converge to form the **portal vein**, which enters the liver in the notch between its right and left lobes.



*Note also, and preserve the posterior mesenteric vein, which runs in the mesenterial fold connecting the rectum with the dorsal wall of the abdomen.*

1. The **oesophagus** begins at the hinder part of the buccal cavity, and runs back through the neck and thorax to the stomach. In the neck it is thin-walled, and dilates behind to form a large bilobed sac, the **crop**. In the thorax it has thick walls. The crop of the female secretes a milky fluid with which the young are fed.
2. The **thyroid gland** is a paired structure at the base of the neck.
3. The **stomach**, or **proventriculus**, lies dorsal to the left lobe of the liver: it is rather wider than the oesophagus, and has thick glandular walls, in which the gastric juice is secreted. Attached to the right side of the proventriculus is a small red body, the **spleen**.
4. The **gizzard** is a large hard body, somewhat flattened laterally, and with very thick muscular walls, the muscular fibres radiating outwards from a bluish tendon in the centre of each lateral surface. It forms a powerful mill for grinding the food.

The proventriculus opens into the gizzard at its

---

**FIG. 75.—Columba livia.** Dissection of the male from the right side. Half the liver and the greater part of the intestine have been removed. In the right wing the bones and the arrangement of the primary and secondary feathers are shown. The reproductive organs are omitted. (A. M. M.)

A, nostril. AD, ad-digital primary feather. B, external auditory meatus. BW, bastard wing. C, oesophagus. CA, right carotid artery. D, crop. DA, aorta. E, keel of the sternum. F, right auricle. G, right ventricle. HV, hepatic vein. H 1, left bile-duct. H 2, right bile-duct. I, distal end of proventriculus or stomach. IA, right innominate artery. IV, posterior vena cava. JA, left innominate artery. JV, right jugular vein. K, gizzard. L, liver. M, proximal limb of duodenum. MD, the two mid-digital primary feathers. MP, the six metacarpal primary feathers. M 1, preaxial metacarpal. M 2, middle metacarpal. M 3, postaxial metacarpal. N, cloacal aperture. N 1, preaxial digit of manus. O, bursa Fabricii. O 1, proximal phalanx of middle digit of manus. O 2, distal phalanx of middle digit of manus. P, pancreas. PA, right pectoral artery. PD, pre-digital primary feather. PV, portal vein. P 1, first pancreatic duct. P 2, second pancreatic duct. P 3, third pancreatic duct. Q, pygostyle. R, rectum. RC, radial carpal bone. RX, rectrices or tail-feathers. R 1, ulnar digit of manus. S, ureter. SA, right subclavian artery. SV, right anterior vena cava. T, rectal diverticulum. U, kidney. UC, ulnar carpal bone. V, pelvis. W, lung. X, humerus. Y, radius. Z, 1.



dorsal border, and rather to the left side ; while the duodenum leaves it a little to the right side of the same spot.

*Split open the gizzard along its ventral edge, and wash out the contents. Note the following features :*

- a. The great thickness of the muscular walls.
  - b. The thick cuticular lining to the cavity of the gizzard, in which small stones are usually found imbedded.
  - c. The openings of the proventriculus and duodenum, placed side by side at the dorsal edge.
5. The duodenum is a U-shaped loop formed by the first part of the intestine. The pancreas lies between the two limbs of the loop, the further dissection of which will be postponed until the liver and pancreas are examined.
  6. The small intestine is a much-convoluted tube, of nearly uniform diameter, and about two feet and a half in length.
  7. The rectum, or terminal portion of the intestine, is about an inch and a half long. Its anterior end is marked by a pair of small cæcal processes, the rectal diverticula (these are very long in the Fowl and in gallinaeous birds generally). Posteriorly, the rectum opens into the cloaca, the examination of which should be deferred until the kidneys have been dissected.

#### D. The Liver.

The liver is divided into a larger right, and a smaller left lobe, the surfaces of which are hollowed and grooved to receive the heart, duodenum, and gizzard.

The bile-ducts are two in number, and open into the duodenum.

1. The left bile-duct is a wide tube, about an inch long, which, emerging from the notch between the right and left lobes of the liver, runs backwards to open

into the proximal limb of the duodenum, about half an inch beyond the gizzard.

2. The right bile-duct is longer and narrower. It leaves the liver near the dorsal margin of the right lobe, and runs back to open into the distal limb of the duodenum, about the junction of its middle and distal thirds.

3. The gall bladder is absent in the Pigeon, but present in the Fowl.

#### **E. The Pancreas.**

The pancreas is a compact pinkish gland lying in the loop of the duodenum, along nearly the whole of its length, and grooved by it.

The pancreatic ducts are three in number, and all open into the distal limb of the duodenum.

The first two ducts leave the right border of the gland about the middle of its length, and run forwards, parallel to each other, to open close together into the distal limb of the duodenum, about the middle of its length, and close to the right bile-duct.

The third pancreatic duct is longer than the others. It leaves the gland near its anterior end, and runs forwards to open into the distal limb of the duodenum, close to its junction with the small intestine.

*Pin out the duodenum on a dissecting board, and expose the bile-ducts and pancreatic ducts. The dissection is best performed under water, and from the dorsal surface.*

### **V. DISSECTION OF THE CIRCULATORY SYSTEM.**

#### **A. The Blood.**

Examine a stained preparation of blood, and note the oval, nucleated red corpuscles.

#### **B. The Heart.**

The heart of the bird is large, and is divided into four chambers, those of the right side being completely separated from those of the left. The right side of the heart receives the blood which is brought back by the veins from all parts of the body, and drives it to the lungs to be aerated; from

the lungs it is returned to the left side of the heart, and hence driven all over the body through the arteries. The right side of the heart therefore contains venous blood, and the left side arterial blood.

*Open the pericardial cavity so as to expose the heart fully; and dissect away the connective tissue and fat from the vessels at the base of the heart.*

The heart is conical, with the apex directed backwards and slightly to the left side. A line of fat, which encircles it, marks externally the division into auricular and ventricular portions.

1. The auricular portion is anterior in position, and forms the base of the cone. It is thin-walled, dark in colour, and divided into right and left auricles, the division being indicated externally by a line of fat.
- 2 The ventricular portion is posterior, and forms the apex of the cone. It is much thicker-walled than the auricular portion, and paler in colour. The division between right and left ventricles is not obvious externally.

### C. The Veins.

*The veins should be dissected before the arteries, since they lie for the most part nearer the surface. Great care must be taken not to cut or tear them, because bleeding occurs freely, and is apt to be very troublesome. If a complete dissection is required, the venous system should be injected from either the femoral or the jugular vein.*

1. Veins opening into the right auricle. The right auricle receives the venous blood from the whole of the body by three large veins, the *venae cavae*.

- a. The right anterior vena cava returns blood from the right side of the head and neck, the right wing, and the right side of the breast.

It is a short wide vein, about a quarter of an inch in length, opening into the right anterior angle of the right auricle: it is formed by the union of three principal veins.

- i. The right jugular vein runs along the right side of the neck, close to the vertebral column, and dorsal to the oesophagus.

Anteriorly it unites with the left jugular vein, on the under surface of the base of the skull. In its course down the neck it receives veins from the side of the neck and from the crop; and at the posterior end of the neck it is joined by the vertebral vein.

- ii. The right brachial vein returns blood from the wing.
  - iii. The right pectoral vein is the largest of the three. It returns blood from the pectoral muscles, and receives also the internal mammary vein, which runs along the inner surface of the thoracic wall.
- b. The left anterior vena cava returns blood from the left side by veins corresponding to those opening into the right vena cava. At the base of the heart it runs transversely across the dorsal surface of the left auricle to open into the left border of the right auricle.

*To see the opening of the left vena cava into the auricle, lift up the apex of the heart, and turn it forwards.*

- c. The posterior vena cava returns blood from the posterior part of the body, including the liver.

It is formed by the union of the two iliac veins a short distance behind the liver. The vein, so formed, runs forwards through the substance of the right lobe of the liver, close to its dorsal surface; it receives the hepatic veins as it leaves the liver, and then runs forwards as a short wide vessel to open into the posterior surface of the right auricle.

*Turn the heart forwards, to expose the posterior vena cava as it enters the right auricle. Follow it back through the*

*liver, slitting it up and washing out the contained blood. Note the openings of the hepatic veins, and follow them with a seeker into the liver. Follow the vena cava back, behind the liver, to the point where it is formed by the union of the right and left iliac veins.*

## 2. The veins of the kidneys.

The veins in connection with the kidneys are best dissected in specimens injected from the femoral vein. Their relations may, however, be determined in an uninjected specimen by slitting them open and following them with a seeker.

The kidneys are a pair of elongated three-lobed bodies, lying against the ventral surface of the ilia, at the sides of the sacrum.

The general arrangement of the veins is as follows :

The large veins enter each kidney, the femoral and the hypogastric, returning blood from the leg and the intestine respectively. They traverse the kidney and unite within it. The common trunk formed by their union is joined by the renal vein, returning blood from the substance of the kidney itself, and emerges from the inner side of the kidney as the iliac vein, which unites with its fellow of the opposite side to form the posterior vena cava.

- a. The posterior mesenteric vein is a median vein running backwards in the mesentery supporting the rectum ; it collects the blood from the hinder part of the small intestine, and from the rectum and cloaca. Opposite the posterior end of the kidneys it receives a small median caudal vein from the tail, and at once divides into the right and left hypogastric veins.
- b. The hypogastric vein of each side is joined by the internal iliac vein from the inner surface of the pelvic cavity, and then enters the kidney at its posterior end : it runs forwards through the

posterior and middle lobes of the kidney, and joins the femoral vein, in the groove between the middle and anterior lobes. It receives blood from the dorsal and outer portions of these two lobes.

- c. The femoral vein returns the blood from the leg. Entering the kidney at its outer side, between the middle and anterior lobes, it is joined, as just noticed, by the hypogastric vein; a little further on it receives the renal vein, returning blood from the inner and ventral portions of the two hinder lobes of the kidney, and smaller veins from the anterior lobe; and it finally emerges from the kidney as the iliac vein.
- d. The iliac vein, formed in this way by the junction of the femoral, hypogastric, and renal veins, leaves the kidney at its inner border, between its anterior and middle lobes; and then runs forwards, uniting opposite the anterior end of the kidney with the iliac vein of the other side, to form the posterior vena cava.

### 3. The hepatic portal system.

The portal vein lies in the omentum, between the two bile-ducts, and on reaching the liver divides into two branches, one supplying each lobe. It conveys to the liver the blood from the greater part of the length of the alimentary canal, and is formed by the union of three chief veins.

- a. The gastro-duodenal vein returns the blood from the right side of the gizzard, from the duodenum, and from the last loop of the small intestine.
- b. The anterior mesenteric vein returns blood from the greater part of the length of the small intestine.
- c. The posterior mesenteric vein returns blood from the hinder part of the small intestine and from the rectum. The blood in the anterior part of

this vein flows forwards to the portal vein, that in the hinder part backwards to the hypogastric veins.

**4. Veins opening into the left auricle.**

The pulmonary veins, which are extremely short, open into the posterior surface of the left auricle.

*Turn the heart forwards; open the left auricle; wash out the contents; and pass a seeker along the pulmonary veins into the lungs.*

**D. The Arteries.**

1. The pulmonary arch is a single trunk, which arises from the anterior end of the right ventricle, close to the ventral surface and a little to the left of the median plane. It divides soon after its origin into right and left pulmonary branches.

a. The left pulmonary artery is short, and passes direct to the left lung, which it enters in front of the pulmonary vein, and ventral to the left bronchus.

b. The right pulmonary artery passes dorsal to the other arterial trunks, to enter the right lung in front of the bronchus.

2. The aorta arises from the base of the left ventricle, lying between the two auricles, and to the right of, and slightly dorsal to, the pulmonary artery. It gives off almost immediately the very large right and left innominate arteries, and then continues its course as the dorsal aorta.

a. The left innominate artery is a short wide artery, which divides, after a course of about a quarter of an inch, into two vessels of very unequal size.

i. The left carotid artery, which is much the smaller of these two vessels, runs forwards along the neck, lying close to its fellow of

the opposite side, in a groove along the ventral surface of the vertebral column.

About half an inch from its origin it gives off the vertebral artery, which runs forwards along the side of the neck, in the vertebral-arterial canal of the cervical vertebræ.

Opposite the angle of the jaw, the carotid artery divides into external and internal carotid arteries.

- a. The external carotid artery supplies the tongue, the muscles of the jaws, and other parts of the head.
  - β. The internal carotid artery enters the skull by a foramen in its base, and supplies the brain.
- ii. The subclavian artery, which is much the larger of the two branches of the innominate, runs outwards, and divides, after a course of not more than an eighth of an inch, into the brachial and pectoral arteries.
- a. The brachial artery runs straight outwards to the wing, giving a branch to the shoulder-joint.
  - β. The pectoral artery is a large vessel, very little smaller than the innominate itself: it runs outwards and backwards, looping round the outer side of the sternal end of the coracoid, to enter the deeper surface of the great pectoral muscle, in which it divides into numerous branches.
- b. The right innominate artery has branches exactly corresponding to those of the left innominate.
- c. The dorsal aorta, which is rather smaller than either of the innominate arteries, arches over to the right side, crosses the right pulmonary artery, and then runs backwards along the



mid-dorsal line of the thorax and abdomen. Its principal branches are as follows :

- i. The coeliac artery is a median vessel which arises about the level of the auriculo-ventricular septum of the heart. It runs back in the mesentery, and divides into branches which supply the stomach, gizzard, and part of the intestine.
- ii. The anterior mesenteric artery is a median vessel, which arises about a quarter of an inch behind the coeliac artery, and runs backwards in the mesentery, dividing into branches which supply the greater part of the length of the intestine.
- iii. The anterior renal arteries are a pair of small vessels, which arise from the aorta opposite the anterior ends of the kidneys, and supply their anterior lobes. From the artery of the left side a branch is given off to the ovary.
- iv. The femoral arteries are paired, and arise opposite the anterior lobes of the kidneys. They pass outwards, dorsal to the kidneys, to supply the extensor muscles of the thigh. Each gives off a pubic artery, which runs backwards along the ventral border of the pubes.
- v. The sciatic arteries are a pair of larger vessels which arise opposite the middle lobes of the kidneys. They pass outwards and backwards, between the middle and posterior lobes of the kidneys, and through the ilio-sciatic foramina, to supply the flexor muscles of the thighs and the muscles of the legs.

Each sciatic artery gives off a middle renal artery to the middle lobe of the kidney, and a posterior renal artery to the posterior lobe.

- vi. The posterior mesenteric artery is a median vessel, which arises opposite the hinder ends of the kidneys, and supplies the rectum and cloaca.
- vii. The internal iliac arteries are a pair of vessels arising about the same level as the posterior mesenteric artery, and running outwards and backwards along the hinder part of the pelvis.
- viii. The caudal artery is the terminal portion of the dorsal aorta; it runs along the ventral surface of the caudal vertebræ.

### E. Dissection of the Heart.

*The heart may be dissected in situ, or the vessels may be cut across about a quarter of an inch from it, and the heart removed and placed under water in a dissecting dish.*

#### 1. The auricles.

*Slit up the outer wall of the two auricles with scissors, and wash out the contained blood.*

##### a. The right auricle.

###### i. The openings of the venæ cavæ.

*Pass a seeker into these openings, and note their positions relative to the cavities of the heart.*

ii. The Eustachian valve is a muscular fold, projecting into the cavity of the auricle, on the right side of the opening of the posterior vena cava.

iii. The septum auricularum is a thin muscular partition dividing the right and left auricles from each other. Near its centre is a thin oval patch, the fossa ovalis, marking the position of the foramen ovale of the embryo.

iv. The right auriculo-ventricular aperture is a large crescentic opening in the posterior wall of the auricle.

**b. The left auricle.**

- i. The openings of the pulmonary veins are in a small recess of the dorsal wall of the auricle.
- ii. The left auriculo-ventricular aperture is circular.

**2. The ventricles.**

*Cut across the ventricles transversely, about the middle of their length. Note the shapes of the cavities, and the thickness of their walls.*

- a. The right ventricle wraps round the right side of the left ventricle. Its outer wall is comparatively thin, and its cavity is crescentic in transverse section.
  - i. The right auriculo-ventricular valve is formed by two muscular flaps: one long and external, the other short, meeting the first at a slight angle and connected to the ventricular wall at the base of the conus of origin of the pulmonary artery.
  - ii. The aperture of the pulmonary artery is at the extreme anterior end and left side of the ventricle.

*Pass a seeker from the ventricle along the pulmonary artery, and lay this open with scissors.*

The semilunar valves are three crescentic pocket-like flaps guarding the entrance to the artery.

- b. The left ventricle has very thick spongy walls, except at the apex, where it is thin. Its cavity is roughly circular in transverse section.
  - i. The left auriculo-ventricular or mitral valve is formed by three membranous flaps, which project into the ventricle. Of these the two outer form the antero- and postero-lateral

divisions respectively. Their hinder borders are attached by three sets of *chordæ tendinæ* to muscular processes of the ventricular wall, the *musculi papillares*.

- ii. The aperture of the aorta is at the anterior end of the ventricle, and at its right side. In the natural position it lies dorsal to the aperture of the pulmonary artery.

*Pass a seeker from the ventricle along the aorta, and lay it open with scissors along its right side.*

The *semilunar valves* are three pocket-like flaps, similar to those of the pulmonary artery.

## VI. DISSECTION OF THE RESPIRATORY SYSTEM.

*Remove the heart, if this has not already been done, and also the alimentary canal and liver. Clean the trachea and the ventral surface of the lungs.*

1. The *trachea*, or windpipe, is a tube which, beginning in front at the glottis, runs back along the neck, and divides in the thorax into two bronchi, entering the right and left lungs respectively.

It is surrounded by a series of closely set rings, which are ossified ventrally, and cartilaginous dorsally.

In the anterior part of the neck the trachea is ventral to the *oesophagus*; further back it lies along its left side. In the thorax, where it again lies ventral to the *oesophagus*, it divides into the two bronchi, which run outwards and backwards to enter the lungs on the ventral surface and near their anterior ends.

2. The lungs are a pair of spongy bodies, attached to the dorsal and dorso-lateral walls of the anterior part of the thorax. They are covered ventrally by the

pleura, an anterior continuation of the peritoneum. Their inner edges lie close together, separated from each other in the median plane by the projecting centra of the thoracic vertebræ, and by the dorsal aorta.

*Remove the pleura from the ventral surface of one lung; and separate the lung from the thoracic wall, noting its close attachment to this wall, and the grooves in its surface which lodge the ribs.*

3. The **syrinx**, or 'lower larynx,' is the organ of voice of the pigeon, and is formed by the dilated hinder end of the trachea, and the anterior ends of the bronchi.

*Cut across the trachea about an inch in front of its bifurcation. Make two lateral incisions, with scissors, along the sides of the trachea and bronchi, and turn down the ventral wall.*

- i. The **tympanum** is the cavity of the syrinx.
- ii. The **membrana tympaniformis interna** is the tense mucous membrane lining the inner wall of each bronchus just behind the tracheal bifurcation.
- iii. The **membrana semilunaris** is a delicate vertical fold of mucous membrane extending forwards dorsally into the tympanum from the angle of bifurcation of the trachea: by its vibration the voice is said to be produced.
- iv. The **pessulus** is a slender bar of cartilage running across the tympanum, in the substance of the **membrana semilunaris**, from the dorsal to the ventral surface.

4. The structure of the lungs.

*Pass a seeker along one of the bronchi, and slit it open with scissors. Follow the branches of the bronchus through*

*the lungs, and note the openings of the various air-sacs described above (pp. 437-440).*

## VII. DISSECTION OF THE RENAL AND REPRODUCTIVE SYSTEMS.

These may conveniently be considered together, because, as in the rabbit, the genital ducts are in both sexes formed from what were originally parts of the excretory system.

In the male the vas deferens is formed from the mesonephric or Wolffian duct; in the female the oviduct is formed from the Müllerian duct. In both sexes the kidneys and ureters of the adult are formed on each side from the hindmost division of the kidney of the embryo, *i.e.* the metanephros, and the metanephric duct.

### A. The Male Pigeon.

#### 1. The renal system.

a. The kidneys are a pair of solid three-lobed bodies, lodged in cavities bounded by the ilia and sacrum, immediately behind the lungs. Their ventral surfaces are covered by peritoneum. There is no distinction between cortical and medullary portions, and no 'pelvis.'

b. The ureters are a pair of straight narrow tubes. Each arises in the substance of the anterior lobe of its kidney, emerges between the anterior and middle lobes, and runs backwards along the inner side and ventral surface of the middle and posterior lobes, and then straight back to the dorsal wall of the cloaca.

*Slit up one of the ureters, and follow it into the anterior lobe of the kidney, noting the openings of smaller ducts into it at intervals along its length.*

c. The adrenals are a pair of small elongated yellowish bodies, attached to the ventral surface of the

anterior ends of the kidneys, alongside the iliac veins. They have no physiological connection with the kidneys.

## 2. The reproductive system.

a. The **testes** are a pair of oval bodies attached by a fold of peritoneum to the inner borders of the anterior lobes of the kidneys, and lying in contact with their ventral surfaces.

b. The **vasa deferentia** emerge from the inner sides of the posterior ends of the testes, and run back along the outer borders of the ureters as a pair of sinuous tubes with opaque walls.

Their hinder ends are dilated into small *vesiculæ seminales*, which open into the cloaca.

3. The **cloaca** is a shallow cup-like depression into which the rectum, ureters, and genital ducts open.

a. The **rectum** opens in the ventral wall of the cloaca.

*Slit up the rectum along one side, and note its opening into the cloaca.*

b. The **urino-genital pouch** is a saccular diverticulum of the dorsal wall of the cloaca, separated from the rectum by a transverse fold. The ureters open into it dorsally and close to the middle line; and to their outer sides are the openings of the **vasa deferentia**, on the apices of a pair of small *papillæ*.

c. The **posterior chamber of the cloaca** is a thin-walled dilatation of the dorsal wall of the cloaca, behind the urino-genital pouch, and close to the external cloacal opening; into its dorsal surface a glandular diverticulum, the **bursa Fabricii**, opens in young birds, but is usually absent in the adult.

**B. The Female Pigeon.**

1. The renal system is the same as in the male.

2. The reproductive system.

a. The ovary. In the embryo a pair of gonads are present, but of these the right one disappears during development, and the left alone persists. This is a large irregular-shaped body, suspended in a fold of peritoneum opposite, and partly in front of, the anterior lobe of the left kidney. Numerous oocytes in various stages of development project from its surface.

b. The oviducts. The left oviduct is a wide convoluted tube, thin-walled in front, thick behind and lying along the left side of the pelvic cavity. In front it opens into the body-cavity by a long oblique slit-like mouth, which is in close contact with the ovary. Posteriorly it opens into the cloaca.

The right oviduct is rudimentary: it has the form of a slender tube, opening behind into the cloaca, and usually not more than half an inch in length.

The egg, when discharged from the ovary, consists of the 'yolk' only: the 'white' is an albuminous substance formed round the yolk by the walls of the middle portion of the oviduct; and the shell is secreted by the hindmost part of the oviduct shortly before the egg is laid.

3. The cloaca is similar to that of the male, but larger.

a. The rectum has the same relations as in the male.

b. The urino-genital pouch. The openings of the ureters are in the anterior wall of the pouch, about an eighth of an inch apart. The openings of the oviducts are to the outer sides of those of the ureters, the opening of the left oviduct being



much larger than that of the rudimentary right one.

c. The posterior chamber is as in the male.

### VIII. EXAMINATION OF THE BRAIN.

#### A. Removal of the Brain.

*Cut through the skin of the top of the head along the middle line, and turn the flaps aside. Expose and scrape clean the bones of the roof of the skull. Slice off with a scalpel the skull-roof, taking care not to injure the brain, which lies very close to the bone.*

*Cut away, bit by bit, the roof and sides of the skull, with the scalpel and stout scissors, so as to expose the brain thoroughly, leaving one ear uninjured. Remove the neural arches of the first two vertebrae, and divide the spinal cord transversely. Turn out the brain carefully, cutting across the several nerve-roots one by one. Place the brain in a bottle of strong spirit, with a loose pad of cotton-wool at the bottom, and leave it for two or three days until it is thoroughly hardened. Examine it in weak spirit.*

#### B. External Characters of the Brain.

##### 1. The dorsal surface.

- a. The cerebral hemispheres are a pair of large pyriform bodies closely applied to each other in the median plane. Their surfaces are nearly smooth, and their anterior ends bluntly pointed.
- b. The olfactory lobes are a pair of small conical bodies projecting forwards from the anterior ends of the hemispheres.
- c. The pineal body is a small oval body immediately behind the hemispheres, and in the angle between them.
- d. The optic lobes are a pair of smooth ovoid bodies at the sides of the brain, behind and rather below the hemispheres.

- e. The **cerebellum** is a median elongated oval body marked by a number of transverse fissures. In front it is in contact with the hemispheres; behind, it overlaps the medulla; and laterally it lies above the optic lobes.
- f. The **medulla oblongata** is thick and wide; its anterior end is covered by the cerebellum, and posteriorly it is continuous with the spinal cord.
- 2. The **ventral surface of the brain.**
  - a. The **optic chiasma**, formed by the crossing of the optic nerve, lies between and slightly in front of the optic lobes.
  - b. The **infundibulum** is a small median process, immediately behind the optic chiasma. It is connected with the pituitary body, which is usually left in the skull when the brain is removed.

### C. Bisection of the Brain.

*Divide the brain into right and left halves by a median longitudinal section, so as to expose its cavities.*

- a. The **third ventricle**, or cavity of the fore-brain, is of considerable extent from before backwards, and dorso-ventrally, but is very narrow from side to side. It opens in front by lateral apertures, the **foramina of Monro**, into the **lateral ventricles** of the hemispheres. Its roof is produced upwards into the stalk of the pineal body, and its floor is depressed to form the infundibulum.
- b. The **Sylvian aqueduct**, or cavity of the mid-brain, is small, but communicates laterally with large cavities in the optic lobes.
- c. The **fourth ventricle**, or cavity of the hind-brain, is wide from side to side, but shallow dorso-ventrally.

## IX. THE SENSE ORGANS.

## A. The Eye.

## 1. The eyelids.

The upper eyelid is only slightly movable; the lower one very freely so.

The nictitating membrane, or third eyelid, is a fold at the anterior angle of the eye, lying within the other eyelids, between them and the eyeball. It can be pulled obliquely downwards and backwards over the front of the eyeball with great rapidity.

## 2. The muscles of the eyeball.

*Open the orbit by removing its dorsal wall with strong scissors, taking care not to damage the nictitating membrane.*

- a. The muscles moving the eyeball are essentially the same as those of the dog-fish or rabbit.

*Remove the eyeball completely, cutting through the muscles and the optic nerve as far as possible from the eyeball.*

- b. The muscles of the nictitating membrane are two in number, and lie close to the inner or orbital surface of the eyeball.

*Snip away with scissors the recti and obliqui muscles.*

- i. The **quadratus**, or **bursalis muscle**, is an oblong sheet of muscle, lying in close contact with the inner surface of the eyeball. Its fibres arise along the dorsal edge of the eyeball and run downwards, ending just above the optic nerve in a free border, which forms a tubular tendinous sheath for the tendon of the **pyramidalis** muscle.
- ii. The **pyramidalis** is a small muscle somewhat triangular in shape. It arises from the inner surface of the ventral part of the eyeball, below, and a little anterior to, the entrance of the optic nerve. From this origin its fibres

run upwards and backwards, converging to form a long thread-like tendon, which, passing through the tubular sheath of the quadratus, runs down on the inner surface of the eyeball, and then under it, to be inserted into the ventral border of the nictitating membrane.

By the combined action of these two muscles the rapid movement of the nictitating membrane is effected.

### 3. The structure of the eye.

*Place the eye under water, and divide it by an equatorial incision into two halves.*

The general structure of the eye is the same as that of other vertebrates; but the following points are of special interest.

- a. The pecten is a vascular pigmented fold, which projects into the cavity of the eye from its orbital surface, ventral to the entrance of the optic nerve. It is folded longitudinally like a fan; and should be compared with the falciform process of the dog-fish (p. 290).
- b. The lens is, as in terrestrial animals generally, much flatter than that of the dog-fish.
- c. The sclerotic plates are a ring of small flat bones overlapping each other, and surrounding the eye, just behind the junction of the cornea and the sclerotic.

## B. The Ear.

### 1. The tympano-Eustachian passage.

This is the modified hyo-mandibular cleft of the embryo, corresponding to the spiracle of the dog-fish. Its connection with the ear is of a purely secondary character. It serves to keep the air in the tympanic cavity at the same pressure as outside.

- a. The **external auditory meatus** is the outer part of this passage, from the exterior to the tympanic membrane. The external aperture is a circular hole on the side of the head, behind and below the posterior border of the orbit.

*Cut away the lower jaw. Cut away the external meatus carefully with scissors, so as to expose the tympanic membrane.*

- b. The **tympanic membrane** is a thin transparent septum separating the external meatus from the tympanic cavity.
- c. The **columella** is a small rod of bone and cartilage lying on the inner side of the tympanic membrane, but easily seen through it. It lies almost horizontal, its free anterior end forming a slight projection in the centre of the membrane.

The columella is formed from the uppermost part of the cartilage of the hyoidean arch, and probably corresponds to part, or the whole, of the hyo-mandibular cartilage of the dog-fish.

*Cut across the tympanic membrane in front of the columella, to open the tympanic cavity.*

- d. The **tympanic cavity** is the middle, dilated portion of the tympano-Eustachian passage. On its inner wall is the **fenestra ovalis**, into which the posterior end of the columella is inserted.
- e. The **Eustachian tube** is the innermost division of the tympano-Eustachian passage. It is a narrow tube, leading from the anterior and lower angle of the tympanic cavity, and running forwards and inwards between the proper base of the skull and the basi-temporal bone. The Eustachian tubes of the two sides unite, and open into the roof of the mouth by a median aperture, just behind the posterior border of the narial opening, and in

front of the transverse ridge forming the hinder border of the palate.

## 2. The auditory organ.

The essential organ of hearing is imbedded in the side-wall of the skull. It is, however, easy to dissect, as the layer of bone immediately investing it is very firm and compact, and so preserves the shape of the organ, while the rest of the bone is soft and spongy, and easily removed.

*Remove the hinder part of the side of the skull, containing the auditory organ ; and carefully pick away with scalpel and forceps the outer spongy layer of bone, until the shape of the organ can be clearly seen.*

- a. The anterior vertical semicircular canal lies in the natural position of the parts, close alongside the posterior border of the optic lobe and the side of the cerebellum.
- b. The posterior vertical semicircular canal lies almost immediately below the anterior vertical canal.
- c. The horizontal semicircular canal lies opposite the lower border of the optic lobe and the hinder end of the cerebellum.

The three semicircular canals, as in other vertebrates, are in three planes, each at right angles to the other two.

## CHAPTER XVII.

## THE DEVELOPMENT OF THE CHICK.

## I. PRACTICAL INSTRUCTIONS.

*The following apparatus is requisite and should be prepared before the eggs are inserted.*

*An incubator (those made by Hearson are the best), the temperature of which must be maintained constant at  $41.5^{\circ}\text{C}$ . (or  $103^{\circ}$ – $105^{\circ}\text{F}$ .) by a reliable thermostat. Each egg should have the date of insertion written on it in pencil. A number of metal stands with small gas jets under each, and connection for gas tubing, though not essential, are desirable to carry the dishes of warm salt solution, in which the eggs are to be placed during examination. A convenient size is  $8\frac{1}{2}$  inches by 6 inches.*

*A corresponding number of enamelled pie-dishes, each with a plaster of Paris mould to carry the egg. These moulds are easily made by pouring the plaster into the dish and depressing the surface with a pot egg. A thermometer should be placed in each dish, and warm 0.75 per cent. salt-solution added. The dish is placed on the warm stage, the gas jet lit and turned down, and the dish allowed to rise to the desired temperature. When this is reached the gas must be reduced to a very minute flame.*

*Dissecting instruments, watch-glasses, and slides are also required. The most useful fixative is Bouin's fluid (aqueous), in which embryos may be allowed to remain for several days or even weeks without hurt, though an hour or two is sufficient for fixation. The excess of this fixative must be removed by repeated changes of 70 per cent. or 90 per cent. alcohol with lithium carbonate added.*

*For general purposes when histological details are not required, formaldehyde is useful. It fixes rapidly, and the specimen can be transferred direct to 70 per cent. alcohol. Before staining in bulk, remove all traces of acid by thoroughly washing in alcohol.*

*For making sections of the earlier stages (cleavage and up to twelve hours' incubation) an osmic acid mixture, such as Flemming's strong mixture (see Appendix), is advisable. Fixation will be complete in five or ten minutes. The embryos should then be well washed in running water and the sections prepared as soon as possible.*

*Another excellent fixative is sublimate-acetic mixture (v. Appendix). The sections should be treated with a weak solution of tincture of iodine before staining.*

### **Preparation of Preserved Embryos.**

*In order to fix the embryo, the blastoderm must be removed from the yolk. Open the egg as directed on p. 487, cut round the outer margin of the blastoderm, and, holding its edge with fine forceps, draw it away from the yolk. Wave it gently to and fro in the salt solution to detach the vitelline membrane and any adherent particles of yolk; and finally remove the blastoderm from the bath by placing a small Petri-dish under it and lifting the dish and its contents horizontally out of the fluid. Suck out the excess of salt solution from the Petri-dish with a pipette, leaving only enough to cover the blastoderm. The fixative should now be added from a pipette until the whole is well covered.*

*The length of time of fixation varies with the reagent employed.*

*For staining, weak borax-carminc is most generally useful, and the embryos can be left in it over night. Hæmatoxylin serves equally well. Differentiate with acid alcohol, dehydrate, clear, and mount in balsam.*

### **To prepare Sections :—**

*Fix, harden, stain, and dehydrate as before. Cut away the blastoderm from around the embryo. Place in xylol (or toluol),*



then transfer to a mixture of xylol and soft paraffin at the temperature of the bath for half an hour, and again to pure paraffin for one to four hours, according to size. A paraffin melting at  $56^{\circ}\text{C}$ . will be found generally useful.

Prepare a deep watch-glass by smearing it very thinly with glycerine and placing in it a square cover-slip rather larger than

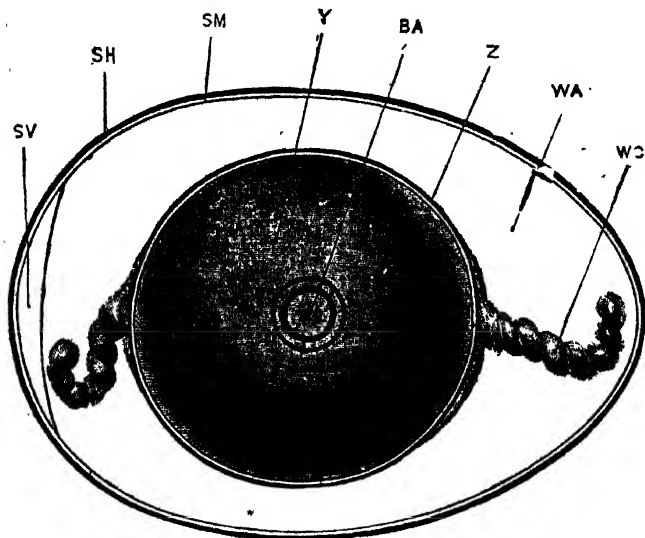


FIG. 76.—The Hen's Egg at the time of laying.  $\times \frac{1}{2}$ .

BA, blastoderm. SH, egg shell. SM, shell membrane. SV, air chamber. WA, white or albumen. WC, chalazae, or twisted cord of denser albumen. Y, yolk. Z, vitelline membrane.

the blastoderm, fill it with paraffin, insert the embryo with a warm spatula, orientate quickly with needle and forceps, and lower it into a dish of cold water. Allow to set thoroughly. Remove the block so formed. Trim it with a sharp knife so as to remove the cover-slip and leave the embryo in a rectangular block, fix this on the carrier of the microtome and cut into sections. Transverse sections are the best to begin with.

*Paraffin sections ready cut may easily be mounted by the following procedure:—Place a clean slide on a white sheet of paper. Draw a pencil outline and then a line  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch from one end across the outline to allow for the label. Make a mixture of distilled water and Mayer's albumen (v. Appendix) in the proportion of 10 c.c. water to 1 drop of albumen, and cover the part of the slide on which you wish to mount the sections with some of the mixture. Upon this float the sections in the desired order, and warm over a flame or on the paraffin oven until the sections are flattened out. Care must be taken not to melt the paraffin. Then run off the water by putting a piece of blotting-paper on the vacant end of the slide, and tilting the latter. Arrange the sections neatly in order, and leave them till perfectly dry. When dry, the paraffin can be dissolved out with xylol, and the sections stained, dehydrated, and mounted in balsam.*

## II. GENERAL DESCRIPTION.

The hen's egg is formed by the union of the 'mature' egg (that is, the egg-cell after attaining its full size and forming its polar cells by unequal division), and the 'mature' spermatozoon—that is, one of the sperm-cells formed by the final equal division and differentiation of a sperm mother-cell. These two cells when ready to unite are termed **gametes**, and when united they form a **zygote**. Hence, strictly speaking, the hen's egg or zygote is a double structure composed of both male and female nucleus and protoplasm.

All the ova of a hen are produced from her left ovary. The right ovary and oviduct disappear or shrivel early in life. 'Good layers' produce 100 eggs or more in a season, together with many more immature ova which are absorbed towards the end of the egg-laying period. The ovary then diminishes greatly in extent, and the oviduct shrinks from being a tube 2 feet long and  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch wide, to one 6 inches long and  $\frac{1}{12}$  inch thick. In order to see the mature ovary, a hen or pigeon should be examined as on p. 459. The ripe ova are then

seen to be enclosed in vascular follicles, and the whole organ is in a state of intense anabolic activity.

### 1. Cleavage ('segmentation') of the Egg.

Cleavage is the process by which the non-cellular zygote becomes divided into cells. The first few generations of cells are called **blastomeres**. The egg of a bird consists of cytoplasm distended very greatly by concentric layers of white and yellow

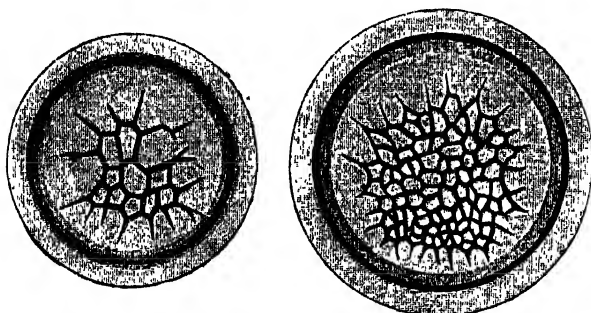


FIG. 77.—An early stage in the cleavage of the germinal disc of the Hen's Egg. (After Coste and Duval.)  $\times 10$ .

FIG. 78.—A later stage, in which the germinal disc has increased in size and the blastomeres have, by further division, become smaller and more numerous. (After Coste and Duval.)  $\times 10$ .

Both these figures are from eggs taken from the lower part of the oviduct of the hen.

yolk, except for a lens-shaped area in which the nucleus lies. This region appears as a white disc when viewed from above, and is known as the 'germinal disc,' as it gives rise to the greater part of the bird. The early cleavage is confined to this area. It begins during the passage of the egg down the oviduct, and is completed by the time the egg is laid. The first step in the process is the appearance of two vertical, shallow furrows, at right angles to one another, which penetrate

the surface of the disc, but do not extend to the bottom of the cytoplasmic disc. Four radial fissures then appear about midway between the former furrows. These are again followed by others, some of which are again radial in arrangement, whilst others join up two or more radial furrows. In this way the surface of the disc is, as it were, converted into a mosaic of small polygonal areas, bounded peripherally by larger irregular divisions which form the germ-wall.

This mosaic is a manifestation of cell-division. The zygote-nucleus divides horizontally before the cleavage of cytoplasm

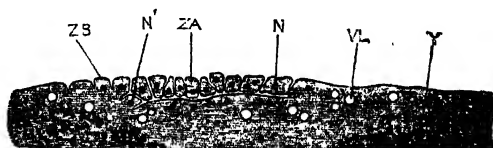


FIG. 79.—Section through the germinal disc and adjacent parts of the yolk of a Hen's Egg about the middle of its stay in uterus. The plane of section corresponds to a vertical line drawn through the centre of Fig. 78. (After Duval.)  $\times 25$ .

N, nucleus of completed blastomere. N', nucleus of blastomere not yet completely separated from the yolk. VL, vacuole. Y, yolk. ZA, completed blastomere. ZB, incompletely separated blastomere.

takes place, and the early cleavage of the egg or zygote is a division into incomplete cells. Unlike the cleavage of most animal eggs, that of the hen is partial or *meroblastic* owing to the great mass of egg-yolk, which appears to prevent the formation of cells except over the germinal disc. This layer of cells into which the surface of the disc is transformed is at first a single one, but by vertical division of its nuclei followed by horizontal divisions of the cytoplasm soon becomes converted into a double one. The disc is now spoken of as the **blastoderm**. At or about this stage the egg is laid (figs. 76 and 80).

## 2. The First Day : Formation of the Germinal Layers.

The blastoderm at the time of laying is a circular patch, about 3.5 mm. in diameter, on the surface of the yolk.

Owing to its lower specific gravity the blastoderm is always uppermost, however the egg be rolled over. It consists of a

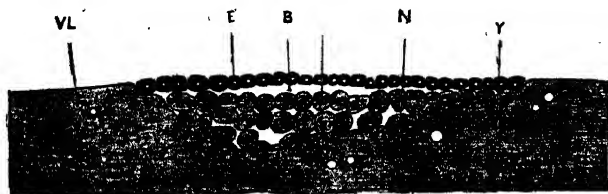


FIG. 80.—Vertical section of the blastoderm and adjacent part of the yolk of a Hen's Egg towards the close of cleavage. The anterior edge is to the right, the posterior edge to the left hand. (After Duval.)  $\times 25$ .

B blastocoel. E, epiblast. N', nucleus of blastomere, which as yet is only incompletely separated from the yolk. VL, vacuole. Y, yolk. ZL, one of the lower-layer cells.

marginal white rim, the area opaca, and a central circular, more translucent portion, the area pallucida.

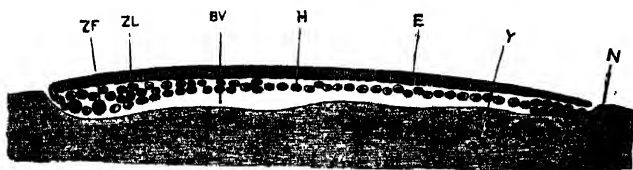


FIG. 81.—Vertical section of the blastoderm and adjacent parts of the yolk of a Hen's Egg at the time of laying, but before the beginning of incubation. The anterior edge of the blastoderm is to the right, the posterior edge to the left side of the figure. (After Duval.)  $\times 25$ .

BV, subgerminal cavity. E, epiblast. H, hypoblast. N', nucleus in yolk round which a cell will be formed later. Y, yolk. ZF, formative cell. ZL, lower-layer cells.

Sections of the blastoderm show that the disc of cells is not uniform in structure. It consists of several layers. Among these a cavity, the blastocoel, is formed by the ac-

cumulation of fluid. As the disc expands, the cells above are thinned out to form an outer germinal layer, the ectoderm or epiblast, and a lower germinal layer, the endoderm or hypoblast (fig. 81). The cavity below the hypoblast is called the subgerminal cavity, and corresponds to the archenteron of the frog.

After incubation has begun, the blastoderm spreads rapidly whilst retaining its circular shape. By the end of the first day it is 20 mm. in diameter; by the end of the second it has spread about half-way round the egg. Complete enclosure of the yolk is not effected until the seventeenth day.

#### The Primitive Streak: Origin of the Mesoblast.

Shortly after the beginning of incubation an opaque band becomes visible in the posterior part of the pellucid area,

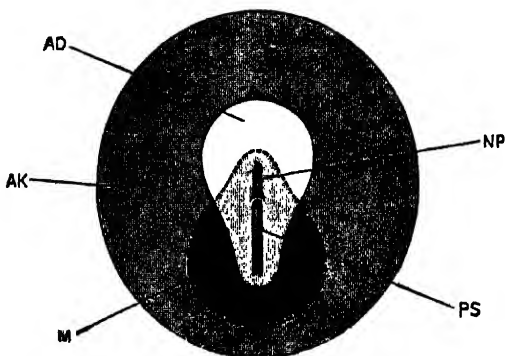


FIG. 82.—A diagrammatic figure of the blastoderm of a Hen's Egg about the twentieth hour of incubation. (In part after Duval.)  $\times 8$ .

AD, area pellucida: the part left white consists of epiblast and hypoblast alone: in the hinder part of the pyriform area, covered by the light shading, mesoblast is present as well. AK, area opaca. M, dotted line indicating the boundary of the mesoblast. NP, neural plate, the rudiment of the central nervous system. PS, primitive streak.

which soon acquires an elongated appearance and is known as the primitive streak. It grows rapidly backwards, and

the pellucid area elongates simultaneously, so that the primitive streak always lies entirely in that area, which thus assumes an oval and then a pear-shaped outline. The appearance of the blastoderm at the twentieth hour is seen in fig. 82.

As the primitive streak elongates a fine transparent line may be seen running down its centre. This appearance is caused by a groove, the **primitive groove**, which traverses the length of the primitive streak and terminates in front in a small pit.

Transverse sections through the primitive streak show that it is a keel-like band of proliferating epiblast (fig. 83), and that the lower-layer or hypoblast cells have little or no

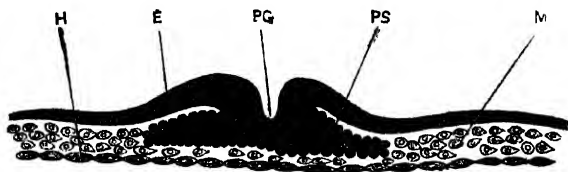


FIG. 83.—Transverse section across the blastoderm of a *Hen's Egg* about the twentieth hour of incubation, the section passing through the primitive streak about the middle of its length.  $\times 200$ .

E, epiblast. H, hypoblast. M, mesoblast. PG, primitive groove. PS, primitive streak.

share in its formation. The cells that it buds off migrate into the spaces between the epiblast and hypoblast as a paired sheet of loose tissue. This tissue is the **mesoderm** or **mesoblast**, and the whole of this middle germinal layer is thus derived from the primitive streak by proliferation of the epiblast.

### Fate of the Germinal Layers.

The **epiblast** or covering layer of the blastoderm gives rise to the following organs and tissues of the chick:—The epidermis and its appendages (scales, feathers, &c.); the

nervous system ; the sensory epithelium of the sense-organs ; the lining of the mouth and of the cloaca.

The **hypoblast** gives rise to the epithelium of the alimentary canal and of the glands that spring from it.

The **mesoblast** gives rise to all the connective tissue, vascular, muscular and skeletal structures, as well as to the urinary and reproductive organs.

### The Notochord and Medullary Folds.

Immediately in front of the primitive streak a less clearly defined opaque area appears towards the end of the first day, which is shown by sections to be a forward continuation of the primitive streak, inseparably fused, however,

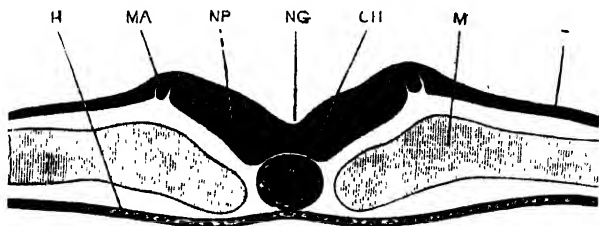


FIG. 84.—Transverse section across the body of a **Chick Embryo** at the twenty-fourth hour of incubation.  $\times 200$ .

CH, notochord. E, epiblast. H, hypoblast. M, mesoblast. MA, neura crest. NG, neural groove. NP, neural plate.

with the hypoblast. This structure, which is called the **head-process**, is destined to form the **notochord** or fore-runner of the vertebral column.

Examination of the blastoderm in front of the primitive streak at about the sixteenth hour of incubation shows that the epiblast is several cells thick (the **neural** or **medullary plate**) and is folded in the middle line to form the first trace of the nervous system—the **neural** or **medullary folds**—and that the centre or axis of the head-process possesses for the hinder part of its length a rod of cells—the notochord already referred to.



The mesoblast at present spreads out like a pair of wings. The first definite organs to form are the nervous system of the head, and the notochord. At the end of the first day, therefore, the embryo is almost all head.

### 3. The Second Day.

On the first day a semicircular fold, or intucking of the blastoderm (the head-fold) had appeared in front of the medullary plate, which makes great progress on this day, and has the effect of folding off the anterior region of the embryo from the underlying yolk. The formation of blood-vessels on the surface of the yolk takes place at the same time, and by the forty-eighth hour a circulation of blood within and without the embryo is established.

The chief changes in the embryo are increase in its length and differentiation of the constituent layers. The development of the brain is hastened on. The neural folds become higher and meet in the mid-dorsal line, forming the neural tube and crest. The anterior half of this tube expands to form a succession of swellings—the segments of the brain—whilst the spinal cord remains slender, and minute, closely set thickenings of the neural crest foreshadow the future ganglia. Two of the brain swellings are especially noticeable. These are optic vesicles and form the first trace of the eyes. Meanwhile the ears are indicated by a pair of depressions of the epiblast in the region of the future hind-brain (fig. 86, EI).

The most striking change made in the embryo during the second day is the multiplication of the six or seven paired blocks of tissue on either side of the nervous system and notochord which had appeared on the first day. These blocks or somites are portions of the mesoblastic sheets cut off by longitudinal and transverse fissures. They develop in order from before backwards, beginning at the level of the ear. They give rise to all voluntary muscles (except those of the head), the axial skeleton of the body, and the dermis.

Transverse sections of a two-day chick show (fig. 90, MP) that these somites are at first hollow structures. Very shortly afterwards, by a horizontal slit in the lateral wings

of the primitive streak, the mesoblast from which they are cut off becomes hollow too. This latter cavity forms the **coelom** or body-cavity of the future chick. The outer wall of the cavity forms the body wall of the chick, and is there-

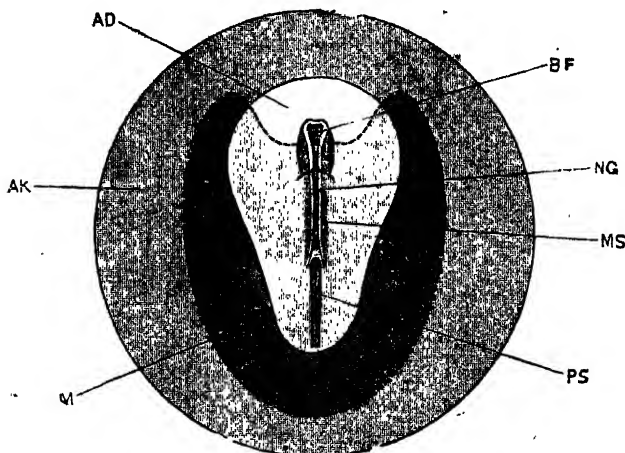


FIG. 85.—A diagrammatic figure of the blastoderm of a Hen's Egg about the twenty-fourth hour of incubation. (In part after Duval.)  $\times 8$ .

AD, area pellucida: the part left white is the proamnion, and consists of epiblast and hypoblast alone: in the hinder part of the pyriform area pellucida, covered by the light shading, mesoblast is present as well. AK, area opaca. BF, commencing fore-brain. M, dotted line indicating the limit to which the mesoblast has spread. MS, mesoblastic somite or segment. NG, neural groove. PS, primitive streak.

fore called the **somatopleure**, whilst the inner wall, at present stretched over the yolk, will form the wall of the gut or **splanchnopleure**. The hypoblast, meanwhile, has become a definite layer and is raised up from the yolk over that portion of the head which is folded off from the egg; while elsewhere it is fairly closely adherent to the yolk, and with the splanchnopleuric mesoderm forms the **yolk-sac**. The uplifted portion of the gut is the **fore-gut**.

*Examine a series of sections, or selected sections, of a two-day-chick. Draw and name the parts.*

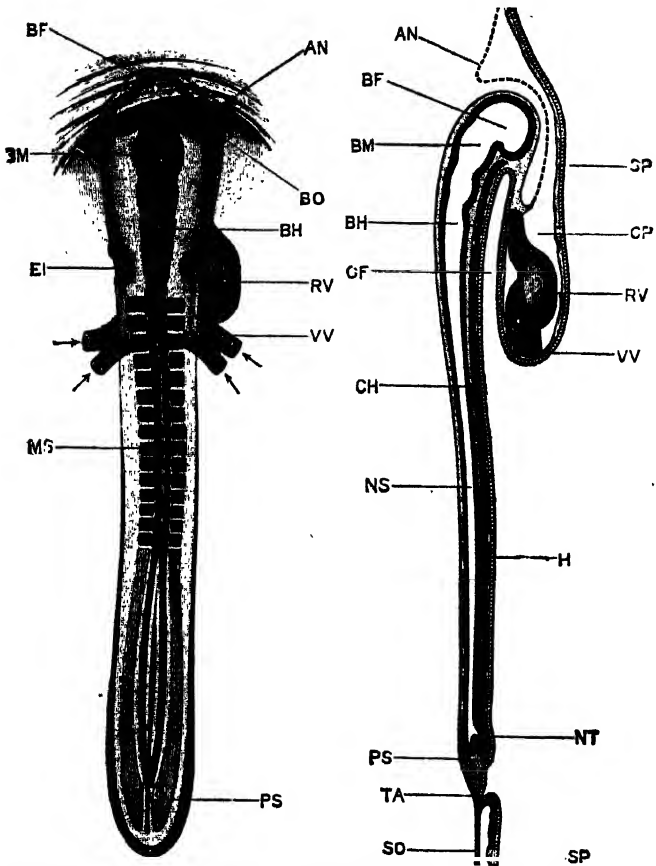


FIG. 86.—A Chick Embryo at the thirty sixth hour of incubation ; seen from the dorsal surface.  $\times 20$ .

FIG. 87.—A median longitudinal, or sagittal, section of a Chick Embryo at the thirty-sixth hour of incubation.  $\times 20$ .

AN, head fold of the amnion. BF, fore-brain. BH, hind-brain. BM, mid-brain. BO, optic vesicle. CH, notochord. CP, pericardial cavity. EI, auditory pit. GF, fore-gut, or anterior portion of the mesenteron. H, hypoblast. MS, mesoblastic somite or segment. NS, spinal cord. NT, neurenteric canal. PS, primitive streak. RV, ventricular portion of the heart. SO, somatopleure. SP, splanchnopleure. TA, allantois. VV, vitelline veins.

In the region of the somites the undivided mesoblast is, during the second day, differentiated to form the embryonic kidney or mesonephros (fig. 90, KC). This arises from the intermediate cell-masses—*i.e.*, the transitory stalks by which, for a time, the somites remain attached to the lateral sheets of mesoblast.

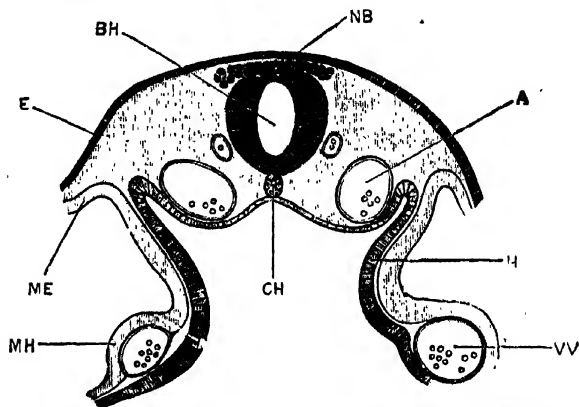


FIG. 88.—Transverse section across the head of a Chick Embryo at the forty-third hour of incubation. The section is taken immediately behind the auditory pits and the heart, and passes through the rudiments of the glosso-pharyngeal nerves.  $\times 100$ .

A, aorta. BH, cavity of hind-brain. CH, notochord. E, epiblast. H, hypoblast. ME, somatopleuric layer of mesoblast. MH, splanchnopleuric layer of mesoblast. NB, neural crest: the part shown in the figure gives rise later on to the ganglia of the glosso-pharyngeal nerves. VV, vitelline vein.

### The Blood-vessels.

The vascular system on the second day consists of (1) paired vitelline veins bringing nutritious blood from the yolk to the heart; (2) tubular heart; (3) paired aorta dividing into: (4) vitelline arteries. In addition there is a well-developed circulation in the capillaries of the yolk-sac. The veins of the embryo have scarcely begun to develop.

### 4. The Third Day. The Amnion.

As the embryo increases rapidly in weight, especially at its head-end, it tends to sink down into the soft yolk. This

tendency is probably the reason why certain folds of the somatopleure (head-fold, lateral folds, tail-fold) gradually enclose and surround the body. These folds constitute the amnion or caul (figs. 86, 90, AN), which looks like a sort of veil. The space between the two layers of the amnion is part of the coelom.

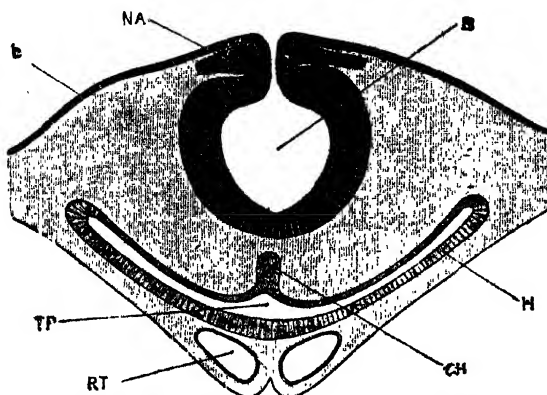


FIG. 89.—Transverse section across the head of a Chick Embryo at the twenty-fourth hour of incubation, passing through the region of the mid-brain.  $\times 100$ .

B, cavity of the mid-brain. CH, notochord, not yet separated from the hypoblastic wall of the pharynx. E, epiblast. H, hypoblast. NA, neural crest. RT, rudiment of heart. TP, pharynx.

### A. External Features.

The great size of the head is a marked feature of this and succeeding stages, and the flexure both of the fore-brain on the hind-brain and of the head upon the trunk are equally noticeable. The head is also twisted over to the left side so that the body is no longer symmetrical. The trunk has elongated and the number of body-segments (as indicated by the somites) has increased. There is still no trace of wing or leg. The hyoidean and first three 'branchial' clefts become distinct. The mouth is formed by perforation of the oral membrane, a thin partition between the pharynx and a depression from the surface known as the stomodæum.

## B. Anatomy.

The third day is the most eventful date of the whole incubation period; for it is during that day that the rudiments of all the internal organs of the adult are established.

### aa. Alimentary Canal.

The pharynx undergoes a transformation; four pairs of pouches grow outwards towards the surface of the head.

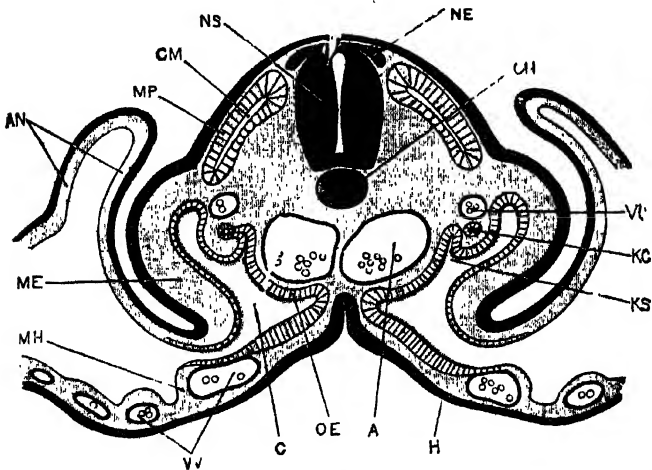


FIG. 90.—A transverse section across the body of a Chick Embryo at the forty-eighth hour of incubation.  $\times 150$ .

A, aorta. AN, amnion. C, body cavity or coelom. CH, notochord. CM, myocoel, or cavity of mesoblastic somite. H, hypoblast forming roof of midgut. KC, Wolfian duct. KS, nephrostome. ME, somatopleuric layer of mesoblast. MH, splanchnopleuric layer of mesoblast. MP, muscle plate. NE, rudiment of spinal ganglion. NS, spinal cord. OE, genital epithelium. VC, posterior cardinal vein. VV, vitelline vein.

These outgrowths meet with corresponding ingrowths from the surface. The first pouch is the hyomandibular, and gives rise to part of the Eustachian tube and tympanic cavity. The second and third pouches (first and second 'branchial') open to the exterior for a few hours, but subsequently close up

and disappear. The fourth pouch (third 'branchial') does not open to the surface of the neck, and disappears.

These pouches correspond to the spiracle and first three gill-pouches of the dog-fish, but are at no time respiratory organs.

The œsophagus, trachea, and lungs begin their development at this period; but the alimentary tract is still a straight tube, the middle portion of which is open to the yolk-sac.

The formation of the tail-fold causes the terminal portion of the gut to become tubular in contrast to the open mid-gut. From this hind-gut there develops on the third day a pouch-like outgrowth—the **allantois**, which ultimately expands to form a stalked bladder-like sac, which extends through the coelom between the amniotic folds over the surface of the embryo and yolk-sac, and comes into close contact with the shell. The allantois is comparable with the bladder of the frog, but is cast off at the time of hatching. It is very highly vascular, and its function is that of absorbing oxygen from the air-chamber inside the shell and from the atmosphere that penetrates through the pores of the shell. The allantois therefore is the respiratory organ of the embryo, just as the yolk-sac is the alimentary organ until the time of hatching.

#### **bb. Vascular System.**

The heart on the third day is bent into a S-shaped loop when seen from the left side. The upper (i.e. dorsal) curve of the above S represents the auricle, the lower (ventral) one the ventricle, leading to the truncus. From the truncus six pairs of aortic arches arise and run in the substance of the visceral arches (mandibular, hyoidean, first, second, third and fourth branchial), but the third branchial arch is vestigial. Only three pairs are in existence at a given time.

These join together on each side of the pharynx, and after supplying the head form the paired dorsal aorta; and this coursing backwards gives off branches to the trunk and then divides into arteries for the yolk-sac and allantois respectively. The veins meantime have developed. These

embryonic veins are very different from those of the land bird. They consist of a pair of anterior and a pair of posterior cardinal veins like those of a dog-fish, and again, as in the fish, these four veins open into a paired ductus Cuvieri before reaching the sinus venosus. There is also a median vein which receives blood from the yolk-sac and allantois, and forms the *docius venosus*, which thus returns blood, aerated and laden with yolk, direct to the heart.

#### cc. The Muscles, Skeleton and Connective Tissues.

These arise mainly from the mesoderm somites which increase in number from before backwards. About thirty-six are present at the end of the third day. The full number is attained on the sixth day. Their relations are as follows :—

- 1-4. Occipital.
- 5-16. Cervical.
- 17-19. Brachial.
- 20-25. Abdominal.
- 26-32. Pelvic.
- 33-35. Cloacal.
- 36-52. Caudal.

#### dd. The Renal Organs.

The kidney of vertebrates shows a division into three sets of structures (see pp. 264 and 364), called respectively **pronephros**, **mesonephros**, and **metanephros**.

The **pronephros** is the larval kidney, and as few vertebrates pass through a larval stage in their life-history, this structure is very imperfect.

The **mesonephros** is the functional kidney of the adult fish and amphibian and the embryonic functional kidney (**Wolfian body**) of higher forms. Accordingly it is always well developed, but for a varying time.

The **metanephros** is the functional kidney of adult birds, reptiles, and mammals. It does not begin to function fully until birth.



In the chick the pronephros is, as would be expected, reduced to a mere vestige. Its tubules occur in segments 5-15 (as reckoned by the somites), but are very imperfect. They arise at the end of the second day and disappear on the fourth day. The pronephric duct into which they open arises partly by their union and partly by an outgrowth from the anterior tubules which grows backwards until it acquires an opening into the cloaca. This duct is the **Wolffian duct**, and corresponds with the mesonephric duct of the dog-fish.

The mesonephros arises as a series of tubules in somites 16-32 (fig. 90, KC). Each tubule is a modified part of the intermediate cell-mass, and opens into the Wolffian duct. Each has, moreover, a Malpighian body at its inner end. The whole organ receives its blood in part from the dorsal aortal and in part from the posterior cardinal veins, which thus form a renal portal system. Degeneration of the mesonephros begins about the tenth day, and ultimately the organ loses its excretory function and becomes converted into the epididymis of the cock and into a functionless vestige in the hen.

The metanephros begins its development upon the fourth day, and extends from somites 25-33.

## ee. The Organs of Sense.

**The Eye.**—As in vertebrates generally, the retina or essential part of the eye is derived from the brain, whilst the lens is an ingrowth of the surface epiblast. The retina develops from the optic vesicle (figs. 91, 92). On the second day these vesicles grow rapidly, and by the end of that day are constricted at their base and pitted inwards on their outer surface. The lens arises as a hollow pitting-in of the surface epiblast, as in fig. 91, OL.

On the third day the optic vesicle has doubled upon itself to form the retina on the inner side and the pigment layer on the outer. The stalk by which it is connected with the brain becomes the basis of the optic 'nerve,' and along

its tract nerve-fibres grow out from the retinal ganglion-cells to the brain.

The optic 'nerve' is therefore not a nerve but a tract leading from the peripheral brain ganglion-cells of the retina to the visual centres.

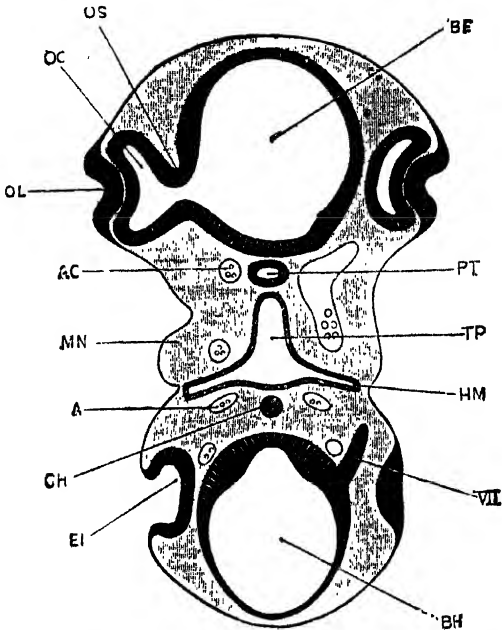


FIG. 91.—Transverse section across the head of a Chick Embryo at the forty-eighth hour of incubation. The section is taken along a line corresponding to one joining the reference letters EI and OL in the three-day embryo shown in fig. 94. Owing to the cranial flexure, both fore-brain and hind-brain are cut by the section. The right side of the section is slightly anterior in position to the left side.  $\times 60$ .

A, aorta. AC, carotid artery. BF, cavity of fore-brain. BH, cavity of hind-brain. CH, notochord. EI, auditory pit. HM, hyo-mandibular cleft. MN, mandibular arch. OC, cavity of optic cup. OL, invagination of epiblast to form the lens. OS, optic stalk. PT, pituitary body. TP, pharynx. VII, facial nerve.

The rods and cones are the last parts to be formed. Sclerotic, cornea, and choroid are formed from the mesoblast.

**The Ear.**—The ears arise during the second day as a pair of epiblastic depressions at the sides of the hind-brain (fig. 91, EI). These pits sink inwards and become converted into the two auditory vesicles, the mouths of which close by the end of the third day.

These vesicles give rise to the membranous labyrinth. By foldings of their walls the utricle becomes constricted

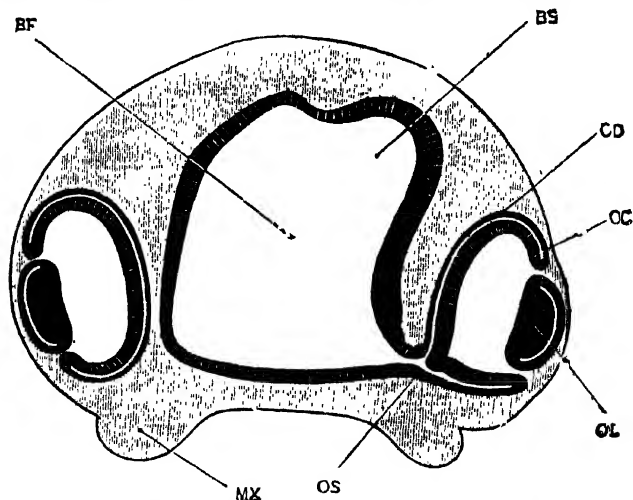


FIG. 92.—Transverse section across the fore-brain and eye of a Chick Embryo at the sixtieth hour of incubation. On the right side the section passes through the optic stalk; on the left side it passes just behind the stalk.  $\times 45$ .

BF, cavity of fore-brain. BS, cavity of cerebral hemisphere. MX, maxillary arch. OC, inner wall of optic cup. OD, outer wall of optic cup. OL, lens. OS, optic stalk.

off from the sacculus. From the utricle the semicircular canals are formed; from the sacculus the cochlea arises. These changes take place between the fifth and eleventh days. The entire epithelial lining of the labyrinth is thus derived from the epiblast.

The accessory structures of the ear are of very diverse nature, and are too complex for description in this place.

The cavity of the middle ear and Eustachian tube develops in part from the first or hyomandibular visceral cleft.

The succeeding changes in the egg are as follows :—

**Fourth day.**—The egg albumen becomes restricted to a small area, which is gradually enclosed by the allantois.

The wings and legs make their appearance as flattened conical buds. The internal changes described during the third day are extended. The permanent kidney and its duct, the ureter, are developed.

**Fifth day.**—The embryo is so strongly flexed that the head and tail are almost in contact. The cartilaginous elements of the skeleton have appeared.

**Sixth day.**—The characters of a bird are developed in the wings and feet, skull, and alimentary canal.

**Seventh day.**—The amnion and allantois commence rhythmical contractile movements by which the embryo is rocked to and fro. The head now ceases to grow more rapidly than the body.

**Ninth day.**—Feathers begin to protrude through the skin, though still enclosed within their sheaths.

**Twentieth day.**—The beak perforates the inner shell-membrane and the chick breathes air. The allantois circulation ceases and that of the lungs begins.

**Twenty-first day.**—The chick is hatched.

### III. OBSERVATIONS ON THE LIVING EGG.

*Place an egg of the desired age in a dish of warm salt-solution, allowing it to rest on the plaster mould and just covering with fluid. Carefully remove the shell with forceps over the uppermost area so as to make a window an inch or an inch and a half in diameter. Allow some of the egg-white to escape into the dish, but take great care to avoid puncturing the yolk. The blastoderm will be found lying just under the aperture, and if the egg has developed normally the following structures will be visible and should be drawn, using a hand-lens when necessary (figs. 85–94). The large end of the egg should be drawn pointing to the left of the observer.*

**End of the first day (fig. 85).**—The neural folds are well

developed and about to meet in the region of mid- and hind-brains. Four to six pairs of somites have appeared. The primitive streak is still clearly marked, and the vitelline veins are established.

**At the thirty-sixth hour (figs. 86, 93).—**The vascular area (AV fig. 93) has been organised and the heart and paired aorta have developed in the embryo. The neural folds have met along the mid-dorsal line, except at the hinder end of the body, and the brain occupies about half the total length of the tubular nervous system. The first indications of the eye

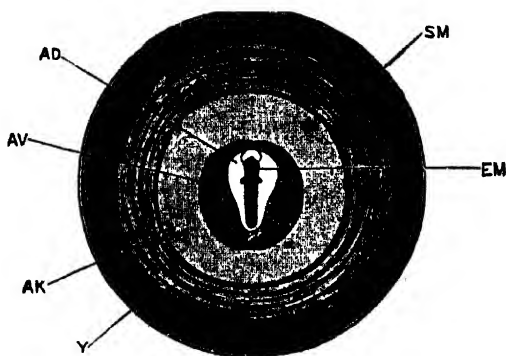
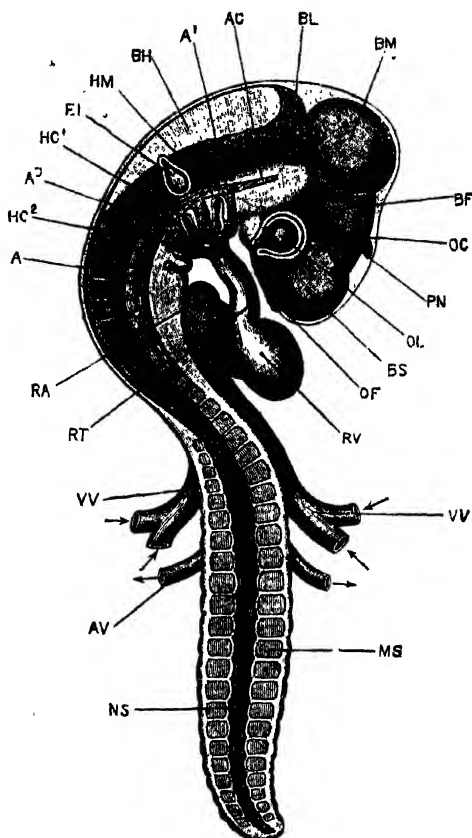


FIG. 93.—The yolk of a Hen's Egg at the thirty-sixth hour from the beginning of incubation. The structure of the embryo at this stage is shown on a larger scale in figs. 86 and 87.  $\times \frac{2}{3}$ .

AD, area pellucida of the blastoderm. AK, area opaca. AV, area vasculosa. EM, embryo. SM, vitelline membrane. Y, yolk-sac.

and ear respectively are seen in the optic vesicles and auditory vesicles (BO and EI fig. 86). The head-fold of the amnion is rising up. From twelve to fourteen pairs of somites are present.

**At the forty-eighth hour.—**The cranial flexure and twisting of the head over to the left side now render the embryo asymmetrical. The vascular area has increased, and the vitelline arteries are distinct and lie immediately behind the vitelline veins. The amniotic folds have increased in extent and the number of somites is now about 27–28.



**FIG. 34.**—A Chick Embryo at the end of the third day of incubation. Owing to the twisting of the fore part of the embryo, the head and neck are seen from the right side, and the hinder part of the body from the dorsal surface. The amnion has been removed.  $\times 20$ .

A, dorsal aorta. A 1, first or mandibular aortic arch. A 3, third aortic arch, in the first branchial arch. AC, carotid artery. AV, vitelline artery. BF, thalamencephalon or fore-brain. BH, medulla oblongata. BL, cerebellum. BM, mid-brain. BS, cerebral hemisphere. EI, auditory vesicle. HC 1, first branchial cleft. HC 2, second branchial cleft. HM, hyo-mandibular cleft. MS, mesoblastic somite or segment. NS, spinal cord. OC, optic cup. OF, olfactory pit. OL, lens. PN, pineal body. RA, auricle of heart. RT, truncus arteriosus. RV, ventricle of heart. VV, vitelline veins.

**At the end of the third day (fig. 94).—**The pharynx and the four pharyngeal pouches (hyomandibular slit, first, second and third branchial clefts) have appeared, and the first three aortic arches are established. The regions of the brain are demarcated; both the eye and the ear are now very clearly indicated. The number of somites has greatly increased. The chief embryonic venous spaces (cardinal veins) can be easily seen and traced to their opening into the sinus venosus. The circulation of the blood should be carefully followed and drawn.

**At the end of the fourth or fifth day.—**The allantois grows out of the hind-gut. The wing and leg bud out from the sides and become indistinctly segmented by joints. No traces of digits are as yet present. The head is now relatively enormous, and the cranial flexure, or bending of the fore-brain upon the hind-brain, passes through an angle of at least  $120^{\circ}$ . The amnion is now fully developed and encloses the entire embryo in a sort of water-bath.

*The rapid development of the chick may be best ascertained by sketching an embryo of, say, about 36 hours in the morning and making another sketch in the late afternoon. If kept in warm salt-solution during this interval, the embryo will be found to have developed considerably. It must, of course, remain attached to the yolk.*

## APPENDIX.

## LIST OF REAGENTS.

## I. REAGENTS FOR KILLING, HARDENING, PRESERVING, AND DISSOCIATING

**ABSOLUTE ALCOHOL.**

*Use.*—Fixative and hardening reagent, but most used for dehydrating specimens before clearing them.

**ALCOHOL (Spirit).**

It is used of the following strengths : 90 per cent., 70 per cent., 50 per cent., 30 per cent.

*Preparation.*—The weaker solutions are obtained by diluting the commercial 95 per cent. spirit with water.

*Use.*—(1) For preserving specimens ; at least 70 per cent.

(2) Hardening reagent ; 90 per cent.

(3) For dissolving the intercellular substance, so that the cells may be isolated by teasing ; 30 per cent.

**CHROMIC ACID, 10 per cent. solution.**

*Preparation.*—Dissolve 10 grms. chromic acid crystals in 100 c.c. water.

*Use.*—As a fixing and hardening reagent it must be reduced to a 1 per cent. or 0.5 per cent. solution by addition of water before use.



**CORROSIVE SUBLIMATE, solution.**

*Preparation.*—Saturate water with mercuric chloride: 1 litre dissolves about 70 grms.

*Use.*—(1) As a hardening reagent it is used cold.

(2) For killing and fixing small animals it may be used warm or cold.

After use it should be washed out in alcohol, to which a little tincture of iodine is added.

**SUBLIMATE-ACETIC, mixture.**

*Preparation.*—Take 90 vols. of concentrated sublimate solution and add 10 vols. of glacial acetic acid.

*Use.*—An excellent fixative for general work. Wash out in 70 per cent. alcohol with a little iodine solution added.

**FLEMMING'S SOLUTION.**

*Preparation.*—Fifteen parts chromic acid (1 per cent.), 4 parts osmic acid (2 per cent.), with or without 1 part glacial acetic acid.

*Use.*—Good fixative and hardening reagent. Wash well in running water for 24 hours in the dark. Then place in alcohol, beginning with 30 per cent.

**MÜLLER'S FLUID.**

*Preparation.*—Dissolve 25 grms. potassium bichromate and 10 grms. sodium sulphate in 1 litre water.

*Use.*—Hardening reagent. It also dissolves intercellular substance when diluted, so that the cells may be separated by teasing.

**OSMIC ACID ( $\text{OsO}_4$ ), 2 per cent. solution.**

*Preparation.*—Dissolve 1 gm. 'osmic acid' crystals in 50 c.c. distilled water. Keep in the dark.

*Use.*—For microscopic animals the vapour is a good fixative. Before using the solution, it is to be diluted with 1-3 times its bulk of water. Avoid inhaling the vapour.

**PICRIC ACID, saturated solution.**

*Preparation.*—Saturate water with picric acid by shaking it up with the crystals. Allow to stand: decant before use.

*Use.*—Hardening reagent. Wash out with 70 per cent. or 90 per cent. alcohol, adding lithium carbonate.

**'PICRO-SULPHURIC' ACID**, Kleinenberg's solution.

*Preparation.*—To 900 c.c. distilled water add 18 c.c. strong sulphuric acid, and add picric acid crystals to concentration.

*Use.*—Hardening reagent. Wash out in alcohol as above.

**ACETIC ACID**, glacial and 1 per cent. solution.

*Preparation.*—Dissolve 10 c.c. glacial acetic acid in water: make up to 1 litre with water.

*Use.*—(1) For fixing and clearing tissues, and especially for rendering nuclei more distinct.

(2) For killing small animals the vapour of glacial acid is effective, but it is a bad fixative.

**FORMALDEHYDE** (*Formol, formalin*).

*Preparation.*—Dilute the 40 per cent. solution to 4 per cent.

*Use.*—For preserving animals, especially for hydroids, frog's spawn, and gelatinous tissues such as snails. A mixture of equal parts of 1 per cent. potassium bichromate and 8 per cent. formalin is a good hardening reagent for brains. Leave them in the mixture 2-3 weeks, then wash for a day in running water, and keep in 5 per cent. formalin till required.

**BOUIN'S FLUID** (*Aqueous*).

*Preparation.*—Take 75 parts of a saturated aqueous solution of picric acid and add to this 25 parts of strong formalin and 5 parts of glacial acetic acid.

*Use.*—A general fixative and hardening reagent especially valuable for embryological work.

Tissues may be fixed for a few hours or may be left for several weeks. In any case they must be repeatedly washed with 70 per cent. alcohol to remove the excess of picric acid. Addition of an excess of lithium carbonate to the alcohol hastens the elimination of the picric acid.

## II. REAGENTS USED IN STAINING.

### BORAX CARMINE (Grenacher's).

*Preparation.*—Dissolve 12.5 grms. carmine and 20 grms. borax in 500 c.c. water: add 500 c.c. 70 per cent. alcohol: allow to stand two or three days: filter.

*Use.*—Stain for tissues which have been hardened. May be used warm (50° C.) or cold. The tissues should afterwards be treated with acid alcohol. For staining objects which are to be mounted whole, such as chick embryos, it should be diluted with several times its bulk of 40 per cent. alcohol, and the treatment with acid alcohol should be prolonged.

### ACID ALCOHOL.

*Preparation.*—To 100 c.c. of 70 per cent. alcohol add 1.0 c.c. hydrochloric acid.

*Use.*—For differentiating the parts of stained specimens, and for removal of surplus stain.

### PICROCARMINE.

*Preparation.*—Dissolve 10 grms. carmine in 40 c.c. strong ammonia and 2 litres water. Add 50 grms. picric acid. Shake well a few minutes: allow to stand: and decant. Allow to stand a few days, stirring occasionally. Evaporate to dryness over a water-bath. To every 2 grms. of dry residue add 100 c.c. water.

*Use.*—Stain. It may be used with advantage for specimens hardened with osmic acid or otherwise. Subsequent immersion for a short time in acid alcohol improves the effect in the case of some tissues. If the object be dehydrated rapidly, or by means of alcohol containing picric acid, a double-stained effect may be obtained, some tissues being stained yellow and others red.

### DELAFIELD'S HÆMATOXYLIN.

*Preparation.*—24 c.c. saturated solution of Hæmatoxylin in absolute alcohol, 900 c.c. saturated solution of ammonia-alum in water. Add these together and allow to stand for

a week and filter. Then add 150 c.c. pure glycerin and 300 c.c. 90 per cent. alcohol. It improves with keeping. For whole mounts dilute with 30 per cent. spirit. Surplus stain may be carefully removed by acid alcohol of half the usual strength. When the required depth of stain is obtained, transfer the object to 70 per cent. alcohol which contains a trace of ammonia, to neutralise the acid.

#### MEYER'S ACID HÆMALUM.

*Preparation.*—Dissolve 1 grm. hæmatein in 50 c.c. 90 per cent. alcohol. Dissolve 50 grms. alum in 1 litre distilled water. Mix and allow to settle. Add 20 c.c. glacial acetic acid and a crystal of carbolic acid or thymol.

*Use.*—For staining tissues in bulk or sections on the slide. Use the stain largely diluted with 1 per cent. alum-solution. The object must be brought down to water, and after staining washed in 1 per cent. alum-solution.

#### METHYLENE BLUE.

*Preparation.*—Dissolve 0.1 grm. in 100 c.c. salt-solution.

*Use.*—For staining small animals in life. It brings out the gland-cells, muscle-cells, and nerve elements. A small quantity should be diluted with twenty times its bulk of distilled water.

#### METHYLENE BLUE AND EOSIN (WRIGHT'S STAIN).

*Preparation.*—Buy the powder ready made. Dissolve 0.15 gms. in 100 c.c. of pure methyl alcohol.

*Use.*—For staining blood-films. Place a clean slide on the bench and on it, near the right-hand end, a small drop of blood. Bring the end of a second slide into contact with the first so that the two are inclined thus  $\angle$ . Now draw the upper one to the right till the drop of blood is touched; then push it to the left again, and a thin film of blood will result. Flood this with stain; leave for two or three minutes; wash for 30 seconds in a stream of water; gently blot with filter paper; dry and mount in balsam.

**METHYL-GREEN.**

*Preparation.*—A saturated water-solution (8 grms. in 100 c.c.) of methyl-green with a trace of 1 per cent. acetic acid.

*Use.*—To fix and stain the nuclei of Protozoa.

**III. CLEARING REAGENTS.**

(i.e. REAGENTS FOR REMOVING ALCOHOL OR PARAFFIN, AND RENDERING THE OBJECT PERMEABLE BY BALSAM).

**OIL OF CLOVES.**

*Use.*—The object must be left in the oil till it becomes transparent: if left too long it may become brittle.

**OIL OF CEDAR-WOOD.**

*Use.*—Same as oil of cloves. It is less liable to injure specimens. It is also useful for clearing before imbedding.

**XYLOL AND TOLUOL.**

*Use.*—(1) To clear objects previous to imbedding them.  
(2) To remove paraffin from sections (see p. 469).

**IV. MOUNTING MEDIA.**

**SALT-SOLUTION,** 0·75 per cent. and 0·9 per cent.

*Preparation.*—Dissolve 7·5 grms. common salt in 1 litre distilled water.

*Use.*—Living or fresh tissues are examined in it.

**GLYCERIN.**—Used either pure, or diluted with an equal bulk of water.

*Use.*—For mounting microscopical objects.

**GLYCERIN JELLY.**

*Preparation.*—Soak gelatin in water till soft; pour off excess of water; melt, and, while still fluid but cool, add one-eighth of its bulk of white of egg: mix thoroughly: boil: strain through flannel: to strained fluid, while still hot, add half its volume of a mixture of equal parts of glycerin and camphor water.

*Use.*—For mounting microscopical objects which are too transparent when mounted in balsam (see Introduction, p. xxxix). The edges of the cover-glass require cement.

**FARRANT'S MEDIUM.**

*Preparation.*—Dissolve 400 grms. white gum arabic in 400 c.c. water without heat, stirring occasionally: add 200 c.c. glycerin: strain through clean flannel if necessary. Keep in a stoppered bottle with a piece of camphor.

*Use.*—Same as glycerin-jelly, but it is used cold, and objects may be transferred to it direct from water. It soon hardens at the edges: ringing with varnish is therefore unnecessary.

**CANADA BALSAM.**

*Preparation.*—May be used as bought from the chemist, or diluted to a suitable consistency with xylol. Still better, evaporate to dryness: powder and dissolve in chloroform, benzol, or xylol.

*Use.*—The most useful of all media for mounting stained objects. (For method of using, see Introduction, p. xxxix.)

**V. MICROTOMIST'S MEDIA.****PARAFFIN.**

Melting-point from 50° to 60° C.

*Use.*—For imbedding objects to be cut into sections.

## VI. CEMENT FOR FIXING DOWN SECTIONS CUT IN PARAFFIN.

### GLYCERIN AND ALBUMEN (Mayer's Albumen).

*Preparation.*—Mix equal volumes of fresh white of egg and glycerin. Keep a piece of camphor in the bottle.

*Use.*—For fixing sections in order upon the slide. For full directions see p. 469 and Introduction, p. xl, where directions for staining sections on the slide are also given.

## VII. INJECTION FLUIDS.

### CARMINE INJECTION FLUID.

*Preparation.*—Rub up carmine in water: add ammonia drop by drop till the carmine is dissolved: filter: evaporate at a gentle heat, stirring constantly to get rid of the ammonia. Rub up the residue with camphor water.

*Use.*—For injecting small animals and parts of animals. It must be well shaken before use.

### PRUSSIAN BLUE INJECTION FLUID.

*Preparation.*—To a weak solution of ferric chloride add a few drops of hydrochloric acid, and then pour in enough of a stronger solution of potassium ferrocyanide to cause complete precipitation. The fluid should be deep blue, but transparent, and the precipitate too fine to be seen with the naked eye.

### PLASTER-OF-PARIS INJECTION.

*Preparation.*—Rub up fine plaster of Paris with water, in a mortar, to the consistency of thin cream. Colour to the required tint with carmine injection fluid, good vermilion or with French blue. Strain through fine muslin. Starch may be used in place of the plaster.

*Use.*—For injecting blood-vessels, &c., of rabbits and other large animals. It must be used immediately after preparation. (See Introduction, p. xxix.)

**GELATIN INJECTION.**

*Preparation.*—Soak gelatin in warm water till thoroughly soft. Pour off the superfluous water; melt, and stir into it carmine injection fluid, or other insoluble colouring substance, and a trace of carbolic acid; or if preferred the gelatin may be soaked in camphor water, and carbolic acid is then unnecessary. Stir till almost cold. The injection is solid when cold.

*Use.*—For injection of specimens of which it is proposed to make sections. It is to be melted, and kept well stirred during injection. If the specimen is large or difficult to inject, the whole operation must be performed in a vessel of water as hot as the hand can bear it.

**WHITE-OF-EGG INJECTION.**

*Preparation.*—Rub up fresh white of egg with carmine injection, or other colouring fluid which will not cause coagulation of the albumen.

*Use.*—For injecting specimens of which sections are to be cut. It is used fresh, and the specimen is then placed in alcohol, or in formalin, to coagulate the albumen.

**GUM INJECTION.**

*Preparation.*—Make a thick mucilage of gum arabic in cold water.

*Use.*—Inject cold, previously colouring as desired. Plunge the specimen into alcohol, and the injection will solidify.

**STARCH INJECTION.**

*Preparation.*—To 100 c.c. of water add 20 c.c. of glycerin and 20 c.c. of formalin, stir thoroughly with 85 gms. of corn starch and the colouring fluid chosen. Strain through muslin and stir before use.

*Use.*—As above.



## INDEX

- Abdomen:** *Crayfish*, 146; *Cockroach*, 174  
**Abdominal appendage:** *Crayfish*, 147, 148; *Cockroach*, 179  
**Abdominal pore:** *Dog-fish*, 222, 242  
**Abdominal viscera:** *Dog-fish*, 242; *Rabbit*, 340; *Pigeon*, 440  
**Acetabulum:** *Rabbit*, 332; *Fowl*, 427  
**Acromion:** *Rabbit*, 326  
**Adrenal body:** *Rabbit*, 343; *Pigeon*, 455  
**Air sac:** *Pigeon*, 437  
**Ala cordis:** *Crayfish*, 160  
**Ala spuria:** *Pigeon*, 433  
**Albumen gland:** *Snail*, 124, 134  
**Alimentary canal, see Digestive System**  
**Ali-sphenoid:** *Rabbit*, 308; *Fowl*, 416  
**Allantois:** *Chick*, 482  
**Alternation of generations:** *Liver-fluke*, 36  
**Alveolus:** *Rabbit*, 317  
**Amnion:** *Chick*, 479  
**AMEBA, 1-4**  
**AMPHIOXUS, 189-219;** external characters, 191; skeletal system, 192; muscular system, 193; digestive and respiratory systems, 194; atrial cavity, 196; coelom, 197; circulatory system, 198; excretory system, 200; nervous system, 200; sense organs, 203; reproductive system, 203; dissection, 204; transverse sections, 208  
**Anapophysis, see Vertebra**  
**Angular bone:** *Fowl*, 421  
**Ankle, see Tarsus**  
**Ankle joint:** *Fowl*, 429  
**Annulus:** *Leech*, 61; *Earthworm*, 67  
**Anodonta, see Mussel**  
**Antenna:** *Crayfish*, 152; *Cockroach*, 176  
**Antennule:** *Crayfish*, 153  
**Anti-trochanter:** *Fowl*, 427  
**Anus:** *Paramecium*, 6; *Vorticella*, 12; *Leech*, 53; *Earthworm*, 70; *Mussel*, 99, 112; *Snail*, 122; *Crayfish*, 163; *Cockroach*, 176, 182; *Amphioxus*, 191, 219; *Rabbit*, 339  
**Aorta:** *Mussel*, 106; *Snail*, 139; *Rabbit*, 353, 358; *Pigeon*, 450-452  
     cardiac: *Amphioxus*, 198, 214; *Dog-fish*, 257  
     dorsal: *Amphioxus*, 199, 214, 216, 219; *Dog-fish*, 259, 260; *Pigeon*, 451  
**Aortic arch:** *Amphioxus*, 198; *Rabbit*, 358; *Pigeon*, 431; *Chick*, 482  
**Aperture, see also Foramen**  
     auditory: *Crayfish*, 153; *Rabbit*, 322, 339; *Pigeon*, 436  
     cloacal: *Mussel*, 98; *Dog-fish*, 222; *Pigeon*, 435  
     excretory: *Liver-fluke*, 39; *Leech*, 63; *Earthworm*, 71; *Mussel*, 107, 118; *Snail*, 128; *Crayfish*, 153  
     exhalant: *Mussel*, 98  
     external: *Leech*, 62; *Earthworm*, 70; *Mussel*, 99; *Snail*, 121; *Cockroach*, 175; *Dog-fish*, 222; *Pigeon*, 435  
     genital: *Liver-fluke*, 37, 42; *Leech*, 63; *Earthworm*, 70; *Mussel*, 108, 118; *Snail*, 131; *Crayfish*, 148, 149; *Cockroach*, 175

- Aperture, inhalant: *Mussel*, 98  
 of Eustachian canal: *Rabbit*, 322; *Fowl*, 414, 418  
 of Eustachian tube: *Rabbit*, 323; *Pigeon*, 440  
 on surface of skull, *see* Foramen  
 posterior narial: *Pigeon*, 440  
 rano-pericardial: *Mussel*, 108; *Snail*, 127  
 respiratory: *Snail*, 121, 125; *Cockroach*, 175  
 urino-genital: *Rabbit*, 339; *Dog-fish*, 372
- Appendage: *Crayfish*, 142, 143, 147-151; *Cockroach*, 176-179  
 abdominal: *Crayfish*, 147; *Cockroach*, 179  
 head: *Crayfish*, 151; *Cockroach*, 176  
 thoracic: *Crayfish*, 148; *Cockroach*, 177
- Apteria: *Pigeon*, 435
- Aquæductus Fallopii: *Rabbit*, 314  
 vestibull: *Dog-fish*, 250, 290
- Arbor vitæ: *Rabbit*, 402
- Area opaca: *Chick*, 472
- Area pellucida: *Chick*, 472
- Arm, *see* Fore-limb
- Arteries: *Mussel*, 105; *Snail*, 139; *Crayfish*, 159, 169; *Dog-fish*, 255; *Rabbit*, 358; *Pigeon*, 450; *see also* Aorta
- Artery, brachial: *Rabbit*, 358; *Pigeon*, 451  
 branchial: *Dog-fish*, 257  
 carotid: *Dog-fish*, 259; *Rabbit*, 359, 373; *Pigeon*, 450, 451  
 caudal: *Dog-fish*, 260; *Pigeon*, 453  
 celiac: *Dog-fish*, 261; *Rabbit*, 359; *Pigeon*, 452  
 coronary: *Rabbit*, 364  
 epibranchial: *Dog-fish*, 259  
 femoral: *Pigeon*, 452  
 hepatic: *Rabbit*, 360  
 hyoidæan: *Dog-fish*, 260  
 iliac: *Dog-fish*, 262; *Rabbit*, 361; *Pigeon*, 453  
 ilio lumbar: *Rabbit*, 361  
 innominate: *Rabbit*, 358; *Pigeon*, 450, 451  
 intercostal: *Rabbit*, 359  
 lieno-gastric: *Dog-fish*, 262; *Rabbit*, 360  
 lumbar: *Rabbit*, 360  
 mammary: *Rabbit*, 359  
 mesenteric: *Dog-fish*, 262; *Rabbit*, 360; *Pigeon*, 452  
 ovarian: *Rabbit*, 360  
 parietal: *Dog-fish*, 262  
 pectoral: *Pigeon*, 451  
 pubic: *Pigeon*, 452  
 pulmonary: *Rabbit*, 352; *Pigeon*, 450  
 renal: *Dog-fish*, 262; *Rabbit*, 360; *Pigeon*, 452  
 sacral: *Rabbit*, 360  
 sciatic: *Pigeon*, 452  
 spermatic: *Rabbit*, 360  
 subclavian: *Dog-fish*, 261; *Rabbit*, 358, 359; *Pigeon*, 451  
 vertebral: *Rabbit*, 359; *Pigeon*, 451  
 vesical: *Rabbit*, 361  
 vitelline: *Chick*, 479
- Arthrobranchia: *Crayfish*, 155, 156
- Arthrodial membrane: *Crayfish*, 145
- Articular bone: *Fowl*, 421
- Articular process, *see* Vertebra
- Arytenoid cartilage: *Rabbit*, 380
- Astacus, *see* Crayfish
- Atlas vertebra: *Rabbit*, 298; *Fowl*, 407
- Atrial cavity: *Amphioxus*, 195, 206, 213, 215, 218
- Atrial epithelium: *Amphioxus*, 212
- Atrial pore: *Amphioxus*, 191
- Auditory aperture, *see* Aperture
- Auditory capsule: *Dog-fish*, 230; *Rabbit*, 318
- Auditory organ: *Mussel*, 110; *Snail*, 138; *Crayfish*, 168; *Dog-fish*, 290; *Pigeon*, 464
- Auditory ossicle: *Rabbit*, 315; *Fowl*, 415; 422; *Pigeon*, 464
- Auricle: *Mussel*, 104, 117; *Snail*, 127; *Dog-fish*, 249, 263; *Rabbit*, 352, 363, 363; *Pigeon*, 453
- Auricular feathers: *Pigeon*, 436
- Axis vertebra: *Rabbit*, 299; *Fowl*, 407

- Backbone, *see* Vertebral column  
 Balantidium : 9  
 Barb : *Pigeon*, 434  
 Barbule : *Pigeon*, 434  
 Basal cartilages : *Dog-fish*, 238, 241  
 Basal-branchial : *Dog-fish*, 238  
 Basal-hyal : *Dog-fish*, 237  
 Basal-occipital : *Rabbit*, 306  
 Basipodite, *see* Appendage : *Crayfish*  
 Basio-ptyergium : *Dog-fish*, 240  
 Basio-sphenoid : *Rabbit*, 308; *Fowl*, 414  
 Basio-temporal : *Fowl*, 413  
 Beak : *Pigeon*, 432  
 Bile-duct : *Mussel*, 112; *Snail*, 132, 133; *Crayfish*, 162; *Dog-fish*, 245; *Rabbit*, 345; *Pigeon*, 444  
 Birds, characters of, 403, 431  
 Bladder : *Earthworm*, 79; *Rabbit*, 343, 365, 366; *see also* Sinus, urinary and urino-genital; *also* Nephridium  
 Blastoderm : *Chick*, 471  
 Blastostyle : *Obelia*, 34  
 Blatta, *see* Cockroach  
 Blood : *Leech*, 57; *Earthworm*, 75; *Mammals*, 337; *Pigeon*, 431, 445  
 Blood-sinus : *Leech*, 57, 65; *Snail*, 140, 141; *Crayfish*, 157; *see also* Sinus, Lacuna, Vein  
 Blood-vessel : *Earthworm*, 75, 90; *Mussel*, 105; *Snail*, 139; *see also* Circulatory system, Artery, Vein  
 Body-cavity : *see* Coelom  
 Bojanus, organ of : *Mussel*, 107  
 Bone, cartilage : *Rabbit*, 293, 305  
     membrane : *Rabbit*, 293, 305  
     sesamoid : *Rabbit*, 293, 334; *see also* Patella  
 Botryoidal tissue : *Leech*, 67  
 Brain : *Dog-fish*, 273, 285; *Rabbit*, 387; *Pigeon*, 460  
 Brain, cavity of, *see* Ventricle  
 Brain-case, *see* Cranium  
 Brain-membrane : *Rabbit*, 387  
 Branchia, *see* Gill  
 Branchial arch : *Dog-fish*, 237; *Chick*, 480  
 Branchial bar : *Amphioxus*, 195, 212  
 Branchial chamber : *Mussel*, 97, 116; *Crayfish*, 153  
 Branchial vessels : *Dog-fish*, 255, 257  
 Branchio-cardiac canal : *Crayfish*, 160  
 Branchio-cardiac groove : *Crayfish*, 146  
 Branchiostegite : *Crayfish*, 146, 153  
 Bronchus : *Rabbit*, 374  
 Buccal cavity : *Earthworm*, 72; *Cockroach*, 181; *Amphioxus*, 194, 206, 210; *Rabbit*, 381; *Pigeon*, 440  
 Buccal mass : *Snail*, 131  
 Budding : *Hydra*, 27  
 Bulla, Tympanic : *Rabbit*, 314  
 Bursa, Fabricii : *Pigeon*, 458  
  
 Oecum : *Rabbit*, 341, 346, 348  
 Oculum : *Pigeon*, 433  
 Canal, ampullary : *Dog-fish*, 223, 291  
     branchio-cardiac : *Crayfish*, 160  
     carotid : *Fowl*, 413, 414  
     central : *Amphioxus*, 201, 210  
     Eustachian : *Rabbit*, 322; *Fowl*, 414, 416  
     interorbital : *Dog-fish*, 232  
     naso-palatine : *Rabbit*, 385  
     neural, *see* Vertebra  
     of Laurer : *Liver-fluke*, 42  
     pericardio-peritoneal : *Dog-fish*, 251  
     reno-pericardial : *Mussel*, 108; *Snail*, 128  
     semicircular : *Dog-fish*, 231, 290, 291; *Pigeon*, 463  
     sensory : *Dog-fish*, 223, 281, 282, 291  
     urino-genital : *Rabbit*, 363, 371  
     vertebrarterial, *see* Vertebra  
 Capitulum : *Rabbit*, 303; *Pigeon*, 410

- Carapace: *Crayfish*, 145  
 Cardia: *Rabbit*, 344  
 Cardio: *Cockroach*, 177  
 Carina: *Fowl*, 411  
 Carpo-metacarpus: *Fowl*, 424, 426  
 Carpus: *typical*, 329; *Rabbit*, 323; *Fowl*, 426; *see also* Carpo-metacarpus  
 Cartilage-bone: *Rabbit*, 293, 303  
 Centrum: *Dog-fish*, 225; *see also* Vertebra, typical  
 Cephalothorax: *Crayfish*, 145  
 Cerato-branchial: *Dog-fish*, 238  
 Cerato-hyal: *Dog-fish*, 227  
 Cercaria: *Liver-fluke*, 46  
 Cerci: *Cockroach*, 175, 179  
 Cere: *Pigeon*, 432  
 Cerebellum: *Dog-fish*, 276, 287; *Rabbit*, 388, 402; *Pigeon*, 461  
 Cerebral hemispheres: *Dog-fish*, 275; *Rabbit*, 387, 389, 394; *Pigeon*, 460  
 Cervical canal: *Crayfish*, 155  
 Cervical groove: *Crayfish*, 145  
 Cervical ribs: *Fowl*, 406  
 Chele: *Crayfish*, 149  
 Chiasma, optic: *Dog-fish*, 285; *Rabbit*, 390, 400; *Pigeon*, 461  
 CHICK, 466-490  
 Chlorophyll: *Hydra*, 30  
 Chordæ tendinæ: *Rabbit*, 363; *Pigeon*, 455  
 Choroid: *Dog-fish*, 289  
 Choroid plexus: *Dog-fish*, 287; *Rabbit*, 396  
 Cilia: *Paramecium* 5, 6; *Opalina*, 8; *Vorticella*, 12  
 Circulation, course of: *Mussel*, 106; *Crayfish*, 157  
 Circulatory system: *Earthworm*, 75, 90; *Mussel*, 105, 114, 116, 117; *Snail*, 182; *Crayfish*, 157, 169; *Cockroach*, 180; *Amphioxus*, 198, 214, 219; *Dog-fish*, 247; *Rabbit*, 351; *Pigeon*, 445; *Chuck*, 479, 482  
 Cirrus: *Liver-fluke*, 41; *Amphioxus*, 191  
 Cirrus-sac: *Liver-fluke*, 41  
 Clasper: *Dog-fish*, 222, 240  
 Clavicle: *Rabbit*, 326; *Fowl*, 424  
 Clinoid process: *Rabbit*, 308, 309  
 Clitellum: *Earthworm*, 69  
 Clitoris: *Rabbit*, 339, 372  
 Cloaca: *Dog-fish*, 268, 272; *Pigeon*, 458, 459  
 Cloacal aperture: *Mussel*, 98; *Dog-fish*, 222; *Pigeon*, 435  
 Cloacal chamber: *Mussel*, 97, 102  
 Cloacal papillæ: *Dog-fish*, 223  
 Cloacal pouch: *Dog-fish*, 223  
 Clypeus: *Cockroach*, 172  
 Cnemial crest: *Rabbit*, 334; *Fowl*, 429  
 Cnidoblast: *Hydra*, 25  
 Cnidocil: *Hydra*, 25  
 Cochlea: *Rabbit*, 314, 337  
 COCKROACH, 171-188; external characters, 172; appendages, 176; circulatory system, 180; digestive system, 180; excretory system, 182; respiratory system, 183; nervous system, 183; sense organs, 186; reproductive system, 186  
 Cocoon: *Leech*, 51; *Earthworm*, 68, 83  
 Coelenteron: *Hydra*, 22  
 Coelom: *Leech*, 57, 65; *Earthworm*, 72, 88; *Mussel*, 109; *Amphioxus*, 197, 213, 216, 218, 219  
 Coelomic canal: *Amphioxus*, 197, 198, 213, 216  
 Collar: *Snail*, 121  
 Colon: *Cockroach*, 182; *Rabbit*, 341, 347, 348  
 Collumba, *see* *Pigeon*  
 Columella: *Snail-shell*, 123; *Fowl*, 422; *Pigeon*, 464  
 Commissure, of brain: *Rabbit*, 399; *see also* Corpus callosum, Pons Varoli  
 Condyle, of skull: *Dog-fish*, 235; *Rabbit*, 306; *Fowl*, 413  
 Conjugation: *Paramecium*, 7; *Vorticella*, 14  
 Conus arteriosus: *Dog-fish*, 251, 263  
 Coracoid: *Fowl*, 423; *Rabbit*, 294, 326  
 Coracoid process: *Rabbit*, 326  
 Cornea: *Crayfish*, 167; *Cockroach*, 186; *Dog-fish*, 289  
 Coronoid process: *Rabbit*, 319; *Fowl*, 421  
 Corpus albicans: *Rabbit*, 390, 401

- Corpus callosum : *Rabbit*, 387, 394, 399  
 cavernosum : *Rabbit*, 368, 372  
 luteum : *Rabbit*, 371  
 mamillare, *see* Corpus albicans
- Corpus or Corpora quadrigemina : *Rabbit*, 387, 388, 398, 401  
 spongiosum : *Rabbit*, 368  
 striatum : *Rabbit*, 396  
 trapezoidea : *Rabbit*, 392
- Ocylloid bone : *Rabbit*, 393
- Covert feathers : *Pigeon*, 435
- Ossa : *Cockroach*, 179
- Oocypite : 149
- Oranium : *Dog-fish*, 227 ; *Rabbit*, 306 ; *Fowl*, 412
- GRAYFISH, 142, 170 ; external characters, 143 ; appendages, 147 ; gills, 153 ; circulatory system, 157 ; reproductive system, 160 ; digestive system, 161 ; excretory system, 164 ; nervous system, 165 ; sense organs, 166 ; injected specimen, 169
- Oribiform plate : *Rabbit*, 311
- Oticoid cartilage : *Rabbit*, 373, 380
- Crop : *Leech*, 56 ; *Earthworm*, 74 ; *Snail*, 131 ; *Cockroach*, 181 ; *Pigeon*, 443
- Crura cerebri : *Rabbit*, 390, 398, 401
- Cutaneous blood-vessels : *Leech*, 58
- Cuticle : *Liver-fluke*, 37 ; *Leech*, 63 ; *Earthworm*, 70, 86 ; *Mussel*, *see* Shell ; *Snail*, *see* Shell ; *Crayfish*, 143, 143-145 ; *Cockroach*, 171 ; *Pigeon*, *see* Gizzard
- Cytoplasm : *Amoeba*, 2
- Dart-sac : *Snail*, 135
- Dentary bone : *Fowl*, 421
- Dermis : *Earthworm*, 88 ; *Amphioxus*, 205, 209
- Development : *Liver-fluke*, 42 ; *Mussel*, 91, 112 ; *Crayfish*, 142 ; *Cockroach*, 171 ; *Dog-fish*, 220, 264 ; *Rabbit*, 337 ; *Bird*, 431
- Diaphragm : *Rabbit*, 343, 350
- Digestive system : *Liver-fluke*, 39 ; *Redia*, 45 ; *Cercaria*, 46 ; *Leech*, 54, 65 ; *Earthworm*, 72, 89 ; *Mussel*, 111, 114, 115, 118 ; *Snail*, 129 ; *Crayfish*, 161 ; *Cockroach*, 180 ; *Amphioxus*, 194, 207, 214, 218, 219 ; *Dog-fish*, 244 ; *Rabbit*, 344 ; *Pigeon*, 440
- Digit : *Rabbit*, 386 ; *Fowl*, 426, 430
- Disc : *Vorticella*, 11, 12
- Diatomum, *see* Liver-fluke
- DOG-FISH, 220, 292 ; external characters, 221 ; skeleton, 224 ; abdominal cavity and viscera, 242 ; digestive system, 244 ; respiratory system, 246 ; circulatory system, 247 ; renal and reproductive systems, 264 ; nervous system, 273 ; sense organs, 288
- Duct, bile : *Mussel*, 113 ; *Snail*, 132, 133 ; *Crayfish*, 162 ; *Dog-fish*, 245 ; *Rabbit*, 345 ; *Pigeon*, 441  
 common genital : *Snail*, 134  
 hermaphrodite : *Snail*, 133  
 lacrimal : *Rabbit*, 313  
 mesonephric, *see* Wolffian  
 metanephric : *Rabbit*, 365 ; *Pigeon*, 457  
 Müllerian : *Dog-fish*, 264, 265, 272 ; *Rabbit*, 365 ; *Pigeon*, 457  
 of salivary receptacles : *Cockroach*, 182  
 ovarian : *Liver-fluke*, 41  
 pancreatic : *Dog-fish*, 246 ; *Rabbit*, 345 ; *Pigeon*, 445  
 pronephric, *see* Müllerian  
 salivary : *Snail*, 132 ; *Cockroach*, 181, 182 ; *Rabbit*, 385  
 segmental : *Dog-fish*, 264  
 Stenonian : *Rabbit*, 385  
 vitellarian : *Liver-fluke*, 41  
 Wharton's : *Rabbit*, 385  
 Wolffian : *Dog-fish*, 264, 268, 269 ; *Rabbit*, 365, 367, 368 ; *Pigeon*, 457 ; *Chick*, 484
- Ductus arteriosus : *Rabbit*, 353
- Ductus ejaculatorius : *Liver-fluke*, 41 ; *Cockroach*, 186
- Duodenum : *Rabbit*, 341, 344 ; *Pigeon*, 441, 444
- Dura mater : *Rabbit*, 386
- Ear, *see* Auditory Organ
- EARTHWORM, 68-90 ; external characters, 69 ; coelom, 72 ; digestive system, 72 ; circulatory system, 75 ; excretory system, 77 ; reproductive system, 79 ; nervous system, 85 ; transverse sections, 86

- Reduys:** *Crayfish*, 143; *Cockroach*, 171  
**Ectoderm:** *Hydra*, 23, 24, 26, 29, 31; *Chick*, 473  
**Ectoplasm:** *Amoeba*, 2; *Paramecium*, 5; *Opalina*, 8; *Vorticella*, 11  
**Egg:** *see* Ovum  
**Embryo:** *Liver-fluke*, 43; *Mussel*, 91, 112; *Rabbit*, 337; *Chick*, 467-490  
**Encystment:** *Opalina*, 9; *Vorticella*, 14  
**Endoderm:** *Hydra*, 23, 26, 30, 32; *Obelia*, 32  
**Endophragmal skeleton:** *Crayfish*, 165  
**Endopodite:** *Crayfish*, 147; *see also* Appendage  
**Endoplasm:** *Amoeba*, 2; *Paramecium*, 7; *Opalina*, 8; *Vorticella*, 11  
**Endostyle:** *Amphioxus*, 195, 206, 213, 214  
**Epiblast:** *Chick*, 473, 474  
**Epibranchial band or groove:** *Amphioxus*, 195, 206, 213, 214  
**Epibranchial cartilage:** *Dog-fish*, 237  
**Epicranium:** *Cockroach*, 172  
**Epidermis:** *Leech*, 64; *Earthworm*, 87; *Amphioxus*, 205, 208; *Rabbit*, 294  
**Epididymis:** *Leech*, 61; *Rabbit*, 367  
**Epiglottis:** *Rabbit*, 381, 383  
**Epimeron:** *Crayfish*, 144  
**Epiotic:** *Rabbit*, 313  
**Epiphragm:** *Snail*, 119  
**Epiphysis, of vertebra:** *Rabbit*, 295  
**Epipleural cavity:** *Amphioxus*, *see* Atrial cavity  
**Epipodite:** *Crayfish*, 147, 151  
**Ethmoidal region:** *Rabbit*, 311  
**Ethmo-turbinal:** *Rabbit*, 312  
**Eustachian canal:** *Rabbit*, 322, 333; *Fowl*, 414, 415  
**Eustachian tube:** *Rabbit*, 333; *Pigeon*, 464; *Chick*, 481, 487  
**Eustachian valve:** *Rabbit*, 362; *Pigeon*, 463  
**Excretory system:** *Liver-fluke*, 39, 45; *Leech*, 59; *Earthworm*, 77; *Mussel*, 107; *Snail*, 127; *Crayfish*, 164; *Cockroach*, 183; *Amphioxus*, 200; *Dog-fish*, 264, 273; *Rabbit*, 365, 370; *Pigeon*, 467; *Chick*, 483-484; *see also* Vacuole, pulsating  
**Ex-occipital:** *Rabbit*, 306  
**Exopodite:** *Crayfish*, 145; *see also* Appendage  
**Exoskeleton:** *Crayfish*, 143-145  
**Extra-branchial:** *Dog-fish*, 238  
**Eye:** *Leech*, 63; *Snail*, 137; *Crayfish*, 166; *Cockroach*, 173, 186; *Amphioxus*, 203; *Dog-fish*, 276, 289; *Rabbit*, 339; *Pigeon*, 462  
**Eye: development of,** *Chick*, 484-5  
**Eyelid:** *Pigeon*, 462  
**Eye-muscle,** *see* Muscle  
**Fabella:** *Rabbit*, 334  
**Fallopian tube:** *Rabbit*, 371  
**Falx cerebri:** *Rabbit*, 387  
**Fasciola,** *see* Liver-fluke  
**Fat-body:** *Cockroach*, 180  
**Feather:** *Pigeon*, 433  
**Femur:** *Cockroach*, 179; *Rabbit*, 333; *Fowl*, 428  
**Fenestra:** *Cockroach*, 173, 186  
**Fenestra ovalis:** *Rabbit*, 314; *Fowl*, 414, 424  
**Fenestra rotunda:** *Rabbit*, 314; *Fowl*, 414  
**Fenestral recess:** *Fowl*, 414  
**Fibula:** *Rabbit*, 334; *Fowl*, 429  
**Filoplume:** *Pigeon*, 435  
**Fin:** *Amphioxus*, 191, 192, 209; *Dog-fish*, 221, 238  
**Fission:** *Amoeba*, 3; *Paramecium*, 7; *Opalina*, 9; *Vorticella*, 13; *Hydra*, 27  
**Flagellum:** *Trypanosoma*, 18; *Hydra*, 31; *Snail*, 134  
**Flame-cell:** *Liver-fluke*, 43; *Tape-worm*, 50; *Amphioxus*, 200  
**Floccular fossa:** *Rabbit*, 313  
**Floccular lobe:** *Rabbit*, 388  
**Fontanelle:** *Dog-fish*, 230  
**Food:** *Amoeba*, 3; *Paramecium*, 7; *Opalina*, 8; *Vorticella*, 12; *Hydra*, 22, 23; *Obelia*, 32; *Leech*, 61; *Earthworm*, 68; *Mussel*, 91, 111; *Snail*, 119; *Crayfish*, 142; *Cockroach*, 171; *Dog-fish*, 220  
**Foot:** *Hydra*, 23, 32; *Mussel*, 88; *Snail*, 121; *Rabbit*, 336; *Fowl*, 429; *Pigeon*, 433  
**Foramen, anterior palatine:** *Rabbit*, 318, 321  
**condylar:** *Rabbit*, 322  
**for internal carotid artery:** *Dog-fish*, 233; *Rabbit*, 315, 323

- Foramen, ilio-sciatic:** *Fowl*, 427  
 incisivum: *Rabbit*, 321  
 inferior dental: *Rabbit*, 319  
 infra-orbital: *Rabbit*, 317, 321  
 internal orbital: *Rabbit*, 320  
 lacerum anterius: *Rabbit*, 308, 320  
 lacerum medium: *Rabbit*, 321  
 lacerum posterius: *Rabbit*, 321  
 lacrimal: *Rabbit*, 322  
 magnum: *Dog-fish*, 235; *Rabbit*, 325; *Fowl*, 413  
 obturator: *Rabbit*, 332; *Fowl*, 428  
 of Monro: *Rabbit*, 396, 401; *Pigeon*, 461  
 optic: *Dog-fish*, 231; *Rabbit*, 309, 320  
 orbito-nasal: *Dog-fish*, 231  
 ovale: *Rabbit*, 362; *Pigeon*, 453  
 pituitary: *Rabbit*, 322  
 posterior palatine: *Rabbit*, 321  
 rotundum: *Rabbit*, 320  
 stylomastoid: *Rabbit*, 315, 321  
 triosseum: *Fowl*, 423; *Pigeon*, 437
- Foramina** of exit for cranial nerves  
 for 1st cranial nerve (olfactory): *Dog-fish*, 235; *Rabbit*, 311; *Fowl*, 416  
 for 2nd cranial nerve (optic): *Dog-fish*, 231; *Rabbit*, 309, 320; *Fowl*, 416  
 for 3rd cranial nerve (oculo-motor): *Dog-fish*, 232; *Rabbit*, 308, 309, 320; *Fowl*, 416  
 for 4th cranial nerve (pathetic): *Dog-fish*, 232; *Rabbit*, 308, 309; *Fowl*, 416  
 for 5th cranial nerve (trigeminal): *Dog-fish*, 232; *Rabbit*, 308; *Fowl*, 415  
 for ophthalmic branch of 5th: *Dog-fish*, 230, 232; *Rabbit*, 308, 309, 320  
 for maxillary branch of 5th: *Rabbit*, 308, 317, 320, 321  
 for mandibular branch of 5th: *Rabbit*, 309, 321  
 for 6th cranial nerve (abducent): *Dog-fish*, 232; *Rabbit*, 308, 309, 320  
 for 7th cranial nerve (facial): *Dog-fish*, 232; *Rabbit*, 315, 321  
 for ophthalmic branch of 7th: *Dog-fish*, 230, 232  
 for 8th cranial nerve (auditory): *Rabbit*, 314  
 for 9th cranial nerve (glossopharyngeal): *Dog-fish*, 233; *Rabbit*, 321, 322; *Fowl*, 413  
 for 10th cranial nerve (pneumogastric): *Dog-fish*, 235; *Rabbit*, 321, 322; *Fowl*, 413  
 for 11th cranial nerve (spinal accessory): *Rabbit*, 321, 322  
 for 12th cranial nerve (hypoglossal): *Rabbit*, 322; *Fowl*, 413
- Fore-brain:** *Rabbit*, 398, 397, 399-401; *Chick*, 480, *see also* *Thalamencephalon*
- Fore-limb:** *Rabbit*, 327, 340; *Fowl*, 424
- Fornix:** *Rabbit*, 398, 399, 401
- Fossa ovalis:** *Rabbit*, 362; *Pigeon*, 453
- FOWL:** skeleton of, 403-430; vertebral column, 403; ribs and sternum, 409; skull, 411; appendicular skeleton, 423
- Frontal bone:** *Rabbit*, 311; *Fowl*, 416, 417
- Frontal segment:** *Rabbit*, 309
- Funnel, nephridial:** *Leech*, 60; *Earthworm*, 77, 78
- seminal:** *Earthworm*, 81
- Furcula:** *Fowl*, 424
- Gales:** *Cockroach*, 177
- Gall-bladder:** *Dog-fish*, 245; *Rabbit*, 345
- Gallus, see** *Fowl*
- Gamete:** *Monocystis*, 16-17; *Chick*, 469
- Ganglion, see** *Nerve-ganglion*
- Gastric mill:** *Crayfish*, 163
- Gastrula:** *Liver-fuke*, 45, 46
- Germination:** *Hydra*, 27
- Gena:** *Cockroach*, 172
- Generations, alternation of:** *Obelia*, 35; *Liver-fuke*, 36
- Genital sinus:** *Liver-fuke*, 42
- Germ-cell:** *Monocystis*, 17; *Liver-fuke*, 43; *Rabbit*, 371
- Germinal layers:** *Chick*, 471, 474
- Giant-fibres:** *Earthworm*, 90
- Gill:** *Mussel*, 98, 100, 114, 118; *Crayfish*, 155; *Dog-fish*, 246
- Gill-arch:** *Amphioxus*, 196, 207, 212; *see also* *Branchial arch*
- Gill-ray:** *Dog-fish*, 237, 238
- Gill slit or cleft:** *Amphioxus*, 195, 206; *Dog-fish*, 223

- Gizzard: *Earthworm*, 75; *Cockroach*, 181; *Pigeon*, 441, 443  
 Gland, albumen: *Snail*, 124, 134; *Pigeon*, *see* Oviduct  
 olitellar: *Leech*, 64  
 oolateral: *Cockroach*, 188  
 Cowper's: *Rabbit*, 369, 372  
 digestive: *Crayfish*, 161; *Cockroach*, 182; *Dog-fish*, 243, 244, 245  
 epidermal: *Leech*, 64  
 green: *Crayfish*, 184  
 hermaphrodite: *Snail*, 125, 133  
 infra-orbital: *Rabbit*, 385  
 mammary: *Rabbit*, 337, 340  
 mucous: *Leech*, 64; *Snail*, 135  
 mushroom-shaped: *Cockroach*, 186  
 œsophageal: *Earthworm*, 72  
 oviducal: *Dog-fish*, 266  
 parotid: *Rabbit*, 385  
 pedal: *Snail*, 122  
 perineal: *Rabbit*, 339, 370, 372  
 prostatic: *Rabbit*, 369  
 rectal: *Dog-fish*, 246; *Rabbit*, 370, 372  
 salivary: *Leech*, 56, 64; *Snail*, 132; *Cockroach*, 182; *Rabbit*, 385  
 shell: *Liver-fluke*, 42  
 sublingual: *Rabbit*, 385  
 submaxillary: *Rabbit*, 385  
 thyroid: *see* Thyroid body  
 yolk: *Liver-fluke*, 41  
*Glochidium*: *Mussel*, 112  
 Glossa: *Cockroach*, 177  
 Glottis: *Rabbit*, 380, 383; *Pigeon*, 440  
 Gonapophysis: *Cockroach*, 179, 186, 188  
 Graafian follicle: *Rabbit*, 371  
 Green gland: *Crayfish*, 164  
 Growth: *Mussel-shell*, 92, 95; *Snail-shell*, 120, 123; *Crayfish*, 143; *Chick*, 473, 474  
 Gubernaculum: *Rabbit*, 367  
 Gullet, *see* Œsophagus  
 Hæmal arch: *Dog-fish*, 225, 226  
 Hæmal process: *Dog-fish*, 226  
 Hæmal spine: *Dog-fish*, 226  
 Hæmoglobin: *Earthworm*, 75  
 Hallux: *Rabbit*, 336; *Fowl*, 430  
 Hamular process: *Rabbit*, 316  
 Hand: *Rabbit*, 331; *Fowl*, 426  
 Head: *Snail*, 120; *Crayfish*, 145; *Cockroach*, 172; *Rabbit*, 338, 381; *Pigeon*, 432  
 Head-process: *Chick*, 475  
 Heart: *Earthworm*, 76; *Mussel*, 104, 117; *Snail*, 127; *Crayfish*, 157; *Cockroach*, 180; *Dog-fish*, 247-251, 263; *Rabbit*, 349, 351, 361; *Sheep*, 364; *Pigeon*, 441, 453  
 Helix, *see* Snail  
 Hepatic cæcum: *Cockroach*, 182  
 Hepatic cell, *see* Yellow cell  
 Hermaphrodite duct: *Snail*, 133  
 Hermaphrodite gland: *Snail*, 125, 133  
 Hind-brain: *Rabbit*, 393, 394, 401; *Chick*, 480  
 Hind-limb: *Rabbit*, 332-336; *Fowl*, 428; *Pigeon*, 433  
 Hinge of mussel-shell, 93  
 Hippocampus major: *Rabbit*, 396  
 Hirudo, *see* Leech  
 Humerus: *Rabbit*, 327; *Fowl*, 424  
 HYDRA, 20-32: general appearance, 22; structure, 23-27; reproduction, 27-29; disintegrated specimens, 29-31; transverse sections, 31, 32  
 Hydranth, 32  
 Hymen: *Dog-fish*, 266  
 Hyoid bone: *Rabbit*, 319, 373; *Fowl*, 422  
 Hyoid arch: *Dog-fish*, 236; *Rabbit*, 319; *Fowl*, 422; *Pigeon*, 464  
 Hyomandibular cartilage: *Dog-fish*, 236  
 Hyostylic skull: *Dog-fish*, 237  
 Hypapophysis, *see* Vertebra  
 Hypoblast: *Chick*, 473, 475  
 Hypobranchial: *Dog-fish*, 238



Hypobranchial groove: *Amphioxus*, see *Endostyle*  
 Hypostome: *Hydra*, 20

Ileum: *Cockroach*, 181; *Dog-fish*, 244

Ilium: *Rabbit*, 332; *Fowl*, 427

Incisor: *Rabbit*, 323, 324, 325

Incus: *Rabbit*, 316

Infundibulum: *Dog-fish*, 285; *Rabbit*, 390, 401; *Pigeon*, 461

Integument: *Leech*, 63; *Earthworm*, 86; *Snail*, 123; *Amphioxus*, 204, 205, 203

Internasal septum: *Dog-fish*, 230

Interorbital canal: *Dog-fish*, 232

Interorbital septum: *Fowl*, 411, 416

Interparietal: *Rabbit*, 309

Interstitial cell: *Hydra*, 24, 25, 28, 29, 31

Intestines: *Liver-fluke*, 39, 43; *Leech*, 57; *Earthworm*, 75, 89; *Mussel*, 111, 114; *Snail*, 124, 132; *Crayfish*, 162; *Cockroach*, 181; *Amphioxus*, 196, 207, 218, 219; *Dog-fish*, 243, 244; *Rabbit*, 341, 346, 348; *Pigeon*, 441, 444

Isthmus: *Rabbit*, 332; *Fowl*, 427

Jacobson's organ: *Rabbit*, 383

Jaw: *Leech*, 52; *Snail*, 138; *Crayfish*, 151, 152; *Dog-fish*, 236; *Rabbit*, 316, 317; *Fowl*, 420, 421

Jugal: *Rabbit*, 318; *Fowl*, 419

Kidney: *Mussel*, 107, 108, 114, 117; *Snail*, 124, 127; *Crayfish*, 164; *Amphioxus*, 200  
*Dog-fish*, 243, 264, 266; *Rabbit*, 343, 365; *Pigeon*, 457; *Chick*, 483

Killing, mode of: xxv; *Amoeba*, 3; *Paramecium*, 8; *Opalina*, 9; *Vorticella*, 14; *Hydra*, 31; *Liver-fluke*, 36, 37; *Leech*, 51; *Earthworm*, 69; *Snail*, 119; *Crayfish*, 143; *Cockroach*, 172; *Rabbit*, 338; *Pigeon*, 430

Labial cartilage: *Dog-fish*, 238

Labial palp: *Mussel*, 99; *Cockroach*, 177

Labium: *Cockroach*, 177

Labrum: *Crayfish*, 146; *Cockroach*, 173

Lacinia: *Cockroach*, 177

Lacrimal bone: *Rabbit*, 313; *Fowl*, 416

Lacunæ: *Mussel*, 107

Lacunar tissue: *Mussel*, 103

Lambdoidal crest: *Fowl*, 413

Lamella, inferior: *Rabbit*, 300

supporting: *Hydra*, 24

Lamina terminalis: *Rabbit*, 403

Lancelot, see *Amphioxus*

Larynx: *Rabbit*, 380; *Pigeon*, 456

Lateral line: *Dog-fish*, 223, 291

LEECH, 51-67; external characters, 51; digestive system, 54; coelom and blood-vessels, 57; excretory system, 59; reproductive system, 60; nervous system, 62; sense organs, 63; transverse sections, 59, 63

Leg: *Crayfish*, 148, 149; *Cockroach*, 178, 179; see also *Hind-limb*

Lens: *Dog-fish*, 290; *Pigeon*, 463; *Chick*, 484-485

Lepus, see *Rabbit*

Life-history: *Monocystis*, 16-17; *Obelia*, 35; *Liver-fluke*, 42; *Tapeworm*, 47  
*Mussel*, 91, 112; *Crayfish*, 143; *Cockroach*, 171

Ligament, broad: *Rabbit*, 371

ethmo-palatine: *Dog-fish*, 236

falciform: *Pigeon*, 441

of jaws: *Dog-fish*, 236

of mussel-shell, 93, 93

suspensory, of liver: *Dog-fish*, 242; *Rabbit*, 345

Limb, see *Fore-limb*, *Hind-limb*, *Appendage*, *Leg*

*Limnaea truncatula*, 42-46

Lingua: *Cockroach*, 181

Lip: *Snail*, 121; *Rabbit*, 338

Liver: *Mussel*, 112; *Snail*, 124, 132; *Crayfish*, 161; *Amphioxus*, 196, 207, 214; *Dog-fish*, 242; *Rabbit*, 341, 346; *Pigeon*, 441, 444

LIVER-FLUKE, 36-46; external characters, 37; alimentary canal, 39; excretory system, 39, 45; reproductive system, 39; nervous system, 42; life history, 42

Lobi inferiores: *Dog-fish*, 235

Locomotion: *Amoeba*, 3; *Paramecium*, 5; *Vorticella*, 13; *Hydra*, 30; *Leech*, 51; *Earthworm*, 68; *Mussel*, 91, 98; *Crayfish*, 143; *Amphioxus*, 189, 193

- Lambricus*, *see* Earthworm  
 • *Lang*: *Snail*, 126-127; *Rabbit*, 349; *Pigeon*, 437, 455, 456  
*Lymphatics*: *Rabbit*, 361  
*Malleus*: *Rabbit*, 315  
*Malpighian body*: *Rabbit*, 366  
*Malpighian tubule*: *Cockroach*, 183  
*Mammæ*: *Rabbit*, 340  
*Mammalian skeleton*: characters of, 294  
*Mammals*: characters of, 337  
*Mandible*: *Crayfish*, 152; *Cockroach*, 176; *Rabbit*, 319; *Fowl*, 420  
*Mandibular arch*: *Dog-fish*, 236; *Rabbit*, 318; *Fowl*, 420  
*Mantle*: *Mussel*, 96, 113; *Snail*, 124, 126  
*Mantle-cavity*: *Mussel*, 97; *Snail*, 125-129  
*Manubrium*: *Obelia*, 84  
*Manubrium mallei*: *Rabbit*, 315  
*Manubrium sterni*: *Rabbit*, 304; *Fowl*, 410  
*Manus*: *Rabbit*, 331; *Fowl*, 426  
*Mastoid portion*: *Rabbit*, 313  
*Mastoid process*: *Rabbit*, 313  
*Maxilla*: *Crayfish*, 152; *Cockroach*, 177; *Rabbit*, 317 *Fowl*, 419  
*Maxillary arch*: *Rabbit*, 316  
*Maxillipede*: *Crayfish*, 149, 151  
*Maxillo-palatine process*: *Fowl*, 419  
*Maxillo-turbinal*: *Rabbit*, 312  
*Meatus, external auditory*: *Rabbit*, 314; *Pigeon*, 464  
*Meatus, internal auditory*: *Rabbit*, 314  
*Meckel's cartilage*: *Fowl*, 421  
*Mediastinum*: *Rabbit*, 350  
*Medusa*: *Obelia*, 84  
*Meganeucleus*: *Paramecium*, 7; *Vorticella*, 13  
*Membrane-bone*: *Rabbit*, 293, 305  
*Mentum*: *Cockroach*, 177  
*Mesencephalon*: *Rabbit*, 393, 398, 401  
*Mesenteron*: *Crayfish*, 161, 162; *Cockroach*, 180, 181  
*Mesentery*: *Dog-fish*, 243; *Rabbit*, 343  
*Mesethmoid*: *Rabbit*, 311; *Fowl*, 416  
*Mesoblast*: *Chick*, 474  
*Mesoblastic somites*: *Chick*, 476  
*Mesoderm*: *Chick*, 474  
*Mesoglossæ*, *see* Supporting lamella  
*Mesonephros*, *see* Wolffian body  
*Mesonotum*: *Cockroach*, 174  
*Meso-pterygium*: *Dog-fish*, 240  
*Mesothorax*: *Cockroach*, 174  
*Metacarpal*: *Rabbit*, 331; *Fowl*, 426  
*Metacromion*: *Rabbit*, 326  
*Metanephros*: *Rabbit*, 364; *Pigeon*, 457; *Chick*, 463  
*Metapleural canal*: *Amphioxus*, 199, 214, 216, 218  
*Metapleural fold*: *Amphioxus*, 191  
*Metapophysis*, *Rabbit*, 296; *see also* Vertebra  
*Meta-pterygium*: *Dog-fish*, 240  
*Metastoma*: *Crayfish*, 152  
*Metatarsal*: *Rabbit*, 336; *Fowl*, 429, 430  
*Metathorax*: *Cockroach*, 174  
*Metosteon*: *Fowl*, 411  
*Micro-nucleus*: *Paramecium*, 7; *Vorticella*, 13  
*Mid-brain*, *see* Mesencephalon  
*Mid-gut*, *see* Mesenteron  
*Miracidium*: *Liver-fluke*, 41  
*Molar teeth*: *Rabbit*, 324, 325  
*Monocystis*, 14-17  
*Morula*: *Liver-fluke*, 45  
*Mouth*: *Paramecium*, 6; *Hydra*, 22; *Liver-fluke*, 37; *Leech*, 52, 54; *Earthworm*, 70, 79; *Mussel*, 99, 111; *Snail*, 121; *Crayfish*, 146, 162; *Cockroach*, 175; *Amphioxus*, 191, 206, 207; *Dog-fish*, 222; *Rabbit*, 338; *Pigeon*, 455; *see also* Buccal cavity  
*Muscle*, *bursalis*: *Pigeon*, 462  
     *columellar*: *Snail*, 125  
     *mandibular*: *Rabbit*, 317  
     *of eyeball*: *Dog-fish*, 276; *Pigeon*, 462  
     *of nictitating membrane*: *Pigeon*, 462  
     *pectoral*: *Pigeon*, 436

- Muscle, pyramidalis:** *Pigeon*, 462  
     *quadratus:* *Pigeon*, 462  
     *retractor penis:* *Snail*, 135  
     *sterno-mastoid:* *Rabbit*, 374
- Muscle-process:** *Hydra*, 29, 30
- Muscular impression:** *Mussel-shell*, 93
- Muscular system:** *Leech*, 64; *Earthworm*, 88; *Mussel*, 96; *Amphioxus*, 193, 209; *see also* Muscle
- Musculi papillares:** *Rabbit*, 363; *Pigeon*, 455
- Mushroom-shaped gland:** *Cockroach*, 186
- MUSSEL, 91-118:** shell, 92; external characters, 96; gills, 100; circulatory system, 103; excretory system, 107; nervous system, 109; digestive system, 111; reproductive system, 112; transverse sections, 113
- Myonemes:** *Paramecium*, 5; *Opalina*, 8; *Vorticella*, 13
- Myotome:** *Amphioxus*, 191, 193, 209
- Nacreous layer:** *Mussel-shell*, 95; *Snail-shell*, 123
- Nasal bone:** *Rabbit*, 312; *Fowl*, 417
- Nasal cartilage:** *Dog-fish*, 223
- Nasal chamber:** *Rabbit*, 383
- Naso-turbinal:** *Rabbit*, 312
- Neck:** *Cockroach*, 173; *Rabbit*, 372-380; *Pigeon*, 433
- Nematocyst:** *Hydra*, 25, 26, 30, 31; discharge of, 26, 27; *Obelia*, 33
- Nephridium:** *Leech*, 68, 69, 76; *Earthworm*, 77, 78; *Amphioxus*, 200
- Nephrostome:** *Earthworm*, 77, 78
- Nerve, antennary:** *Cockroach*, 184  
     *auditory:* *Snail*, 137; *Crayfish*, 168; *see also* Cranial nerve  
     *branchial:* *Dog-fish*, 284  
     *buccal:* *Snail*, 136; *Dog-fish*, 282  
     *cardiac:* *Dog-fish*, 284; *Rabbit*, 378  
     *cranial:* *Dog-fish*, 277-284; *see also* Nerve roots  
         1st cranial (olfactory): *Dog-fish*, 276  
         2nd cranial (optic): *Dog-fish*, 278  
         3rd cranial (oculo-motor): *Dog-fish*, 278  
         4th cranial (pathetic): *Dog-fish*, 279  
         5th cranial (trigeminal): *Dog-fish*, 279, 280  
         6th cranial (abducent): *Dog-fish*, 281  
         7th cranial (facial): *Dog-fish*, 279, 281  
         8th cranial (auditory): *Dog-fish*, 279, 283, 291  
         9th cranial (glossopharyngeal): *Dog-fish*, 283  
         10th cranial (pneumogastric or vagus): *Dog-fish*, 283; *Rabbit*, 375, 377  
         11th cranial (spinal accessory): *Rabbit*, 374  
         12th cranial (hypoglossal): *Rabbit*, 374  
     *depressor:* *Rabbit*, 377  
     *descendens noni, see* Ramus descendens  
     *gastric:* *Dog-fish*, 284  
     *laryngeal, anterior:* *Rabbit*, 375  
     *laryngeal, posterior:* *Rabbit*, 377  
     *mandibular:* *Dog-fish*, 280  
     *maxillary:* *Dog-fish*, 281  
     *of lateral line:* *Dog-fish*, 283, 284  
     *of neck:* *Rabbit*, 374-379  
     *ophthalmic:* *Dog-fish*, 280, 281, 292  
     *optic:* *Crayfish*, 168; *Cockroach*, 184; *see also* 2nd cranial nerve  
     *palatine:* *Dog-fish*, 282  
     *phrenic:* *Rabbit*, 379  
     *post-spiracular:* *Dog-fish*, 282  
     *pre-spiracular:* *Dog-fish*, 282  
     *pulmonary:* *Rabbit*, 378  
     *recurrent laryngeal:* *Rabbit*, 377  
     *spinal:* *Dog-fish* 288; *Rabbit*, 379  
     *sympathetic:* *Rabbit*, 378, 379  
     *visceral:* *Crayfish*, 166; *Cockroach*, 185; *Dog-fish*, 284
- Nerve-cell:** *Hydra*, 26; *Earthworm*, 90; *Snail*, 137
- Nerve-chain, see** Nervous system
- Nerve-collar:** *Liver-fluke*, 42; *Leech*, 62; *Earthworm*, 85; *Snail*, 137
- Nerve-commissure:** *Mussel*, 109
- Nerve-connective:** *Mussel*, 110; *Crayfish*, 165, 166; *Cockroach*, 184

Nerve-cord, *see* Nervous system

• Nerve-ganglion: *Liver-fluke*, 42

buccal: *Snail*, 136

cerebral: *Mussel*, 109; *Snail*, 136; *Cockroach*, 184

cervical: *Rabbit*, 378

coliac: *Rabbit*, 349

frontal: *Cockroach*, 185

mesenteric: *Rabbit*, 349

optic: *Crayfish*, 168

parieto-splanchnic, *see* Visceral

pedal: *Mussel*, 109; *Snail*, 137

post-oesophageal: *Crayfish*, 165; *Cockroach*, 185

pre-oesophageal: *Crayfish*, 165; *Cockroach*, 184

sub-oesophageal: *Leech*, 63; *Snail*, 137; *Cockroach*, 185

supra-oesophageal: *Leech*, 62; *Earthworm*, 85; *Snail*, 136; *Cockroach*, 184

sympathetic: *Rabbit*, 344, 349, 378

visceral: *Mussel*, 110, 118

viscero-pleural: *Snail*, 137

Nerve roots, cranial: *Dog-fish*, 277-284; *Rabbit*, 392, 393

spinal: *Amphioxus*, 201, 202, 208, 210; *Dog-fish*, 288; *Rabbit*, 379

Nervous system: *Hydra*, 26, 30; *Liver-fluke*, 42; *Leech*, 62, 65; *Earthworm*, 85, 89; *Mussel*, 109; *Snail*, 136; *Crayfish*, 165; *Cockroach*, 183, 185; *Amphioxus*, 200, 208, 210; *Dog-fish*, 273; *Rabbit*, 374-380, 386; *Pigeon*, 460

Neural arch: *Dog-fish*, 226; *see also* Vertebra

Neural canal, *see* Vertebra

Neural plate: *Dog-fish*, 227

Neural process: *Dog-fish*, 226

Neural spine: *Dog-fish*, 227; *see also* Vertebra

Nictitating membrane: *Rabbit*, 339; *Pigeon*, 432, 462, 463

Nose, *see* Olfactory organ

Nostril: *Dog-fish*, 222; *Rabbit*, 338; *Pigeon*, 436

Notochord: *Amphioxus*, 192, 205, 208, 209; *Dog-fish*, 224, 225, 235; *Chick*, 475

Nucleus: *Amoeba*, 3; *Paramecium*, 7; *Opalina*, 9; *Foricella*, 13; *Monocystis*, 16

*Trypanosoma*, 18; *Snail-shell*, 123

Nyctotherus, 9

OBELIA, 32-35

Oblique septum: *Pigeon*, 441

Occipital condyle: *Dog-fish*, 235; *Rabbit*, 306; *Fowl*, 413

Occipital segment: *Rabbit*, 306

Odontoid process: *Rabbit*, 299; *Fowl*, 407

Odontophore: *Snail*, 131, 139

Oesophageal pouches: *Earthworm*, 74

Oesophagus: *Paramecium*, 6; *Liver-fluke*, 39; *Leech*, 56; *Earthworm*, 74; *Mussel*, 111;

*Snail*, 131; *Crayfish*, 162; *Cockroach*, 181; *Dog-fish*, 244; *Rabbit*, 381; *Pigeon*, 443

Olecranon process: *Rabbit*, 328; *Fowl*, 425

Olfactory capsule: *Dog-fish*, 229; *Rabbit*, 312; *Fowl*, 417

Olfactory lobe: *Dog-fish*, 275; *Rabbit*, 388; 390; *Pigeon*, 460

Olfactory organ: *Crayfish*, 169; *Amphioxus*, 203; *Dog-fish*, 288

Omentum: *Rabbit*, 343; *Pigeon*, 441

Ommatidium: *Crayfish*, 167

OPALINA, 8, 9

Opisthotic: *Rabbit*, 313

Optic chiasma: *Dog-fish*, 285; *Rabbit*, 390, 400; *Pigeon*, 461

Optic foramen: *Dog-fish*, 231; *Rabbit*, 309, 320; *Fowl*, 416

Optic lobe: *Dog-fish*, 276, 287; *Rabbit*, 388, 401; *Pigeon*, 460

Optic thalamus: *Rabbit*, 397

Optic tract: *Rabbit*, 390, 397

Oral groove: *Paramecium*, 6

Orbit: *Dog-fish*, 231-233, 276; *Fowl*, 416

• Orbito-sphenoid: *Rabbit*, 309; *Fowl*, 416

Os innominatum: *Rabbit*, 332; *Fowl*, 427

Os orbiculare: *Rabbit*, 316

Ossicle, auditory: *Rabbit*, 315; *Fowl*, 412, 415, 422; *Pigeon*, 464

Ossicles of stomach: *Crayfish*, 161

Otocyst: *Mussel*, 110; *Snail*, 138

Ovarian duct: *Liver-fluke*, 41

Ovary: *Hydra*, 27, 28; *Liver-fluke*, 41; *Leech*, 62; *Earthworm*, 80, 84; *Mussel*, 112, *Crayfish*, 161; *Cockroach*, 186; *Amphioxus*, 203, 204, 208, 216; *Dog-fish*, 243, 265; *Rabbit*, 370; *Pigeon*, 459

- Oviduct: *Liver-fluke*, 42; *Leech*, 62; *Earthworm*, 81; *Snail*, 135; *Crayfish*, 159; *Cockroach*, 187; *Dog-fish*, 265; *Rabbit*, 371; *Pigeon*, 459
- Ovum: *Hydra*, 39; *Liver-fluke*, 43; *Earthworm*, 84; *Mussel*, 112; *Snail*, 133; *Cockroach*, 187; *Amphioxus*, 204; *Dog-fish*, 220, 265; *Rabbit*, 337, 371; *Bird*, 431; *Pigeon*, 459; *Hen*, 469
- Palatal process: *Rabbit*, 317
- Palate: *Rabbit*, 381
- Palatine bone: *Rabbit*, 316; *Fowl*, 418
- Pallial cavity, *see* Mantle-cavity
- Pallial line: *Mussel-shell*, 94
- Palp, labial: *Mussel*, 97; *Cockroach*, 177  
mandibular: *Crayfish*, 152
- Palp, maxillary: *Cockroach*, 177
- Palpiger: *Cockroach*, 177
- Pancreas: *Dog-fish*, 243; *Rabbit*, 344; *Pigeon*, 445
- Papilla, circumvallate: *Rabbit*, 382  
foliate: *Rabbit*, 382  
urino-genital: *Dog-fish*, 272
- Paraglossa: *Cockroach*, 177
- PARAMECIUM, 4-8
- Para-sphenoid: *Fowl*, 416
- Parietal bone: *Rabbit*, 309; *Fowl*, 417
- Parietal segment: *Rabbit*, 308, 309
- Par-occipital process: *Rabbit*, 306
- Patella: *Rabbit*, 334; *Fowl*, 428
- Pearl: *Mussel*, 95
- Pecten: *Pigeon*, 463
- Pectoral fin: *Dog-fish*, 222, 240
- Pectoral girdle: *Dog-fish*, 240; *Rabbit*, 325; *Fowl*, 423
- Pelvic fin: *Dog-fish*, 240
- Pelvic girdle: *Dog-fish*, 239; *Rabbit*, 332; *Fowl*, 427
- Pelvis of kidney: *Rabbit*, 366
- Penis: *Liver-fluke*, 41; *Tapeworm*, 48; *Leech*, 60; *Snail*, 135; *Rabbit*, 339, 368
- Pericardial cavity: *Mussel*, 103, 114, 116; *Snail*, 127; *Dog-fish*, 247
- Pericardial sinus: *Crayfish*, 157
- Pericardium: *Snail*, 114; *Rabbit*, 349
- Perineal-pouch: *Rabbit*, 339
- Periostracum: *Mussel-shell*, 94; *Snail-shell*, 123
- Periotic: *Rabbit*, 313
- Periplaneta, *see* Cockroach
- Perisarc: *Obelia*, 34
- Peristome: *Vorticella*, 11
- Peritoneum: *Earthworm*, 88; *Dog-fish*, 243; *Rabbit*, 343
- Pes: *Rabbit*, 336; *Fowl*, 429
- Pessulus: *Pigeon*, 456
- Petrous portion: *Rabbit*, 313
- Peyer's patch: *Rabbit*, 346, 348
- Phalanges: *Rabbit*, 331, 336; *Fowl*, 426, 429
- Pharyngo-branchial: *Dog-fish*, 237
- Pharynx: *Vorticella*, 12; *Liver-fluke*, 39; *Leech*, 56; *Earthworm*, 74; *Snail*, 131; *Amphioxus*, 195, 206, 212, 214; *Rabbit*, 383; *Chick*, 481
- Pia mater: *Rabbit*, 387
- PIGEON, 431-465; external characters, 432; pectoral muscles, 436; air-sacs, 437; digestive system, 440; circulatory system, 445; respiratory system, 455; renal and reproductive systems, 457; brain, 460; sense organs, 462
- Pigmented canals: *Amphioxus*, 200
- Pineal body: *Dog-fish*, 230, 275; *Rabbit*, 339, 397, 400; *Pigeon*, 460
- Pinna, *Rabbit*, 339
- Pituitary body: *Dog-fish*, 285; 287; *Rabbit*, 390, 401; *Pigeon*, 461
- Pituitary foramen: *Rabbit*, 308, 322
- Pituitary fossa, *see* Sella turcica
- Placenta: *Rabbit*, 337
- Pleura: *Rabbit*, 350; *Pigeon*, 456
- Pleurobranchia: *Crayfish*, 155
- Pleuron: *Crayfish*, 144
- Podical plate: *Cockroach*, 174, 175
- Podobranchia: *Crayfish*, 155, 156
- Pollex: *Rabbit*, 331
- Pons Varoli: *Rabbit*, 390, 403
- Pore, abdominal: *Dog-fish*, 223, 242

- Pore, dorsal:** *Earthworm*, 71  
**Post-axial border of limb:** *Rabbit*, 327, 333; *Fowl*, 424  
**Post-orbital groove:** *Dog-fish*, 233  
**Post-sygapophysis, see** *Vertebra*  
**Preaxial border of limb:** *Rabbit*, 327, 333; *Fowl*, 424, 428  
**Premaxilla:** *Rabbit*, 317; *Fowl*, 418  
**Prementum:** *Cockroach*, 177  
**Premolar:** *Rabbit*, 324, 325  
**Prepuce:** *Rabbit*, 339, 368  
**Pre-sphenoid:** *Rabbit*, 309; *Fowl*, 416  
**Pre-sygapophysis, see** *Vertebra*  
**Primary quill:** *Pigeon*, 434  
**Prismatic layer:** *Mussel-shell*, 95  
**Proctodæum:** *Crayfish*, 161, 162; *Cockroach*, 180, 181  
**Pronephros:** *Dog-fish*, 264; *Rabbit*, 366; *Chick*, 483  
**Pronotum:** *Cockroach*, 173  
**Pro-otic:** *Rabbit*, 313  
**Pro-pterygium:** *Dog-fish*, 240  
**Prosencephalon:** *Dog-fish*, 275, 285  
**Prostate:** *Rabbit*, 369  
**Prostomium:** *Leech*, 52; *Earthworm*, 70  
**Prothorax:** *Cockroach*, 173  
**Protodipite:** *Crayfish*, 147; *see also* *Appendage*  
**Protovertebra, see** *Mesoblastic somite*  
**PROTOZOA, 1-19**  
**Proventriculus:** *Cockroach*, 181; *Pigeon*, 443  
**Pseudobranch:** *Dog-fish*, 247  
**Pseudopodia:** *Amæba*, 1-3  
**Pterygoid bone:** *Rabbit*, 316; *Fowl*, 418  
**Pterygoid fossa:** *Rabbit*, 316  
**Pterygoid process:** *Rabbit*, 308  
**Pteryla:** *Pigeon*, 435  
**Pubis:** *Rabbit*, 332; *Fowl*, 427  
**Pulvillus:** *Cockroach*, 179  
**Pupil:** *Dog-fish*, 289  
**Pygostyle:** *Fowl*, 409  
**Pylorus:** *Rabbit*, 344  
**Pyramid of kidney:** *Rabbit*, 366
- Quadrate:** *Fowl*, 420  
**Quadrato-jugal:** *Fowl*, 420  
**Quill:** *Pigeon*, 433  
**Quill-feather:** *Pigeon*, 434
- RABBIT, 293-402**; vertebral column, 295; ribs and sternum, 303; skull, 304; teeth, 322; appendicular skeleton, 325; external characters, 338; abdominal viscera, 340; digestive system, 344; thoracic viscera, 349; circulatory system, 351; renal and reproductive systems, 364; dissection of neck, 372; dissection of head, 381; dissection of brain, 386
- Rachis:** *Pigeon*, 434  
**Radial cartilage:** *Dog-fish*, 240, 241  
**Radius:** *Rabbit*, 328; *Fowl*, 425  
**Radula:** *Snail*, 138  
**Ramus descendens of 12th cranial nerve:** *Rabbit*, 375  
**Receptaculum ovarum:** *Earthworm*, 80, 81  
**Receptaculum seminis, see** *Spermatheca*  
**Rectal diverticula:** *Pigeon*, 444  
**Rectrix:** *Fowl*, 409; *Pigeon*, 435  
**Rectum:** *Mussel*, 104, 111; *Snail*, 124, 129; *Cockroach*, 182; *Dog-fish*, 244; *Rabbit*, 341, 347, 348, 370; *Pigeon*, 444, 458, 459
- Media, 45**  
**Remex (remiges):** *Pigeon*, 434  
**Renal-pericardial canal:** *Snail*, 128  
**Reproduction:** *Amæba*, 8; *Paramecium*, 7; *Opalina*, 9; *Vorticella*, 13; *Hydra*, 27-29; *Liver-fluke*, 42-46; *Snail*, 119  
**Reproductive system:** *Liver-fluke*, 39, *Tapeworm*, 48; *Leech*, 60, 67; *Earthworm*, 79; *Mussel*, 112; *Snail*, 133; *Crayfish*, 160; *Cockroach*, 186; *Amphioxus*, 203, 205, 216; *Dog-fish*, 264; *Rabbit*, 364, 370; *Pigeon*, 458-460

- Respiration : *Leech*, 64 ; *Mussel*, 103 ; *Snail*, 126, 127 ; *Crayfish*, 183, 187 ; *Cockroach*, 188 ; *Amphioxus*, 194 ; *Dog-fish*, 246 ; *Pigeon*, 437  
 Respiratory system : *Snail*, 125 ; *Cockroach*, 175, 183 ; *Amphioxus*, 194, 206, 207 ; *Dog-fish*, 246 ; *Pigeon*, 437, 455-457 ; *see also* Gill, Lung  
 Restiform body : *Dog-fish*, 276, 287  
 Retina : *Dog-fish*, 289 ; *Chick*, 484-485  
 Rib : *Dog-fish*, 228 ; *Rabbit*, 303 ; *Fowl*, 406-409  
 Rostrum : *Crayfish*, 146 ; *Dog-fish*, 229 ; *Fowl*, 414, 416  
  
*Sacculus rotundus* : *Rabbit*, 346  
*Saccus vasculosus* : *Dog-fish*, 285  
*Sacrum* : *Rabbit*, 302 ; *Fowl*, 408  
*Salivary receptacle* : *Cockroach*, 182  
*Scale* : *Dog-fish*, 224  
*Scaphocerite* : *Crayfish*, 153  
*Scapognathite* : *Crayfish*, 162, 155  
*Scapula* : *Rabbit*, 326 ; *Fowl*, 423  
*Scapus* : *Pigeon*, 433  
*Sclerite* : *Crayfish*, 143 ; *Cockroach*, 173  
*Sclerotic* : *Dog-fish*, 289  
*Sclerotic plate* : *Pigeon*, 463  
*Scrotal sac* : *Rabbit*, 340, 366  
*Scyllium*, *see* *Dog-fish*  
*Secondary quill* : *Pigeon*, 435  
*Segmental organ*, *see* *Nephridium*  
*Segmentation* : *Leech*, 51 ; *Earthworm*, 68 ; *Crayfish*, 142 ; *Cockroach*, 171 ; *Chick*, 470  
*Segmentation of skull* : *Rabbit*, 306  
*Sella turcica* : *Rabbit*, 308  
*Semicircular canal* : *Dog-fish*, 231, 290, 291 ; *Pigeon*, 465  
*Seminal funnel* : *Earthworm*, 82  
*Sense-capsules* : *Dog-fish*, 227-229 ; *Rabbit*, 312  
*Sense-organs* : *Leech*, 63 ; *Mussel*, 110 ; *Snail*, 137 ; *Crayfish*, 166 ; *Cockroach*, 186  
*Amphioxus*, 203 ; *Dog-fish*, 288 ; *Pigeon*, 462 ; *Chick*, 484  
*Septum* : *Earthworm*, 72, 89 ; *Amphioxus*, 193, 209  
*Septum auricularum* : *Rabbit*, 362 ; *Pigeon*, 453  
*Septum interorbital* : *Fowl*, 411, 416  
*Septum lucidum* : *Rabbit*, 396  
*Septum narium* : *Dog-fish*, 230 ; *Rabbit*, 311  
*Septum obliquum* : *Pigeon*, 441  
*Sesamoid bone* : *Rabbit*, 293, 331 ; *see also* *Fabella*, *Patella*  
*Seta* : *Earthworm*, 70, 88  
*Shell* : *Mussel*, 92 ; *Snail*, 119, 122  
*Shell-gland* : *Liver-fluke*, 42 ; *Tapeworm*, 50  
*Sinus*, blood : *Leech*, 58, 65, 67 ; *Snail*, 141 ; 157  
    *anterior cardinal* : *Dog-fish*, 252, 253  
    *coronary* : *Dog-fish*, 264  
    *Cuvierian* : *Dog-fish*, 252  
    *hepatic* : *Dog-fish*, 252  
    *hyoidean* : *Dog-fish*, 253  
    *inferior jugular* : *Dog-fish*, 252  
    *inter-orbital* : *Dog-fish*, 232, 253  
    *orbital* : *Dog-fish*, 231, 253  
    *posterior cardinal* : *Dog-fish*, 252  
    *post-orbital* : *Dog-fish*, 253  
    *venosus* : *Dog-fish*, 249, 251, 263  
*Sinus*, genital : *Liver-fluke*, 42  
    *urinary* : *Dog-fish*, 268  
    *urino-genital* : *Dog-fish*, 272  
*Skate*, 220  
*Skeleton* : *Amphioxus*, 192, 205, 207, 209 ; *Dog-fish*, 224    *Rabbit*, 293 ; *Fowl*, 408  
*Skeleton*, appendicular : *Rabbit*, 325 ; *Fowl*, 423  
    *axial* : *Rabbit*, 295 ; *Fowl*, 403  
    *branchial* : *Amphioxus*, 195, 207  
    *buccal* : *Amphioxus*, 192, 207, 209  
    *endophragmal* : *Crayfish*, 165  
    *of fins* : *Amphioxus*, 192, 205, 209 ; *Dog-fish*, 238  
    *mammalian*, 293  
    *visceral* : *Dog-fish*, 235

- Skin, *see* Integument
- Skull: *Dog-fish*, 227; *Rabbit*, 304; *Dog*, 304, 307; *Fowl*, 411
- SNAIL, 119-141; external characters, 119; mantle-cavity, 125; digestive system, 129; reproductive system, 133; nervous system, 136; sense-organs, 137; buccal mass, 138; circulatory system, 137
- Somatopleure: *Chick*, 477
- Somite: *Leech*, 61; *Chick*, 476
- Spermatid: *Earthworm*, 85
- Spermatophore: *Leech*, 61; *Earthworm*, 81; *Snail*, 134
- Spermatozoa: *Hydra*, 28; *Leech*, 61; *Earthworm*, 84, 85; *Snail*, 134; *Crayfish*, 161; *Amphioxus*, 204; *Dog-fish*, 273
- Spermatocyte: *Earthworm*, 84
- Spermatogonia: *Earthworm*, 84
- Spermatotheca: *Earthworm*, 81, 84; *Snail*, 135; *Cockroach*, 188
- Sperm-sac: *Dog-fish*, 271
- Sphenoidal fissure: *Rabbit*, 309, 320
- Spinal cord: *Amphioxus*, 201, 208, 210; *Dog-fish*, 287
- Spinous process, *see* Vertebra
- Spiracle: *Cockroach*, 175, 183; *Dog-fish*, 223
- Spiral valve: *Dog-fish*, 244
- Splanchnopleure: *Chick*, 477
- Spleen: *Dog-fish*, 243; *Rabbit*, 343; *Pigeon*, 443
- Splenic: *Fowl*, 422
- Sporocyst, : *Liver-fluke*, 43
- Sporozoite: *Monocystis*, 17
- Squamal: *Rabbit*, 318; *Fowl*, 414, 415
- Stapes: *Rabbit*, 314, 316
- Statocyst, *see* Otocyst, auditory organ
- Sternebra: *Rabbit*, 304
- Sternum: *Crayfish*, 144, 146; *Cockroach*, 175; *Rabbit*, 304; *Fowl*, 410
- Stigma: *Cockroach*, 175, 183
- Stipes: *Cockroach*, 177
- Stomach: *Leech*, 57; *Mussel*, 111; *Snail*, 132; *Crayfish*, 162, 163; *Amphioxus*, 196; *Dog-fish*, 244; *Rabbit*, 341, 344, 347; *Pigeon*, 443
- Stomodæum: *Crayfish*, 161, 162; *Cockroach*, 181; *Chick*, 480
- Stylo-hyal: *Rabbit*, 320
- Submentum: *Cockroach*, 177
- Suborbital ridge: *Dog-fish*, 231
- Sucker: *Liver-fluke*, 37, 46; *Leech*, 52
- Sulcus: *Rabbit*, 387
- Supporting lamella: *Hydra*, 24, 26, 30, 32
- Supra-angular: *Fowl*, 421
- Supra branchial passage or chamber: *Mussel*, 97, 102, 114, 116, 118
- Supra-occipital: *Rabbit*, 306
- Supra-orbital crest or ridge: *Dog-fish*, 230, 231
- Supra-orbital process: *Rabbit*, 311
- Suprascapula: *Rabbit*, 326
- Suspensory fold of pharynx: *Amphioxus*, 197, 213, 215
- Swimmeret, *see* Abdominal appendage
- Sylvian aqueduct: *Rabbit*, 401; *Pigeon*, 461
- Sylvian fissure: *Rabbit*, 390
- Symphysis pubis: *Rabbit*, 333
- Syrinx: *Pigeon*, 456
- Tapetum: *Crayfish*, 168; *Dog-fish*, 289
- Tapeworm, XIII, 47-50
- Tarso-metatarsus: *Fowl*, 429
- Tarsus: *Cockroach*, 179; *Rabbit*, 335
- Teat: *Rabbit*, 340
- Teeth: *Crayfish*, 163, 164; *Cockroach*, 181; *Dog-fish*, 224, 236; *Rabbit*, 208, 323
- Tegmen (tegmina): *Cockroach*, 174
- Telson: *Crayfish*, 146
- Tentacle: *Hydra*, 22, 24; *Mussel*, 98; *Snail*, 130; *Amphioxus*, 191, 194, 207
- Tentorium: *Cockroach*, 184; *Rabbit*, 387
- Tergum: *Crayfish*, 144; *Cockroach*, 174
- Testis: *Hydra*, 28; *Liver-fluke*, 39; *Leech*, 61, 67; *Earthworm*, 82, 84; *Mussel*, 112; *Crayfish*, 160; *Cockroach*, 186; *Amphioxus*, 204, 206, 216; *Dog-fish*, 243, 269; *Rabbit*, 366, 367; *Pigeon*, 456
- Thalamencephalon: *Dog-fish*, 276, 287; *Rabbit*, 395, 397, 399; *Pigeon*, 461
- Thoracic appendage: *Crayfish*, 148; *Cockroach*, 177



- Thoracic duct: *Rabbit*, 361  
 Thorax: *Crayfish*, 146; *Cockroach*, 173; *Rabbit*, 339, 349  
 Thread-cell: *Hydra*, 26, 26, 30, 31; *see also* Trichocyst  
 Thymus: *Rabbit*, 349  
 Thyroid body: *Dog-fish*, 257; *Rabbit*, 374; *Pigeon*, 443  
 Thyroid cartilage: *Rabbit*, 373, 380  
 Tibia: *Cockroach*, 178; *Rabbit*, 334  
 Tibio-tarsus: *Fowl*, 429  
 Tongue: *Cockroach*, 181; *Rabbit*, 382; *Pigeon*, 440  
 Tonail: *Rabbit*, 382  
 Trachea: *Rabbit*, 373; *Pigeon*, 455  
 Tracheal tube: *Cockroach*, 183  
 Trichocyst: *Paramecium*, 6, 8  
 Trochanter: *Cockroach*, 179; *Rabbit*, 333 *Fowl*, 429  
 Trophozoite: *Monocystis*, 16  
 Trypanosoma: 17-19  
 Tuberosity: *Rabbit*, 303  
 Tympanic bone: *Rabbit*, 314  
     bulla: *Rabbit*, 306, 314  
     cavity: *Rabbit*, 314; *Fowl*, 414; *Pigeon*, 464  
     membrane: *Rabbit*, 314; *Fowl*, 414; *Pigeon*, 464  
 Tympano-Eustachian passage: *Pigeon*, 463; *Chick*, 481  
 Typhlosole: *Earthworm*, 75, 89; *Mussel*, 112, 114  
 Typical segment: *Crayfish*, 143
- Ulna: *Rabbit*, 328; *Fowl*, 425  
 Umbilicus of feather: *Pigeon*, 423-434  
     of snail-shell, 123  
 Umbo: *Mussel-shell*, 92  
 Uncinate process: *Fowl*, 410  
 Ureter: *Mussel*, 107, 108, 115, 117; *Snail*, 128; *Crayfish*, 164; *Dog-fish*, 261, 268, 272  
     *Rabbit*, 366; *Pigeon*, 457  
 Urethra: *Rabbit*, 368  
 Urino-genital canal, *see* Urethra, Vestibule  
     pouch: *Pigeon*, 458, 459  
 Uterus: *Liver-fluke*, 42; *Tapeworm*, 60; *Rabbit*, 371  
 Uterus masculinus: *Rabbit*, 369, 370
- Vacuole: *Hydra*, 26, 30  
 Vacuole, food: *Amoeba*, 2; *Paramecium*, 7; *Vorticella*, 12  
     pulsating: *Amoeba*, 3; *Paramecium*, 6; *Vorticella*, 12  
 Vagina: *Liver-fluke*, 42; *Tapeworm*, 60; *Leech*, 62; *Snail*, 135; *Rabbit*, 371  
 Vagus, *see* Nerve, 10th cranial  
 Valve, Eustachian: *Rabbit*, 362; *Pigeon*, 453  
     mitral: *Rabbit*, 364; *Pigeon*, 454  
     of Vieussens: *Rabbit*, 389, 401  
     semilunar: *Rabbit*, 361; *Pigeon*, 454, 455  
     spiral: *Dog-fish*, 244  
     tricuspid: *Rabbit*, 363  
 Vane: *Pigeon*, 434  
 Vas deferens: *Liver-fluke*, 40; *Tapeworm*, 48; *Leech*, 61, 67; *Earthworm*, 83; *Snail*, 134; *Crayfish*, 160; *Cockroach*, 186; *Dog-fish*, 271; *Rabbit*, 367; *Pigeon*, 458  
 Vas efferens: *Leech*, 61; *Earthworm*, 83; *Dog-fish*, 269; *Rabbit*, 367  
 Vein, azygos cardinal: *Rabbit*, 354  
     brachial: *Pigeon*, 417  
     caudal: *Dog-fish*, 255; *Pigeon*, 453  
     coronary: *Rabbit*, 362  
     duodenal: *Rabbit*, 357  
     facial: *Rabbit*, 355  
     femoral: *Rabbit*, 357; *Pigeon*, 449  
     gastro-duodenal: *Pigeon*, 449  
     hepatic: *Amphioxus*, 199, 216; *Rabbit*, 356; *Pigeon*, 447  
     hypogastric: *Pigeon*, 449  
     iliac: *Rabbit*, 356; *Pigeon*, 448, 449  
     ilio-lumbar: *Rabbit*, 356  
     intercostal: *Rabbit*, 354  
     internal iliac: *Pigeon*, 448  
     internal mammary: *Rabbit*, 355; *Pigeon*, 447  
     jugular: *Rabbit*, 355; *Pigeon*, 447

- Vein, lateral: *Dog-fish*, 354
  - lieno-gastric: *Rabbit*, 357
  - mesenteric: *Rabbit*, 357; *Pigeon*, 443, 448, 449
  - ovarian: *Rabbit*, 356
  - pectoral: *Pigeon*, 447
  - phrenic: *Rabbit*, 356
  - portal: *Amphioxus*, 199, 216; *Dog-fish*, 355; *Rabbit*, 357; *Pigeon*, 441, 449
  - pulmonary: *Snail*, 126; *Rabbit*, 353; *Pigeon*, 450
  - renal: *Dog-fish*, 255; *Rabbit*, 356; *Pigeon*, 448, 449
  - renal portal, *Dog-fish*, 255
  - spermatic: *Rabbit*, 356
  - subclavian: *Dog-fish*, 254; *Rabbit*, 355
  - vertebral: *Pigeon*, 447
  - vitelline: *Chick*, 479
- Veins: *Mussel*, 105; *Snail*, 140; *Dog-fish*, 251; *Rabbit*, 353; *Pigeon*, 446; *see also* Sinus
- Veins of kidney: *Pigeon*, 448
- Velum: *Amphioxus*, 194
- Velum interpositum: *Rabbit*, 395, 399
- Velum medullæ: *Rabbit*, 389, 402
- Vena cava: *Mussel*, 105, 114, 117
  - anterior: *Rabbit*, 352, 354, 355; *Pigeon*, 446, 447
  - posterior: *Rabbit*, 352, 355; *Pigeon*, 447
- Ventricle of brain: *Dog-fish*, 250-287; *Rabbit*, 397
  - lateral: *Dog-fish*, 286; *Rabbit*, 391; *Pigeon*, 461
  - third: *Dog-fish*, 275, 287; *Rabbit*, 399; *Pigeon*, 461
  - fourth: *Dog-fish*, 276; *Rabbit*, 401; *Pigeon*, 461
  - fifth: *Rabbit*, 396
- Ventricle of heart: *Mussel*, 104, 117; *Snail*, 127; *Dog-fish*, 249, 263; *Rabbit*, 351, 352, 363, 361; *Pigeon*, 454
- Ventricle of nervous system: *Amphioxus*, 201
- Vermiform appendix: *Rabbit*, 341, 347, 348
- Vernix cerebelli: *Rabbit*, 388
- Vertebra anticlinal: *Rabbit*, 300
  - caudal: *Rabbit*, 302; *Fowl*, 409
  - cervical: *Rabbit*, 298; *Fowl*, 405
  - lumbar: *Rabbit*, 301, 302
  - sacral: *Rabbit*, 302; *Fowl*, 408
  - thoracic: *Rabbit*, 300; *Fowl*, 408
  - typical: *Rabbit*, 295
- Vertebral column: *Dog-fish*, 225; *Rabbit*, 295; *Fowl*, 403
- Vertebral column, development of: *Dog-fish*, 224, 225
- Vertebralarterial canal, *see* Vertebra, cervical
- Verumontanum: *Rabbit*, 370
- Vesicula seminalis: *Liver-fluke*, 41; *Earthworm*, 82, 84; *Cockroach*, 156; *Dog-fish*, 269, 271; *Pigeon*, 453
- Vessel, *see* Blood-vessel
- Ventribule: *Vorticella*, 12; *Rabbit*, 371
- Vestibule of ear: *Dog-fish*, 290
- Vexillum: *Pigeon*, 434
- Vibrissa: *Rabbit*, 339
- Villi: *Rabbit*, 348
- Visceral hump: *Snail*, 123
- Visceral mass: *Mussel*, 98, 102
- Visceral nervous system: *Crayfish*, 166; *Cockroach*, 189
- Visceral skeleton: *Dog-fish*, 235
- Vitellarium, *see* Yolk-gland
- Vocal cord: *Rabbit*, 350
- Vocal organ, *see* Larynx, Syrinx
- Vomer: *Rabbit*, 312; *Fowl*, 418
- VORTICELLA, 9-14
- Vulva: *Rabbit*, 319
- Wheel-organ: *Amphioxus*, 194, 210
- Wing: *Cockroach*, 174; *Fowl*, 424; *Pigeon*, 433; *Chick*, 497
- Wolfian body: *Dog-fish*, 264, 265; *Rabbit*, 364; *Chick*, 463
- Wrist, *see* Carpus

Xiphisternum : *Rabbit*, 304  
 Xiphoid process : *Fowl*, 411

Yellow cell : *Earthworm*, 75, 88  
 Yolk-cell : *Liver-fluke*, 43  
 Yolk-gland : *Liver-fluke*, 41 ; *Tapeworm*, 48  
 Yolk-reservoir : *Liver-fluke*, 41  
 Yolk-sac : *Chick*, 477, 480  
 Yolk : *Hen's egg*, 470

Zygapophysis, *see* Vertebra  
 Zygomatic arch : *Rabbit*, 318  
 Zygomatic process : *Rabbit*, 217, 318 ; *Fowl*, 415  
 Zygote : *Monocystis*, 17









